Thank you for choosing Volkswagen

By purchasing this Volkswagen, you have become the owner of a vehicle fitted with the most up-to-date technology and a multitude of convenience functions for your use and enjoyment.

Before using your vehicle for the first time, please read and observe the information in this owner's manual. It will quickly help you to become familiar with your vehicle and all of its functions as well as making you aware of dangers to yourself and others and of how these dangers can be avoided.

If you have any further questions about your vehicle, or if you think that the vehicle wallet has not covered everything, please get in tap with your Volkswagen dealership. They will always be happy to deal with your questions, suggestions or problems.

We hope you enjoy driving your new vehicle. Happy motoring.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the important safety instructions for use of child restraint systems on the front passenger seat. *(→ Child seats)*

About this owner's manual

This owner's manual is valid for all variants and versions of your Volkswagen model and model year. The owner's manual describes all equipment and models without indicating whether the equipment is optional or specific to the model type. This means that your vehicle may not have some of the equipment described, or it may only be available in certain countries.

There may also be descriptions of upgrades for functions that require subsequent activation .

For information on your actual vehicle equipment, please refer to the sales documents or contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

A passenger car is described in this owner's manual.

All data in this owner's manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to print. Because the vehicle is constantly being developed and further improved, there may be differences between your vehicle and the data in this owner's manual. No discrepancy in data, illustrations or descriptions shall form the basis for any legal claim.

Due to legal and technical requirements, the vehicle may be equipped with different variants of an owner's manual depending on country.

readme

The vehicle may be equipped with a printed readme document instead of a full printed owner's manual. The readme document provides an overview of basic safety topics and contains information on the vehicle.

Words and groups of words in the readme document that are marked in blue are key words under which you can find further, more detailed information in the Digital Manual (**Vehicle wallet**).

The readme document is supplemented by a Digital Manual in the Infotainment system that can be updated online.

Digital Manual

Depending on equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with a Digital Manual in the Infotainment system.

The Digital Manual describes the functions of the vehicle at the time of delivery. The Digital Manual may be updated by updates, supplements and changes during the service life of the vehicle.

Printed owner's manual

The printed owner's manual describes the functions of the vehicle at the time of going to print. Additions and changes to the owner's manual may also be enclosed as a supplement.

An alphabetical index and a list of abbreviations that explains technical abbreviations and terms help you to find your way around and understand the printed owner's manual.

If you sell or lend the vehicle to someone else, make sure that the printed documents are always in the vehicle. Volkswagen also recommends restoring the Infotainment system to the factory settings in order to delete all personal data.

Explanations

Short definitions in a contrasting colour that precede some sections provide a summary of the respective topic. More detailed information about the features, conditions and limitations of systems and equipment can be found in the relevant sections.

Formulations and terminology used in the owner's manual are explained below to permit easier understanding.

Directions and positions

Directions and positions such as left, right, front and rear are normally relative to the vehicle's direction of travel, unless otherwise indicated.

Dimensions and speeds

Values given in miles instead of kilometres or mph instead km/h refer to the country-specific instrument clusters or Infotainment systems.

Illustrations

Illustrations help with orientation and should be regarded as a general guide. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This owner's manual was written for left-hand drive vehicles. In *right-hand drive vehicles* the controls may sometimes differ from those displayed in illustrations or described in the text.

Form of address

For better legibility, the male form of address is used. However, this refers to all genders equally. The shortened linguistic form is used for editorial reasons and does not represent a value judgement.

Terms used and their meaning:

Glass roof

The term glass roof is used as a standard term for all equipment-dependent versions of the sliding, tilting or panoramic roof.

Qualified workshop

Qualified workshops are workshops that employ instructed or trained personnel and that specialise in performing service work on passenger cars. A qualified workshop can be both a Volkswagen dealership and also an independent workshop.

Volkswagen dealership

Volkswagen dealerships are workshops that have a contractual relationship with Volkswagen. The contractual relationship means that additional information is available, and there is also a direct communication channel to the manufacturer.

Go to a qualified workshop

In some situations, it is necessary for you to drive your vehicle to a qualified workshop to have it checked.

Seek expert assistance

If it should not be possible to continue driving the vehicle at any time, it is necessary to have the vehicle checked by an expert on the spot. A decision on whether it is possible to continue driving or whether the vehicle has to be towed must be taken after this depending on the situation.

Description of symbols

Refers to a section within a chapter that contains important information and safety notes ⚠ that should always be observed.

Indicates the end of a section.

Indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.

TM The symbol means “Trademark” and identifies an recognised but not (yet) officially registered mark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

® The symbol indicates a registered mark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

→⚠ →⚠ →⚠ Symbols like these refer you to warnings within the same section or on a given page. They draw your attention to possible risks of accident or injury and explain how they can be avoided.

→ⓘ Cross reference to potential risks of damage to property in the same section or on the page specified.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which will lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to slight or medium injuries if you do not observe the warning.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which could cause vehicle damage if you do not observe the warning.

Texts with this symbol contain additional information on the protection of the environment.

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Front view

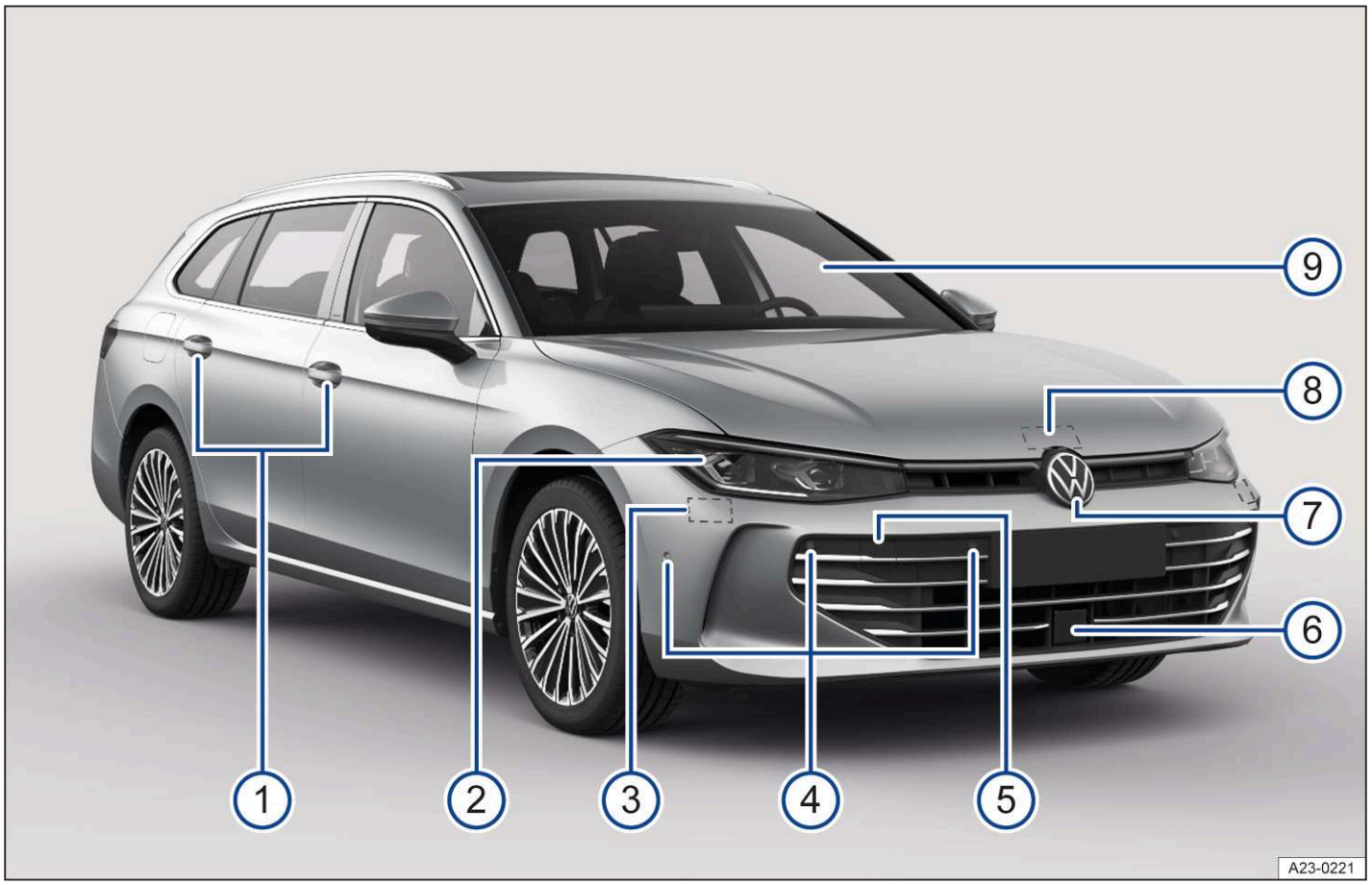


Fig. 1 Overview of vehicle from front.

1. Door handles
2. Headlights *(→ Exterior lighting)*
3. Behind the bumper: radar sensor for assist systems , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*
4. Sensors for assist systems , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*
5. Behind a cover: mounting for towing eye
6. Behind a cover: radar sensor for assist systems , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*
7. Camera for Area View , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*
8. Opening lever for bonnet *(→ In the bonnet space)*
9. Windscreen
   - — with vehicle identification number
   - — with windscreen heating *(→ Windscreen heating)*
   - — with windscreen wiper *(→ Wipers)*
   - — with camera for assistance systems positioned near the interior mirror , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*
   - — with rain/light sensor positioned near the interior mirror *(→ Rain and light sensor)*, *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*

Rear view

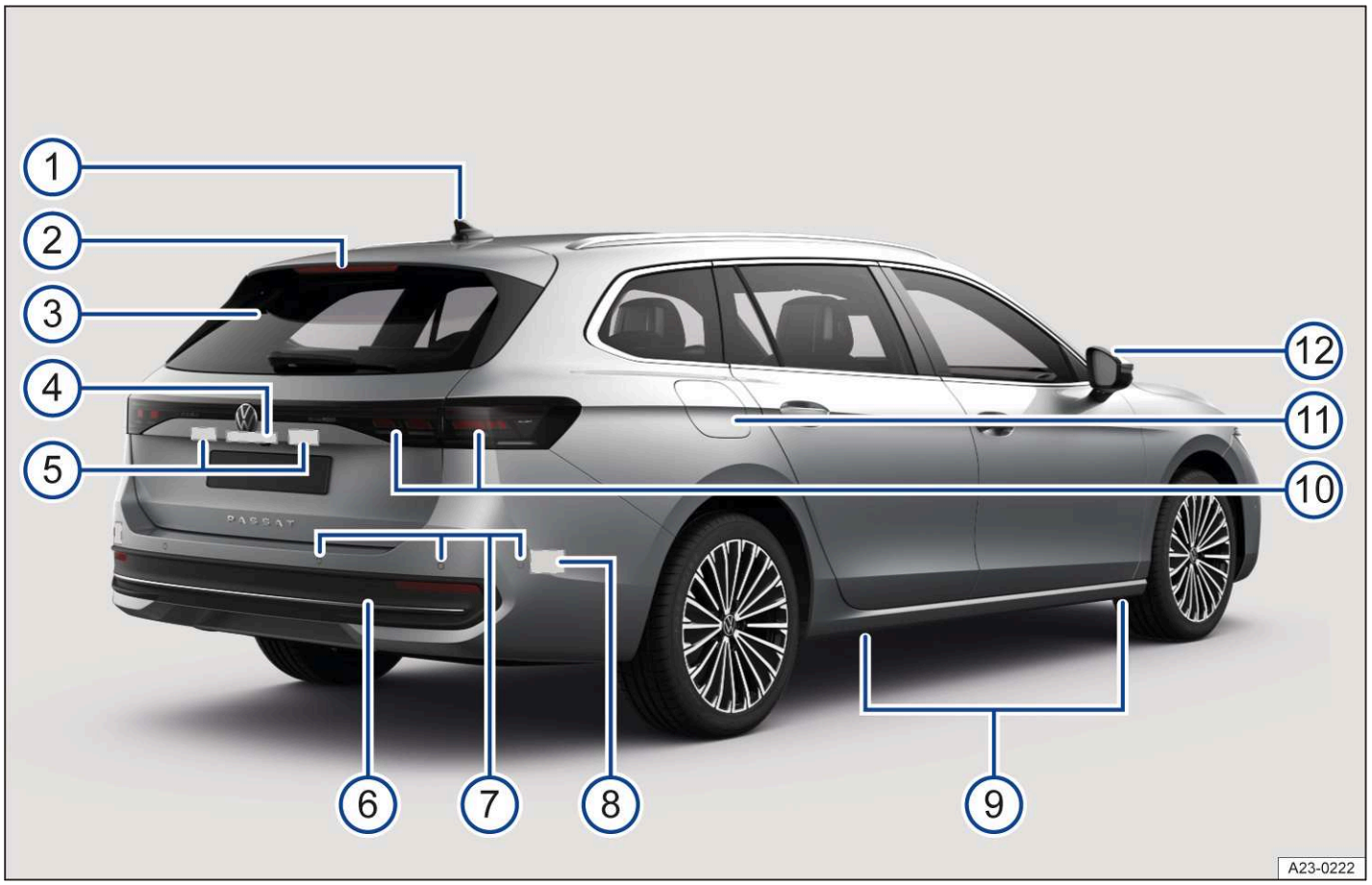


Fig. 1 Overview of vehicle from rear.

(1) Roof aerial *(→ Radio reception and aerials)*

(2) High-level brake light

(3) Rear window

— with rear window heating *(→ Rear window heating)*

— with rear window wiper *(→ Wipers)*

— with window aerial *(→ Radio reception and aerials)*

(4) Area:

— of the button for opening the boot lid

— of the camera for parking systems , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*

(5) Number plate light *(→ Exterior lighting)*

(6) Behind a cover: mounting for towing eye

(7) Sensors for assist systems , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*

(8) Behind the bumper: radar sensor for assist systems , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*

(9) Jacking points

(10) Tail light clusters *(→ Exterior lighting)*

(11) Tank flap

(12) Exterior mirrors *(→ Exterior mirrors)*

— With display of exit warning system *(→ Exit warning system)*

— With display of lane change system (Side Assist)

— With camera for Area View , *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*

Driver side

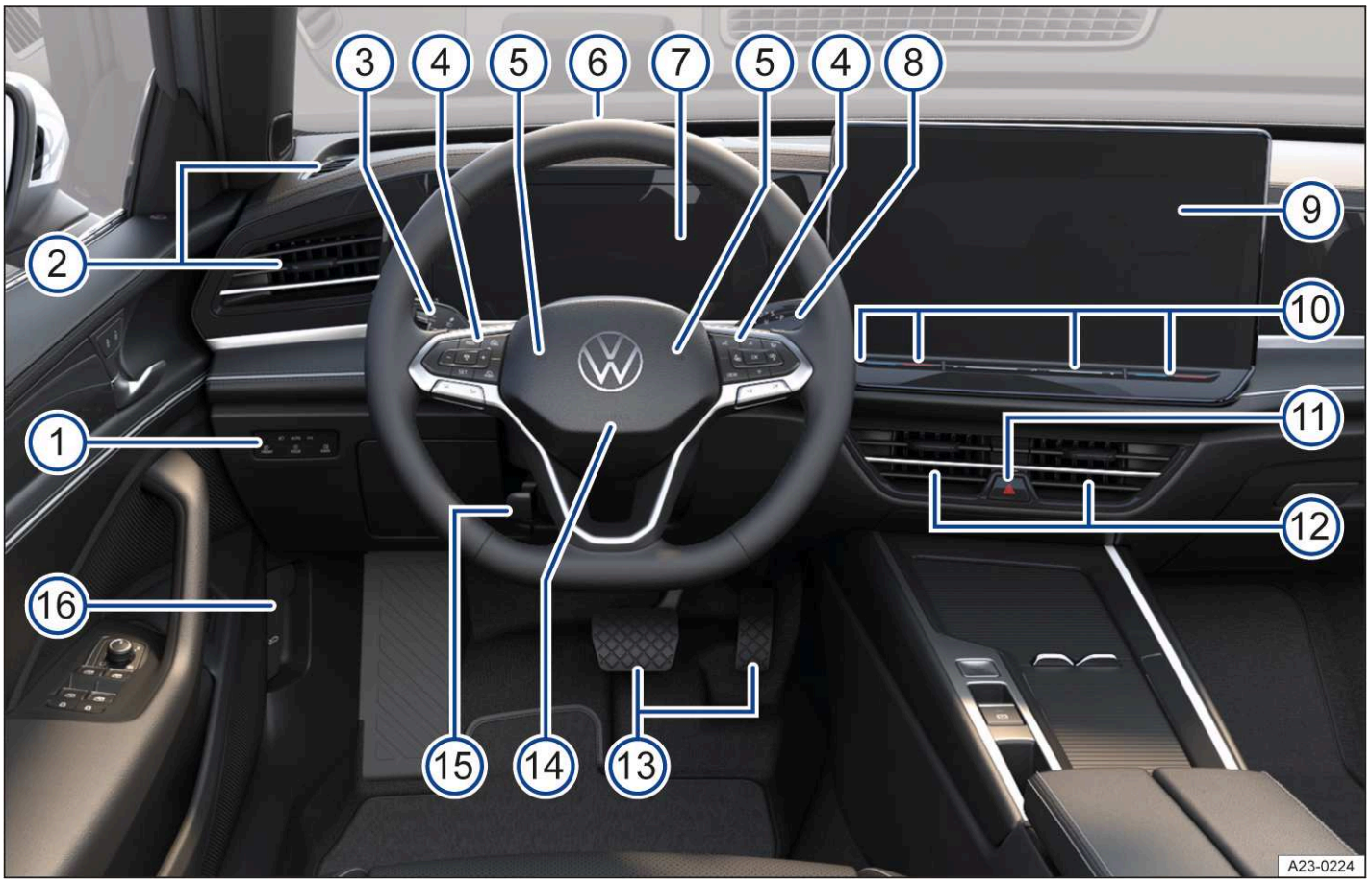


Fig. 1 Overview of the driver side (left-hand drive vehicles).

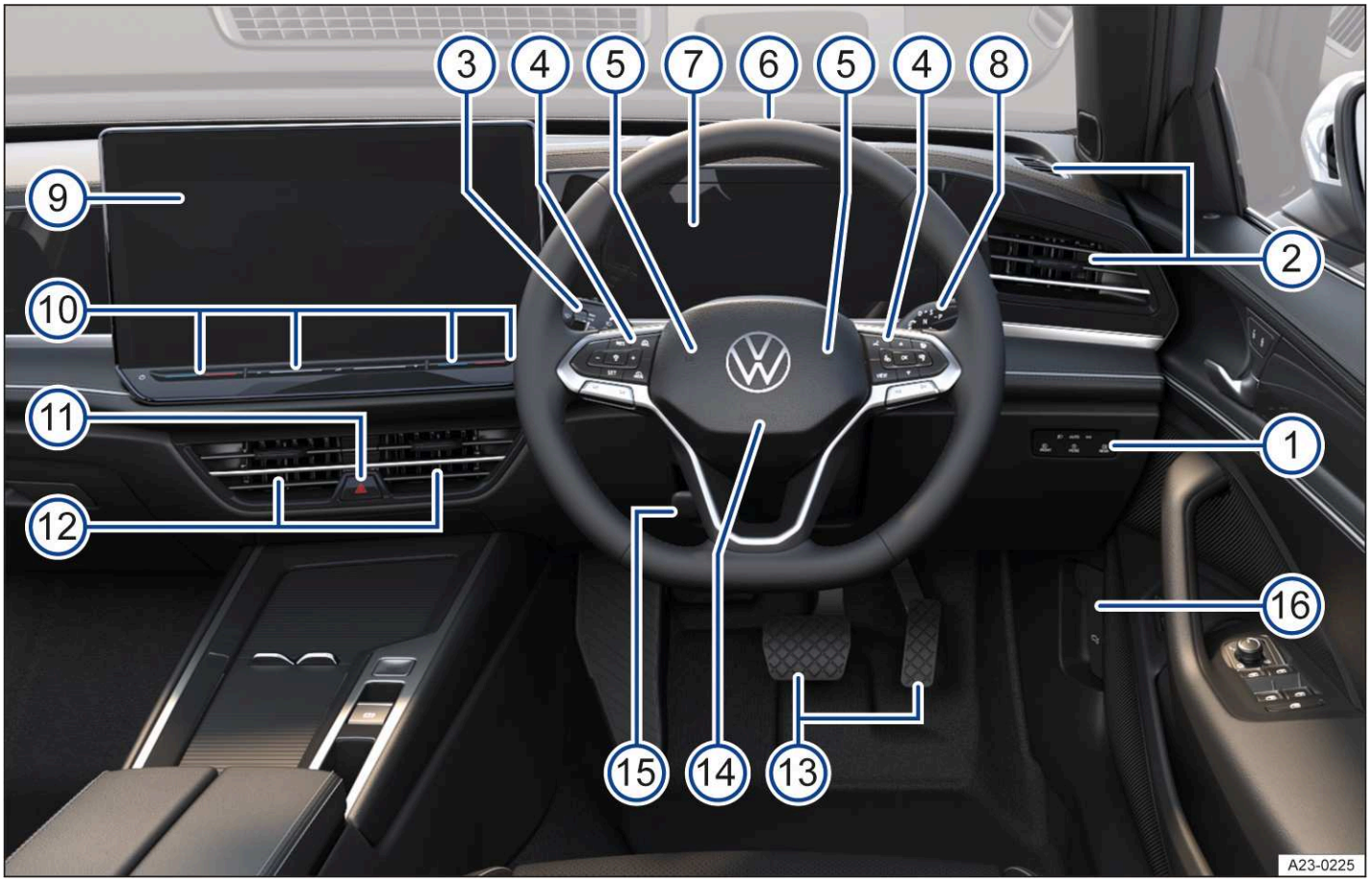


Fig. 2 Overview of the driver side (right-hand drive vehicles).

1. Touch controls for light functions
2. Vents *(→ Air distribution of the air conditioning system)*
3. Turn signal, main beam and wiper lever *(→ Turn signals)*, *(→ Wipers)*
4. Controls on the multifunction steering wheel
   - — for driver assist systems
   - — for audio, navigation
   - — for volume adjustment
   - — for activating voice control (function may not be available depending on vehicle equipment)
   - — for switching between the Digital Cockpit views VIEW *(→ Digital instrument cluster (Pro))*
   - — for steering wheel heating *(→ Steering wheel heating)*
5. Horn
6. Head-up display *(→ Head-up display)*
7. Instrument cluster *(→ Digital instrument cluster (Pro))*
   - — with warning and indicator lamps *(→ Symbols in the instrument cluster)*
8. Driving mode selector
9. Infotainment system
10. Touch controls
    - — for switching the Infotainment system on and off *(→ Infotainment system overview)*
    - — for temperature settings of the air conditioning system
    - — for volume adjustment
11. Touch control for switching the hazard warning lights on and off
12. Vents *(→ Air distribution of the air conditioning system)*
13. Pedals *(→ Pedals)*
14. Location of the driver front airbag
15. Lever for adjusting the steering column position
16. Release lever for bonnet *(→ In the bonnet space)*

Driver door

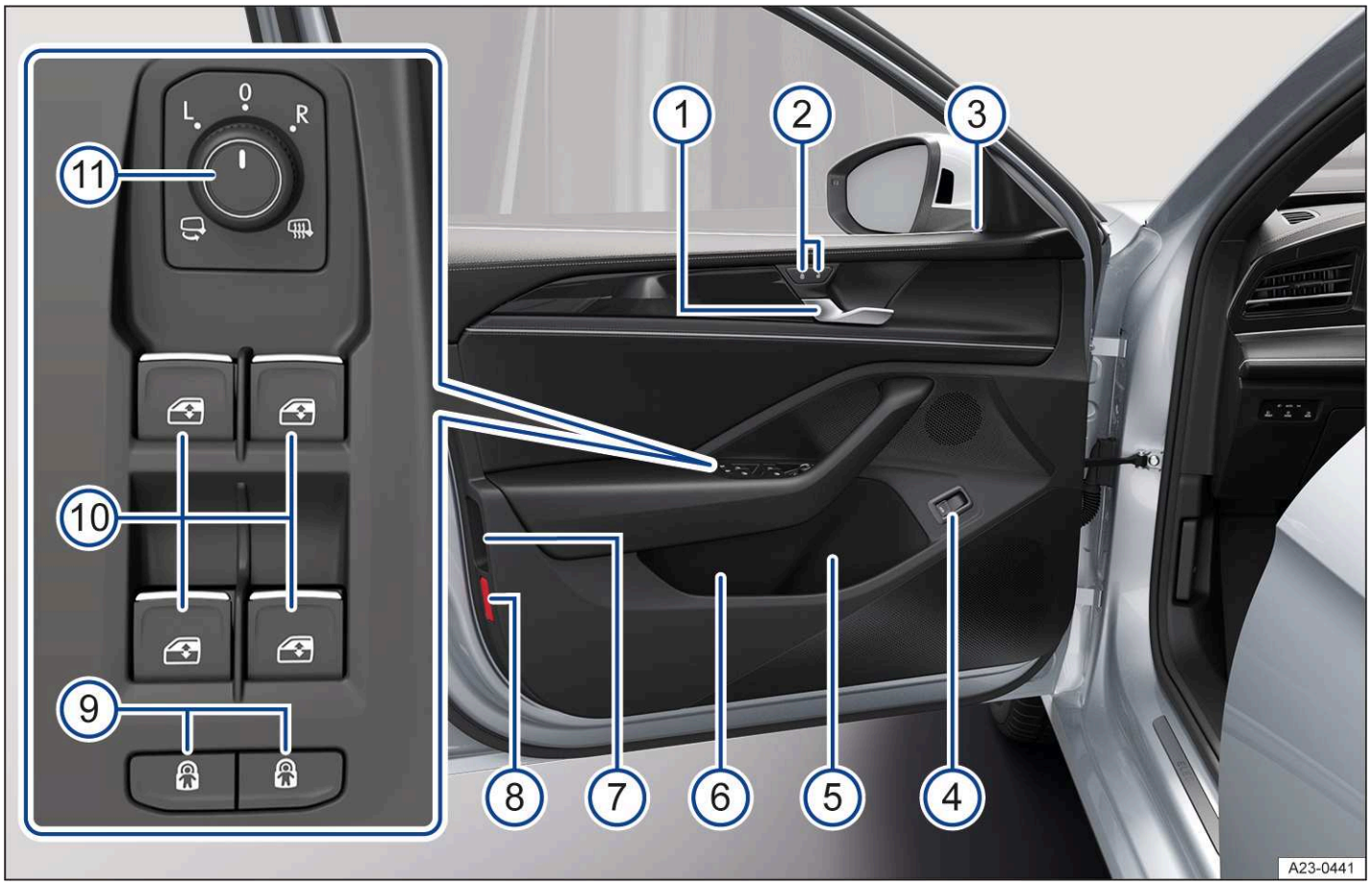


Fig. 1 Driver door (left-hand drive vehicles): controls (mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles).

1. Door release lever
2. Central locking buttons for locking and unlocking the vehicle *(→ Central locking button)*
3. Central locking system indicator lamp *(→ Indicator lamp in the driver door)*
4. Button for opening the boot lid
5. Stowage compartment with bottle holder
6. Stowage compartment for high-visibility waistcoat *(→ Emergency equipment)*
7. Stowage compartment for umbrella
8. Door light or reflector
9. Buttons for the electric childproof lock in the rear doors *(→ Childproof lock, electric)*
10. Buttons for operating the electric windows
11. Rotary knob for exterior mirror settings and functions *(→ Exterior mirrors)*

— With control function for trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist)

Centre console

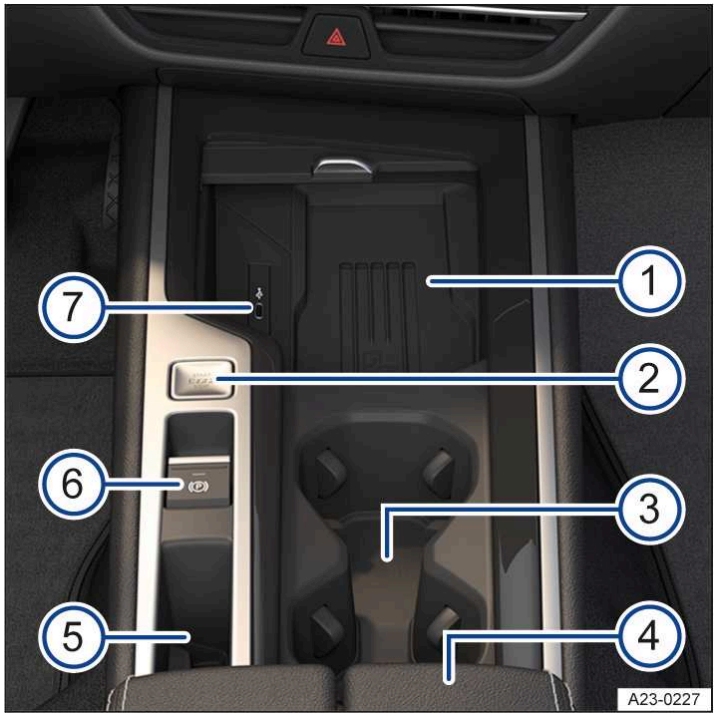


Fig. 1 Overview of the lower section of the centre console.

1. Stowage compartment
   - with phone interface *(→ Mobile phone interface)*
   - with function for wireless charging in accordance with Qi standard *(→ Charging options for mobile devices)*
2. Button for starting and switching off the engine (Press & Drive) *(→ Starter button)*
3. Stowage compartment
   - with drink holder
   - with contact area for the vehicle key for an emergency start *(→ Starting the engine)*
4. Centre armrest with stowage compartment
5. Stowage compartment with stowage facility for the vehicle key *(→ Vehicle key)*
6. Electronic parking brake
7. USB connections for data transfer with charging function for external device batteries , *(→ Charging options for mobile devices)*

Front passenger side

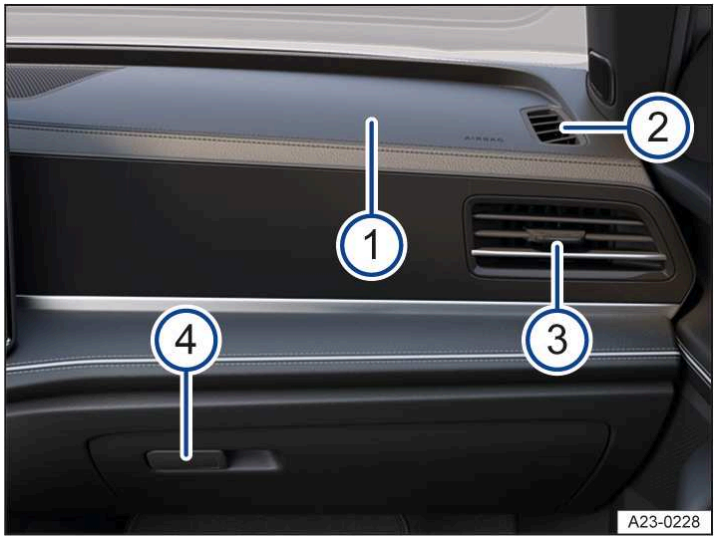


Fig. 1 Front passenger side (left-hand drive vehicles): overview of dash panel (mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles).



Fig. 2 With open front passenger door (left-hand drive vehicles): key-operated switch in the dash panel (mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles).

1. Location of front passenger front airbag in the dash panel
2. Vent *(→ Air distribution of the air conditioning system)*
3. Adjustable vent *(→ Air distribution of the air conditioning system)*
4. Glove box:
   - — with opening lever
   - — with vent for cooling the glove box
   - — with vehicle wallet
   - — with stowage facility for high-visibility waistcoat *(→ Emergency equipment)*
5. Key switch for switching off the front passenger front airbag

Controls and displays in the roof console

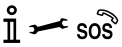


Touch control for interior light .


Touch control for interior light .


Touch control for tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof *(→ Glass roof)*.


Touch control for controlling the sliding headliner *(→ Sun blind in the glass roof)*.



Buttons for information call, breakdown call and emergency call .



Indicator lamp for enabled front passenger front airbag .



Indicator lamp for disabled front passenger front airbag .

Symbols in the instrument cluster

The warning and indicator lamps can light up individually or in combination and indicate warnings, faults or certain functions. Some warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go out after a while.

You can find information on other indicator lamps, e.g. in switches or touch panels, in the respective chapters.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic and can cause accidents, serious injury and even death.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.

Due to ongoing vehicle enhancement, the listed warning and indicator lamps may differ in their appearance in the vehicle after an update.

Symbol	Meaning
	STOP Do not drive on! Central warning lamp → *Priority 1 warning*
	Fastening the seat belt → *Seat belt warning system*
	Electronic parking brake switched on → *Electronic parking brake*
	Holding force of the electronic parking brake is insufficient → *Electronic parking brake*
	Button for the electronic parking brake is faulty. → */ Button for the electronic parking brake is defective or faulty*
	STOP Do not drive on! Electronic parking brake fault → *Fault in electronic parking brake*
	STOP Do not drive on! Brake system fault → *Brake system fault*
	STOP Do not drive on! Low brake fluid level → *Brake fluid level*
	STOP Do not drive on! Electromechanical brake servo failed → *Electromechanical brake servo failure*
	Take over brake pedal after automatic brake intervention → *Automatic braking intervention*
	Take over control of the vehicle and be prepared to brake. → *Introduction to the topic*
	STOP Do not drive on! Engine oil level too low → *Engine oil level very low*
	STOP Do not drive on! Engine oil pressure too low → *Engine oil pressure too low*
	STOP Do not drive on! Coolant system fault → *Coolant*

	STOP Do not drive on! Steering fault → *Steering fault*
	STOP Do not drive on! Fault in engine management system → *Fault in engine management system*
	STOP Do not drive on! Fault in the 48-volt power supply → *48-volt power supply*
	STOP Do not drive on! Fault in the 12-volt power supply → *12-volt power supply*
	Collision warning → *Warning levels and braking intervention*
	Take over steering immediately → *Take over steering immediately*
	Emergency Assist performing control intervention, adaptive lane guidance active → *Driving with Emergency Assist*
	Emergency Assist performing control intervention, adaptive lane guidance passive → *Driving with Emergency Assist*
	STOP Do not drive on! Gearbox overheated → *Gearbox overheated*
	STOP Do not drive on! Gearbox fault → *Gearbox faulty*
	Intervention by proactive occupant protection system → *Introduction to the topic*
	End of traffic jam ahead → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Assist system intervention in the vehicle ahead → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Accident ahead → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Emergency vehicle on active call → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Increased risk for traffic → *Warning levels of the Driver Attention Monitor*
	Acute risk for traffic → *Warning levels of the Driver Attention Monitor*
	High level of fatigue detected → *Warning levels of the Drowsiness Monitor*
	Acute risk for traffic → *Warning levels of the Drowsiness Monitor*
	Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system → *Selective catalytic reduction system fault*
	AdBlue level too low → *AdBlue® level too low*
	Central warning lamp → *Priority 2 warning*
	Airbag system or belt tensioner systems switched off with diagnostic tool → *Indicator lamp*
	Fault in airbag or belt tensioner systems → *Indicator lamp*
	Functional check of the airbag indicator lamp → *Indicator lamp*

	Proactive occupant protection system functions restricted or not available → *Troubleshooting*
	Front passenger front airbag switched off → *Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off*
	Front passenger front airbag switched on → *Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off*
	Emergency call system operation restricted → *Legally required eCall Emergency System restricted*
	Fault in the emergency call system → *Fault in legally required eCall Emergency System*
	Emergency Call Service is restricted → *Emergency Call Service is restricted*
	Emergency Call Service is faulty → *Emergency Call Service is faulty*
	Electronic parking brake fault → *Fault in electronic parking brake*
	Electromechanical brake servo fault → *Electromechanical brake servo fault*
	Check the brake pads → *Brake pad wear indicator*
	Brakes too hot → *and Brakes too hot*
	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) performing control intervention → *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*
	Traction control system (TCS) performing control intervention → *Traction control system (TCS)*
	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) fault → *ESC fault*
	ESC Sport switched on → *ESC Sport*
	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) switched off → *ESC Off*
	Traction control system (TCS) switched off → *TCS*
	Fault in anti-lock brake system (ABS) → *Anti-lock brake system failure or fault*
	Engine oil level too low → *Engine oil level too low*
	Engine oil level too high → *Engine oil level too high*
	Engine oil system fault → *Fault in engine oil system*
	Tank almost empty → *Fuel tank almost empty*
	Semi-automated driving assistance (Travel Assist) not available → *Travel Assist is not available or does not function as expected*
	Water in diesel fuel → *Water in the diesel*
	Vehicle lighting fault → *Exterior drive lighting not working*
	Rear fog light switched on → *Switching the rear fog light on and off*
	Fault in rain and light sensor → *Fault in rain and light sensor*, → *Fault in rain and light sensor*
	Fault in wipers → *Fault in wipers*
	Washer fluid level too low → *Washer fluid level too low*
	Fault in steering → *Steering fault*
	Low tyre pressure → *Low tyre pressure*, → *Tyre pressure warning*
	Tyre pressure monitoring system fault → *Fault in the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*, → *Fault in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System*

	Fault in engine management system → *Fault in engine management system*
	No or restricted sensor visibility of the driver assist systems → *No or restricted sensor visibility in forward direction*
	Automatic Emergency Braking (Front Assist) not available → *Front Assist not available or availability restricted*
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) switched off → *Driving with Lane Assist*
	Automatic Emergency Braking (Front Assist) switched off → *Operating Front Assist*
	Speed limiter not available → *Speed limiter not available*
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) not available → *ACC not available*
	Emergency Assist not available → *Emergency Assist not available*
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) not available → *Lane Assist not available*
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) is performing control intervention → *Driving with Lane Assist*
	Fault in the lane change system (Side Assist) → *Side Assist fault*
	Exit warning system fault → *Fault in exit warning system or Rear Traffic Alert*
	Fault in exhaust system → *Emissions-relevant fault*
	Diesel engine is pre-heating → *Glow plug system*
	Particulate filter clogged with soot → *Particulate filter clogged with soot*
	Engine speed limited → *Engine speed limited*
	Fault in 48-volt power supply → *48-volt power supply*
	48-volt charge level low → *48-volt vehicle battery*
	Fault in 12-volt power supply → *12-volt power supply*
	Gearbox in emergency mode → *Gearbox in emergency mode*
	Fault in gearbox → *Gearbox malfunction*
	Danger of rolling away! P not possible → *Danger of rolling away! not possible*
	Selector lever fault → *Driving mode selector fault*
	Gearbox overheated → *Gearbox overheated*
	Adaptive chassis control fault → *Fault in the adaptive chassis control (DCC Pro)*
	Ball coupling on the towing bracket is not locked → *Ball coupling of the towing bracket is not locked*
	Auxiliary heater → *Switching the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation on and off*, → *Programming the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation*
	Vehicle key not in vehicle → *No valid vehicle key recognised*
	Rear Traffic Alert fault → *Fault in exit warning system or Rear Traffic Alert*
	Drowsiness Monitor not available → *Drowsiness Monitor is not available*
	Driver Attention Monitor not available → *Driver Attention Monitor is not available*

	Advanced Road Sign Display is not available → *Advanced Road Sign Display is not available*
	End of traffic jam ahead → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Accident ahead → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Road works ahead → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Emergency vehicle on active call → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Stationary vehicle or breakdown ahead → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system → *Selective catalytic reduction system fault*
	AdBlue level low → *AdBlue® level low*
	Depress the brake pedal! → *Engine does not start*
	Auto Hold function active → *Auto Hold function*
	Turn signals → *Turn signal indicator lamp*
	Trailer turn signal → *Trailer turn signal indicator lamp*
	Speed limiter switched on, system control active → *Introduction to the topic*
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) ready to perform control interventions → *Driving with Lane Assist*
	Travel Assist active → *Introduction to the topic*
	The ACC is regulating, no vehicle detected in front → *Switching the ACC on and off*
	The ACC is regulating, vehicle in front detected → *Switching the ACC on and off*
	Speed regulation due to speed limit, example → *Driving with the predictive speed limiter*, → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Speed regulation due to a left-hand bend → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Speed regulation due to a right-hand bend → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Speed regulation due to a roundabout → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Speed regulation due to a junction → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Speed regulation due to lifting of the speed limit → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Speed regulation due to approaching the tail end of a traffic jam → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Main beam or headlight flasher → *Switching main beam on and off*
	Main-beam control switched on → *Switching on Light Assist*, → *Switching on Dynamic Light Assist*
	Auto Hold function switched on → *Auto Hold function*
	Speed limiter switched on, system control not active. → *Introduction to the topic*
	The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not performing a control intervention, vehicle detected ahead → *Switching the ACC on and off*
	The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not performing a control intervention, no vehicle detected ahead → *Switching the ACC on and off*
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) not ready to perform control interventions → *Driving with Lane Assist*

	Travel Assist passive, Adaptive Cruise Control active, adaptive lane guidance passive → *Introduction to the topic*
	Semi-automated driving assistance (Travel Assist) deactivated → *Introduction to the topic*
	Outside temperature is below +4 °C (+39 °F) → *Information displays on the digital instrument cluster Pro*
	Start/Stop system active → *Start/stop system*
	Start/Stop system not available → *Start/stop system*
	Service due → *Service interval display*
	Fatigue detected → *Warning levels of the Drowsiness Monitor*
	Driver inattentive → *Warning levels of the Driver Attention Monitor*
	Advanced Road Sign Display partially deactivated → *Advanced Road Sign Display is partially deactivated*
	Main-beam control (Light Assist) active → *Main-beam control (Light Assist)*, → *Advanced main-beam control (Dynamic Light Assist)*
	Take over steering → *Take over steering*
	Automatic Emergency Braking (Front Assist) is starting up → *Front Assist is starting up*
	Distance warning → *Warning levels and braking intervention*
	AdBlue® level too low → *AdBlue range or Range*
	Offroad driving profile → *Characteristics of the driving profiles*
	Eco driving profile → *Characteristics of the driving profiles*
	Comfort driving profile → *Characteristics of the driving profiles*
	Sport driving profile → *Characteristics of the driving profiles*
	Individual driving profile → *Characteristics of the driving profiles*
	Mobile telephone battery charge level → *Information displays on the digital instrument cluster Pro*
	Note about information in the owner's manual → *Note about information in the owner's manual*
	Direction from which the emergency services vehicle is approaching → *Traffic hazard alert*
	Take foot off accelerator → *Eco Assistance*, → *Eco Assistance*
	Motorway exit ahead → *Eco Assistance*
	Downhill gradient ahead → *Eco Assistance*
	Roundabout ahead → *Eco Assistance*, → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Junction ahead → *Eco Assistance*, → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Left-hand bend ahead → *Eco Assistance*, → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Right-hand bend ahead → *Eco Assistance*, → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	End of traffic jam ahead → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Speed limit ahead, example → *Driving with the predictive speed limiter*, → *Eco Assistance*, → *Driving with predictive cruise control*

	Lifting of a speed limit ahead → *Driving with predictive cruise control*
	Vehicle ahead → *Eco Assistance*
	Steering wheel heating → *Steering wheel heating*
	Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system → *Selective catalytic reduction system fault*
	AdBlue level low → *AdBlue® level low*
	Rear seat warning muted → *Parking*
	Mobile telephone connected via Bluetooth® → *Information displays on the digital instrument cluster Pro*
	Area View camera faulty → *Area View camera faulty*

Warning and information messages

The system runs a check on certain components and functions in the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or while the vehicle is in motion. Malfunctions are indicated by red and yellow warning symbols with information messages on the instrument cluster display. An acoustic warning is also given in certain cases. The appearance of the text messages and symbols can vary depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

In addition, a list of current malfunctions can be opened manually. To do so, open the **Vehicle status** or **Vehicle** menu *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Priority 1 warning

The red central warning lamp flashes or lights up, in some cases together with acoustic warnings or additional symbols. **Do not drive on!** Danger. Check the fault. Seek expert assistance immediately.

Priority 2 warning

The yellow central warning lamp flashes or lights up, in some cases together with acoustic warnings or additional symbols. Malfunctions and insufficient service fluids can damage the vehicle and cause it to break down. Check the fault as soon as possible. In this case, go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Note about information in the owner's manual

You will find further information on the warning in the owner's manual.

Information message

Information about various procedures within the vehicle.

If several warnings are present, the symbols will appear for several seconds, one after another. The symbols will continue to appear until the faults are rectified.

If warnings about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear different. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to instrument cluster

The vehicle is equipped with a digital instrument cluster. The instrument cluster displays basic information such as speed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following functions may also be available:

— Various menus, e.g. for driver assist systems.

— Status displays for driver assist systems.

— Display messages.

— Warning and indicator lamps.

— Information on consumption and range.

The content can be individually customised and settings adjusted in the menus.

⚠ WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster and Infotainment system can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.
- Never operate the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust all settings in the instrument cluster and Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ WARNING

The display may be switched off if there is a serious fault in the instrument cluster. The red ⚠ central warning lamp may also light up. Warnings can no longer be displayed. This can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic and can cause accidents, serious injuries and even death.

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place.
- Seek expert assistance.

When you start the engine after the 12-volt vehicle battery has been totally discharged, replaced or after a jump start, you may find that system settings, such as personal convenience settings and programming, have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the 12-volt vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged.

At cold outside temperatures, the display in the instrument cluster may take slightly longer to appear than at warm outside temperatures.

Overview of Digital Cockpit Pro

The Digital Cockpit Pro is a digital instrument cluster in the Pro version with a high-resolution TFT colour display. In addition to the standard round instruments such as the rev counter, users can also choose from various secondary displays to view additional data. The term “digital instrument cluster Pro” is used below to refer to the Digital Cockpit Pro.

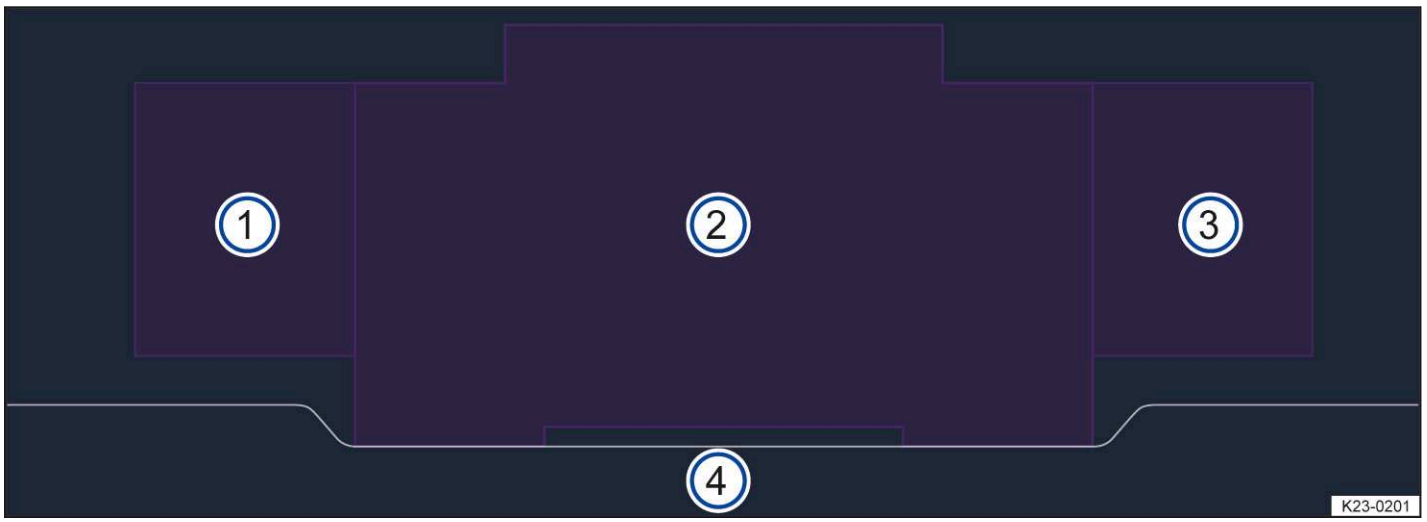


Fig. 1 In the dash panel: digital instrument cluster Pro (illustration).

1. Secondary displays and pop-ups: situation-dependent information (e.g. driver assist system status).
2. Main display area.
3. Secondary displays.
4. Status display, e.g. engaged gear selector position.

Operating the digital instrument cluster Pro



Fig. 1 Right side of the multifunction steering wheel: operating the digital instrument cluster Pro (illustration).

If any priority 1 warnings are displayed, you will be unable to open any menus *(→ Warning and information messages)*. You can confirm and hide some warnings using the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel *→ Fig. 1*.

Adjusting views in the display area

You can adjust the views in the display area manually.

1. Press the VIEW button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Classic

Display of the round instrument view.

Modern

Display of the tile view.

Special

Depending on equipment, alternative views, e.g. sport, can be shown here.

Changing the main display

You can change the focus of the main display manually.

1. Press the arrow buttons △ and ▽ on the multifunction steering wheel *(→ Digital instrument cluster (Pro))*.

Navigation

Navigation map and information for route guidance.

Driver assist systems

Display of active driver assist systems.

Driving data

Display of current driving time, current distance covered, average speed and average and current consumption.

A display with information on the vehicle status, e.g. total mileage, is shown before starting and after switching off the engine.

Selecting secondary displays

1. Select the right or left secondary display area with the ⧉ or ⧉ button.
2. Select the desired secondary display with the arrow buttons △ and ▽.
3. Confirm the selection with the OK button.

Showing or hiding secondary displays

1. Press and hold the VIEW button.

Configuring secondary displays

You can configure the secondary displays according to your preferences in order to select which secondary displays are available in the secondary display area:

1. Select the right or left secondary display area with the ⧉ or ⧉ button.
2. Use the arrow buttons △ and ▽ to navigate to the **Settings** menu and open this menu.
3. Press the OK button to make the changes.

   A tick ☑ indicates that the corresponding secondary display is activated.
4. To return to menu selection, press the ⧉ or ⧉ button.

The secondary displays can be configured or hidden independently of each other.

Navigation map on the digital instrument cluster Pro

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the digital instrument cluster Pro is able to display a detailed navigation map.

The size of the navigation map can be adjusted continuously. To select the preferred map size:

1. To open the **Navigation** display area, press the arrow buttons △ and ▽ on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. To zoom in and out, press the OK button and use the arrow buttons △ or ▽ to adjust the desired map size.
3. Press and hold the VIEW button on the multifunction steering wheel to show and hide the secondary displays.

Information displays on the digital instrument cluster Pro

If warnings about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear different. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster and Infotainment system can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.
- Never operate the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust all settings in the instrument cluster and Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary.

Possible displays in the main display area of the digital instrument cluster Pro

Depending on equipment, various information can be displayed in the main display area *(→ Digital instrument cluster (Pro))*:

— Outside temperature display.

— Road signs detected by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system.

— Driver assist systems .

— Gear-change indicator *(→ Gear-change indicator)*.

— Open doors, bonnet and boot lid.

— Speed warning for winter tyres.

— Infotainment system and navigation information.

— Radiator fan run-on.

— Engine code.

— Personalisation: Welcome.

— Range *(→ Digital fuel gauge)*.

— Service interval display.

— Position of driving mode selector for automatic gearbox.

— Time.

— Warning and information messages.

— Warning and indicator lamps.

Outside temperature display

If the outside temperature falls below approximately +4°C (around +39°F), the temperature display also shows a snowflake symbol ❄. This symbol remains lit until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+43°F) .

In the following situation, the temperature displayed may be higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

— When the vehicle is stationary.

— When the auxiliary heater is being used.

— When travelling at very low speeds.

The measuring range is between -50°C (around -58°F) and +75°C (around +167°F).

WARNING

Roads may be icy at low outside temperatures, also above freezing. There is an increased risk of accidents on icy roads. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive with particular care if the ❄ symbol is displayed on the instrument cluster display.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Never rely only on the outside temperature display.

Gear-change indicator

While the vehicle is in motion, the digital instrument cluster may show which gear should be selected to reduce fuel consumption *(→ Gear-change indicator)*.

Open doors, bonnet and boot lid

The digital instrument cluster Pro indicates if any doors, the bonnet or boot lid are open once the vehicle has been unlocked and while the vehicle is in motion. In some cases, an acoustic warning is also given.

Speed warning for winter tyres

A display in the digital instrument cluster Pro indicates when you have exceeded the set maximum speed.

Speed warning settings can be made in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Radiator fan run-on

This display appears after the engine has been switched off if the radiator fan is in after-run mode.

An after-run time of the radiator fan may be caused by the following:

— Exhaust gas treatment, e.g. during particulate filter regeneration.

— Active brake cooling after driving down hills.

— Dissipation of engine heat after vehicle operation under high loads, e.g. trailer towing.

Engine code

1. Open the Service menu *(→ Service menu)*.
2. Select the **Engine code** menu option.

Position of driving mode selector for automatic gearbox

The selected position and, depending on driving profile, the selected gear are displayed both on the driving mode selector and in the digital instrument cluster Pro. The gear shift pattern is displayed in the instrument cluster Pro upon operation of the brake or driving mode selector *(→ Automatic gearbox)*.

Possible secondary displays in the digital instrument cluster Pro

Depending on equipment, a configuration menu allows additional views to be configured and displayed in the secondary display area of the digital instrument cluster Pro *(→ Digital instrument cluster (Pro))*:

— Operating temperatures.

— Driving data displays, e.g. **Driving time/Distance covered**.

— Compass display.

— Charge pressure.

— Power.

— Torque distribution.

— Navigation information.

— Telephone information.

— Destination information.

Operating temperatures

The following operating temperatures may be displayed, depending on the vehicle equipment:

— Engine oil.

— Coolant.

— Gearbox.

Compass display

If the **Compass** secondary display is activated, the current compass direction in which you are driving is shown as a blue arrow with a representation of the vehicle in combination with a compass.

Torque distribution

The secondary display **Torque distribution** shows the currently present torque individually for each wheel.

Navigation information

When route guidance is active, the **Navigation information** secondary displays shows an arrow to indicate the direction of travel.

The submenu contains the home address and a list of recent destinations. You can start route guidance using the OK button .

Telephone information

If the **Telephone** secondary display is activated and a mobile telephone is connected via Bluetooth®, for example, the Bluetooth symbol is shown on the display of the digital instrument cluster Pro. In addition, the symbol shows the charge level of the mobile phone battery.

A list of recent calls is displayed in the submenu. The list can be used to call the contacts shown.

Destination information

When route guidance is active, the **Destination information** secondary display shows the expected journey time and the distance to the destination in km or miles.

Some settings can be saved in the user accounts of the personalisation function and can therefore change automatically when the user account is changed .

Some notifications in the digital instrument cluster may be overridden by sudden events, e.g. incoming telephone calls.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, some settings and displays may also appear in the Infotainment system.

Rev counter

The start of the red zone on the rev counter indicates the maximum engine speed that may be used in all positions when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly.

You should change up a position, set the driving mode selector to D/S position or lift your foot off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red zone.

NOTICE

The needle on the rev counter should only briefly point into the red area, as engine damage may otherwise be incurred. Heavy loads on the engine, particularly when the engine is cold, can cause engine damage.

- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, strong acceleration and high engine loads.

Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and reduce engine noise.

Digital fuel gauge

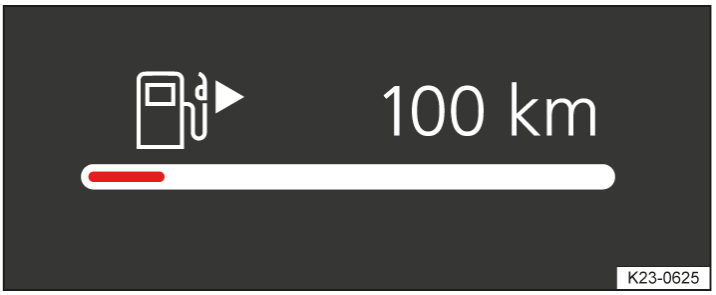


Fig. 1 In the digital instrument cluster: fuel gauge (illustration).

The small arrow next to the petrol pump symbol in the fuel gauge shows you the side of the vehicle on which the tank flap is located.

Troubleshooting

Fuel tank almost empty

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. The reserve volume (red marking) is being consumed.

1. Fill the tank as soon as possible.

When the indicator lamp lights up, the auxiliary heater and the fuel-powered supplementary heater switch off automatically.

Water in the diesel

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Reduce your speed immediately and go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

   Or: if the indicator lamp lights up when starting a journey immediately after the last refuelling operation, **Do not drive on!** Switch off the engine and seek expert assistance immediately.

WARNING

When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular and lead to the engine stuttering or stalling, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines. The steering, all driver assist systems and brake support systems will not function if the engine stalls due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply. This can cause breakdowns in traffic, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that the fuel tank is always sufficiently full.
- Always refuel when the fuel tank is only 1/4 full.

NOTICE

Irregular fuel supply can cause misfiring and allow unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system.

- Never run the fuel tank completely dry.

Digital coolant temperature display

Depending on equipment, the coolant temperature for engine cooling may be displayed in the **Operating temperatures** secondary display.

If the warning lamp lights up red, the coolant temperature is too high for the engine or the coolant level is too low for the engine *(→ Coolant)*.

Introduction to the topic



Fig. 1 In the driver's field of vision: displays in the head-up display (illustration).

The head-up display projects selected information or warning messages from the assist systems or the Infotainment system into the driver's field of vision.

- Some content cannot be hidden, e.g. warning messages.
- If the surroundings become darker, the display brightness is automatically dimmed. The basic brightness level is adjusted together with the instrument lighting *(→ Instrument and switch lighting)*.
- Reflections can occur if the incident sunlight strikes the display at an unfavourable angle.
- Sunglasses with polarising filters can negatively affect the readability of the display.
- The ideal position to read the head-up display depends on the seat position and the height setting of the head-up display.

Operating the head-up display

Switching the head-up display on and off

The head-up display (HUD) can be switched on and off in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system.

Adjusting the height

In order to individually set the viewing angle, adjust the head-up display in the corresponding menu in the instrument cluster or in the vehicle settings of the Infotainment system.

1. Assume the correct sitting position.
2. Adjust the desired position and angle of the head-up display with the function buttons or the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel.

The rotation can also be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system.

Settings in the Infotainment system

You can configure additional settings for the head-up display in the **Vehicle** menu in the Infotainment system.

1. Select the **Interior** view in the **Vehicle** menu.
2. Tap the **Head-up display** function button.

Other settings are available:

— Adjust the head-up display brightness.

— Selection of the display contents for the head-up display, e.g. displays of the driver assist systems or the Infotainment system.

— Alternative colour scheme of the head-up display for poor weather conditions, e.g. snowfall.

Multifunction display

The multifunction display shows driving and fuel consumption data, e.g. driving time, distance travelled. The secondary display area can show the driving data in a variety of ways .

Different driving data can be displayed depending on the vehicle equipment level. The displayed driving data depends on the current driving behaviour, the vehicle condition, e.g. particulate filter regeneration, and the current driving situation, e.g. urban driving. The driving data values are determined as average values over route sections of varying length. This means that the currently displayed value may differ from the actual average value.

Since start recorder

The memory will be deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours.

Since refuelling recorder

Display and storage of the collected driving and consumption values. The memory is deleted when the tank is refilled.

Long-term recorder

The recorder collects the driving values for up to 100 minutes driving time or 9,999.9 km (mi) distance covered. The memory is deleted if one of these maximum values is exceeded. The maximum values vary depending on the instrument cluster version.

Resetting the driving data displays

1. Press the or button.
2. Use the arrow buttons and to select the corresponding driving data display in the configuration menu.

   An arrow after the entry in the configuration menu links to a submenu.
3. Select **Reset data** in the submenu and confirm with the OK button.

Resetting the trip recorder

1. Tap **Vehicle** in the Infotainment system.
2. In the **Vehicle** menu, tap the **Status** function button.
3. Tap **Distance**.
4. Tap the 0.0 function button to reset the value.

AdBlue range or Range

Approximate calculation of the distance in km (mi) that the vehicle can still travel with the current AdBlue® tank level under the current driving conditions. If it is possible to increase the range by refilling, the required refill amount is also displayed.

WARNING

If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious injuries. Operating the instrument cluster and Infotainment system can distract you from the road.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.
- Never operate the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust all settings in the instrument cluster and Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary.

Service menu

Settings can be made in the Service menu depending on the vehicle equipment.

Opening the Service menu

1. In the secondary displays, open the **Driving time/distance covered** information profile.
2. Press and hold the ⟲ or ⟳ button on the multifunction steering wheel for approximately 6 seconds.
3. Navigate in the menu using the arrow buttons △ and ▽.

Displaying the service interval status

1. Open the **Service** menu.

   An overview of the remaining distance and days until the next inspection or oil service is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

Resetting the service interval display

1. Open the **Service** menu.
2. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Resetting the oil service

1. Open the **Reset oil service** menu.
2. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Displaying the engine code

1. Open the **Engine code** menu.

   The engine code is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Setting the time

1. Open the **Time** menu.
2. Set the time with the arrow buttons △ and ▽.

Displaying copyright information

1. Open the **Copyright** menu to access copyright information.

Service interval display

Service events are displayed on the digital instrument cluster and in the Infotainment system. The content of the displays can vary as different versions of the digital instrument cluster and Infotainment system are available.

Service schedules at Volkswagen are divided into two categories, oil change service and inspections. The service interval display provides information on the next service which includes an oil change and on the next scheduled inspection.

In vehicles with fixed oil change service interval, services take place at predefined intervals.

The service intervals are calculated on an individual basis in vehicles with flexible oil change service interval. An oil change service must be carried out only when required by the vehicle. The individual conditions in which the vehicle is used and the driver's personal driving style are taken into account. The service reminder is displayed for the first time 30 days before the calculated oil change service is due. The distance is rounded to the nearest 100 km (mi) and the remaining time is rounded to full days.

Service notification

If an oil change service or inspection is due soon, a service alert will appear the next time the ignition is switched on.

The kilometres (miles) value or time shown corresponds to the maximum distance or time that can still be driven before the next service.

Service event

For a scheduled oil change service or a scheduled inspection, an acoustic warning will sound when the ignition is switched on and the spanner symbol will be displayed for several seconds on the instrument cluster display. One of the following displays will also appear:

— **Please have your vehicle inspected.**

— **Oil change service due!**

— **Oil change service and inspection due!**

Accessing service schedules

You can access the current scheduled service event when the ignition is switched on, the engine is not running, and the vehicle is stationary:

1. Tap **Vehicle**.
2. To show the service information, open the **Status** menu and tap the **Service** function button.

Information on the service schedule can also be accessed via the Service menu *(→ Service menu)*.

Resetting the service interval display

If the service interval display was not reset after the oil change service or inspection, the display can be reset as follows:

The service interval display can only be reset via the Service menu *(→ Service menu)*.

Do not reset the service interval display between service intervals – otherwise incorrect data may be shown.

If the oil change service interval was reset manually, the service interval display then also changes to a fixed service interval in vehicles with flexible oil change service interval.

The service message will go out automatically after a few seconds when the engine is running, or when you press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the 12-volt vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods in vehicles with flexible oil change service interval, the system cannot calculate the time at which the next oil change service is due. The information shown in the service interval display may therefore be incorrect. In this case, observe the maximum permissible service intervals.

Displaying the vehicle identification number

1. Tap **Vehicle** in the Infotainment system.
2. In the **Vehicle** menu, tap **Status**.
3. Tap **Service** to display the vehicle identification number (VIN).

   The vehicle identification number (VIN) is displayed.

Time and date

Setting the time and date in the Infotainment system

1. Tap **Settings** *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.
2. Open the **Time and date** menu option.
3. Select the time source:

   — **Automatic.**

   — **Manual.**

The time and date are displayed only on the Infotainment system.

The automatic time function may not be available or may be restricted depending on the equipment and country. Set the time manually in this case.

Exit menu

In the exit menu, you can adjust settings for some functions before you leave the vehicle. When you switch off the ignition, the Exit menu will be displayed in the Infotainment system.

The displayed options depend on the vehicle equipment and may be available only under certain conditions.

Hiding

The exit menu is automatically hidden when you leave the vehicle.

1. To hide the exit menu manually, tap ▢.

The exit menu can be opened again by switching on the ignition and then switching it off again immediately.

Setting

You can select the entries individually and arrange their order.

1. Tap ⊘.
2. Select the desired entries and re-arrange their order as required.
3. Tap ⊘ again.

Vehicle settings menu

You can switch individual functions and systems on and off and adjust the settings in the vehicle settings of the Infotainment system.

General information on operation

The activated functions are highlighted in colour.

Opening the Vehicle settings menu

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Switch on Infotainment system if necessary.
3. Tap the **Vehicle** menu.
4. Depending on the equipment: tap the Vehicle menu option and choose between **Interior** or **Exterior**.

   Or: select the ⚙ menu option.
5. Open the desired item from the submenus and make the setting as required.
6. To return to the home screen, tap the home button ▢.

Systems settings and vehicle information display

Depending on the version, information can be displayed or settings adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu:

— Depending on the equipment: 3D vehicle view (**Interior** or **Exterior**).

— Depending on equipment: performance monitor .

— Depending on equipment: lap timer .

— Driving data.

— Vehicle Status.

When you start the engine after the 12-volt vehicle battery has been totally discharged, replaced or after a jump start, you may find that system settings, e.g. personal convenience features, have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the 12-volt vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged.

⚠ WARNING

Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.
- Adjust all settings in the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary.

Introduction to the topic



Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: Drowsiness Monitor symbol.

The Drowsiness Monitor informs the driver if their driving shows signs of fatigue.

The Drowsiness Monitor determines the driver's driving behaviour while driving and uses this information to evaluate the tiredness of the driver. If the system detects that the driver is tired, it provides a visual indication of this on the instrument cluster display by means of a warning or indicator lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and also issues an acoustic warning → *Warning levels of the Drowsiness Monitor*. The text message is shown in the instrument cluster display for around 6 seconds.

Function conditions

The function is only activated at a speed above around 65 km/h (around 40 mph) and is then deactivated again at a speed below 60 km/h (around 37 mph).

⚠ WARNING

The Drowsiness Monitor is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Drowsiness Monitor therefore may not detect that the driver is tired in all situations and may not warn or may warn with a delay or in an undesired way. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is responsible at all times for their fitness to drive.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Drowsiness Monitor)*.
- Never drive a vehicle when you are tired.
- During long trips, take regular and sufficient breaks.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display and respond according to the requests *(→ Drowsiness Monitor)*.

System limits of the Drowsiness Monitor

The Drowsiness Monitor has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the function of the Drowsiness Monitor, or prevent it from working altogether:

— Speeds below around 60 km/h (around 37 mph).

— Speeds above around 130 km/h (around 80 mph).

— Twisting roads.

— Poor roads.

— Adverse weather conditions.

— Road works.

— Sporty driving style.

— Towing a heavy or long trailer *(→ Trailer towing)*.

— The driver is heavily distracted.

The Drowsiness Monitor has been developed for use only while driving on motorways and good main roads.

Microsleep

No urgent warning is issued for microsleep.

Resetting the Drowsiness Monitor

The Drowsiness Monitor is reset in the following situations:

— The ignition is switched off.

— The driver seat belt is unfastened and the driver door is open.

— The vehicle has been stationary for longer than around 30 minutes.

Driving with Drowsiness Monitor

Switching on and off

Depending on the country, the Drowsiness Monitor is always switched on when the engine is started.

If required, you can switch off the Drowsiness Monitor manually in the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Switch the Drowsiness Monitor on or off in the corresponding submenu.

Adjusting the sensitivity

You can adjust the sensitivity of the Drowsiness Monitor manually and therefore influence how quickly the system reacts to your driving behaviour.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open **Assist systems**.
2. Select the **Drowsiness Monitor** menu.
3. Select sensitivity in the **Sensitivity** submenu.

Hiding messages via the multifunction steering wheel

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Warning levels of the Drowsiness Monitor

If the system detects that the driver is tired, it provides a visual indication of this on the instrument cluster display by means of a warning or indicator lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and an acoustic warning. A warning is issued in three levels.

Drowsiness Monitor warning – Level 1

The system has detected that the driver is starting to become tired.

An acoustic warning sounds. A white indicator lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break.

Drowsiness Monitor warning – Level 2

The system has detected that the driver is becoming increasingly tired.

An acoustic warning sounds. A red warning lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break soon.

Drowsiness Monitor warning – Level 3

Acute risk detected.

An acoustic warning sounds. A red warning lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Acute risk to traffic. Stop your journey as quickly as possible and drive as a matter of urgency to the nearest place where it is possible to take a break.

Time-dependent information

The Drowsiness Monitor detects a journey time of 4.5 hours without a break and without recognised tiredness on the part of the driver.

A white indicator lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break.

Troubleshooting

Drowsiness Monitor is not available

An acoustic warning sounds. A yellow indicator lamp appears in combination with the yellow central warning lamp. A text message is also displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the **Vehicle status** menu.

— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine. Check the settings for the Drowsiness Monitor in the Infotainment system *(→ Drowsiness Monitor)*.

— The system limits of the Drowsiness Monitor are not met *(→ Drowsiness Monitor)*.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

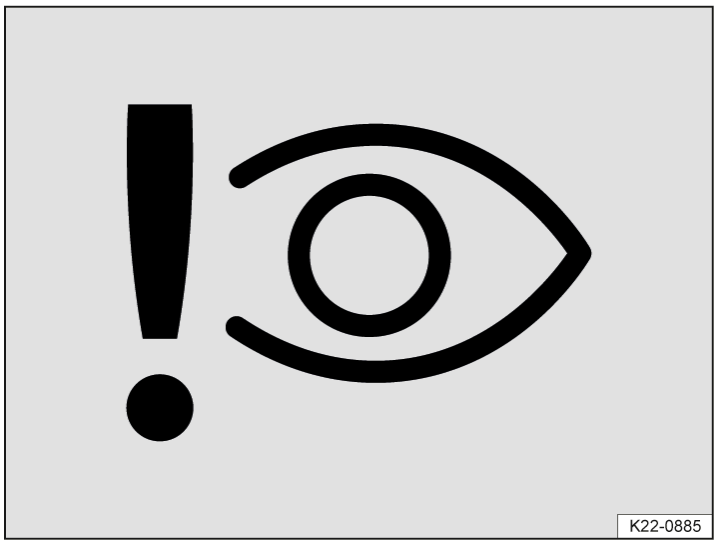


Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: Driver Attention Monitor symbol.

The Driver Attention Monitor informs the driver if their driving behaviour indicates a lack of attention on the basis of the vehicle-related operating inputs.

The Driver Attention Monitor evaluates the driver's vehicle-related operating inputs in order to establish whether the driver is distracted. If the system detects that the driver is distracted, it indicates this on the instrument cluster display by means of a warning or indicator lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and, depending on the settings, also issues an acoustic warning *→ Warning levels of the Driver Attention Monitor*. The text message on the instrument cluster display is shown for around 4 to 6 seconds.

Function conditions

The driving behaviour is evaluated only when the speed is above around 20 km/h (around 12 mph).

⚠ WARNING

The Driver Attention Monitor is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Driver Attention Monitor therefore may not be able to detect whether the driver is paying attention in all situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is responsible at all times for their fitness to drive.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Driver Attention Monitor)*.
- Do not allow yourself to be distracted when driving.
- Adjust personal vehicle settings before starting your journey.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display and respond according to the requests *(→ Driver Attention Monitor)*.

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

System limits of the Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the function of the Driver Attention Monitor, or prevent it from working altogether:

— Speeds below around 10 km/h (around 6 mph).

— Heavy distraction of the driver due to external influences, such as traffic.

— Significant driver distraction resulting from operation of devices not part of the vehicle, e.g. mobile devices.

Driving with the Driver Attention Monitor

Switching on and off

You can switch the Driver Attention Monitor on and off manually.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Switch the Driver Attention Monitor on or off in the corresponding submenu.

If the function was switched off manually during the last journey, this setting is also maintained when the vehicle is started again.

Activating and deactivating the acoustic warning

Depending on equipment, you can activate and deactivate the acoustic warning manually.

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Attention Monitor**.
3. Activate or deactivate the acoustic warning in the corresponding option.

Adjusting the sensitivity

Depending on equipment, you can adjust the sensitivity of the Driver Attention Monitor manually and therefore influence how quickly the system reacts to your driving behaviour.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Attention Monitor**.
3. Select sensitivity in the **Sensitivity** submenu.

Hiding messages via the multifunction steering wheel

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Warning levels of the Driver Attention Monitor

If the system detects that the driver is distracted, it provides a visual indication of this on the instrument cluster display by means of a warning or indicator lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and, depending on setting, by means of an acoustic warning. The warning has up to three stages.

Driver Attention Monitor warning – Stage 1

Distraction detected.

Depending on the settings, an acoustic warning may be issued. A white indicator lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Stop operating inputs and pay attention to the traffic.

Driver Attention Monitor warning – Stage 2

Risk detected.

Depending on the settings, an acoustic warning may be issued. A red warning lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Stop operating inputs and pay attention to the traffic.

Driver Attention Monitor warning – Stage 3

Acute risk detected.

Depending on the settings, an acoustic warning may be issued. A red warning lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Acute risk to traffic. Stop operating inputs immediately and pay attention to the traffic.

Troubleshooting

Driver Attention Monitor is not available

An acoustic warning sounds. A yellow indicator lamp appears in combination with the yellow central warning lamp. A text message is also displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the **Vehicle status** menu.

— Check the causes and remedies described in the information on the Driver Attention Monitor.

— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine. Check the settings for the Driver Attention Monitor in the Infotainment system.

— The system limits of the Driver Attention Monitor are not met *(→ Driver Attention Monitor)*.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

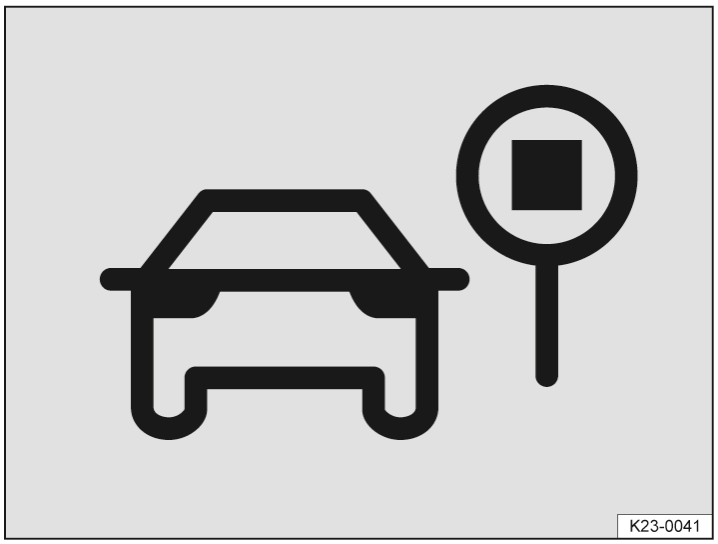


Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: Advanced Road Sign Display symbol.

The Advanced Road Sign Display system detects speed limits, overtaking restrictions and selected danger signs and informs the driver if the maximum permitted speed is exceeded.

The Advanced Road Sign Display system uses a camera in the base of the interior mirror to detect standard road signs and informs the driver of any detected speed limits, overtaking restrictions and selected danger signs. Within the system limits, the Dynamic Road Sign Display of the Advanced Road Sign Display system also displays sub-plates, e.g. to indicate restrictions that apply only at certain times. In some cases, the system can also display the current speed limits on non-signposted routes.

If the maximum permitted speed is exceeded, the speed warning function of the Advanced Road Sign Display system shows this visually on the instrument cluster display by a flashing speed limit detected by the system and, depending on setting, also issues an acoustic warning *(→ Advanced Road Sign Display)*.

Dynamic Road Sign Display

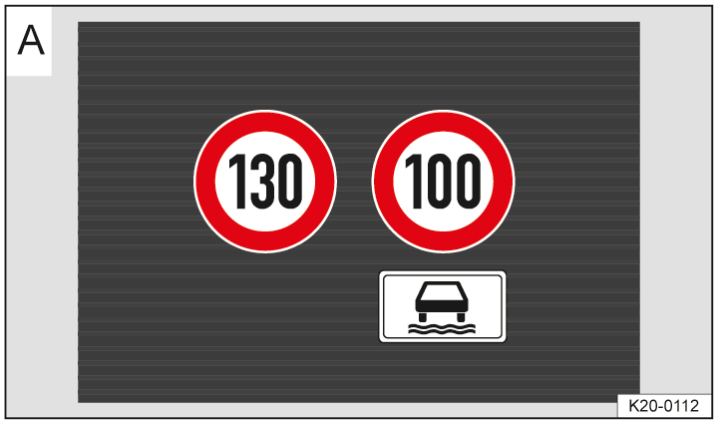


Fig. 2 On the instrument cluster display: displays of Dynamic Road Sign Display with detected sub-plate (illustration).

After validation and evaluation of the information from the camera, the Infotainment system and the current vehicle data, the Dynamic Road Sign Display shows up to two valid road signs and one detected sub-plate, e.g. when wet → *Fig. 2*:

1st position:

The road sign that currently applies to the driver is shown on the left-hand side of the display, e.g. a speed limit of **130 km/h** (**80 mph**).

2nd position:

A further road sign can be displayed in the second position, for example a danger sign.

Sub-plate:

A detected sub-plate, e.g. with time restrictions, is displayed under the valid road sign. Depending on equipment, the valid road sign is supplemented with the generic sub-plate in the head-up display.

The display of danger signs is not available in all countries and the system may not be able to recognise all danger signs.

In addition to speed limits and overtaking restrictions, Dynamic Road Sign Display also detects the road sign which indicates that all restrictions have been lifted on motorways and main roads in Germany. In all other countries in which the system is operated, the current speed limit is displayed instead.

The road signs detected by Dynamic Road Sign Display are displayed on the instrument cluster display. Road signs may also be displayed in the Infotainment system, depending on the system installed in the vehicle.

With some equipment levels, a display is also shown on the head-up display

⚠ WARNING

The Advanced Road Sign Display system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Advanced Road Sign Display system therefore cannot recognise all road signs and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. Driving recommendations and traffic symbols displayed by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Observe the system limits *(→ Advanced Road Sign Display)*.
- Keep the navigation data up-to-date *(→ Navigation)*.
- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Road signs on the road and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display and respond according to the requests *(→ Advanced Road Sign Display)*.

System limits of the Advanced Road Sign Display

The Advanced Road Sign Display has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the function of the Advanced Road Sign Display system, or prevent it from working altogether:

— High ambient temperatures or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight.

— Poor visibility, e.g. in snowy conditions.

— Glare, e.g. from oncoming traffic or sunlight.

— High speeds.

— Dirty camera.

— Road signs located outside of the camera's field of view.

— Partially or fully hidden road signs, e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles.

— Non-standard road signs.

— Damaged or bent road signs.

— Variable road signs on gantries (changeable road sign display using LEDs or other light sources).

— Out-of-date map material in the Infotainment system.

— Vehicles with road sign stickers, e.g. speed restrictions on trucks.

The system partly uses the camera behind the windscreen. You can find further information in the section on sensors .

The system also uses navigation data even if the vehicle does not have a navigation system. Keep the navigation data up-to-date *(→ Navigation)*. If you have any questions, please contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Driving with speed warning

Function conditions

The speed warning function warns at speeds above around 20 km/h (around 12 mph).

Switching on and off

Depending on the country, the speed warning is always switched on when the engine is started. If required, you can switch off the speed warning manually in the Infotainment system.

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Switch the speed warning on or off in the corresponding submenu.

Activating and deactivating the acoustic warning

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Speed warning**.
3. Activate or deactivate the acoustic warning in the corresponding option.

The acoustic warning is always activated when the engine is started.

Adjusting the warning threshold

You can adjust the warning thresholds of the speed warning function manually.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Speed warning**.
3. To select the level for the warning thresholds, tap ﹀ in the **Warning threshold** menu option.

When the engine is started, the warning thresholds of the speed warning are always reset to the default value.

Activating and deactivating the change tone

The change tone informs the driver acoustically about a change in the speed limits. You can switch off the change tone manually if required.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Speed warning**.
3. Activate or deactivate the change tone in the corresponding option.

Hiding fault messages via the multifunction steering wheel

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Trailer mode

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle, the display of road signs that may apply to the vehicle when towing a trailer, e.g. applicable speed limits and no-overtaking signs, can be activated or deactivated in

the vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system.

In trailer mode, display of the valid speed limits can be adjusted to the type of trailer and to country-specific legal requirements.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Trailer detection**.
3. To adapt the warning threshold specifically for trailer mode, tap ⌄ in the **Warning when exceeding** menu option.

Warning levels of the speed warning function

If the system detects that the maximum permitted speed has been exceeded, it shows this visually on the instrument cluster display by a flashing speed limit detected by the system and, depending on setting, also issues an acoustic warning. A warning is issued in two warning levels.



Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: detected violation of maximum permitted speed (illustration).

Speed warning – Level 1

Violation of maximum permitted speed detected.

The speed limit detected by the system flashes continuously in the instrument cluster and, depending on equipment, in the head-up display → *Fig. 1*.

Speed warning – Level 2

Progressive violation of maximum permitted speed detected.

An acoustic warning sounds. The speed limit detected by the system flashes continuously in the instrument cluster and, depending on equipment, in the head-up display → *Fig. 1*.

The second warning level is triggered if the speed continues to increase above the speed limit.

The second warning level is cancelled again when the driver actively slows down.

Troubleshooting

Advanced Road Sign Display is outside the operating region

An acoustic warning sounds. A text message is displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the **Vehicle status** menu.

— No data available for this region. The Advanced Road Sign Display system is not supported in the country in which you are currently travelling.

Advanced Road Sign Display is not available

An acoustic warning sounds. A yellow indicator lamp is displayed on the instrument cluster display in combination with the yellow central warning lamp. A text message is also displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the **Vehicle status** menu.

— The windscreen is dirty in the area of the camera or the camera view is impaired due to the weather conditions. Clean the windscreen *(→ Vehicle care)*.

— The view of the camera is impaired by add-on parts or stickers. Keep the area around the camera window free *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The camera has been displaced or damaged, e.g. due to damage to the windscreen. Check whether damage is visible *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The camera was deactivated automatically due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. When the camera is available again, the Advanced Road Sign Display system will also be available once more. Switch off and restart the engine.

— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Advanced Road Sign Display is partially deactivated

A white indicator lamp is shown in the instrument cluster display for 10 seconds.

The default settings for the speed warning have been changed:

— Check whether the speed warning is deactivated *(→ Advanced Road Sign Display)*.

— Check whether the acoustic warning is activated *(→ Advanced Road Sign Display)*.

— Check whether the default warning threshold has been changed *(→ Advanced Road Sign Display)*.

Introduction to the topic

Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of five seats: two at the front and three at the rear.

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt.

Assuming an incorrect sitting position considerably impairs the level of protection provided by a seat belt. This could lead to severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all occupants transported in the vehicle, especially children.

⚠ WARNING

Assuming an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, in the event of a collision or accident, or if the airbags are triggered.

- All vehicle occupants must assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to the fastening of seat belts.
- The number of vehicle occupants must never exceed the number of seats with seat belts in the vehicle.
- Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell during the journey. Never place your feet on the seat or dash panel, for example. Never hold your feet out of the window. If you sit like this, the airbag and seat belt cannot provide optimal protection and could actually increase the risk of injury during an accident.

Correct sitting position

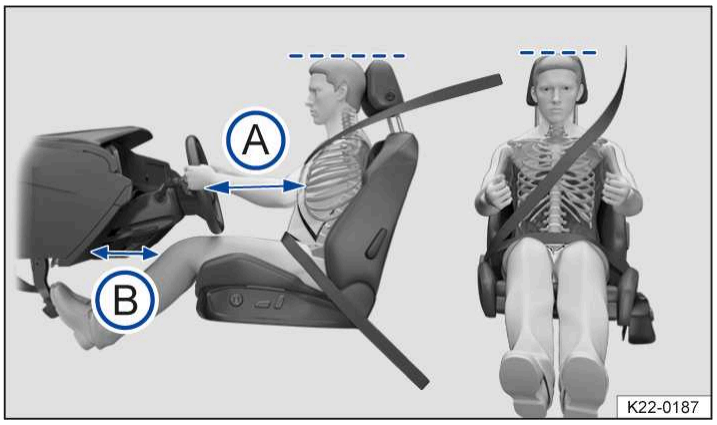


Fig. 1 Correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel, correct seat belt routing and correct head restraint adjustment (illustration).

The following describes the correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers.

The seat belts and airbags can only provide a maximum level of protection if a correct sitting position is assumed. If any vehicle occupants cannot assume a correct sitting position due to their physical build, they should contact a suitably qualified workshop to find out about possible special modifications. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Volkswagen recommends the following seating position for your own safety, for the most fatigue-free driving possible and to reduce the level of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident:

The following applies to all vehicle occupants:

— Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible at all times → *Fig. 1*.

— For small people, push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head restraint.

— For tall people, push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

— Always keep both feet in the footwell.

— Adjust and fasten seat belts properly .

Additional points for the driver:

— Sit as far back as possible on the seat.

— Adjust the driver seat by moving it forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly bent and so that the distance from the dash panel to your knees is at least 10 cm (around 4 inches) → *Fig. 1* (B).

— Adjust the height so that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.

— Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.

— The thighs should rest loosely on the seat. The back of the knees should protrude a few centimetres beyond the front edge of the seat. Use further equipment-dependent adjustment options for the seats *(→ Front seat, mechanical)* *(→ Front seat, electric)*.

— Adjust the seat so that the distance between the steering wheel and your breastbone is at least 25 cm (around 10 inches) → *Fig. 1* (A) and the circumference of the steering wheel can be held at the sides with both hands and your arms slightly bent.

— The steering wheel must always point towards the breastbone and not towards the face.

— In vehicles with head restraints that are adjustable longitudinally, position the head restraint as close as possible to the back of your head.

Additional points for the front passenger:

— In vehicles with head restraints that are adjustable longitudinally, position the head restraint as close as possible to the back of your head.

— Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.

— Push the front passenger seat into the rear half of the adjustment range so that the airbag can provide maximum protection if it is deployed.

Introduction to the topic

If worn properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting position during an accident or braking manoeuvre, providing maximum protection.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip.
- Before every journey and while the vehicle is in motion, secure all children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and height. They must also wear correctly fastened seat belts .
- Insert the latch plate only into the belt buckle of the corresponding seat and make sure that the latch plate engages securely. Using a buckle that does not belong to the seat that you are occupying reduces the level of protection and can lead to severe injuries.
- Never unfasten the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never allow more than one person to share the same seat belt.
- Never transport children or babies on your lap and never secure them using the same seat belt as another person.
- Never travel wearing loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket). This could prevent the seat belts from fitting and functioning properly.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged seat belts increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries. If the belt webbing or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged, the seat belt may tear during an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.

- Never damage the belt by trapping it in the door or in the seat mechanism.
- If the belt webbing, belt connections, belt retractor or seat belt buckle become damaged, the seat belt or belt attachment element in question must be replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. The suitably qualified workshop must use correct spare parts that are compatible with the vehicle, equipment level and model year. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts or belt attachment elements yourself. All repairs to the seat belts, belt retractors and buckles must be carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. The correspondingly qualified workshop must replace the seat belt only with a seat belt that is approved for the seat in question. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Have seat belts that have been subjected to stress and stretched during an accident replaced by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. Also check the anchorages of the seat belts.

⚠ WARNING

Using seat belts incorrectly increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Regularly check to ensure that the seat belt and its related parts are in perfect condition.
- Always keep the seat belts clean.
- Avoid allowing foreign bodies or liquids to enter the seat belt buckle slots and belt buckles. This could prevent the seat belt buckle slots, belt buckles and seat belts from working properly.
- Never trap the seat belt. Never damage the belt or allow it to rub against sharp edges.

Seat belt warning system

Warning lamp for the seat belt warning system on the instrument cluster display.

Seat belt warning for the front seats

If the driver or front passenger seat is occupied by an adult, an acoustic warning will be emitted if the seat belts are not fastened at the start of a journey and the vehicle reaches a speed of more than approximately 25 km/h (approximately 15 mph) or if the seat belts are unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. The red warning lamp also flashes on the instrument cluster display.

The red warning lamp does not go out until all occupants have fastened their seat belts when the ignition is switched on.

Seat belt warning for the rear seats (depending on country and equipment)

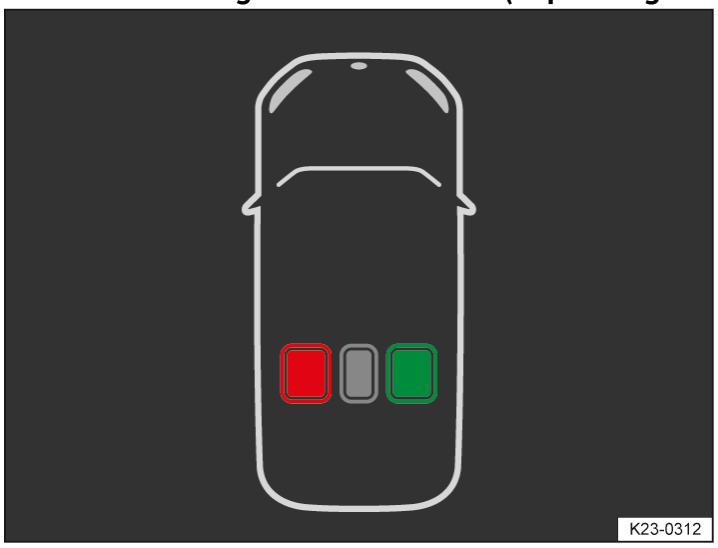


Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: seat belt warning system (illustration).

The green symbol indicates that the passenger on this seat has fastened their seat belt.

The red symbol indicates that the passenger on this seat has not fastened their seat belt.

The grey symbol indicates that this seat is not occupied.

After the ignition has been switched on, the seat belt warning system for the rear seats → *Fig. 1* on the instrument cluster display shows the driver whether the adult rear seat passengers have fastened their seat belts.

If a seat belt for one of the rear seats is unfastened while the vehicle is in motion, the symbol for this seat lights up red. The red warning lamp also flashes on the instrument cluster display. If the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 25 km/h (approximately 15 mph), an acoustic signal will also be given.

WARNING

The seat belt warning system is designed to detect adult persons. If a seat is occupied by lighter persons, in particular children, the detection will not be reliable. The seat belt warning system also does not respond or responds only in a limited way if child seats and seat pads are used. As a result, the system may not be able to detect when lighter persons and children have not fastened their seat belts and this can lead to them suffering serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Always ensure that all vehicle occupants, especially children, have fastened their seat belts properly.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

Fastening the seat belt



Fig. 1 Inserting the seat belt latch plate into the buckle (illustration).

1. Adopt correct sitting position *(→ Sitting position)*.
2. Take hold of the belt and pull it evenly across your chest and pelvis. Do not twist the belt when doing this *(→ Seat belt routing)*.
3. Insert the latch plate securely into the buckle belonging to the occupied seat → *Fig. 1*.
4. Pull on the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely locked in the buckle.

Unfastening the seat belts

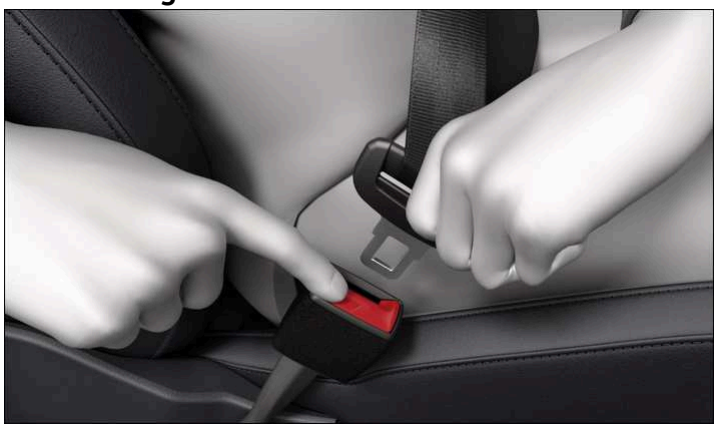


Fig. 2 Removing the latch plate from the buckle (illustration).

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary *(→ Seat belt routing)*.

1. Press the red button in the buckle → *Fig. 2*.

   The latch plate is released and springs out.
2. Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.

Twisted seat belt

If it is difficult to remove the seat belt from the belt guide, the seat belt may have become twisted if it was returned too quickly into the side trim:

1. Take hold of the latch plate then slowly and carefully pull out the seat belt.
2. Untwist the seat belt and guide it back slowly by hand.
3. Fasten the seat belt even if you are unable to undo the twist.

   However, the twist should not be in part of the seat belt that comes into direct contact with the body.

4. Go immediately to a suitably qualified workshop in order to have the twist undone. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Seat belt routing

Seat belts only provide an optimum level of protection during an accident when they are routed correctly. Correct seat belt routing reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Correct seat belt routing also holds the vehicle occupants in position so that an inflating airbag can offer the maximum level of protection. Therefore you must always fasten your seat belt and ensure that the seat belt routing is correct *→ Fig. 1*.

Correct seat belt routing

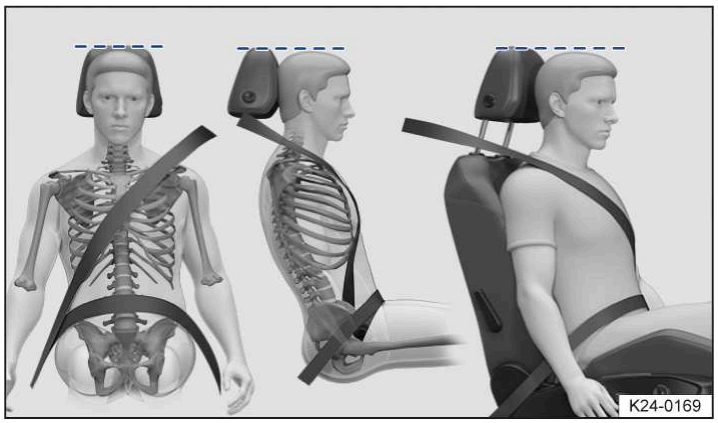


Fig. 1 Correct seat belt routing and head restraint adjustment (illustration).

— The shoulder belt must always lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck, over or under the arm or behind the back.

— The lap belt must always lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.

— The seat belt must always lie flat and snugly on the body. Tighten the belt if necessary.

Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy



Fig. 2 Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy (illustration).

For pregnant women, the seat belt must be positioned evenly over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvis. It must lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the lower body – this applies for the entire course of the pregnancy *→ Fig. 2*.

Correct seat belt routing according to height

The following equipment can be used to adjust the seat belt routing:

— Seat belt height adjuster for the front seats *(→ Seat belt height adjuster)*.

— Height-adjustable front seats *(→ Sitting position)*.

WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause serious injuries in the event of an accident or a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre.

- Make sure that the seat belt routing is correct.
- Adjust the backrest to an upright position and fasten the seat belt correctly corresponding to your body size in order to achieve the optimum protective effect of the seat belts.
- Route the shoulder section of the seat belt over the centre of the shoulder and never under the arm or across the neck.
- Route the seat belt so that it lies flat and snugly on the upper body and pelvis. Pull the belt a little again to tighten it if necessary.
- Make sure that the lap part of the belt is routed in front of your pelvis and never over your stomach.
- If you are pregnant, make sure that the seat belt is routed evenly over your chest and as low as possible over your pelvis and so that it lies flat during the entire course of the pregnancy. In this way, no pressure is exerted on the lower abdomen.
- Do not twist the belt when fastening or wearing the seat belt.
- Never hold the seat belt away from your body with your hand.
- Do not route the belt over hard or fragile objects, such as glasses, pens or keys.
- Never change the belt routing by means of belt clips, retaining eyes or similar.

If a person's physical build prevents them from routing the seat belt properly, contact a suitably qualified workshop to find out about any special modifications so that the seat belts and airbags can provide the optimum level of protection. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Seat belt height adjuster



Fig. 1 Next to the front seats: seat belt height adjuster.

The seat belt height adjuster can be used to adjust the position of the seat belt on the shoulder so that the seat belt can be fastened properly:

1. Press the button of the seat belt height adjuster together in the direction of the arrows and hold *→ Fig. 1*.
2. Push the seat belt height adjuster up or down so that the seat belt is routed over the middle of the shoulder *(→ Seat belt routing)*.
3. Release the button of the seat belt height adjuster.
4. Pull sharply on the seat belt to check that the seat belt height adjuster is engaged securely.

WARNING

If you adjust the belt height while the vehicle is in motion, this can cause serious and fatal injuries.

- Never adjust the seat belt height when the vehicle is in motion.

Belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter

The seat belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle safety concept . The vehicle safety concept has the following important functions:

Belt retractor

The seat belts on the front seats and all rear seats are equipped with a belt retractor on the shoulder section of the belt. Full freedom of movement is ensured when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly or when the vehicle is travelling at normal speeds. However, if the belt is pulled out quickly or during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the belt retractor blocks the seat belt.

Fastened seat belts on the front seats may be tensioned automatically by the proactive occupant protection system in critical situations, for example during an emergency stop or in the event of oversteering or understeering. Both seat belts are slackened again if the accident does not happen, or when the critical situation has passed. The proactive occupant protection system is ready to be triggered again .

Belt tensioner

The seat belts for the passengers in the front seats and the outer rear seats in the second row of seats are equipped with belt tensioners.

The belt tensioners are activated by sensors and tighten the seat belts during severe frontal, side and rear collisions and also possibly vehicle rollovers. Any slack in the seat belt is tightened. This can reduce the forward movement of the vehicle occupants and their movement in the direction of the impact. The belt tensioner works together with the airbag system. If the vehicle rolls over, the belt tensioner will only be activated if the curtain airbags are triggered.

A fine dust may be produced when the airbags are triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle.

WARNING

The protective function of the belt tensioners permits only one activation of the belt tensioners. The system must be replaced if the belt tensioners have been triggered.

- Belt tensioners that have been triggered, and any affected system parts, must be replaced immediately with new parts that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Suitably qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Never install recycled belt tensioner components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never modify any components of the belt tensioners.

Belt pre-tensioning

At the beginning of every journey, the belt is automatically pre-tensioned and the belt slack minimised when the driver or front passenger seat belt is fastened, depending on the driving time and vehicle speed .

Reversible belt tensioning (proactive occupant protection system)

Reversible belt tensioning may trigger in certain driving situations . Examples include:

— Strong braking.

— Oversteer or understeer.

— Minor collisions.

The reversible belt tensioners may remain continuously tensioned after certain driving situations. In this case, the seat belts must be manually unfastened when the vehicle is stationary and then fastened correctly again in order to release the belt tensioning.

Belt tension limiter

The seat belts for the front seat vehicle occupants and on the outer rear seats are equipped with belt tension limiters.

The belt tension limiter reduces the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the body during an accident.

Observe all safety requirements when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. These requirements are known to the suitably qualified workshops *(→ Belt tensioner)*. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Service and disposal of belt tensioners

Seat belts may become damaged during work on the belt tensioners or while removing or installing vehicle parts in conjunction with other repair work. This damage will not always be noticeable. As a result, the belt tensioners may not function correctly or may not function at all in the event of an accident.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. These requirements are known to suitably qualified workshops. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injuries may be increased if the seat belts, automatic belt retractors and belt tensioners are not used correctly, or if they are repaired by a non-professional. As a result, the belt tensioners may not be triggered when they should, or they may be triggered unexpectedly.

- Never carry out any repairs, adjustments or removal and refitting of parts in the belt tensioners or seat belts by yourself, and have such work carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop . Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Seat belts, belt tensioners and automatic belt retractors cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.

The airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate. Observe the legal requirements for disposal.

Introduction to the topic

The proactive occupant protection system is an assistance system that initiates action to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations. However, the system cannot prevent a collision.

Speed range

The basic function of the proactive occupant protection system is available when driving forwards at speeds from approx. 30 km/h (19 mph).

Displays

In the event of intervention by the proactive occupant protection system, the red warning lamp lights up on the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

The proactive occupant protection system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The proactive occupant protection system cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Proactive occupant protection system)*.
- Adapt your speed and the distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Functions of the proactive occupant protection system

Basic functions

At the beginning of every journey, the belt is automatically pre-tensioned and the belt slack minimised when the driver or front passenger seat belt is fastened, depending on the driving time and vehicle speed.

The following functions may be triggered individually or together in critical driving situations, e.g. in the event of emergency braking, understeer and oversteer or minor collisions:

— Reversible belt tensioning of the fastened driver and front passenger seat belts.

— Automatic closing of the glass roof and side windows down to a gap, depending on the vehicle equipment.

— Activation of the hazard warning lights.

The belts may be tensioned individually or together depending on the respective critical driving situations.

Additional functions for vehicles with Automatic Emergency Braking (Front Assist)

For vehicles with Automatic Emergency Braking (Front Assist), the system limits also include calculation of the probability of a rear-end collision with the vehicle in front. If the system detects that a rear-end collision is likely, or initiates severe braking, it can trigger the proactive occupant protection system.

Additional functions for vehicles with lane change system (Side Assist)

In vehicles fitted with a lane change system (Side Assist), the probability of a collision with the vehicle following behind is also calculated within the system limits. The system can trigger the proactive occupant protection system if it detects a probable collision with the vehicle ahead. If the risk of a collision is detected, the hazard warning lights can also be activated with a rapid hazard warning flashing frequency in addition to the basic function of the proactive occupant protection system.

Additional functions for vehicles with Emergency Assist

The proactive occupant protection system may be triggered in vehicles with Emergency Assist if no driver activity is detected.

Depending on the activation level, the following functions are triggered:

— Reversible belt tensioning of the driver's fastened seat belt for a brief or extended period of time.

— Automatic closing of the glass roof and side windows down to a gap, depending on the vehicle equipment.

Additional functions for vehicles with Front Cross Traffic Assist

In vehicles fitted with Front Cross Traffic Assist, the probability of a side collision caused by a crossing vehicle is also calculated within the system limits. The system can trigger the proactive occupant protection system if it detects a probable side collision. If the risk of a collision is detected, the hazard warning lights can also be activated in addition to the basic function of the proactive occupant protection system.

Setting in driving profile selection

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the proactive occupant protection system is adapted to the special vehicle setup of the respective driving profile.

Limits of the proactive occupant protection system

The availability of the proactive occupant protection system depends on country-specific legal regulations and the vehicle equipment.

The proactive occupant protection system will not be available, or will only be available to a limited extent, in the following situations:

— Malfunction of the ESC, reversible belt tensioners or airbag control unit .

— TCS deactivated or ESC restricted .

— Automatic Emergency Braking (Front Assist) is restricted or has a system fault.

— System fault or restriction of the lane change system (Side Assist).

— Emergency Assist is restricted or has a system fault.

— System fault or restriction of Front Cross Traffic Assist.

— Reverse gear is engaged.

— In the case of reflective objects, e.g. crash barriers, tunnel entrances, heavy rain or icing-up.

— In the case of animals or objects that are difficult to detect.

— In the event of impacts and damage on the bumper, wheel arch or underbody.

Troubleshooting

Proactive occupant protection system functions restricted or not available

The yellow indicator lamp lights up briefly. In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The proactive occupant protection system functions are restricted or the system is not available.

1. Switch off and restart the engine.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the proactive occupant protection system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Introduction to the topic

Airbags cannot replace seat belts, which must be worn at all times.

Airbags are only able to offer additional safety for vehicle occupants if the seats, seat belts, head restraints and – in the case of the driver – steering wheel are adjusted and used correctly.

Visible damage to the vehicle does not always mean that the airbag should have been triggered.

Situations in which the airbags will not necessarily be triggered:

— When the ignition is switched off during a collision.

— In the case of light front-end collisions.

— In the case of a slight side collision.

— In the case of a rear-end collision.

— When the vehicle rolls over.

— In the case of low-speed collisions.

A triggered airbag may cause injuries, such as swelling, bruising, burning and grazing.

WARNING

The risk of injury increases if there are any objects between the vehicle occupants and the deployment zones of the airbags when they are triggered as these objects will change the airbag deployment zone. The objects could enter the deployment zone of the airbags during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres or in the event of accidents and then be flung dangerously through the vehicle interior if the airbags are triggered.

- Never hold any objects in your hand or on your lap while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport any objects on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

Airbags no longer work effectively after being triggered and must be replaced. Without the protection offered by airbags, the risk of injury increases in the event of sudden braking or driving manoeuvres or accidents.

- Airbags that have been triggered, and any affected system parts, must be replaced immediately with new parts that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Suitably qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Never install recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never alter components of the airbag system.

WARNING

Fine dust particles or steam may be released when the airbags are triggered. This is normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can cause irritation to the skin and eye membranes and cause breathing difficulties, particularly for people suffering from asthma or people who have (had) other respiratory problems.

- To help reduce breathing difficulties, get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors for more fresh air.
- If you come into contact with the dust, you should wash your hands and face with a mild soap and water before eating.
- Rinse out your eyes and any open wounds with water if dust has got into them.

WARNING

Cleaning agents that contain solvents will cause the surface in the area of the airbag fitting locations to become porous. In an accident that results in triggering of the airbags, loose plastic parts can be propelled through the vehicle interior and cause serious injury.

- Never clean the dash panel or the surfaces in the area of the airbag fitting locations with cleaning agents that contain solvents.

Indicator lamp

Functional check

The yellow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display lights up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on and goes out after a few seconds.

Fault in airbag or belt tensioner systems

The yellow indicator lamp lights up continuously. In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

A malfunction has been detected in at least one airbag or belt tensioner.

1. Remove the child seat from the front passenger seat and install it on the rear seats.
2. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the airbag and belt tensioner systems checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Airbag system or belt tensioner systems switched off with diagnostic tool

The yellow indicator lamp lights up for around 4 seconds when the ignition is switched on and then flashes for around 12 seconds. In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

At least one airbag or belt tensioner was switched off with a diagnostic tool.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have a check carried out to establish whether the airbag or belt tensioner systems must remain switched off. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fitting locations and deployment zones of the airbags

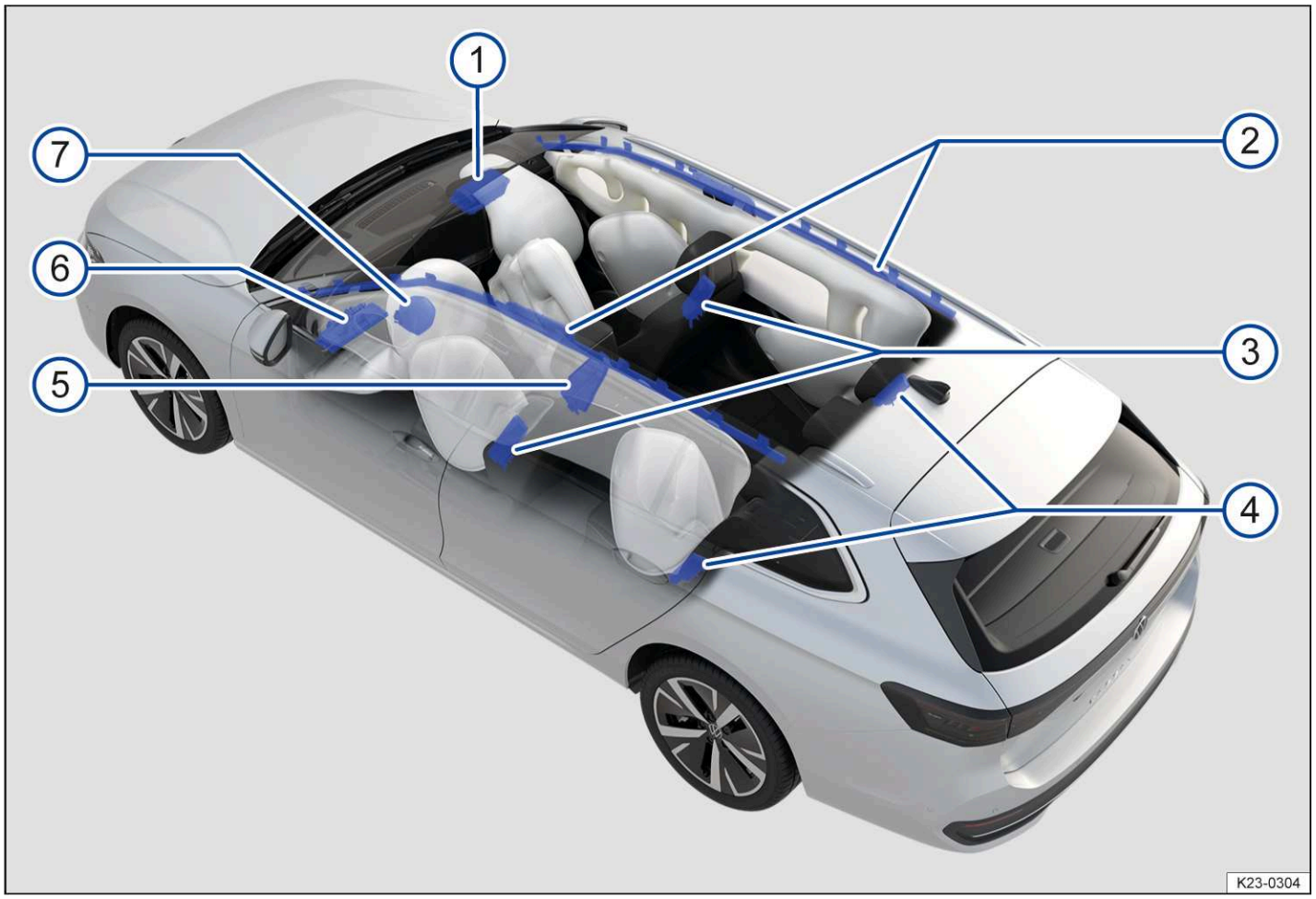


Fig. 1 Fitting locations and deployment zones of the airbags.

Location

1. Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.
2. Curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows (both sides).
3. Front side airbags in the driver seat and front passenger seat backrests.
4. Rear side airbags in the backrest of the outer seats of the rear bench seat (depending on equipment).
5. Centre airbag in the driver seat backrest (depending on country and equipment).
6. Driver knee airbag in the lower area of the dash panel.
7. Driver front airbag in the steering wheel.

The airbag locations are identified by the text "AIRBAG".

The white areas in the illustration are covered by the airbags when deployed (deployment zone) → *Fig. 1*. You must never leave or attach any objects in these areas →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Once triggered, an airbag inflates in milliseconds at very high speed. This could cause objects to be flung through the vehicle interior. This can cause serious injuries.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the airbags clear.
- Never secure any items to the covers or in the deployment zones of the airbags.
- Do not stick anything on or cover the locations of the airbags or the surfaces in the deployment zones of the airbags or modify these components in any way.
- No other people, animals or objects may be carried between the occupants and the airbag deployment zones. Ensure that children and other passengers in the vehicle also keep to this rule.
- Do not attach any objects, e.g. mobile navigation devices, to the windscreen above the front airbag on the front passenger side.

- Only push the sun visors over to the side windows if no items are attached to the visors (e.g. pens or a garage door opener).
- Do not install any sun blinds onto the side windows unless they have been expressly approved for use in your vehicle.
- The coat hooks in the vehicle should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not fit any accessories to the doors.

WARNING

An incorrect seat position could hinder the proper function of the front airbag and cause serious injury.

- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands at the sides on the rim in the nine o'clock and three o'clock positions while driving.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm (approximately 10 inches) between the driver's rib cage and the hub of the steering wheel. If your build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement, then you must contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that the distance between the passenger and the dash panel is as large as possible.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the seats could hinder the proper function of the airbags and cause serious injury.

- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or alter any components of these seats.
- Do not exert excessive force on the seat backrest bolsters.
- Do not fit seat covers or protective covers over the seats unless they have been expressly approved for use in the vehicle.
- Have any damage to the seat covers or around the seams of the airbags repaired immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

An incorrect seat position could hinder the proper function of the knee airbag and cause serious injury.

- Move the driver and front passenger seat as far back as possible so there is a space of at least 10 cm (around 4 inches) between the knees and the location of the knee airbag. If your build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement, then you must contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off



Fig. 1 In the dash panel on the front passenger side: key-operated switch for switching the front airbag on the front passenger side on and off.

The front passenger front airbag must be switched off if you fit a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.

Observe the country-specific specifications for use of child seats on the front passenger seat *(→ Child seats)*.

Switch off of the front passenger front airbag is not available in all countries. If there is no key-operated switch in the vehicle, the front passenger front airbag can only be deactivated by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Front passenger front airbag switched on

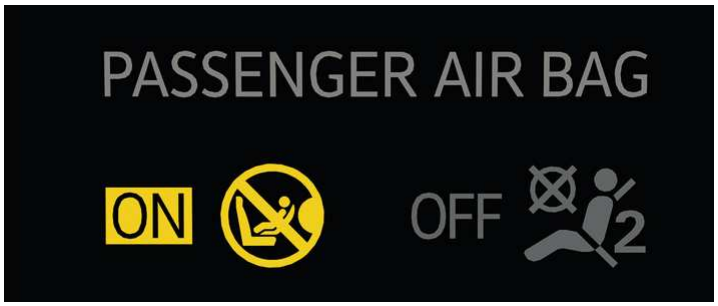


Fig. 2 In the roof console: indicator lamp for switched on front passenger front airbag.

ON The yellow indicator lamp for the switched on front passenger front airbag lights up for around 60 seconds after the ignition has been switched on or after switching on the front passenger front airbag with the key-operated switch → *Fig. 2* and then switches off again automatically.

The front passenger front airbag has been switched on.

1. Check whether the front passenger front airbag must remain switched on.

Front passenger front airbag switched off

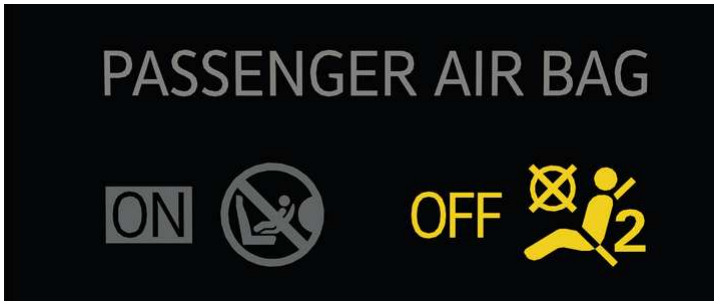


Fig. 3 In the roof console: indicator lamp for switched off front passenger front airbag.

OFF The yellow indicator lamp lights up continuously → *Fig. 3*. The front passenger front airbag has been switched off.

1. Check whether the front passenger front airbag must remain switched off, e.g. when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

Introduction to the topic

Switch on the front passenger front airbag

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the door on the front passenger side.
3. Fold the key bit of the vehicle key all the way out.

   Or: remove the emergency key from the vehicle key *(→ Vehicle key)*.
4. Insert the key bit into the key-operated switch until you feel the second point of resistance → *Fig. 1*.

   The key bit is not fully inserted when doing this →ⓘ.
5. Turn the vehicle key or emergency key without using force to the position ON.
6. Remove the vehicle key from the key-operated switch and fold away the key bit →⚠.

   Or: remove the emergency key from the key-operated switch and insert it back into the vehicle key →⚠.
7. Close the door on the front passenger side.

   The yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp ON lights up and goes out after approximately 60 seconds *(→ Indicator lamp for standard airbag system)*.
8. Check that the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp does *not* light up when the ignition is switched on *(→ Indicator lamp for standard airbag system)*.

Switching off the front passenger front airbag

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the door on the front passenger side.
3. Fold the key bit of the vehicle key all the way out.

   Or: remove the emergency key from the vehicle key *(→ Vehicle key)*.
4. Insert the key bit into the key-operated switch until you feel the second point of resistance → *Fig. 1*.

   The key bit is not fully inserted when doing this →ⓘ.
5. Turn the vehicle key or emergency key without using force to the position OFF.
6. Remove the vehicle key from the key-operated switch and fold away the key bit →⚠.

   Or: remove the emergency key from the key-operated switch and insert it back into the vehicle key →⚠.
7. Close the door on the front passenger side.

   The yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp lights up continuously when the ignition is switched on *(→ Indicator lamp for standard airbag system)*.

Confirmation that the front passenger front airbag has been switched off

A switched off front passenger front airbag is indicated only by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp lighting up yellow continuously *(→ Indicator lamp for standard airbag system)*.

If the front passenger front airbag is switched off and the yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp OFF does not light up continuously or lights up together with the yellow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display, there may be a fault in the airbag system. For this reason, do not fit a child restraint system on the front passenger seat for safety reasons. The front passenger front airbag may trigger during an accident →⚠.

⚠ DANGER

Observe the important safety instructions for the front passenger front airbag *(→ Child seats)*.

⚠ DANGER

If the airbag is deactivated, people on the front passenger seat may be severely or fatally injured in the event of an accident. For this reason, the front passenger front airbag must be deactivated only in special cases.

- Switch the front passenger front airbag off only if, in exceptional circumstances, a rear-facing child seat is secured on the front passenger seat. As soon as the rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat is no longer being used, switch the front passenger front airbag on again.
- Only deactivate the front passenger front airbag if, in exceptional circumstances, the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards (depending on the vehicle equipment). Reactivate the front passenger front airbag as soon as the front passenger seat backrest is folded back again.
- To prevent damage to the airbag system, switch the front passenger front airbag on and off only when the ignition is switched off.
- As the driver, always make sure that the key-operated switch is in the correct position.

WARNING

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may not trigger at all or may trigger unexpectedly. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- In the event of a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- If there is a fault in the airbag system, never install a child seat on the front passenger seat and remove any child seats that are installed.

WARNING

If the vehicle key or emergency key remains inserted in the key-operated switch while the vehicle is moving, vibrations may cause the vehicle key or emergency key to turn in the key-operated switch and activate the front passenger front airbag unintentionally. The front passenger front airbag could then accidentally inflate, leading to serious or fatal injuries.

- Always remove the vehicle key or manual key from the key-operated switch before you switch on the ignition.

NOTICE

If the key bit is not inserted far enough, the key switch could be damaged when the key is turned.

- Insert the key bit into the key-operated switch up to the second point of resistance.

NOTICE

If the vehicle key or emergency key are inserted in the key-operated switch, this could result in damage to the door trim, dash panel, key-operated switch and vehicle key or emergency key when the front passenger door is closed.

- Always remove the vehicle key or manual key from the key-operated switch before you close the front passenger door.

Child seats reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident. Always use child seats when driving with children.

Note the following:

— Child seats are classified into groups depending on the size, age and weight of the child for which they are designed.

— Various securing systems are used to secure child seats in the vehicle.

For safety reasons, child seats must always be fitted to the rear seats *(→ Child seats)*.

Volkswagen recommends child seats from the Volkswagen range of accessories. These child seats have been developed and approved for use in Volkswagen vehicles.

For further information on the child seats from the range of accessories, contact an authorised Volkswagen repairer or visit the Volkswagen website.

WARNING

Unsecured or inadequately secured children can suffer serious or fatal injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre and in an accident.

- Always transport children younger than 12 years of age or under 150 cm (about 4 ft 11 in) in height in a suitable child seat while the vehicle is in motion. Regulations in some countries may differ and must be complied with.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in a suitable child seat. The seat used must be appropriate to the child's height, weight and age.
- Observe the specifications of the child seat manufacturer when installing the child seat in the vehicle and securing the child in the child seat.
- Never fasten more than one child into one child seat.
- Under no circumstances should children or babies be held in a passenger's or drivers lap while driving.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in a child seat.
- Never allow a child to be carried in a vehicle without being properly secured, and never allow a child to stand up or to kneel on a seat, or to sit incorrectly while the car is in motion. This is particularly important for children carried on the front passenger seat. In the event of an accident, children may sustain serious injuries to themselves and others.

- The child seat can only provide maximum protection if the seat belt is routed correctly around it. Always ensure that the seat belt is routed as specified in the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer. If the seat belts are not worn correctly this can cause injuries even in a minor accident.
- After an accident, it is vital to replace any child seats that were in use during the accident, as they could have sustained non-visible damage.

Types of child seat

Only use child seats that have been officially approved and are suitable for the child.

Standards for child seats

In member states, child seats are subject to the regulations ECE R 44 or ECE R 129. Both regulations apply simultaneously. Child seats which have been tested in accordance with these standards carry an orange ECE approval label. This ECE approval label may include the following information on the child seat:

— Weight class.

— Size class.

— Approval category (universal, semi-universal, vehicle-specific or i-Size).

— Approval number.

On child seats that are approved under regulation ECE R 44, the eight-digit approval number on the ECE approval label must begin with 03 or 04. This shows that the seat is admissible for use. Older child seats with an approval number beginning with 01 or 02 are not admissible.

Child seat weight classes



Fig. 1 Example illustrations of child seats.

Class	Child's weight
Group 0	up to 10 kg
Group 0+	up to 13 kg
Group 1	9 to 18 kg
Group 2	15 to 25 kg
Group 3	22 to 36 kg

— **Weight class 0/0+**: group 0/0+ or 0/1 rear-facing infant carriers → *Fig. 1* are the best option for the period from birth to about 18 months.

— **Weight class 1**: group 1 (up to about 4 years old) and group 1/2 (up to about 7 years old) with an integral belt system are the best for children over the relevant weight limit.

— **Weight classes 2/3**: groups 2 and 3 include child seats with a backrest, and booster seats with no backrest. Child seats with a backrest have integrated seat routing and side padding, and so provide better protection than booster seats with no backrest. Volkswagen therefore recommends the use of child seats with a backrest. Group 2 child seats are for children up to the age of about 7, group 3 child seats for children more than around 7 years old.



Fig. 2 Child seat with additional belt guide (illustration).

When using a Group 2 child seat or a child seat for children from a height of 100 cm (3 ft 3 in) with backrest, Volkswagen recommends using the additional belt guide on the child seat for the seat belt in the pelvic area, if available → *Fig. 2* (1). Please observe the instructions for use of the child seat.

Not every child will fit in the child seat specified for their weight group. Likewise, not every seat will fit in every vehicle. Therefore it is vital to check that the child fits properly in their child seat and that the child seat can be securely fastened in the vehicle.

Child seat approval categories

Child seats can be classified as "universal" (in accordance with regulations ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129), "semi-universal", "vehicle-specific" (in accordance with regulation ECE-R 44 in each case) or "i-Size" (in accordance with ECE-R 129).

— **Universal**: child seats with "universal" approval are approved for use in all vehicles. No type list is required. In the case of universal approval for ISOFIX, the child seat must also be secured with a top tether.

— **Semi-universal**: "semi-universal" approval requires other safety devices for attaching the seat (that require additional testing) in addition to the standard requirements for universal approval. Child seats with "semi-universal" approval come with a type list. The seats should only be used in vehicles that are included on this list.

— **Vehicle-specific**: child seats with vehicle specific approval must have undergone dynamic testing in each model of vehicle for which it is approved. Child seats with "vehicle-specific" approval also come with a type list.

— **i-Size**: child seats classified as "i-Size" must conform to the installation and safety requirements prescribed in regulation ECE R 129. Contact the child seat manufacturer to find out whether child seats are approved for this vehicle, and if so which ones, in accordance with i-Size.

Installing and using child seats

Country-specific regulations

The standards and regulations governing the use of child seats and child seat securing mechanisms differ from country to country. Not all countries allow you to transport children on the front passenger seat. Regulations and legal requirements take precedence over the information given in this owner's manual.

Information on fitting a child seat

Observe the following general information when fitting a child seat. This information is relevant whatever child seat securing system is being used.

— Read and follow the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer →⚠.

— Whenever possible, fit the child seat on the rear bench seat behind the front passenger seat so that children can exit the vehicle on the kerb side.

— Set the seat belt height so that the seat belt routing follows a natural line and is adjusted to the child seat without turning back on itself. For rear-facing child seats, use the lowest position of the seat belt height adjuster.

— Deactivate the front passenger front airbag if fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.

— When fitting on the front passenger seat, push the front passenger seat back fully and adjust the seat to the highest position. Move the backrest to upright position and adjust the seat cushion so that it is tilted fully down *(→ Front seat, mechanical)*.

Applies to child seats of the size class C/ISOFIX class R3: When fitting on the front passenger seat, push the front passenger seat back fully and adjust the seat to the a bottom to middle position. Move the backrest to upright position and adjust the seat cushion so that it is tilted fully down *(→ Front seat, mechanical)* *(→ Child seat with ISOFIX or i-Size)*.

— Always ensure that there is enough space around the child seat. If necessary, adjust the position of the seat in front. When doing so, ensure that the driver or front passenger can still maintain a correct sitting position *(→ Sitting position)*.

— The backrest of the child seat must lay as flat as possible against the vehicle seat backrest. If required, adjust the seat backrest angle so that the child seat lies flush against the backrest. Once it has been installed, if the child seat is touching the head restraint and therefore cannot be positioned flush against the backrest, push the head restraint all the way up, or remove and stow safely in the vehicle .

— The settings of the respective seat must no longer be adjusted after correct installation of the child seat. If the seat settings have been adjusted, installation of the child seat must be checked and adapted if necessary.

— If a child seat is used on a seat, no functions must be used on this seat, e.g. the massage function *(→ Massage function)* or seat heating .

Airbag sticker



Fig. 1 On the sun visor: airbag label (illustration).



Fig. 2 On the A-pillar: airbag label (illustration).

The vehicle may be provided with stickers giving important information about the front passenger front airbag. The information on these stickers may vary from country to country. The stickers may be found:

— On the driver sun visor and in some cases on the front passenger sun visor → *Fig. 1*.

— On the A-pillar on the front passenger side → *Fig. 2*.

It is essential to observe the warning information shown on these stickers before installing a rear-facing child seat →⚠.

Risks involved in carrying children on the front passenger seat

If you use a **rear-facing child seat**, the front passenger front airbag can cause critical or potentially fatal injuries when it inflates →⚠.

Rear-facing child seats may be used on the front passenger seat only if the front passenger front airbag has been switched off . A switched off front passenger front airbag is indicated by means of the continuously lit yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp OFF in the driver's field of vision *(→ Indicator lamp for standard airbag system)*.

It is not possible to switch off the front passenger front airbag in all countries *(→ Airbag system)*.

If using a **forward-facing child seat**, do not deactivate the front passenger front airbag. When fitting the child seat, ensure that it is as far away as possible from the front passenger front airbag. The front passenger front airbag can cause severe injuries when it inflates →⚠.

Some child seats are not suitable for use on the front passenger seat. The child seat must be specially authorised by the manufacturer for use on the front passenger seat in vehicles with front and side airbags. Authorised Volkswagen repairers keep an up-to-date list of authorised child seats.

⚠ DANGER

Observe the important safety instructions for the front passenger front airbag *(→ Airbag system)*.

⚠ DANGER

If you use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, the child sitting in it is at increased risk of sustaining serious or life-threatening injuries or being killed in the event of an accident.

- Never secure a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag is switched on.
- Deactivate the front passenger front airbag if you want to install a child seat on the front passenger seat. If the front passenger front airbag cannot be deactivated, you must not use rear-facing child seats.
- In order to establish the maximum possible distance from the front passenger front airbag, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust to the highest position.
- Move the backrest to the upright position.
- Set the seat belt height so that the seat belt routing follows a natural path adapted to the child seat without excessive deviations. For rear-facing child seats, use the lowest position of the seat belt height adjuster.
- Only use child seats that have been approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Child seats present a risk of injury if incorrectly installed.

- Always read and follow the installation instructions and warning information provided by the child seat manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

Using a forward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat presents a risk of injury.

- In order to establish the maximum possible distance from the front passenger front airbag, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust to the highest position.
- Move the backrest to the upright position.
- Set the seat belt height so that the seat belt routing follows a natural path adapted to the child seat without excessive deviations. For rear-facing child seats, use the lowest position of the seat belt height adjuster.
- Only use child seats that have been approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbags.

⚠ WARNING

A triggered curtain or side airbag can cause injuries.

- Ensure that no children are seated within the airbag deployment zones .
- Do not place any objects in the airbag deployment zones.

Securing systems

Different countries use different securing systems for safely fitting child seats in the vehicle.

Please only ever use the securing systems described here to secure child seats to the vehicle.

Overview of securing systems

— **ISOFIX/i-Size**: ISOFIX and i-Size are standardised securing systems for fitting child seats in the vehicle quickly and safely. The ISOFIX or i-Size attachment system creates a rigid connection between the child seat and the car body.

The seat has two rigid attachment arms. The attachment arms click into ISOFIX retaining rings between the seat cushion and the backrest *(→ Child seat with ISOFIX or i-Size)*. A top tether or a support foot may sometimes have to be used in addition to the ISOFIX anchor points described above.

— **Three-point automatic seat belt**: it is better to secure child seats using the ISOFIX system, if available, rather than with a three-point automatic seat belt *(→ Child seat with seat belt)*.

Additional securing points:

— **Top tether**: the strap at the top of the child seat is routed over the backrest and hooked to an anchor point located on the back of the rear seats and front passenger seat *(→ Child seat with top tether)*. Top tether anchor points are marked with an anchor symbol.

— **Support foot**: some child seats are supported by a support foot resting on the floor of the vehicle. This support foot helps prevent the child seat tipping forward in a crash. Child seats with a support foot can only be used on the front passenger seat and the outer rear seats →⚠.

Recommended child seat securing systems

Volkswagen recommends that child seats are secured as follows:

— **Rear-facing child seat**:
  — ISOFIX/i-Size and top tether.
  — ISOFIX/i-Size and support foot.

— **Front-facing child seat in group 1 and i-Size child seat for children up to 105 cm (approx. 3 ft 5 in) in height**:
  — ISOFIX/i-Size and top tether.
  — ISOFIX/i-Size and support foot.

— **Front-facing child seat in group 2/3 and i-Size child seat for children from 100 cm (approx. 3 ft 3 in) in height**:
  — ISOFIX/i-Size and, if applicable, top tether.
  — ISOFIX/i-Size and, if applicable, support foot.

⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or inadequately secured children can suffer serious or fatal injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre and in an accident.

- Observe the specifications of the child seat manufacturer when installing the child seat in the vehicle and securing the child in the child seat.
- Do not use child seats that must be secured in the vehicle with lower tethers according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the support foot can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that the support foot is always correctly and safely installed.
- Always read and follow the installation instructions and warning information provided by the child seat manufacturer.
- Do not transport children in child seats with a support foot if the weight of the child seat, including the child, exceeds a total weight of 33 kg (around 73 lbs).

⚠ WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Securing a child seat with ISOFIX/i-Size

Quick guide to ISOFIX and i-Size installation

The identification marking of the ISOFIX or i-Size anchor points is equipment and country dependent.

I-Size anchor points are not available on the front passenger seat in some countries.

The following table shows the installation options for ISOFIX or i-Size child seats at the ISOFIX or i-Size anchor points of the individual seats.

Group	Orientation of the child seat	Size class /ISOFIX class	Front passenger seat		Outer rear seats	Centre rear seat
			Front passenger front airbag activated	Front passenger front airbag deactivated		
Group 0: up to 10 kg	Rear-facing	E/R1	X	IL-SU	IL-SU	X
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	Rear-facing	E/R1	X	IL-SU	IL-SU	X
		D/R2				
		C/R3				
Group 1: 9 to 18 kg	Rear-facing	D/R2	X	IL-SU	IL-SU	X
		C/R3				
	Front-facing	B/F2	IL-SU, IUF	X	IL-SU, IUF	X
		B1/F2X				
		A/F3				
Group 2: 15 to 25 kg	Front-facing	–	IL-SU	X	IL-SU	X
Group 3: 22 to 36 kg	Front-facing	–	IL-SU	X	IL-SU	X
i-Size child restraint system	Rear-facing	–/R2	X	i-U	i-U	X
	Front-facing	–/B2, F2X	i-U	X	i-U	X
Booster seat	Front-facing	–/B2, B3	i-B	X	i-B	X

— **Size class**: the size class shown corresponds to the permissible weight range of the child using the seat. The size class is indicated on the ECE approval label for child seats with “universal” or “semi-universal” approval. A size class indication is affixed to the child seat.

— **X**: seat not suitable for securing an ISOFIX or i-Size child seat in this group.

— **IL-SU**: seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX child seat with “semi-universal” approval. Refer to the vehicle list supplied by the child seat manufacturer.

— **IUF**: seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX child seat with “universal” approval.

— **i-U**: seat suitable for installing a front-facing or rear-facing i-Size child seat with “universal” approval.

— **i-UF**: seat suitable for installing a front-facing i-Size child seat with “universal” approval.

— **i-B**: seat suitable for installing a front-facing ISOFIX booster seat of Group 2/3 as well as a front-facing i-Size child seat for children with a height of 100 to 150 cm (around 3 ft 3 in to around 4 ft 11 in).

Installing child seats with ISOFIX or i-Size

The location of the bottom anchor points is indicated by either an ISOFIX or i-Size symbol.

Markings identifying the ISOFIX anchor points for child seats on the rear seats.

Markings identifying the i-Size anchor points for child seats on the rear seats and on the front passenger seat.



Fig. 1 Fitting a child seat with attachment arms (illustration).

1. Observe the instructions *(→ Child seats)*.
2. If necessary, fold down any protective caps that are fitted on the ISOFIX or i-Size anchor points.
3. Push the attachment arms of the child seat in the direction of the arrow onto the ISOFIX or i-Size anchorages → *Fig. 1*. The child seat must click and audibly securely into place.
4. Perform a pull test on both sides of the child seat to make sure that the child seat is properly engaged.

If the child seat is fitted with a support foot, the foot must stand firmly on the floor of the vehicle.

Securing child seats with the top tether



Fig. 1 On the rear of the rear seats: top tether anchor points for top tether.



Fig. 2 On the rear of front passenger seat (country-dependent): attached top tether.

ISOFIX child seats with “universal” approval must be secured with an upper strap (top tether) in addition to the ISOFIX anchor points.

Secure the top tether only at the top tether anchor points provided for this purpose. The anchor points suitable for use with the top tether are marked by a symbol and sometimes also with “TOP TETHER” → *Fig. 1* or → *Fig. 2*.

Securing the top tether



Fig. 3 On the rear of the outer rear seats or front passenger seat: attached top tether.



Fig. 4 In the backrest of the premium sport seat (with opening) on the front passenger side: routing for the top tether (illustration).

(1) Opening for routing the top tether.

1. Observe the instructions *(→ Child seats)*.
2. Remove the luggage compartment cover if necessary.
3. Position the child seat in the centre of the seat cushion.
4. Push the attachment arms on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchor points in the direction of the arrow *(→ Child seat with ISOFIX or i-Size)*. The child seat must click and audibly securely into place.
5. If necessary, push the head restraint upwards and route the top tether of the child seat under the head restraint to the rear.

   Or: remove the head restraint if necessary and route the top tether of the child seat over the backrest to the rear.

   Applies only to the premium sport seat with opening: Feed the top tether through the opening in the backrest → *Fig. 4* (1).
6. Hook the top tether of the child seat into the corresponding anchor point marked with "Top Tether" → *Fig. 3*.
7. Tighten the top tether so that the child seat is positioned against the upper section of the rear seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

If the top tether is not secured properly or is not secured at the anchor points provided for this purpose, the child seat can become detached and cause serious injuries.

- Always secure only one top tether of a child seat to one top tether anchor point.
- Secure the top tether only at the top tether anchor points provided for this purpose. Never secure the top tether of a child seat to a fastening ring.

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the rear pockets of the front passenger seat can damage the top tether in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries.

- Do not keep any objects in the rear pockets of the front passenger seat when using the top tether.

Depending on the country and equipment, there may be two or three top tether anchor points in the luggage compartment behind the rear seat backrest.

Securing a child seat using the seat belt

If you want to fit a child seat from the "universal" (u) approval category in your vehicle, you must first ensure that it is approved for the seat position in question. Relevant information is given on the orange ECE approval label of the child seat. Refer to the following table for the installation options.

Group		Child's weight	Front passenger seat		Rear seats
			Front passenger front airbag activated	Front passenger front airbag deactivated	
Group 0		up to 10 kg	**x**	**u**	**u**
Group 0+		up to 13 kg	**x**	**u**	**u**
Group 1	**Rear-facing**	9 to 18 kg	**x**	**u**	**u**
	Front-facing	9 to 18 kg	**u**	**x**	**u**
Group 2		15 to 25 kg	**u**	**x**	**u**
Group 3		22 to 36 kg	**u**	**x**	**u**

u: universal; x: seat not suitable for securing a child seat of this group.

Securing a child seat using the seat belt

1. Observe the instructions *(→ Child seats)*.
2. Set the seat belt height so that the seat belt routing follows a natural line and is adjusted to the child seat without turning back on itself. For rear-facing child seats, use the lowest position of the seat belt height adjuster.
3. Fasten the seat belt and guide it through the child seat as described in the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
4. Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it audibly engages.

Child seats with the "semi-universal" approval category that are secured by means of a seat belt and support foot must not be installed on the centre rear seat.

Making you and your vehicle safe

Observe any legislation concerning the safety of a broken-down vehicle. For example, many countries stipulate that you have to switch on the hazard warning lights and wear a high-visibility waistcoat *(→ Emergency equipment)*.

Checklist of what to do in the event of a breakdown

To ensure your own safety and that of your passengers, observe the following points in the specified order:

1. Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a suitable surface. Observe all the important information on parking →⚠, .
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights ⚠ *(→ Centre console)*.
3. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Observe country-specific regulations on high-visibility waistcoats.
4. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
5. Observe safety notes *(→ In the bonnet space)*.
6. Seek expert assistance if necessary. Volkswagen recommends using the Volkswagen emergency service.

When the hazard warning lights are switched on, for example if you are being towed, you can still indicate a change in direction or lane change by operating the turn signal. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

Comply with the important information on towing *(→ Tow-starting or towing)*.

⚠ WARNING

Any broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk for the vehicle occupants and other road users.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
- Park the car at a safe distance from moving traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.

- Never leave other persons alone in the vehicle, particularly children or people requiring assistance. This applies in particular when the doors are locked. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass or fuel.

NOTICE

Pushing the vehicle by hand can cause damage to the vehicle, e.g. deformation or detachment of add-on parts.

- When pushing the vehicle by hand, do not press on the tail light clusters, large panels and side or rear spoilers.

Checklist of what to do after an accident

To ensure your own safety and that of your passengers in an accident, observe the following actions in the specified order:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights ⚠ *(→ Centre console)*.
3. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
4. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Administer first aid and observe country-specific regulations on high-visibility waistcoats.
5. Report the accident to the fire service.
6. Wait for the emergency services at the scene of the accident.

Switch on the hazard warning lights, e.g. in the following situations:

— When traffic ahead suddenly slows down or you reach the tail end of a traffic jam to warn vehicles behind you.

— When there is an emergency.

— If the vehicle breaks down.

— When tow-starting or towing.

Always follow local regulations for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, you must use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken-down vehicle. This method must comply with traffic legislation.

The 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge if the hazard warning lights are left on over a long period of time – even when the ignition is switched off.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the brake lights flash in quick succession if you brake sharply or initiate full braking at a speed of more than 80 km/h (about 50 mph). This provides an especially conspicuous warning for the following traffic. If you then continue to brake, the hazard warning lights will be switched on automatically at speeds under approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). Once the vehicle starts to accelerate, the hazard warning lights will switch off again.

Emergency equipment

First-aid kit

Depending on country and the vehicle equipment, the first-aid kit may be located in a stowage compartment or a holder in the luggage compartment, under the luggage compartment floor or in the vehicle interior.

The first-aid kit must comply with legal requirements.

— Observe the expiry dates of the contents.

— After use, renew contents if necessary and stow the first-aid kit safely again.

Warning triangle



Fig. 1 In the boot lid: holder for the warning triangle.

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the warning triangle may be located in the boot lid → *Fig. 1*.

1. With the boot lid open, press the catch below the storage box.
2. Remove the warning triangle storage box from the holder.
3. After use, stow the warning triangle back in the storage box and place the storage box into the holder.

The warning triangle must comply with legal requirements.

High-visibility waistcoat

Depending on country and the vehicle equipment, the high-visibility waistcoat may be located in a stowage compartment in the front door trim or in the glove compartment *(→ Driver door)* *(→ Front passenger side)*.

The high-visibility waistcoat must comply with legal requirements.

Fire extinguisher

Depending on country and the vehicle equipment, a fire extinguisher may be located in a holder in the footwell under the front passenger seat.

The fire extinguisher must meet legal requirements, be ready for use at all times and be checked on a regular basis (see seal of approval on the fire extinguisher).

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, loose objects could be flung though the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always secure the first aid kit, warning triangle and fire extinguisher safely in the holders provided in the vehicle.
- Stow the high-visibility waistcoat in a stowage compartment where it can be easily reached.

Information call, breakdown call and Emergency Call Service



Fig. 1 In the roof console: button for Emergency Call Service (behind button cover) and indicator lamp.



Fig. 2 In the roof console: button for Emergency Call Service.

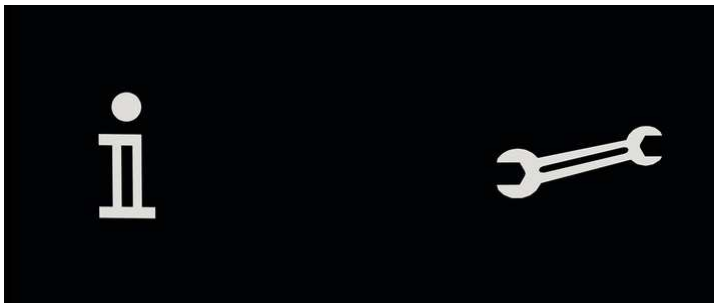


Fig. 3 In the roof console: touch panels for Information Call and Breakdown Call.

Information Call.

Breakdown Call.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country, voice services and the Emergency Call Service can be performed by means of the control in the roof console → *Fig. 1*, , → *Fig. 2*, → *Fig. 3*. If the Emergency Call Service is available in the vehicle's service portfolio, the Emergency Call Service is activated as standard for a limited period of time. The required connection is established by a factory-fitted control unit.

Please also observe the additional information on mobile online services .

Indicator lamp for the Emergency Call Service

The control is equipped with an indicator lamp → *Fig. 1*, (arrow). Depending on the operational status of the Emergency Call Service in the vehicle, the indicator lamp lights up in different colours and light sequences:

- Indicator lamp does not light up: Emergency Call Service is deactivated or not available.
- Indicator lamp flashes red after the ignition is switched on: system error. Emergency Call Service is deactivated.
- Indicator lamp lights up red continuously: system error. Emergency Call Service is restricted or not available.
- Indicator lamp lights up green: Emergency Call Service is available, system is ready for operation in the vehicle.
- Indicator lamp flashes green: active connection to a voice service.

Information Call

— The Information Call enables you to call Volkswagen Customer Care.

— The Information Call function is available only in some sales regions.

— The person who takes your call will talk to you in the language of the country in which the vehicle is registered for the mobile online services or in the language of the country for which the vehicle was produced.

— The Information Call can be made when the vehicle ignition is switched on.

— The Information Call can be made manually via the touch panel in the roof console or, depending on vehicle, via the function button in the telephone menu of the Infotainment system.

Breakdown Call

— The Breakdown Call function allows you to seek professional assistance should your vehicle break down.

— Some vehicle data, e.g. the current location, is transmitted parallel to the voice call.

— The person who takes your call will talk to you in the language of the country in which the vehicle is registered for the mobile online services or in the language of the country for which the vehicle was produced.

— The Breakdown Call can be made when the vehicle ignition is switched on.

— The Breakdown Call can be made manually via the touch panel in the roof console or, depending on vehicle, via the function button in the telephone menu of the Infotainment system.

Emergency Call Service

— The Emergency Call Service enables help to be organised as quickly as possible in dangerous situations.

— When the Emergency Call Service is triggered, a connection to the Volkswagen emergency call centre is established.

— If an emergency call is placed manually, or automatically after an accident where an airbag or the belt tensioners were triggered, data relevant for the emergency call, e.g. the current vehicle location, will be transmitted automatically .

— The person who takes your call will talk to you in the language set up in the vehicle's Infotainment system. English is used if this language is not available at the location of the emergency.

— Additional factory-fitted components are installed in order to ensure that the function is still possible even after a serious accident, e.g. emergency call microphone, emergency loudspeaker and an integrated battery that is independent of the vehicle electrical system.

— The Emergency Call Service can be permanently deactivated by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

— If the legally required eCall Emergency System is present in the vehicle, the Emergency Call Service can be deactivated in the Infotainment system. If present in the vehicle, the legally required eCall Emergency System cannot be switched off and cannot be deactivated *(→ Manage services)*.

⚠ WARNING

The following conditions may limit or prevent the execution of a manual or automatic emergency call:

- Your current emergency call location is in an area with no or insufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception.
- The mobile communications network of the required telecommunication providers is not available in areas with sufficient mobile communications and satellite reception.

- In spite of sufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception, there is no mobile communications network generation of the telecommunication providers that is suitable for the vehicle in some regions. In this case, the emergency call reverts to the legally required eCall Emergency System, if present in the vehicle. If the legally required eCall Emergency System is not present in the vehicle, calls will be forwarded to the emergency call number 112.
- In spite of sufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception, there is no 3G mobile network of the telecommunication providers in some regions. This can lead to a delay of up to 60 seconds when setting up the connection for the Emergency Call Service. In order to permit connection setup without a delay, the Emergency Call Service can be deactivated in the Infotainment system if the legally required eCall Emergency System is present in the vehicle. The legally required eCall Emergency System is available without any delay after deactivation of the Emergency Call Service.
- The Emergency Call Service is prohibited by law in some countries.
- There is no valid licence for the use of the Emergency Call Service.
- The components in the vehicle required for the manual or automatic emergency call are damaged or do not have sufficient electrical power.
- The emergency call service function has been deactivated. In this case, the emergency call reverts to the legally required eCall Emergency System, if present in the vehicle. No emergency call will be made if the legally required eCall Emergency System is not present in the vehicle. Also forwarding to the emergency number 112 does not take place.
- The Emergency Call Service function was deactivated by disabling data transmission. In this case, the emergency call reverts to the legally required eCall Emergency System, if present in the vehicle. It the legally required eCall Emergency System is not available for technical reasons, the Emergency Call Service will be activated again automatically.
- The vehicle ignition is not switched on.

Initiating an emergency call manually

1. If fitted, briefly press on the button cover and fold the button cover down.
2. Press the button for the legally required eCall Emergency System → *Fig. 2* until the indicator lamp flashes green.

   The emergency call is now initiated and a voice connection is established to the Volkswagen emergency call centre.

If you have accidentally pressed the emergency call button, cancel the emergency call immediately.

1. Press the emergency call button again until the indicator lamp lights up green continuously.

Press the button for the legally required eCall Emergency System → *Fig. 2* only in an emergency.

Automatic emergency call

An automatic emergency call is initiated only when the ignition is switched on.

A connection to the Volkswagen emergency call centre is set up automatically in the following situations:

— Immediately after the airbags are triggered.

— Immediately after the belt tensioners are triggered.

— Depending on equipment, after a system intervention by Emergency Assist.

The automatic emergency call cannot be cancelled by pressing the button for the legally required eCall Emergency System → *Fig. 2*.

If queries from the Volkswagen emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are automatically initiated.

Integrated battery

The integrated battery ensures that the emergency call service remains available for some time if the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or faulty.

A corresponding message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display if the integrated battery is discharged or faulty. If this message is displayed, immediately go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the integrated battery replaced. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Have the integrated battery checked by a suitably qualified workshop after about 3 years and replaced if necessary. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Data transmission

In the event of an emergency call, the available data is transmitted to the Volkswagen emergency call centre to determine the necessary rescue measures.

The data on the vehicle location is continuously overwritten so that only the last ten stored locations required for correct functioning of the Emergency Call Service are available. The vehicle is therefore not permanently tracked.

The data relating to the emergency call is processed in order to ensure correct functioning of the Emergency Call Service. The data related to the emergency call is automatically deleted from the vehicle system 13 hours after the emergency call was triggered.

The following data is transmitted:

— Current position of the vehicle when the emergency call was triggered.

— Nine other positions shortly before the emergency call was triggered (route driven, a few km (a few miles)).

— Vehicle identification number (VIN).

— Type of vehicle drive.

— Vehicle type.

— Type of trigger (automatic or manual)

— Type of call.

— Direction in which the vehicle was moving when the emergency call was triggered.

— Accident severity.

— Accident direction.

— Time of collision.

— Reliability of positioning data.

— Version of data strings.

— Counter of data strings transferred per call.

— Determined number of passengers.

— Language selected in the Infotainment system.

— Optional data ID.

You can apply to view and delete the transmitted data by contacting the Volkswagen emergency call centre.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and country, data transmission can be influenced by the privacy settings *(→ Privacy settings)*. The Emergency Call Service function can be guaranteed only if data transmission is fully possible.

The function of the Emergency Call Service may be restricted if Infotainment systems have been retrofitted.

Reverting to the legally required eCall Emergency System

In some situations, the Emergency Call Service may be restricted or unavailable. If the legally required eCall Emergency System is present in the vehicle, a voice connection will be established to a public emergency call centre if possible. In this case, the available data is transmitted to the public emergency call centre in order to determine the necessary rescue measures .

It is possible to see whether the legally required eCall Emergency System is present in the vehicle in the Manage services area on the Infotainment system *(→ Manage services)*.

Back-up to 112 emergency number

In some situations, the Emergency Call Service may be restricted or unavailable. If the legally required eCall Emergency System is not present in the vehicle, emergency calls will be made to the general emergency call number 112 if possible. In this case, only a voice-based connection is established. No data will be transmitted, e.g. regarding the vehicle or its location.

Troubleshooting

SOS Emergency Call Service is faulty

The indicator lamp in the emergency call button lights up red continuously . In addition, the message **Error: Emergency call function. Please visit workshop.** may be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

There is a system fault in the Emergency Call Service. It may not be possible to make an emergency call.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the fault rectified. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Emergency Call Service is restricted

The indicator lamp in the emergency call button lights up red continuously . In addition, the message **Emergency call function restricted. Please visit workshop.** may be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

The availability of the Emergency Call Service function is restricted. It is not possible to establish a voice connection to the Volkswagen emergency call centre, for example.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the fault rectified. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Touch panels react differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Legally required eCall Emergency System



Fig. 1 In the roof console: button for legally required eCall Emergency System (behind button cover) and indicator lamp.



Fig. 2 In the roof console: button for the legally required eCall Emergency System.

Depending on the equipment and country, the vehicle may be equipped with an emergency call system. In some countries, the free legally required eCall Emergency System is activated as standard. The control unit is in the roof console.

The emergency call function enables help to be organised as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. A voice connection is established with a public emergency call centre. The person who takes your call will talk to you in the language of the country in which the vehicle is located. In addition, legally required data relevant for the emergency call is transmitted automatically to the public emergency call centre, such as the current vehicle position.

The legal basis for data processing by the legally required eCall Emergency System corresponds to the country-specific legislation, e.g. EU Regulation 2015/758. Please also observe the information on data storage and services *(→ Data processing in the vehicle)*.

The required connection is established by a factory-fitted control unit. Additional components are required in order to ensure that the function is still possible even after a serious accident, e.g. emergency call microphone, emergency loudspeaker and an integrated battery that is independent of the vehicle electrical system.

Indicator lamp for the legally required eCall Emergency System

The control is equipped with an indicator lamp → *Fig. 1* (arrow). Depending on the operational status of the emergency call system in the vehicle, the indicator lamp lights up in different colours and light sequences:

- Indicator lamp does not light up: emergency call is not available.
- Indicator lamp flashes red after the ignition is switched on: emergency call is deactivated.
- Indicator lamp lights up red continuously: system error. Emergency call is restricted or not available.
- Indicator lamp lights up green: emergency call is available, system is ready for operation in the vehicle.
- Indicator lamp flashes green: emergency call is active.

⚠ WARNING

The following conditions may limit or prevent the execution of a manual or automatic emergency call:

- Your current emergency call location is in an area with no or insufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception.
- No 2G/3G mobile communications network of telecommunication providers is available in areas with sufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception.
- The emergency call system is not available in some countries.
- The public emergency call centre is technically not able to receive emergency call data.
- The components in the vehicle required for the manual or automatic emergency call are damaged or do not have sufficient electrical power.
- The vehicle ignition is not switched on.

Initiating an emergency call manually

1. Briefly press on the button cover and fold the button cover down → *Fig. 1*.
2. Press the button for the legally required eCall Emergency System → *Fig. 2* until the indicator lamp flashes green.

   The emergency call is now initiated and a voice connection is established to the public emergency call centre.

If you have accidentally pressed the emergency call button, cancel the emergency call immediately.

1. Press the emergency call button again until the indicator lamp lights up green continuously.

Press the button for the legally required eCall Emergency System → *Fig. 2* only in an emergency.

Automatic emergency call

An automatic emergency call is initiated only when the ignition is switched on.

A connection to the public emergency call centre is set up automatically in the following situations:

— Immediately after the airbags are triggered.

— Immediately after the belt tensioners are triggered.

— Depending on equipment, after a system intervention by Emergency Assist.

The automatic emergency call cannot be cancelled by pressing the button for the legally required eCall Emergency System → *Fig. 2*.

Rescue measures will be initiated automatically if there is no response to questions from the public emergency call centre.

Integrated battery

The integrated battery ensures that the legally required eCall Emergency System remains available for some time if the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or faulty.

A corresponding message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display if the integrated battery is discharged or faulty. If this message is displayed, immediately go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the integrated battery replaced. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Have the integrated battery checked by a suitably qualified workshop after about 3 years and replaced if necessary. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Data transmission

In the event of an emergency call, the legally prescribed data is transmitted to the public emergency call centre in order to determine necessary rescue measures.

The data on the vehicle location is continuously overwritten so that only the last three stored locations required for correct functioning of the legally required eCall Emergency System are available. The vehicle is therefore not permanently tracked.

The data relating to the emergency call is processed exclusively in order to ensure correct functioning of the legally required eCall Emergency System. The data related to the emergency call is automatically deleted from the system 13 hours after the emergency call was triggered.

The following data is transmitted:

— Current position of the vehicle when the emergency call was triggered.

— Two other positions shortly before the emergency call was triggered (route driven, a few 100 m (a few 100 ft)).

— Vehicle identification number (VIN).

— Type of vehicle drive.

— Vehicle type.

— Type of trigger (automatic or manual)

— Type of call.

— Direction in which the vehicle was moving when the emergency call was triggered.

— Accident direction.

— Deceleration rate in the event of an accident in longitudinal direction.

— Deceleration rate in the event of an accident in lateral direction.

— Time of collision.

— Reliability of positioning data.

— Version of data strings.

— Counter of data strings transferred per call.

— Determined number of passengers.

You can apply to view and delete the transmitted data by contacting the public emergency call centre.

The function of the legally required eCall Emergency System may be restricted if Infotainment systems have been retrofitted.

Troubleshooting

Fault in legally required eCall Emergency System

The indicator lamp in the emergency call button lights up red continuously. In addition, the message **Error: Emergency call function. Please visit workshop.** may be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

There is a system fault in the legally required eCall Emergency System. It may not be possible to make an emergency call.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the fault rectified. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Legally required eCall Emergency System restricted

The indicator lamp in the emergency call button lights up red continuously. In addition, the message **Emergency call function restricted. Please visit workshop.** may be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

The function of the legally required eCall Emergency System is restricted. It is not possible to establish a voice connection to the public emergency call centre, for example.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the fault rectified. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Functions of the vehicle key

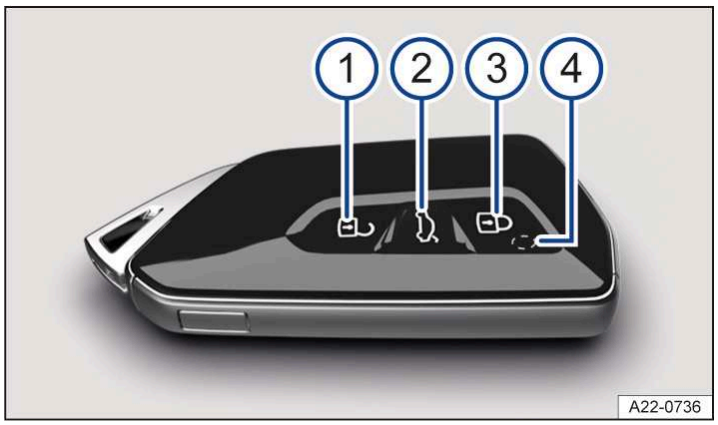


Fig. 1 Vehicle key.

(1) Unlock the vehicle. Press once: the vehicle is unlocked according to the settings in the Infotainment system. Press twice: the complete vehicle is unlocked.

(2) Unlock only the boot lid. All turn signals flash twice. To do this, press and hold the button briefly. The boot lid will open if the button is pressed and held.

(3) Lock the vehicle. All turn signals flash once. Pressing once locks the vehicle and activates SAFELOCK. Pressing twice locks the vehicle without SAFELOCK.

(4) Indicator lamp.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may have a SAFELOCK mechanism. This prevents the doors from being opened both from inside and outside.

If a vehicle is equipped with SAFELOCK, this is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key or the sensor in the door handle. If it is wished to intentionally cancel the SAFELOCK function, the vehicle key or door handle sensor must be operated again. The vehicle is then only locked. In this case, opening from outside is prevented and opening from inside is possible.

WARNING

If the vehicle key is left unattended in the vehicle, children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine or switch on the ignition and thus operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.

WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

NOTICE

External influences can restrict the vehicle key functions and damage the key.

- Protect the key from moisture and excessive vibration.

The service life of the button cell in the vehicle key will be shortened by regular use of convenience systems and other use behaviour.

Manual key



Fig. 1 Vehicle key: releasing the manual key (illustration).

1. Press the release button briefly. The keyring folds open.
2. Press the release button and pull the manual key out in the direction of the arrow.
3. Manual key.

A manual key is located in the vehicle key which can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle manually → *Fig. 1*.

If the vehicle or vehicle key battery is flat, it may be necessary to lock or unlock the vehicle manually *(→ Doors)*.

Changing the button cell

Volkswagen recommends having the button cell replaced by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer →⚠.

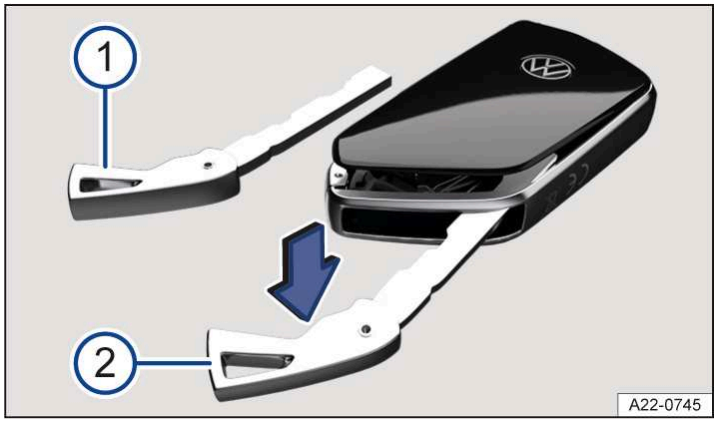


Fig. 1 Vehicle key: opening the battery compartment cover.

(1) Manual key.
(2) Lever out the cover.



Fig. 2 Vehicle key: replacing the button cell.

1. Remove the manual key →*Fig. 1* (1) *(→ Vehicle key)*.
2. Insert the manual key in the slot, press in the direction of the arrow and lever off the cover →*Fig. 1* (2).
3. Lever the button cell out of the battery compartment →*Fig. 2* , →⚠.
4. Press the new button cell into the battery compartment.
5. Press the cover onto the housing →*Fig. 2* , →ⓘ.
6. Put the manual key back *(→ Vehicle key)*.
7. Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally responsible way.

⚠ DANGER

If button cell batteries are swallowed or get into the wind pipe, this will lead to serious or even fatal injuries due to suffocation or internal burns within a very short space of time.

- Call for medical help immediately if you suspect that someone has swallowed a button cell battery.
- Always keep the vehicle key and key fob with button cells out of the reach of children.

ⓘ NOTICE

The vehicle key can be damaged if the button cell is not changed properly or if an unsuitable battery is used.

- Replace a discharged battery only with a new battery of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when inserting the battery.
- If the battery compartment cover cannot be closed, do not use the remote control.

The type of batteries used in the remote control of your vehicle key may contain perchlorate. This may require special handling. Please observe all the legal requirements regarding the handling and disposal of these batteries *(→ Product recycling)*. Volkswagen recommends having this service carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Synchronising the vehicle key

If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key, synchronise the vehicle key or replace the button cell *(→ Vehicle key)*.

Synchronising the vehicle key

1. Unfold key bit or remove spare key.
2. If necessary, remove the cover of the driver door handle *(→ Doors)*.
3. Press the button on the vehicle key.
4. Unlock the vehicle using the key bit.
5. Open the driver door.

   If the vehicle has an anti-theft alarm, this will be triggered immediately *(→ Anti-theft alarm)*.
6. Switch on the ignition.

   The synchronisation process is complete.

Troubleshooting

Vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked

The vehicle key is subject to interference caused by obstacles, adverse weather conditions or other transmitters operating in the same frequency range in the vicinity of the vehicle, e.g. mobile telephones, or due to a weak or flat button cell.

1. Close the driver door.

   Or: synchronise the vehicle key *(→ Vehicle key)*.

   Or: change the button cell in the vehicle key *(→ Vehicle key)*.

The central locking system switches off temporarily to protect itself from overloading.

1. Wait for about 10 seconds.
2. Try to activate the central locking system again.

Indicator lamp does not flash

If the indicator lamp in the vehicle key does not flash when a button is pressed, the button cell in the vehicle key must be replaced.

Vehicle does not flash when locked

— All doors, the bonnet and the boot lid must be fully closed. The turn signals flash only if the vehicle is fully closed.

— Check whether the vehicle key is close enough to the vehicle.

— Check the charge level of the key battery.

The indicator lamp in the vehicle key must light up each time the buttons are pressed.

The central locking button lights up white.

— The vehicle is unlocked.

— Close all doors and operate the central locking button in the door.

— The central locking button lights up yellow when all doors have been locked from inside.

— If the central locking button still lights up white, the doors are not locked and there is a fault. Go to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Vehicle cannot be unlocked due to a flat key battery

1. Remove the manual key from the vehicle key *(→ Vehicle key)*.
2. Insert the manual key in the door lock cylinder and turn anticlockwise.

   On right-hand-drive vehicles, turn the manual key clockwise.
3. The driver door is unlocked mechanically.
4. Open the driver door.
5. Switch on the ignition. The alarm is ended.
6. To unlock the other doors, operate the central locking button in the door.

Depending on equipment, an alarm is triggered when the door is opened.

Vehicle cannot be unlocked due to a flat vehicle battery

1. Remove the manual key from the vehicle key *(→ Vehicle key)*.

2. Insert the manual key in the door lock cylinder and turn anticlockwise.

   On right-hand-drive vehicles, turn the manual key clockwise.

3. The driver door is unlocked mechanically.
4. Open the driver door.
5. If the SAFELOCK function was not activated previously, all doors can now be opened and unlocked individually by pulling the respective interior door handle.
6. It is not possible to open the other doors if the SAFELOCK is activated.

The central locking functions will be available again after the convenience battery has been charged.

Additional or replacement vehicle keys can be obtained from an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

Depending on equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with the Keyless Access function.

Keyless Access enables the vehicle to be locked and unlocked without active use of the key. For this purpose, a valid vehicle key must be within close range of the vehicle.

Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access

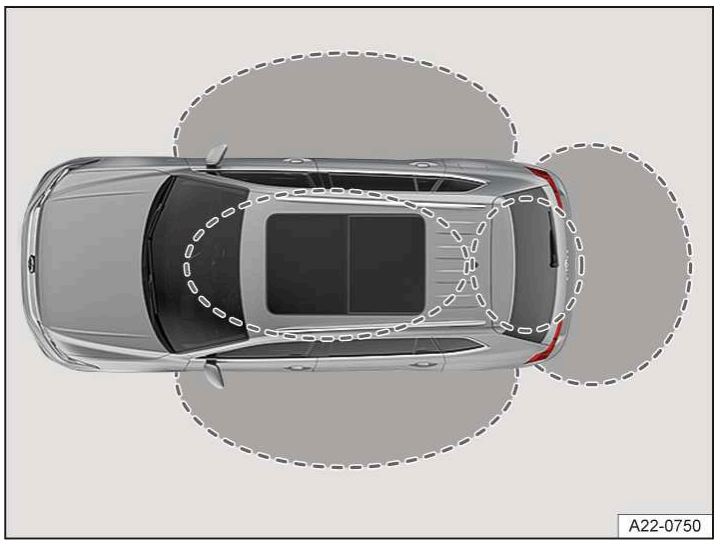


Fig. 1 Keyless Access: operating ranges (illustration).

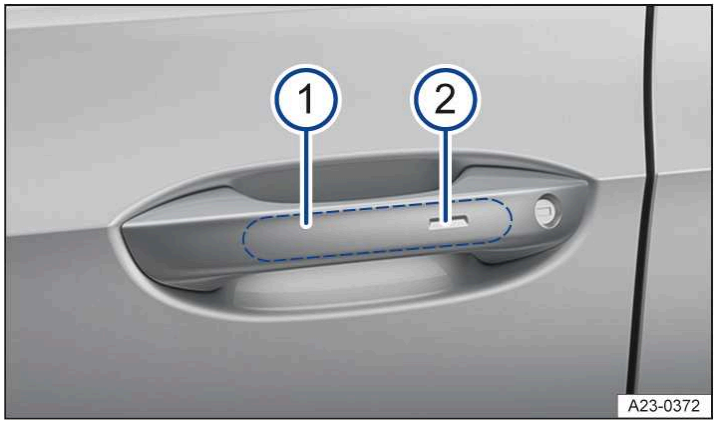


Fig. 2 In the door handle: sensors.

1. Sensor surface on the inside of the driver or passenger door handle.
2. Sensor surface on the outside of the driver or passenger door handle.

Configuring Keyless Access

The behaviour of Keyless Access can be set in the **Opening and closing** menu in the Infotainment system.

It is recommended to always leave Keyless Access activated.

Unlock the vehicle

1. Touch the sensor on the inside of the door handle → *Fig. 2*.

   All turn signals flash twice.

The driver door is unlocked. All doors can also be opened simultaneously by the central locking button in the driver door or by reaching into the door handle twice in quick succession. If single door unlocking is activated, only the driver door can be unlocked when the vehicle is approached on the driver side. Other doors are not unlocked. All doors or one side of the vehicle can be selected in the settings of the Infotainment system.

To access the settings in the Infotainment system, select **Vehicle** and swipe to the left until **Central locking** is shown. After selecting this option, the selection options for door unlocking will be displayed. **All doors**: all doors and the boot lid are unlocked. **Single door**: only the driver door is unlocked with the first unlocking operation. The complete vehicle is unlocked with the second unlocking

operation. **Vehicle side**: only the doors on the driver side are unlocked in the first unlocking operation. The complete vehicle is unlocked with the second unlocking operation.

Unlocking the vehicle when approaching

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be unlocked automatically when you approach it. The following conditions need to be met simultaneously:

✓ The function is activated in the Infotainment system.

✓ The vehicle key is in the vehicle's unlocking range.

All turn signals flash twice when automatic unlocking has been performed successfully.

If the vehicle has not been unlocked for an extended period, the function will be available again only after the next engine start.

If single door unlocking is activated, the driver door will be unlocked only if the vehicle is approached on the driver side. Other doors are not unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle with the vehicle key

1. With active single door unlocking: the driver door is unlocked when the button is pressed once. All doors and the boot lid are unlocked if the button on the vehicle key is pressed twice.

Lock the vehicle

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle → *Fig. 2*.

   All turn signals flash once.

The vehicle unlocking procedure is confirmed by all the turn signals flashing twice and the locking procedure by all the turn signals flashing once.

Locking the vehicle when walking away

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be locked automatically when you walk away from it. The following conditions need to be met simultaneously:

✓ The function is activated in the Infotainment system.

✓ The last key belonging to the vehicle leaves the locking range.

All turn signals flash once when automatic locking has been performed successfully.

One-off deactivation of automatic locking:

1. Press the button in the driver door for longer than 2 seconds while the door is open.

   Automatic locking will then not be available until the next time the vehicle is locked intentionally.

The vehicle will be locked only if all doors and the boot lid are closed. A double acoustic warning may be output to indicate that there are open doors or an open boot lid if this function has been activated in the settings.

Locking takes place without SAFELOCK in the case of locking when walking away from the vehicle. This is signalled to the user by single acoustic feedback. SAFELOCK locking of the vehicle takes place only after intentional locking at the door handle or with the vehicle key.

If the key is located in the detection range around the vehicle for an extended period, this can lead to restrictions in the locking function when walking away or the unlocking function when approaching.

Certain devices can prevent locking. The vehicle will then remain unlocked without an acoustic warning. Always make sure that the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle was parked and not used for an extended period, the vehicle can be unlocked only by means of the sensor on the inside of the driver door handle or using the vehicle key.

Locking and unlocking the boot lid

When the vehicle is locked, the boot lid will be unlocked automatically if it is opened when a vehicle key is located within the unlocking range of the boot lid. The boot lid will be locked again after closing.

When **Central locking, all doors** and **Keyless Access unlocking when approaching** are activated in the Infotainment system, the vehicle remains unlocked after the boot lid has been opened and closed. The vehicle must be actively locked.

If **Keyless Access locking when walking away** is activated, the vehicle is also locked automatically when you walk away from it.

Temporarily deactivating the keyless locking and starting system Keyless Access

The Keyless Access unlocking function can be deactivated temporarily.

1. Lock the vehicle with the button on the vehicle key.
2. Then touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle once within 5 seconds → *Fig. 2*. Do not put your hand around the door handle when doing this.

   Keyless Access is now temporarily deactivated.
3. To check deactivation, wait for at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle again.

   It should not be possible to open the door.

When the vehicle is next unlocked, it can be unlocked only using the vehicle key. The keyless locking and starting system Keyless Access is reactivated the next time the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanently deactivating Keyless Access

Keyless Access can be permanently deactivated in the Infotainment system.

When Keyless Access is deactivated, depending on the vehicle equipment, the sensor-controlled opening and closing of the boot lid *(→ Boot lid, automatic (Easy Open))* is also deactivated even if the function is activated in the vehicle menu.

Operating the convenience functions

The electric windows can be closed automatically.

1. Place a finger on the sensor of the driver or front passenger door handle for a few seconds → *Fig. 2*.

The sensor functions can be set in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system.

The unlocking function is deactivated for a few seconds so that you can check that the vehicle has been locked successfully.

A vehicle with DSG® dual clutch gearbox can be locked only when the parking lock P is engaged.

The entire vehicle will be unlocked if the sensor is touched twice, even if a single door has already been unlocked.

Troubleshooting

Keyless Access does not work

The function of the door handle sensors may be restricted if they become very dirty.

1. Clean the sensors.

All turn signals flash four times

The vehicle key used last is still in the vehicle.

1. Remove the key and lock the vehicle.

The vehicle will lock itself automatically after 45 seconds even if the vehicle key is still in the vehicle.

Automatic deactivation of the sensors

The sensors will be deactivated in the following circumstances:

— The vehicle is not unlocked or locked for an extended period.

— A sensor has been triggered an excessive number of times.

Activating sensors again:

1. Unlock the vehicle with the button on the vehicle key.

No valid vehicle key recognised

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A text message is additionally shown on the instrument cluster display.

The vehicle key is no longer in the vehicle.

1. Do not switch off the engine.
2. Bring the vehicle key back into the vehicle.

   Or: depending on the equipment, remove the vehicle key from the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging function. Then place the vehicle key in the stowage area of the centre console.

If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Automatic unlocking or locking does not work

The vehicle does not unlock when approached.

— The function must be set in the Infotainment system.

The vehicle does not lock upon moving away.

— The function is not selected in the Infotainment system.

— There is still a vehicle key in the vehicle.

— The doors, windows or boot lid are not fully closed

If at least one window is open and the sensors in a door handle are continuously activated, all windows will close.

If the message **Keyless system faulty** appears on the instrument cluster display, malfunctions may occur in the Keyless Access system. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

The central locking system enables you to centrally lock and unlock all the doors, the boot lid and the tank flap of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be locked if the ignition has been switched off or the driver has switched off the engine before leaving the vehicle.

The doors can be locked manually and, in some cases, also unlocked manually, if the vehicle key or central locking fails, for example.

Display with open doors

A symbol in the instrument cluster display indicates if one or more doors are not closed properly.

STOP Do not drive on!

1. Park the vehicle safely if necessary.
2. Open the door in question and then close it again.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors are closed.

WARNING

Any door that is not properly closed could open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Stop immediately as soon as traffic permits and close the door.
- Make sure that the door is closed properly and that the lock has engaged. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding body panels.

WARNING

Any door being held open by the door arrester could close unexpectedly in strong winds or if the vehicle is on an uphill slope. This could lead to serious injuries.

- Always hold the door handle firmly when opening and closing doors.

WARNING

Opening and closing the doors and boot lid without taking due care is dangerous and can cause serious injuries.

- Open or close the doors and boot lid only when there is no-one in their movement path.

WARNING

The central locking system locks all doors. In the event of an emergency or an accident, locked doors can make it more difficult for persons providing assistance to gain access to the vehicle interior. If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the doors and electric windows cannot be opened from the inside. There is a risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

WARNING

All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This may mean that children, people requiring assistance or animals lock themselves in the vehicle. In an emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle independently or to help themselves. In addition, they could also be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Removing the caps without taking due care can damage the vehicle.

- When carrying out manual opening or closing, remove parts carefully and fit them again correctly.

Locking the vehicle from the inside can prevent accidental opening of the doors and unauthorised persons from entering the vehicle.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation.

Indicator lamp in the driver door

The central locking system indicator lamp is located in the driver door.

The indicator lamp indicates the status of the central locking system for around 30 seconds after the vehicle has been locked.

A red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds at short intervals.

The status of the central locking system is then indicated for 28 seconds:

Vehicle with SAFELOCK

— The vehicle is locked with SAFELOCK if the red LED flashes at long intervals.

— If the red LED is not lit up, the vehicle is locked but without SAFELOCK.

Vehicle without SAFELOCK

— The vehicle is locked if the red LED flashes at long intervals.

The LED flashes at slow intervals after around 30 seconds.

Points to note

If the red LED is lit up continuously, there is a fault in the central locking system or the anti-theft alarm system.

Automatic locking and unlocking

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the settings for central locking can be made in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The vehicle locks itself automatically at speeds above approximately 15 km/h (around 9 mph). The indicator lamp in the central locking button will light up yellow when the vehicle is locked.

Automatic unlocking (Auto Unlock)

All vehicle doors and the boot lid are automatically unlocked if one of the following conditions applies:

— In an accident, when airbags have triggered.

— **Or:** *on vehicles with automatic gearbox:* the parking lock **P** is engaged and the ignition is switched off.

— **Or:** the door release lever has been operated. This applies at speeds up to around 15 km/h (around 9 mph).

Automatic unlocking gives emergency responders access to the vehicle.

Central locking button



Fig. 1 In the driver door: central locking button (illustration).

(1) Central locking button.



Fig. 2 In the driver door: button for opening or closing the boot lid electrically (illustration).

(1) Button for opening and closing the boot lid electrically.

- unlock the vehicle.

- lock the vehicle.

- open or close the boot lid.

The central locking button functions with the ignition switched on or off only when all doors are closed.

If the button in the driver door is pulled, only the boot lid opens. All doors remain locked.

If the vehicle has been locked from outside with the vehicle key, the central locking buttons do not work.

Please note the following when using the central locking button to lock the vehicle from inside:

— The indicator lamp in the button lights up yellow when all doors are closed and locked.

— The anti-theft alarm will not be activated *(→ Anti-theft alarm)*.

The doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle. The indicator lamp in the button goes out. The unopened doors and boot lid remain locked and cannot be opened from the outside.

Manually close the front passenger door and rear doors



Fig. 1 In the end face of the right-hand door: locking the vehicle manually with the manual key.

The front passenger door and the rear doors can be locked manually.

The anti-theft alarm is not activated.

1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key bit or manual key into the slot and turn or press → *Fig. 1*.
3. Check that the door is locked. To do this, pull the door handle forcefully.
4. Have the vehicle checked immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The manually locked door is unlocked again when the vehicle is unlocked or the door is opened from the inside.

The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle.

Childproof lock

The childproof lock is located in the inner door panel of the rear doors.

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors being opened from the inside →⚠.

When the childproof lock is activated, the door can only be opened from the outside.

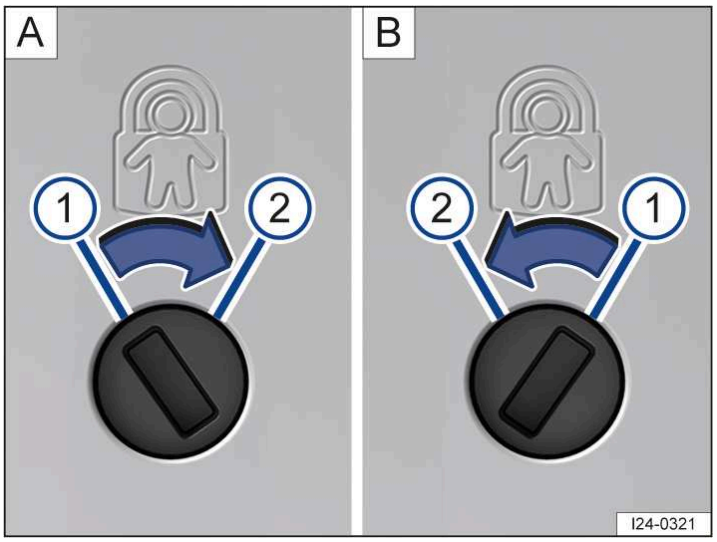


Fig. 1 Childproof lock: A rear left door, B rear right door.

1. Childproof lock is switched off.
2. Childproof lock is switched on.

Switching the childproof lock on and off

1. Unlock the vehicle and open the appropriate rear door.
2. Move the slot to the corresponding position → *Fig. 1*.

⚠ WARNING

The door cannot be opened from the inside when the childproof lock is activated. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. In an emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle independently or to help themselves.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked.

⚠ WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Electric childproof lock

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may have an electric childproof lock.



Fig. 1 In the driver door: buttons for the electric childproof lock.

(1) Left button for the electric childproof lock.

(2) Right button for the electrical childproof lock.

The electric childproof lock stops the doors from being opened and the electric windows in the doors from being operated . The electric window and door lock controls can be switched separately for the left or right side.

Switching on the electric childproof lock

1. Press the left button → *Fig. 1* (1) or the right button → *Fig. 1* (2).

The yellow indicator lamp lights up in the respective button when the function is switched on.

Switching off the electrical childproof lock

1. Press the respective button again → *Fig. 1*.

WARNING

When the electric childproof lock is activated, the door cannot be opened from the inside. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. In an emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle independently or to help themselves.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked.

WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

SAFELOCK

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may have a SAFELOCK mechanism.

The SAFELOCK deactivates the door release levers if the vehicle has been locked. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside →⚠.

Deactivating SAFELOCK

The SAFELOCK can be deactivated in one of the following ways:

— Press the button on the vehicle key again within 2 seconds.

— On vehicles with the keyless locking and starting system Keyless Access: Touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle again within 2 seconds .

— Switch on the ignition.

— **Or:** deactivate the interior monitoring system and the anti-tow alarm *(→ Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm)*.

Depending on the equipment level, temporarily deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the Infotainment system before locking the vehicle *(→ Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm)*.

There may be an indication of the activated SAFELOCK in the display of the instrument cluster.

The following applies when SAFELOCK is deactivated:

— The vehicle can be unlocked and opened from the inside using the door release lever.

— The anti-theft alarm is active *(→ Anti-theft alarm)*.

— The interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm are deactivated *(→ Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm)*.

⚠ WARNING

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside once the SAFELOCK is activated. Careless or unsupervised use of SAFELOCK can lock people in the vehicle interior and cause serious injuries in the event of an emergency.

- Never leave anybody in the vehicle if the vehicle has been locked using the vehicle key.

If you unlock the driver door mechanically using the vehicle key, only the driver door is unlocked, and not the whole vehicle. The doors are released (but not unlocked) and the central locking button is activated only when you switch on the ignition.

Troubleshooting

Indicator lamp lights up continuously

The red LED in the vehicle door flashes at short intervals and then lights up continuously.

There is a fault in the locking system.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Turn signals do not flash

The turn signals do not flash as confirmation when the vehicle is locked.

1. Check to make sure that all the doors, the boot lid and the bonnet are closed.

Vehicle locks itself automatically

The vehicle will lock itself again automatically after around 45 seconds if all the following conditions apply:

— The vehicle was unlocked using the vehicle key or Keyless Access.

— The boot lid was not opened.

— No door was opened.

— The ignition was not switched on.

Manual locking and unlocking on vehicles with open door lock cylinder

1. To unlock manually, insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder and turn it anticlockwise.

   On right-hand drive vehicles, turn the vehicle key clockwise.

   Only the driver door is opened.

   The anti-theft alarm sounds.
2. Switch on the ignition to turn off the anti-theft alarm.
3. The other doors can now be opened using the central locking button.

1. To lock manually, insert the vehicle key into the lock and turn it clockwise.

   On right-hand drive vehicles, turn the vehicle key anticlockwise.

   All doors are locked.

   The anti-theft alarm is activated.
2. Check that all doors are locked.

Response when locking the vehicle with a second vehicle key

On vehicles with the keyless locking and starting system Keyless Access: the vehicle key inside the vehicle is disabled for starting the engine as soon as the vehicle is locked from outside with a second vehicle key. However, an emergency start is possible.

1. To enable the vehicle key inside the vehicle for a normal engine start, press the button on the vehicle key inside the vehicle.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle after airbags have been triggered

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the airbags are activated during an accident. The doors can be opened without a key by forcefully pulling the door handles.

Depending on the extent of the damage, the vehicle can be locked after an accident as follows:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the driver's door and close it again.
3. Lock the vehicle.

It may not be possible to lock or unlock the vehicle using Keyless Access if the 12-volt vehicle battery or button cell in the vehicle key is weak or discharged. The vehicle can be unlocked or locked manually.

If there is no valid vehicle key in the vehicle or if it is not detected, a corresponding display will be shown on the instrument cluster display. This may occur if the vehicle key is disrupted by another radio signal or is covered by another item such as an aluminium suitcase.

Anti-theft alarm

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may have an anti-theft alarm.

The anti-theft alarm monitors the doors, bonnet and the boot lid.

The anti-theft alarm is automatically activated when the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is not opened electronically with a valid vehicle key, the anti-theft alarm is triggered and emits acoustic and visual warning signals for up to 5 minutes.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

— When a door that was unlocked mechanically with the vehicle key is opened.

— When the bonnet is opened.

— When the boot lid is opened.

— If the ignition is switched on using an invalid key.

— If the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected.

— If a bicycle carrier that is connected to the anti-theft alarm system is removed.

— If a trailer that is connected to the anti-theft alarm system is removed.

— If there is movement inside a vehicle with interior monitoring *(→ Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm)*.

— If vehicles with anti-tow alarm are lifted or towed *(→ Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm)*.

— If vehicles with anti-tow alarm or interior monitoring are transported on a car ferry or by rail *(→ Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm)*.

— If a device is connected to the diagnostic connection when the anti-theft alarm system is active.

Switching off the alarm

1. Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button on the vehicle key.

   Or: switch on the ignition using a valid vehicle key.
2. *On vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system:* when the vehicle key is within range for unlocking, grip the door handle .

The anti-theft alarm will not function correctly if the 12-volt vehicle battery is weak or discharged.

If the connection to a trailer connected to the anti-theft alarm system is interrupted, the anti-theft alarm system may be triggered .

Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm



Fig. 1 In the roof console: sensors for the interior monitoring system (arrows).

In some markets, the vehicle is equipped with interior monitoring and an anti-tow alarm, depending on the vehicle specification.

If movements are detected in the vehicle interior when the vehicle is locked, the interior monitoring triggers an alarm.

The anti-tow alarm will be triggered if the vehicle is lifted.

Switching on the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm

Close the stowage compartments in the roof console so that the sensors can function.

1. Close the doors and boot lid.
2. Press the locking button once.

The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm are activated.

Depending on the equipment, the function of interior monitoring may be impaired if a load guard is used.

Temporarily switching off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm

With some equipment levels, the interior monitoring system and the tow-away protection can be switched off temporarily in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system.
3. Close all doors and the boot lid.
4. Lock the vehicle using the vehicle key.

The interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm are deactivated until the next time the vehicle is locked.

We recommend deactivating the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm in the following situations:

— If any people or animals are to remain in the vehicle interior for a short period.

— If the vehicle is to be loaded onto another vehicle.

— If the vehicle is being transported.

— If the vehicle is going to be towed with one axle off the ground.

— If the vehicle is to be parked in a two-storey garage.

— If the vehicle is to be parked in a car wash.

Risk of false alarms for the interior monitoring system

Interior monitoring can only work properly if the vehicle is completely closed. Observe the legal requirements. A false alarm can be triggered in the following situations:

— If one or more windows or the glass roof are fully or partially open.

— If lightweight items such as loose pieces of paper or items hung from the interior mirror are left in the vehicle.

— If the vibration alarm of a mobile telephone is switched on.

Permanent deactivation of interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm is not possible.

If doors or the boot lid are still open when the vehicle is locked, only the anti-theft alarm without interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm is activated. Interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm are not activated until all doors and the boot lid are closed.

SAFELOCK is also deactivated when the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm are switched off, depending on equipment *(→ SAFELOCK)*.

Introduction to the topic

On vehicles with Keyless Access, the boot lid is automatically unlocked upon opening .

If single door or vehicle side unlocking is activated in the opening and closing settings in the Infotainment system, press the button on the vehicle key twice to unlock the boot lid.

On vehicles with Keyless Access, operate the sensor on the inside of the driver or front passenger door handle twice, depending on setting.

WARNING

Incorrect and unsupervised unlocking, opening or closing of the boot lid can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Open or close the boot lid only when there is no-one in the movement path of the boot lid.
- Always keep the boot lid closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Close and lock the boot lid and all doors when the vehicle is not in use.
- Check that the closed boot lid is flush with the surrounding body parts.

WARNING

Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may be extremely hot or cold depending on the season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially among small children.

- Ensure that no one remains in the vehicle.
- Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid, thereby trapping themselves inside.

WARNING

It may not always be apparent that the boot lid is unlocked when a loaded luggage carrier is attached to it. If unlocked, the boot lid may open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This can cause serious injuries.

- Check that the closed boot lid is flush with the surrounding body parts.

WARNING

If there is a large amount of snow or a heavy load on the boot lid, the boot lid may lower by itself and cause serious injuries due to the additional weight.

- Never open the boot lid if it is covered by a large amount of snow or a load is attached to it, e.g. a luggage carrier.
- Remove the snow or load before opening the boot lid.
- Support the boot lid if necessary or remove the load or snow before opening the boot lid.

WARNING

If the boot lid is not closed correctly, this can cause the rear window to shatter and lead to serious injuries.

- Never close the boot lid by pressing with your hand on the rear window.

NOTICE

Incorrect use of the opening mechanism can damage the component and make it impossible to close the boot lid.

- Never use the opening mechanism to hold or fix a load.

NOTICE

Incorrect use of the rear window wiper can damage the component and lead to the component being torn off.

- Never use the rear window wiper to hold or fix a load.

NOTICE

Incorrect use of the boot lid or rear spoiler can damage the component and lead to the component being torn off.

- Never use the boot lid or roof spoiler to hold or fix a load.

Opening and closing the boot lid

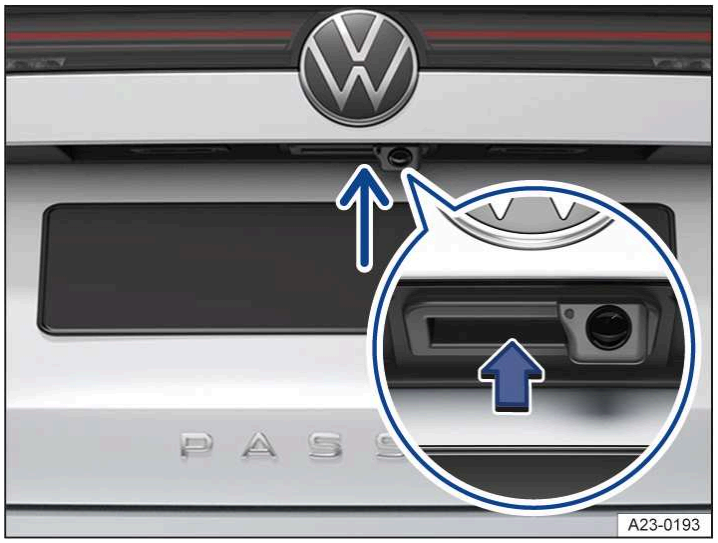


Fig. 1 In the boot lid: button for opening the boot lid.



Fig. 2 In the open boot lid: handle for closing the boot lid (illustration).

Opening the boot lid

1. To unlock the boot lid, press the or button on the vehicle key.
2. Lift the boot lid with the button → *Fig. 1*.

Closing the boot lid

1. Pull the boot lid down carefully using the handle in the interior trim so that it engages in the lock → *Fig. 2*.

If the boot lid is open or not correctly closed, this is indicated on the instrument cluster display.

The boot lid is locked automatically when the vehicle is moving. To unlock the boot lid again, the driver door must be opened or the central locking button in the driver door pressed.

WARNING

Serious injuries can occur if the boot lid is closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.
- When opening the boot lid, make sure the boot lid is moved fully up.
- When closing the boot lid, make sure that no-one has their hands in the direct path of the boot lid as it moves.

If the boot lid is not opened within a few minutes after unlocking, it automatically locks again.

Electrically opening and closing the boot lid



Fig. 1 In the open boot lid: button for closing boot lid electrically.

Electrically opening the boot lid

1. To unlock the boot lid, briefly press and hold the button on the vehicle key.

   Or: pull the button in the driver door upwards → *Central locking button*.

   The parking lock **P** must be inserted.

   Or: press the button on the boot lid.

   The boot lid will then open.

Electrically closing the boot lid

1. Press the button in the open boot lid → *Fig. 1*.

   Or: with the ignition on, pull the button in the driver door upwards until the boot lid is closed.

   Or: *in vehicles with keyless locking and starting system Keyless Access:* briefly press and hold the button on the vehicle key. The vehicle key must be in the operating range of the boot lid.

   Or: close the boot lid by moving it manually until the boot lid closes by itself.

   The boot lid is closed.

Interrupting the opening or closing procedure

1. Pull the button during the opening or closing procedure.

   Or: press the button on the boot lid during the opening or closing procedure → *Fig. 1*.

   Or: release the button in the driver door during the closing procedure.

   The boot lid can now be moved by hand. You will need to use more force than usual.

Pressing the button again will move the boot lid back to its starting position.

Acoustic signals

If the boot lid is opened or closed from the vehicle interior or with the vehicle key, acoustic signals will sound.

Changing and storing the opening angle

The opening angle of the boot lid can be changed. This may be necessary if the boot lid cannot be opened fully.

1. Stop the opening procedure at the desired open position.

   The boot lid must be at least half open.

2. Press and hold the button in the boot lid until the hazard warning lights flash → *Fig. 1*.

   The changed opening angle will be stored.

   The hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal sounds to confirm that the changed opening angle has been stored.

Resetting and storing the opening angle

The opening angle will have to be reset and stored again in order to fully open the boot lid again.

1. Press the open boot lid up by hand to the stop. You will need to use more force than usual.
2. Press and hold the → *Fig. 1* button in the boot lid until the hazard warning lights flash.

   The opening angle will be reset.

   The hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal sounds to confirm that the opening angle has been reset.

WARNING

Serious injuries can occur if the boot lid is closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- When closing the boot lid, make sure that no-one has their hands in the direct path of the boot lid as it moves.

NOTICE

If the boot lid is opened or closed where there is insufficient clearance, this may result in damage.

- Check whether there is enough clearance before opening or closing the boot lid, for example in garages.

Boot lid with motion sensor (Easy Open)



Fig. 1 Illustration of the boot lid with sensor-controlled opening (Easy Open).

Depending on country, the boot lid can be unlocked and opened with a foot movement if there is a valid vehicle key within the operating range of the boot lid.

1. Stand centrally behind the bumper.
2. Move your foot and shin quickly towards the bumper → *Fig. 1*.
3. Then quickly move your foot and shin away from the bumper again.

Visual feedback is provided via the turn signals. The boot lid opens.

Activating or deactivating Easy Open

Easy Open can be activated and deactivated in the Infotainment system:

1. Select the **Vehicle** menu.
2. Select the **Exterior** submenu.
3. Swipe sideways and activate or deactivate **Easy Open**.

Or:

1. Swipe sideways and select the **Central locking** menu option.
2. Scroll down the list and activate or deactivate **Easy Open**.

If Easy Open is activated, Easy Close is also active, depending on the vehicle equipment *(→ Boot lid, automatic (Easy Close))*.

The Easy Open function is available only when Keyless Access is activated .

The Easy Open function can be triggered unintentionally in the following situations:

— If a fuel hose is routed around the lower rear area of the vehicle when refuelling.

— When sweeping below the rear bumper.

— By a strong water or steam jet.

— If maintenance and repair work is performed in the area of the rear bumper.

— By moving gates in the close range of the bumper.

⚠ CAUTION

If there is a valid vehicle key in the operating range of the boot lid, the Easy Open function may be activated unintentionally in some cases and the boot lid will then open. If the boot lid is opened by mistake it can cause damage to anyone in the path of the boot lid and material damage.

- After parking the vehicle, switch off the Easy Open function via the Infotainment system if you park close to obstacles, e.g. street lamps, posts or garage doors, or in an underground car park with a low ceiling height.
- Always make sure that there are no valid vehicle keys left unattended in the operating range of the boot lid.
- Always switch off the Easy Open function via the Infotainment system before carrying out any maintenance or repair work on the vehicle.
- Always switch off the Easy Open function via the Infotainment system before washing the vehicle.
- Always switch off the Easy Open function via the Infotainment system before fitting a bicycle carrier or attaching a trailer *(→ Trailer towing)*.

Closing the boot lid automatically (Easy Close)



Fig. 1 Illustration of the boot lid with sensor-controlled closing (Easy Close).

The Easy Close function is country-dependent and can be activated only if there is a valid vehicle key in the operating range of the boot lid.

1. Stand centrally behind the bumper.
2. Move your foot and shin quickly towards the bumper → *Fig. 1*.
3. Then quickly move your foot and shin away from the bumper again.

Easy Close is activated for around 20 seconds. An acoustic signal confirms activation.

The boot lid will be closed as soon as all valid vehicle keys have been removed from the operating range of the boot lid.

The boot lid will lock again automatically, provided that the vehicle had been locked beforehand and as long as there is no valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.

Easy Close allows a maximum of one vehicle key to be locked into the boot.

The closing operation will be interrupted as soon as a vehicle key comes within the operating range again. The boot lid will then open again.

Activating or deactivating Easy Close

The Easy Close function can be activated and deactivated together with the Easy Open function in the **Vehicle** menu in the Infotainment system *(→ Boot lid, automatic (Easy Open))*.

The Easy Close function is available only when Keyless Access is activated .

The Easy Close function can be triggered unintentionally in the following situations:

— If a fuel hose is routed around the lower rear area of the vehicle when refuelling.

— When sweeping below the rear bumper.

— By a strong water or steam jet.

— If maintenance and repair work is performed in the area of the rear bumper.

— By moving gates in the close range of the bumper.

⚠ CAUTION

If there is a valid vehicle key in the operating range of the boot lid, the Easy Close function may be activated unintentionally in some cases and the boot lid will then close. If the boot lid is closed by mistake, this can cause injuries to persons in the path of the boot lid and material damage.

- After parking the vehicle, switch off the Easy Close function via the Infotainment system if you park close to obstacles, e.g. street lamps, posts or garage doors, or in an underground car park with a low ceiling height.
- Always make sure that there are no valid vehicle keys left unattended in the operating range of the boot lid.
- Always make sure that no one is in the movement path of the boot lid.

- Do not hold on in the movement path of the boot lid.
- Always switch off the Easy Close function via the Infotainment system before carrying out any maintenance or repair work on the vehicle.
- Always switch off the Easy Close function via the Infotainment system before washing the vehicle.
- Always switch off the Easy Close function via the Infotainment system before fitting a bicycle carrier or attaching a trailer *(→ Trailer towing)*.

The closing operation will be automatically interrupted if another boot lid function is activated during closing or if objects are detected in the area of the boot lid.

The boot lid locks automatically after closing if the vehicle is locked and the Easy Close function is started.

Troubleshooting

Automatic boot lid cannot be opened or closed

1. Check whether the boot lid is blocked by an obstacle.

   The boot lid can be moved by hand. You will need to use more force than usual.

— The drive switches off automatically in order to prevent overheating if the boot lid is opened or closed too frequently within a short space of time. The boot lid can be opened and closed by hand with increased force until the drive has cooled down.

— The boot lid must be closed by hand if the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or the fuse is faulty.

Boot lid cannot be opened automatically (trailer towing)

When towing a trailer, the boot lid cannot be opened or closed automatically.

1. Open or close the boot lid by hand.

Manual boot lid is stiff

At outside temperatures around freezing point, the opening mechanism cannot always lift the partially opened boot lid automatically.

1. Guide the boot lid further upwards by hand.

Easy Open sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener is not working

Easy Open works only when the ignition is switched off.

— The sensors in the rear bumper are covered, dirty, displaced or damaged.

— The towing bracket is swivelled out.

— A towing bracket has been retrofitted to the vehicle.

— In order to prevent incorrect triggering, Easy Open may be deactivated in conditions with heavy precipitation.

Easy Close automatic closing is not working

— Switch off the ignition and close the driver door.

— The boot lid must be at least half open.

— Unhitch the trailer .

— There is more than one vehicle key in the luggage compartment.

— Press the Easy Close button again.

Opening and closing windows

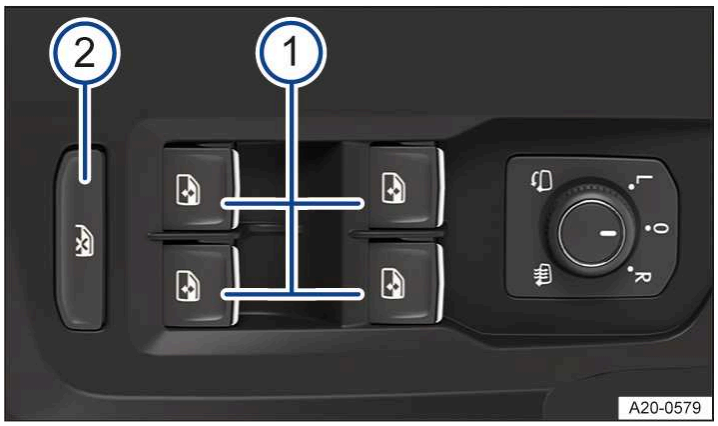


Fig. 1 In the driver door: window regulator switches.

(1) Open windows: press the button.

Close windows: pull the button.

(2) Deactivate the electric window buttons in the rear doors: press button.

The button is located only in the driver door.

The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.

One-touch opening and closing

One-touch opening and closing makes it possible to fully open and close the windows. The individual buttons do not have to be held down to do this.

— To start one-touch closing, pull the button for the appropriate window up briefly into the second position.

— To start one-touch opening, press the button for the appropriate window down briefly into the second position.

— To stop the one-touch function, press or pull the button for the appropriate window again.

Convenience opening and closing

The windows can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key when the ignition is switched off.

Depending on country, it may be possible to only open the windows from outside with the vehicle key.

1. Press and hold the locking or unlocking button on the vehicle key.

   Or: operate the electric window switch in the driver door for a few seconds.

   Or: *in vehicles with the keyless locking and starting system Keyless Access:* place your finger on the locking sensor in the door handle for a few seconds until the windows are closed *(→ Keyless Access)*. The vehicle key must also be within the operating range.

   All turn signals will flash once as confirmation that all the windows have been closed.

   If the vehicle is equipped with a glass roof, this must also be closed.

2. To interrupt this function, let go of the locking or unlocking button.

   Or: release the electric window button.

   Or: to interrupt the function, take your finger off the sensor.

Settings for convenience opening can be adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the electric windows can cause serious injuries.

- Open or close electric windows only when there is no-one in the operating path of the windows.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.
- Please note that the windows can still be opened or closed using the buttons in the doors for a short time after the ignition has been switched off.
- When transporting children on the rear bench seat, the rear electric windows should always be deactivated so that they cannot be opened or closed.

WARNING

When the vehicle is locked, the windows can no longer be opened and this makes it impossible to exit the vehicle interior. In an emergency situation, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked.

NOTICE

If it starts to rain or snow when the windows are open, this can soak the interior equipment of the vehicle and restrict the functions of the controls or damage them.

- Close all windows if it starts to rain or snow.

One-touch opening and closing and the roll-back function will not work if there is a fault in the electric windows. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Convenience opening and closing works only when one-touch opening and closing is activated for all electric windows.

Some settings can be saved in the personalisation user accounts and thus change automatically when a user account is changed.

Electric window roll-back function

The roll-back function for the electric windows can reduce the risk of injuries when the windows are closing.

If the window is not able to close because it is stiff or because of an obstruction, the window will immediately open again →⚠.

1. Check to see why the window has not closed.
2. Try to close the window again.

If the window closing process is interrupted again, the roll-back function will be disabled for a few seconds.

If the window still cannot be closed, the window stops where it is. The window will close without roll-back function if the window regulator switch is pulled again within a few seconds →⚠.

Closing windows without roll-back function

1. Attempt to close the window again within a few seconds by holding the window regulator switch. The roll-back function is deactivated in the process.

   If the closing procedure takes longer than several seconds, the roll-back function will be reactivated. If it is still stiff or obstructed, the window will stop and open again automatically.
2. Go to a suitably qualified workshop if the window still cannot be closed. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

Closing the electric windows without the roll-back function can lead to severe injuries.

- Always take care when closing the windows.
- Close windows only when there is no-one in the operating path.
- Please note that the roll-back function does not prevent fingers and parts of the body being trapped against the window frame.

The roll-back function also takes place with convenience closing.

Troubleshooting

One-touch opening and closing does not work

One-touch opening and closing is deactivated if the 12-volt vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged while the windows were not fully closed. The function will have to be reset.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Close all windows and doors.
3. Pull up the button for the window and hold it in this position for a few seconds.
4. Let go of the button, then pull it up again and hold it in this position.

One-touch opening and closing is now ready for operation.

The one-touch function can be restored for individual windows or for several windows at the same time.

Touch panels react differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Opening and closing the glass roof

The term glass roof is used as a standard term for the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof.



Fig. 1 In the roof: touch control for the glass roof.

(A) Opening or closing the glass roof.

(B) Tilting the glass roof, closing the tilted glass roof or stopping the one-touch function.

The touch control can be operated in two ways: swiping and tapping.

Swipe: fully or partially open and close the roof.

Tap: open the roof to tilted position or close from tilted position.

Tap or swipe again to stop the one-touch function.

Opening the glass roof

— One-touch function: swipe backwards over the touch control → *Fig. 1* (A).

— Manual operation: swipe backwards over the touch control and hold. Release the touch control to stop.

Closing the glass roof

— One-touch function: swipe forwards over the touch control → *Fig. 1* (A).

— Manual operation: swipe forwards over the touch control and hold. Release the touch control to stop.

Tilting the glass roof

— One-touch operation: briefly tap the middle of the button → *Fig. 1* (B).

— Manual operation: briefly tap the middle of the touch control. Release the touch control to stop.

Closing the tilted glass roof

1. Briefly tap the middle of the button → *Fig. 1* (B).

Stopping the one-touch function for the opening or closing procedure

1. Tap or swipe the button again.→ *Fig. 1* (B).

WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the glass roof can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Open or close the glass roof only when there is no-one in the operating path of the roof.
- Please note that the glass roof can still be opened or closed for a short time after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door or front passenger door is not opened.

WARNING

If the vehicle key is left unattended in the vehicle, children or unauthorised persons could lock the vehicle, switch on the ignition, start the engine and operate the glass roof. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.

CAUTION

Depending on the equipment level, the position of the tilted glass roof may change automatically when driving above a certain speed in order to reduce wind noise. A moving glass roof can cause damage and injuries.

- Always make sure that there are no body parts or objects within the opening range of the glass roof.

NOTICE

If the glass roof is opened or tilted when it is raining or snowing, particularly in conditions with ice and snow, this can lead to damage to the vehicle interior and electrical system.

- At winter temperatures, always clear ice and snow from the vehicle roof before using the glass roof.
- Always close the glass roof when you leave the vehicle or if it starts to rain or snow.

NOTICE

The glass roof may be damaged if you operate the glass roof when a roof carrier is fitted.

- Always keep the glass roof closed when using a roof carrier.

Remove leaves and other loose items from the glass roof guide rails at regular intervals using a vacuum cleaner or by hand.

The roll-back function will not work properly if there is a fault with the glass roof. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Convenience opening or closing of the glass roof

Convenience opening and closing

The glass roof can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key:

— Not applicable for USA or Canada: Press and hold the locking or unlocking button on the vehicle key. The glass roof and the roller blind are opened or closed.

— On vehicles with the keyless locking and starting system Keyless Access: Place your finger on the locking sensor in the door handle for a few seconds until the glass roof is closed *(→ Keyless Access)*.

— Release the locking or unlocking button to interrupt this function.

Convenience closing closes all windows in the doors and the glass roof. After all windows and the glass roof have been closed, all turn signals will flash once as confirmation.

Glass roof settings can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system. Convenience opening can be activated in the Infotainment system.

Some settings can be stored in the user accounts of the personalisation function and therefore change when the user account changes.

Glass roof roll-back function

The roll-back function reduces the risk of crush injuries →⚠. If the glass roof is impeded during the closing process, it will open again immediately.

1. Check to see why the glass roof has not closed.
2. Try to close the glass roof again.
3. If the glass roof still cannot be closed, close it without the roll-back function.

Closing the glass roof without the roll-back function

1. If the glass roof cannot be closed, swipe forward over the function button within 5 seconds and hold until the glass roof is fully closed.
2. Go to a suitably qualified workshop if the glass roof still cannot be closed. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

   Depending on the position of the glass roof, the glass roof will stop if the touch control is released prematurely or will open again fully.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the glass roof without the roll-back function can cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Always take care when closing the glass roof.
- Close the glass roof only when there is no-one in its operating path, particularly if it is closed without the roll-back function.
- Please note that the roll-back function does not prevent fingers and parts of the body being trapped against the roof frame.

The roll-back function is also activated if you use the convenience closing function on the vehicle key to close the windows and the glass roof.

Troubleshooting

The glass roof will not close

— The glass roof only works when the ignition is switched on. The glass roof can still be opened or closed for a short time after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door or front passenger door is not opened.

— If it is not possible to close the glass roof electrically, it must be closed manually. The glass roof cannot be closed manually without removing vehicle components. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Touch panels react differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Adjusting the steering wheel position mechanically



Fig. 1 Below the steering wheel in the steering column trim: lever for mechanical adjustment of the steering wheel position (illustration).

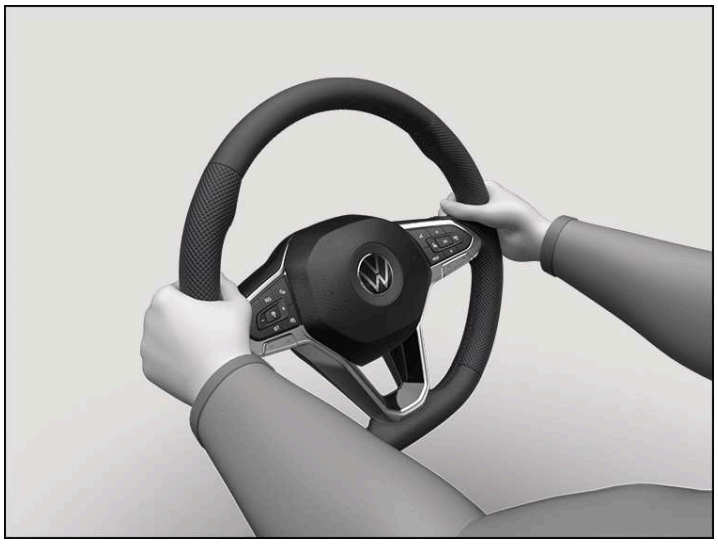


Fig. 2 On the steering wheel: 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position (illustration).

Adjust the steering wheel position before setting off and only when the vehicle is stationary →⚠.

1. Push down the lever → *Fig. 1* (1).
2. Adjust the steering wheel so that you can hold it with both hands at its outer edge at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions → *Fig. 2* with your arms slightly bent.
3. Push the lever up firmly until it is flush with the steering column trim →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering wheel position adjustment and incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- After adjusting the steering wheel, always move the lever → *Fig. 1* (1) up firmly. This prevents the steering wheel from moving accidentally while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is in motion. If you determine that adjustment is necessary when driving, stop the vehicle safely and adjust the steering wheel to the correct position.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and not towards the face. This ensures that the driver front airbag provides maximum protection in the event of an accident.
- While driving, always keep both hands on the outside of the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions → *Fig. 2*. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver front airbag is triggered.

- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner, e.g. at the hub of the steering wheel. If the driver front airbag is triggered, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.

Introduction to the topic

The following section describes the options for adjusting the front seats. Always ensure that your sitting position is correct *(→ Sitting position)*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an incorrect seating position caused by wrongly adjusted seats can lead to serious injuries.

- Always adjust the front seats to their correct position before any journey, and ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary. The seats could change position unexpectedly if you attempt to reposition them while the vehicle is in motion so that you lose of control of the vehicle as a result. Furthermore, an incorrect sitting position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- Adjust the height and angle of the front seats or move them forwards and backwards only when there is no-one in the adjustment range of the seats.
- The adjustment range of the seats must not be restricted by any items.
- The areas for adjusting and locking the seats must not be soiled.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of seat covers or protective covers may lead to the electrical seat controls being operated accidentally and the front seats moving unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving. You could lose control over the vehicle. This could result in serious injury and accidents. Furthermore, this may result in damage to the electrical components in the front seats.

- Never fit seat or protective covers on the electric controls.
- Do not fit seat covers or protective covers over the seats unless they have been expressly approved for use in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Any lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or accidentally lit. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before adjusting the seats, always make sure that there is no cigarette lighter on or near the movable parts of the seat.

NOTICE

Sharp edges can damage the seats.

- Do not touch the seats with sharp-edged objects. Sharp objects, such as zips, rivets on clothing or belts, may damage surfaces. Open Velcro fasteners may also cause damage.

Mechanically adjusting the front seat

The following section contains a description of all possible controls. The number of controls may vary depending on the version of the seat.

The controls are mirrored for the front passenger seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.



Fig. 1 Driver's seat: controls

1. To adjust the seat backrest, relieve the pressure on the backrest and turn the handwheel.
2. To adjust the seat height, move the lever up or down, repeating several times if necessary.
3. To adjust the tilt angle of the seat cushion, pull or press the lever, repeating several times if necessary.
4. To move the front seat forward or back, pull the lever. The front seat must engage after you release the lever!

Electrically adjusting the front seat

The electric controls are country-specific and depend on the vehicle equipment and may vary depending on the seat type.

The controls are mirrored for the front passenger seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.

Additional seat settings can be made via the Infotainment system *(→ Front seats, Infotainment system)*.

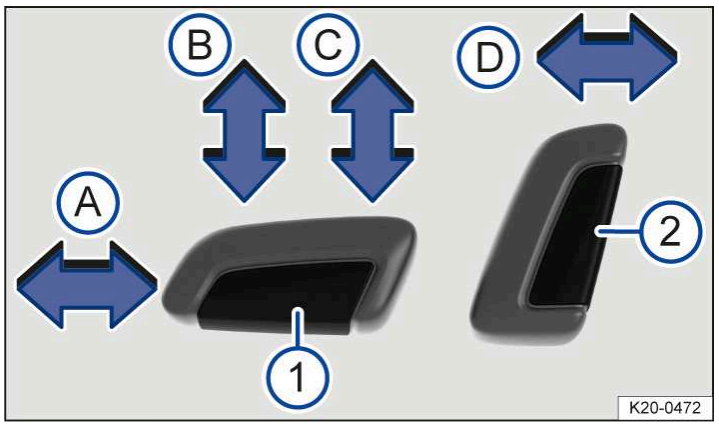


Fig. 1 Switches on the driver seat: adjusting the front seat forwards or backwards, adjusting the backrest and the seat cushion height and tilt.

Pressing the switch in the direction of the arrow:

1 (A) Slides the seat forwards or backwards.

(B) Adjusts the angle of the seat cushion.

(C) Raises or lowers the seat.

2 (D) Adjusts the angle of the backrest.

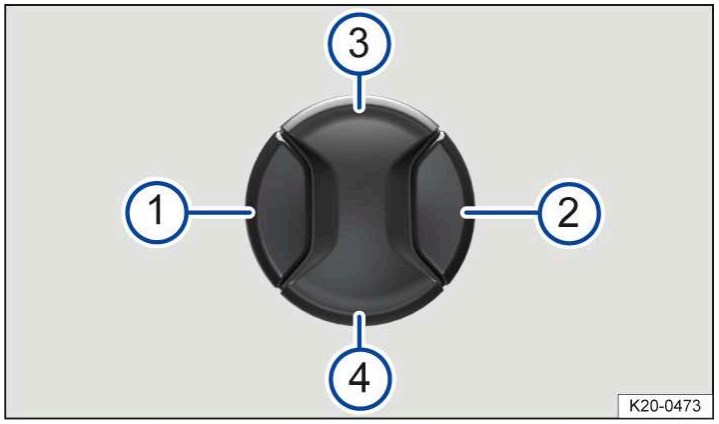


Fig. 2 Switch on the driver seat: adjusting the lumbar support.

Pressing the switch in the appropriate area:

1 Adjust the curve of the lumbar support forwards.

2 Adjust the curve of the lumbar support backwards.

3 Adjust the curve of the lumbar support upwards.

4 Moves the curve of the lumbar support down.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the electric front seats can result in severe injuries.

- The electrical front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is switched off. Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle.

- In the event of an emergency, stop electrical adjustment by pressing another switch.

NOTICE

Improper use can damage the electric components in the front seats.

- Do not kneel on the front seats and do not apply point loads to the seat cushion and backrest.

It may not be possible to adjust the seat electrically if the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low.

The seat adjustment procedure will be interrupted if the engine is started.

Adjusting the front seats via the Infotainment system

Additional seat settings can be made using the controls on the front seat *(→ Front seat, electric)*.

Opening the Seats menu in the Infotainment system

1. Tap the Seats function button in the main menu on the home screen.

   Or: tap the function button.

The following setting options for the front seats are available in the Seats main menu:

In the menu Position

In the menu, the front passenger seat can be adjusted using the controls for the driver seat.

Synchronise: tap and hold the function button to synchronise the seat settings of the front passenger seat with those of the driver seat. All electric seat settings for the driver seat are adopted with the exception of the lumbar support.

In the Massage menu

The following functions for the front seats can be selected and set in the menu:

— Type of massage programme.

— Duration of massage programme.

— Intensity of massage programme.

— Start the selected massage programme.

In the menu Seat air conditioning

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following functions for the front seats can be selected and set in the menu:

— : seat ventilation *(→ Seat heating and seat ventilation)*.

— : seat heating *(→ Seat heating and seat ventilation)*.

In the Settings menu

The following functions for the front seats can be selected and set in the menu:

— **Settings for seat air conditioning**: set the seat heating and seat ventilation.

— **Convenient entry function** Driver seat: activate and deactivate the convenient entry function for the driver seat.

— **Convenient entry function** Front passenger seat: activate and deactivate the convenient entry function for the front passenger seat.

WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the electric front seats can result in severe injuries.

- Adjust the front passenger seat using the Seats menu in the Infotainment system only when the front passenger seat is unoccupied.

NOTICE

Improper use can damage the electric components in the front seats.

- Do not kneel on the front seats and do not apply point loads to the seat cushion and backrest.

The unit software fitted in certain countries may require the engine to be started for this process.

It may not be possible to adjust the seat electrically if the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low.

Introduction to the topic

The following section describes the options for adjusting the rear seats. Always ensure that your sitting position is correct *(→ Sitting position)*.

WARNING

Incorrectly adjusted rear seats increase the risk of serious injuries in the event of an accident.

- Before all journeys, make sure that the rear seats are adjusted so that all occupants are sitting upright and with the seat belts fastened correctly.
- The rear seats must be adjusted only when there is no one in the adjustment area of the rear seats.

WARNING

If you adjust the rear seats while the vehicle is in motion, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. The rear seats may also move unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion. In an accident, there is then an increased risk of serious injuries.

- Adjust the rear seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

Any lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or accidentally lit. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before adjusting the seats, always make sure that there is no cigarette lighter on or near the movable parts of the seat.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the rear centre armrest can cause serious injuries.

- The centre seat on the rear bench seat must never be used when the centre armrest is folded down – neither by adults nor children.
- Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest.

NOTICE

When the rear seat is moved, objects in the luggage compartment can get into the space between the seat and the luggage compartment floor and cause damage.

- Before moving the rear seat, remove all objects that are located in the space between the seat and luggage compartment floor.

NOTICE

Sharp edges can damage the seats.

- Do not touch the seats with sharp-edged objects. Sharp objects, such as zips, rivets on clothing or belts, may damage surfaces. Open Velcro fasteners may also cause damage.

Folding the backrest of the rear bench seat forwards and backwards

The rear seat backrest is split. Each part of the rear seat backrest can be folded down to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

Folding rear seat backrest forwards with the release button



Fig. 1 In the rear seat backrest: release button.

1. Push the head restraint all the way down.
2. Slide the head restraint up one position.
3. Pull the release button → *Fig. 1* (1) forwards.

   The part of the rear seat backrest that has been unlocked folds down automatically.

   The respective section of the rear seat backrest is unlocked when the red marking → *Fig. 1* (2) is visible.

Folding rear seat backrest forwards with the remote release button



Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: remote release lever for the left (1) and the right (2) parts of the rear seat backrest.

1. Push the head restraint all the way down.
2. Then slide the head restraint up one position.
3. Open the boot lid.
4. Pull the remote release lever for the left → *Fig. 2* (1) or the right → *Fig. 2* (2) rear seat backrest in the direction of the arrow.

   The part of the rear seat backrest that has been unlocked folds down automatically.

5. Close the boot lid if necessary.

   The rear seat backrest is unlocked when the red marking → *Fig. 1* (2) is visible.

Folding back the rear seat backrest

1. Fold back the rear seat backrest and push it firmly into the catch until it engages securely into place →⚠.

   The red marking → *Fig. 1* (2) must no longer be visible.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries can be caused if the rear seat backrest is folded forwards and backwards without due care and attention.

- While folding the rear seat backrest forward, always make sure that no people or animals are in its path.
- Never fold the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the rear seat backrest.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the swivel area when folding the rear seat backrest forwards and backwards.
- Ensure that each rear seat backrest engages securely, otherwise the seat belts for the rear seats will not offer maximum protection. This applies to the centre seat of the rear bench seat in particular. If a seat is occupied and the corresponding rear seat backrest has not clicked securely into place, the seat occupant and rear seat backrest may move forwards in the event of a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre or during accidents.
- The rear seat backrest has not engaged properly if you can see a red marking → *Fig. 1* (2). Always make sure that the red mark is never visible when the rear seat backrest is in the upright position.
- If the rear seat backrest is folded forwards or is not engaged securely into place, passengers must not use these seats.

NOTICE

Damage to the vehicle, vehicle components, particularly the seat belts and their components, or to other objects could be caused if the rear seat backrest is folded forwards and backwards in an uncontrolled way or without due care.

- Before folding the rear seat backrests forwards, always adjust the front seats so that the rear head restraints or rear seat cushions do not collide with the front seats.
- Before folding the rear seat backrest forward, make sure that there is no latch plate of a seat belt in a belt buckle.
- Before folding down the rear seat backrest, always make sure that there are no objects located in its path.

Introduction to the topic

The following section describes the options for adjusting and removing the head restraints. Always ensure that your sitting position is correct *(→ Sitting position)*.

Every seat is fitted with a head restraint. The head restraints are approved specifically for the respective seat and must not be installed at any other seat in the vehicle.

If a seat is occupied, select the correct head restraint setting for the respective head restraint. If a seat is unoccupied, the respective head restraint can be pushed down as far as it will go.

The rear centre head restraint (depending on vehicle equipment) is designed solely for use with the centre seat on the rear bench seat. Therefore you should not install this head restraint in any of the other positions.

There are notches in the rods of the head restraints which enable them to engage in different positions. Only correctly mounted head restraints can engage in the notches in the adjustment area. To prevent accidental removal of the head restraints after installation, stops are fitted at the top and bottom of the adjustment area.

Correct head restraint adjustment

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.

In vehicles with head restraints that can be adjusted forwards and backwards, position the head restraints on the front seats as close as possible to the back of your head.

Head restraint adjustment for shorter people

Push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then underneath the top edge of the head restraint. There may be a small gap between the head restraint and backrest in the lowest position.

Head restraint adjustment for taller people

Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must always be fitted and adjusted correctly.
- If a seat is occupied, adjust the head restraint corresponding to the size of the person sitting on the seat.
- Never adjust the head restraint when the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

If you do not remove and fit the head restraints properly, this can result in damage.

- When removing or fitting head restraints, make sure that they do not hit the roof, the front seat backrest or other parts of the vehicle.

Adjusting the head restraints

Adjusting the height of the front head restraint

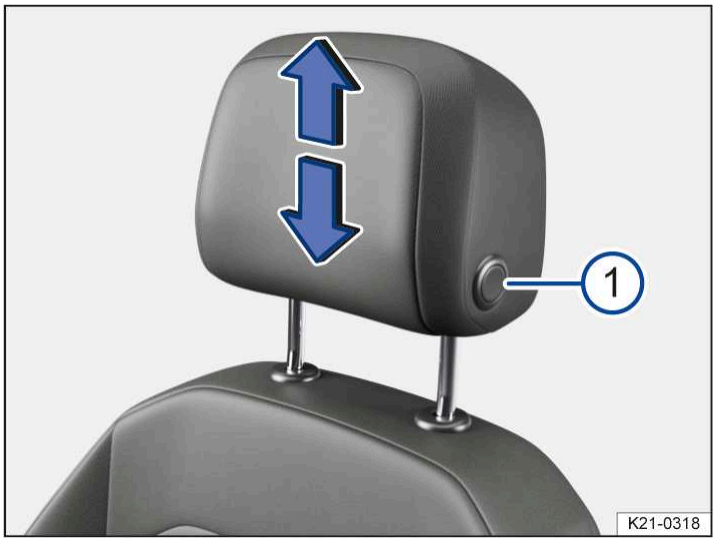


Fig. 1 Adjusting the height of front head restraint without longitudinal adjustment (illustration).

1. While pressing the button → *Fig. 1* (1) if necessary, push the head restraint up or down in the direction of the arrows.

The head restraint must engage securely into position.

Adjusting front head restraint in longitudinal direction

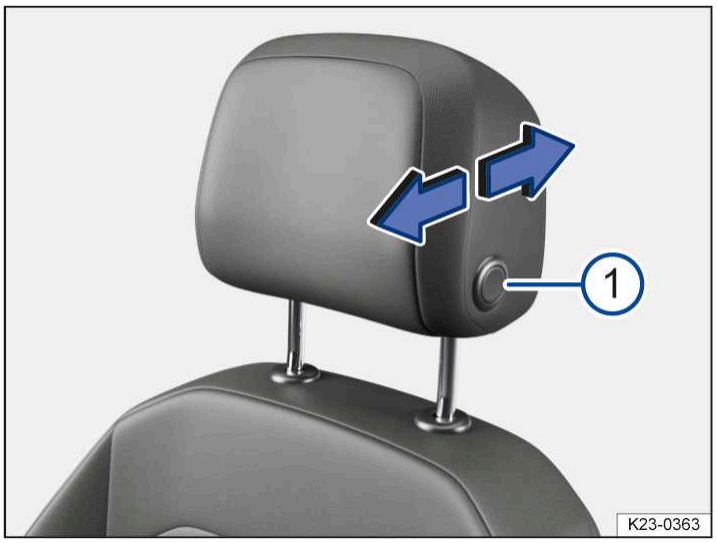


Fig. 2 Adjusting a front head restraint with longitudinal adjustment facility (illustration).

1. Push the head restraint forwards in the direction of the arrow or press and hold button → *Fig. 2* (1) and push it backwards.

The head restraint must engage securely into position.

Adjusting height of head restraint in the second seat row

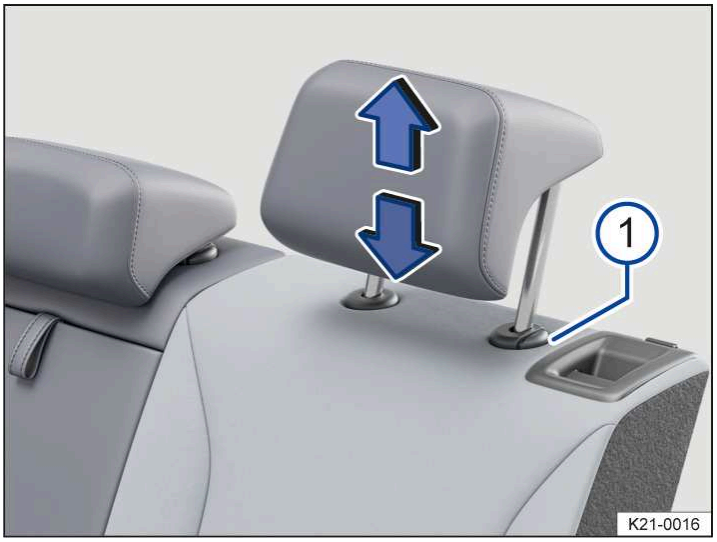


Fig. 3 Adjusting a rear head restraint (illustration).

1. While pressing the button → *Fig. 3* (1) if necessary, push the head restraint up or down in the direction of the arrows.

The head restraint must engage securely into position.

Removing and installing the head restraints

Removing the front head restraints



Fig. 1 Removing a front head restraint (illustration).

1. If necessary, lower the head restraint.
2. To release, press the ring around the head restraint guide pin downwards → *Fig. 1* (1).
3. Pull the head restraint out in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1* (2).

Fitting the front head restraints

1. Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
2. Push the head restraint down until the guide pins click into place.
3. Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed.

Removing the rear head restraints

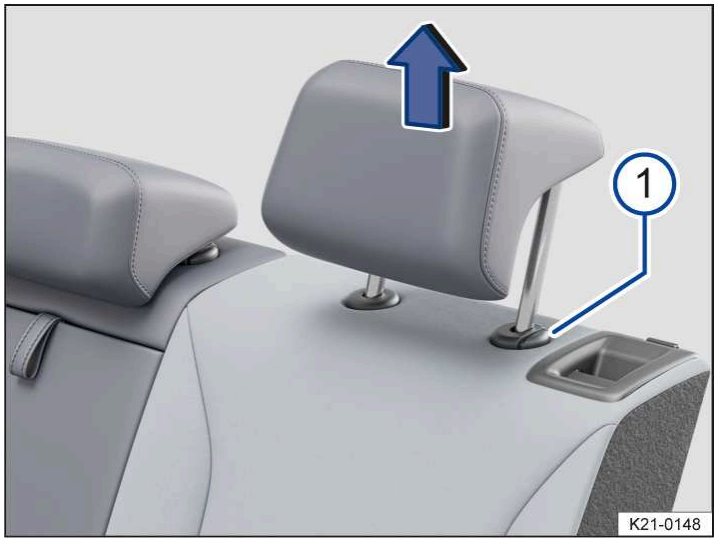


Fig. 2 Removing a rear head restraint (illustration).

1. If necessary, adjust the backrest so that the head restraint can be removed.
2. Push the head restraint all the way up.
3. Pull the head restraint out fully while pressing the button → *Fig. 2* (1).

Fitting the rear head restraints

1. Release the rear seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards slightly.
2. Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
3. Press and hold the button → *Fig. 2* (1) and push down the head restraint.
4. Fold back the rear seat backrest and allow it to engage securely.
5. Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed.

Centre armrest

Front centre armrest



Fig. 1 Front centre armrest.

— To lift: press button → *Fig. 1* (1).

Both parts of the centre armrest fold open individually.

— To lower: lower parts of the centre armrest down individually until they engage in the catch.

⚠ WARNING

When fully open or not completely closed, the front centre armrest can restrict the freedom of movement of the driver's arms and therefore cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest. An incorrect sitting position can cause serious injury.

Rear centre armrest



Fig. 2 In the backrest of the middle seat: fold-out rear centre armrest.

There may be a centre armrest in the rear bench seat that can be folded out of the middle seat .

— To fold down: using the recess, pull the centre armrest in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 2*.

— To fold back: fold the centre armrest upwards in the opposite direction of the arrow → *Fig. 2* and push it into the backrest as far as it will go.

Do not use the middle seat on the rear bench seat to transport passengers when the centre armrest is folded down.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the rear centre armrest can cause serious injuries.

- The centre seat on the rear bench seat must never be used when the centre armrest is folded down – neither by adults nor children.
- Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest.

WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly secured objects in the rear centre armrest can be thrown around during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres and cause serious injuries.

- Stow objects, e.g. drinks, in the available stowage places. *(→ Stowage areas)*.

NOTICE

Improper handling of the rear centre armrest can cause damage to the seat and the centre armrest.

- Remove all objects before folding back the rear centre armrest.

Memory function

Memory buttons

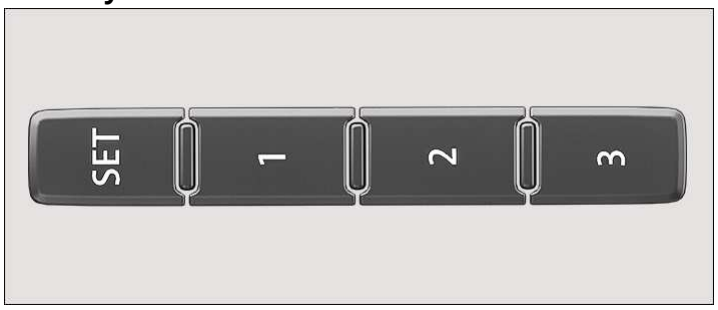


Fig. 1 On the outside of the driver seat: memory buttons.

The memory buttons can be used to store and recall settings for the driver seat and the exterior mirrors.

Storing driver seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards

1. Switch on the electronic parking brake.
2. Put the gearbox into neutral.
3. Switch on the ignition.
4. Adjust the driver seat and exterior mirrors.
5. Press the SET → *Fig. 1* button for longer than 1 second.
6. Within approximately 10 seconds, press the desired memory button → *Fig. 1*.

   An acoustic signal confirms that the settings have been stored.

Storing the front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing

1. Switch on the electronic parking brake.

2. Put the gearbox into neutral.
3. Switch on the ignition.
4. Press the desired memory button → *Fig. 1*.
5. Select reverse gear.
6. Adjust the exterior mirror on the front passenger side so that you have a good view of the kerb area, for example.

   The settings for the mirror position will be saved automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

Opening the driver seat and exterior mirror settings

1. When the vehicle is stationary, the ignition is switched off and one vehicle door is open, briefly press the corresponding memory button.

   After around 10 minutes, the stored positions can no longer be adjusted automatically. The adjustment process is cancelled if one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

   Or: with the ignition switched on or the vehicle door closed, press and hold the corresponding memory button until the stored positions have been reached.

The front passenger exterior mirror will leave the position saved for reversing automatically if the vehicle drives forwards at a speed of at least around 15 km/h (around 10 mph) or if you turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror out of the **R** position and into another position.

If you open the driver door later than approximately 10 minutes after unlocking the vehicle, the driver seat and exterior mirrors are not automatically adjusted.

Front seat convenience entry function

Variant 1: when the driver door is opened, the driver seat automatically moves to a position which makes it easy to enter the vehicle. The driver seat moves back to its original position automatically as soon as the driver door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

Variant 2: before you get out of the vehicle, the driver seat automatically moves to the rear position and remains there. After you get in again and close the driver door, the driver seat moves forward to the position that was stored last.

You can switch the convenient entry function on and off in the Infotainment system

.

Personalisation

You can save and access your individual seat setting in a user account via the personalisation function .

After switching off the ignition and locking the vehicle, the driver seat and exterior mirror settings are stored in the user account.

The driver seat and exterior mirror settings are restored after the vehicle is unlocked and the driver door is opened.

The seat responds to selecting or changing a user account as follows:

— Vehicle stationary or moving no faster than around 5 km/h (around 3 mph): seat is moved. You can cancel the movement at any time by tapping the appropriate function button in the Infotainment system or by pressing a button on the driver seat.

— Vehicle moving faster than around 5 km/h (around 3 mph): seat is not moved. All other settings are made.

Some settings can be stored in the user accounts of the personalisation function and therefore change automatically when the user account changes .

WARNING

Incorrect use of the seat functions can cause serious injuries.

- Always assume the correct sitting position before the start of the journey and maintain this position during the journey. This also applies to all passengers.
- Adjust the memory function only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from seat's moving parts and adjustment range.

Massage function



Fig. 1 On the outside of the driver seat: button for the massage function.

For the massage function, air cushions in the backrest are filled and then emptied again. As a result, the air cushions massage the back.

Various functions can be set via the Infotainment system, e.g. duration and intensity of the massage programme *(→ Front seats, Infotainment system)*.

Switching the massage function on the seat on and off

— To switch on: press the button in the seat control panel.

The massage programme previously selected in the Infotainment system starts.

— To switch off: press the button again.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the seat functions can cause serious injuries.

- Always assume the correct sitting position before the start of the journey and maintain this position during the journey. This also applies to all passengers.
- Switch the massage function on and off only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from seat's moving parts and adjustment range.

Switching turn signals on and off



Fig. 1 On the left-hand side of the steering column: lever for turn signal, main beam and wipers.

(A) Indicate right ➡.

(B) Indicate left ⬅.

Switching turn signals on and off

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Move the lever from the centre position to the required position *→ Fig. 1*.
3. To switch off the turn signal, move the lever to the basic position.

Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked if the acoustic signal does not sound when a turn signal is switched on. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Convenience turn signal

1. Push the lever up or down to the point where you encounter resistance and then release the lever.

   The turn signal flashes three times.

To cancel the lane change flash, immediately move the lever in the opposite direction up to the pressure point and then release it.

The convenience turn signal can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of turn signals, a failure to use turn signals, or forgetting to switch off a turn signal can confuse other road users. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always activate the turn signal in good time when changing lanes and performing overtaking or turning manoeuvres.
- Always switch off the turn signal once the lane change or overtaking or turning manoeuvre has been completed.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Some settings can be stored in the personalised user accounts and therefore change when the user account changes.

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 1 Next to the steering wheel: touch panel for switching on the exterior lighting.

Switching lights on

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Tap the function button as often as required until the corresponding indicator lamps light up.

The dipped beam headlights are switched on. The indicator lamp lights up green.

AUTO

Automatic lighting control: dipped beam is switched on or off depending on the brightness level → ⚠, *(→ Automatic lighting control)*.

Side lights switched on, the indicator lamp lights up green. The automatic lighting control function **AUTO** is activated from a speed of around 10 km/h (around 6 mph).

- -

Display only in the instrument cluster display: a text message appears stating that the lights are switched off. The automatic lighting control function **AUTO** is activated from a speed of around 10 km/h (around 6 mph) or when a distance of around 100 m (around 328 ft) has been covered.

Switching off the lights

1. Switch off the ignition.

AUTO

The orientation lighting can be switched on *(→ Orientation lighting)*.

Side lights or continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle switched on . The indicator lamp lights up green.

- -

Display only in the instrument cluster display: a text message appears stating that the lights are switched off.

Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights can increase the visibility of the vehicle in traffic during the day.

If brightness is detected, the daytime running lights are switched on when the ignition is switched on.

The daytime running lights cannot be switched off or on manually as from a speed of around 10 km/h (around 6 mph).

NOTICE

The headlights may ice up at very low outside temperatures. Improper cleaning may damage the vehicle.

- Do not use excessively hard or abrasive cleaning tools.
- Thaw ice with a suitable de-icer or with Volkswagen Genuine de-icer.

WARNING

If the vehicle lighting is not switched on as appropriate for the weather conditions, the road will not be illuminated sufficiently. Other road users may have difficulty seeing the vehicle or may not see it at all. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always switch on dipped beam when it is dark or raining and when visibility is poor.
- Regularly check that all lights and turn signals are working properly.

WARNING

The side lights or daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you in darkness, rain or snow and conditions with poor visibility. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always switch on dipped beam when it is dark or raining and when visibility is poor.

WARNING

The automatic lighting control function AUTO assists the driver. The driver is responsible for the vehicle lighting being switched on correctly. The automatic lighting control function AUTO switches the dipped beam headlights on and off when there is a change in the level of brightness. An insufficiently lit road can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch the dipped beam on manually if required by the weather conditions, e.g. in the event of fog.

To illuminate the surroundings better when manoeuvring, the cornering lights are switched on for both sides of the vehicle when reverse gear is engaged.

Switching main beam on and off

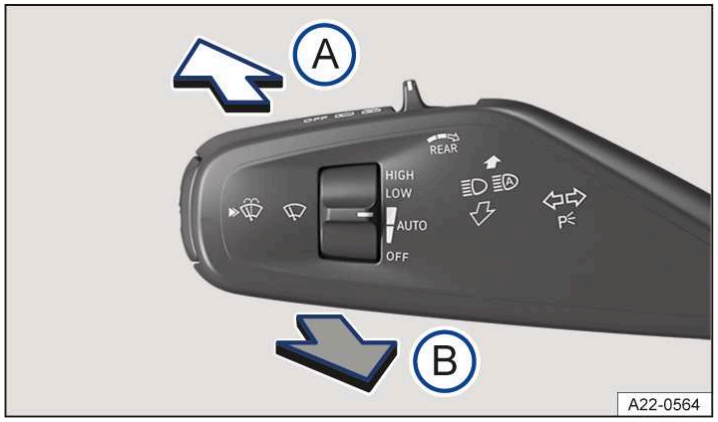


Fig. 1 On the left-hand side of the steering column: lever for turn signal, main beam and wipers.

(A) Switch on the main beam.

(B) Operate the headlight flasher or switch off the main beam.

When the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on, the blue indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display →.

Switching on the main beam

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Switch on dipped beam.
3. Press the lever forward from the centre position → *Fig. 1* (A).

Switching off the main beam

1. Pull the lever to the rear from the centre position → *Fig. 1* (B).

Switching the headlight flasher on and off

1. Pull the lever to the rear from the centre position and hold it → *Fig. 1* (B).

   Release the lever to switch off.

Main-beam control

Depending on the vehicle equipment, automatic main-beam control may be available *(→ Main-beam control (static))* *(→ Main-beam control (dynamic))*.

⚠ WARNING

Using the main beam incorrectly can distract and dazzle other road users. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Use main beam only if other road users cannot be distracted or dazzled.

Main-beam control (Light Assist)

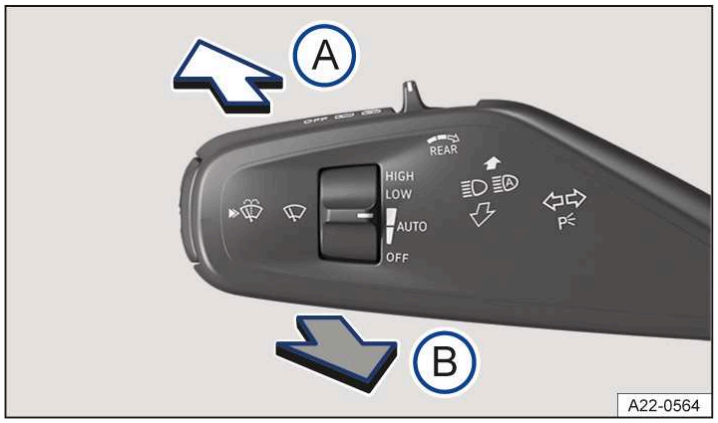


Fig. 1 On the left-hand side of the steering column: lever for turn signal, main beam and wipers.

Main-beam control (Light Assist) automatically dips the headlights when oncoming vehicles and vehicles driving in front are detected. Light Assist normally also recognises illuminated areas such as towns and deactivates main beam while driving through them.

Within the limits of the system, main beam is automatically switched on or off depending on the surroundings and traffic conditions and on the driving speed →⚠.

Switching on Light Assist

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Switch on automatic lighting control AUTO *(→ Dipped beam)*.
3. Tap the lever forward from the basic position → *Fig. 1* (A).

When Light Assist is activated, the indicator lamp lights up white in the instrument cluster display. When Light Assist is switched on, the indicator lamp for the main beam lights up blue in the instrument cluster display.

Switching off Light Assist

1. Switch off automatic lighting control AUTO *(→ Dipped beam)*.

   Or: if Light Assist is switched on and active, pull the lever back → *Fig. 1* (B).

Or: if Light Assist is switched on and not active, tap the lever forward → *Fig. 1* (A). Manual main beam is now switched on. To switch off the manual main beam again, pull back the lever (B).

System limits

The main beam must be manually switched off under the following conditions, as it is not switched off by Light Assist in time or at all:

— In badly lit towns that the system cannot recognise as towns.

— In poorly lit streets where there are highly reflective signs.

— Other road users with insufficient lighting facilities, such as pedestrians, cyclists.

— In the case of crossing traffic at right-angled junctions.

— In tight bends, on steep hill crests or in dips in the road or when oncoming traffic is half-hidden.

— With oncoming traffic on streets with a central barrier where the driver can see clearly over the central barrier e.g. truck drivers.

— In fog, snow or heavy rain.

— In conditions where dust or sand has been blown up.

— Damage to the windscreen in the camera's field of vision.

— If the camera window is covered by condensation, dirt, a sticker, snow or ice.

— If the camera is switched off automatically due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. When the camera is available again, Lane Assist will also be available once more.

— If the camera is faulty or the power supply is interrupted.

⚠ WARNING

Light Assist may not be able to recognise all driving situations correctly and may not work properly in certain situations. Light Assist supports the driver. The driver is responsible for the vehicle lighting being switched on correctly. Improperly switching on the main beam can distract and dazzle other road users. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always check the lighting yourself and adjust it to suit the light, visibility and traffic conditions.
- Switch off the main beam manually if it may cause dazzle to other road users.

⚠ WARNING

If the camera window is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of Light Assist may be impaired. This also applies if changes are made to the vehicle's lighting system, for example if additional headlights are fitted. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Clean the camera window at regular intervals, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera window.
- Check the area of the windscreen which is in the camera's field of view for damage at regular intervals.

Advanced main-beam control (Dynamic Light Assist)

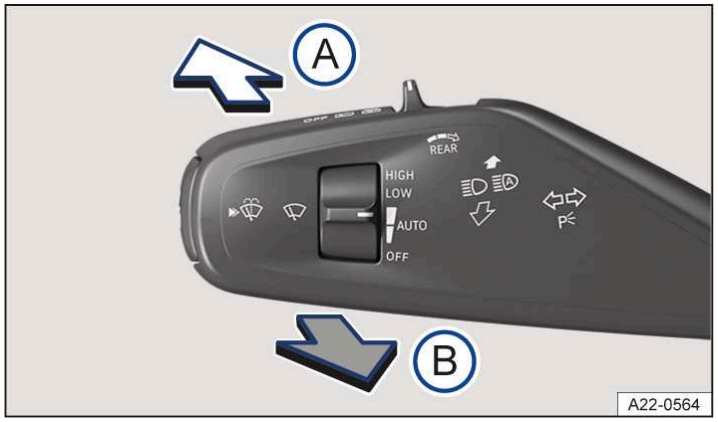


Fig. 1 On the left-hand side of the steering column: lever for turn signal, main beam and wipers.

Advanced main-beam control (Dynamic Light Assist) provides maximum illumination for the road and the edges of the road. At the same time, it prevents vehicles in front or oncoming vehicles from being dazzled. The system uses a camera to detect other self-illuminated road users and their distance from your vehicle and deactivates areas within the light distribution in a targeted manner. If

the system can no longer prevent other road users from being dazzled, main beam is switched off completely. Dynamic Light Assist normally also recognises illuminated areas such as towns and deactivates main beam while driving through them.

Within the limits of the system, main beam is automatically switched on or off depending on the surroundings and traffic conditions and on the driving speed →⚠.

Dynamic Light Assist can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Switching on Dynamic Light Assist

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Switch on automatic lighting control AUTO *(→ Dipped beam)*.
3. Tap the lever forward from the basic position → *Fig. 1* (A).

When Dynamic Light Assist is activated, the indicator lamp lights up white in the instrument cluster display. When Dynamic Light Assist is switched on, the indicator lamp for the main beam lights up blue in the instrument cluster display.

Switching off Dynamic Light Assist

1. Switch off automatic lighting control AUTO *(→ Dipped beam)*.

   Or: if Dynamic Light Assist is switched on and active, pull the lever back → *Fig. 1* (B).

   Or: if Dynamic Light Assist is switched on and not active, tap the lever forward → *Fig. 1* (A). Manual main beam is now switched on. To switch off the manual main beam again, pull back the lever.

System limits

The main beam must be manually switched off under the following conditions, as it is not switched off by Dynamic Light Assist in time or not at all:

— In badly lit towns that the system cannot recognise as towns.

— In poorly lit streets where there are highly reflective signs.

— Other road users with insufficient lighting facilities, such as pedestrians, cyclists.

— In the case of crossing traffic at right-angled junctions.

— In tight bends, on steep hill crests or in dips in the road or when oncoming traffic is half-hidden.

— With oncoming traffic on streets with a central barrier where the driver can see clearly over the central barrier e.g. truck drivers.

— In fog, snow or heavy rain.

— In conditions where dust or sand has been blown up.

— Damage to the windscreen in the camera's field of vision.

— If the camera window is covered by condensation, dirt, a sticker, snow or ice.

— If the camera is switched off automatically due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. When the camera is available again, Dynamic Light Assist will also be available once more.

— If the camera is faulty or the power supply is interrupted.

⚠ WARNING

Dynamic Light Assist may not be able to recognise all driving situations correctly and may not work properly in certain situations. Dynamic Light Assist supports the driver. The driver is responsible for the vehicle lighting being switched on correctly. Improperly switching on the main beam can distract and dazzle other road users. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always check the lighting yourself and adjust it to suit the light, visibility and traffic conditions.
- Switch off the main beam manually if it may cause dazzle to other road users.

⚠ WARNING

If the camera window is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of Dynamic Light Assist may be impaired. This also applies if changes are made to the vehicle's lighting system, for example if additional headlights are fitted. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal

injuries.

- Clean the camera window at regular intervals, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera window.
- Check the area of the windscreen which is in the camera's field of view for damage at regular intervals.

Dynamic cornering light

The dynamic cornering light permits optimum illumination of the road.

The dynamic cornering light works only when the automatic lighting control AUTO is switched on and at speeds above around 10 km/h (around 6 mph).

The dynamic cornering light can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Switching poor weather light on and off

The poor weather light allows the driver to improve illumination of the road in poor visibility conditions.

The poor weather light can be switched on only when the ignition is switched on.

Switching on poor weather light

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Tap button *(→ Dipped beam)*.

The indicator lamp in the button lights up green. In addition, the indicator lamp lights up for a few seconds in the instrument cluster display.

Switching off poor weather light

1. Press the button again.

If the poor weather light is switched on with switched-off lights, switched-on side lights or switched-on automatic lighting control AUTO, the dipped beam headlights will also be switched on regardless of the ambient brightness level.

Troubleshooting

Turn signal indicator lamp

The indicator lamp flashes green.

If a turn signal on the vehicle has failed, the indicator lamp will start flashing twice as fast.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Trailer turn signal indicator lamp

The indicator lamp flashes green.

The indicator lamp goes out if a trailer turn signal or all trailer lights stop working.

1. Check the lighting and change the appropriate bulb as required *(→ Exterior lighting)*.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Exterior drive lighting not working

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Vehicle lighting not working partially or completely.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fault in rain and light sensor

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

When automatic lighting control (AUTO) is switched on, the vehicle lighting is not switched on or off automatically.

1. Switch the ignition off and on.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Dynamic cornering light

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the selected driving profile can affect the swivelling motion of the lights.

A corresponding display appears in the instrument cluster if there is a dynamic cornering light fault. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Touch panels react differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Light assist systems do not react as expected

Travel mode deactivates the dynamic cornering light.

1. Make sure that travel mode is not activated when it is not needed *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Switching the rear fog light on and off

The rear fog light can only be switched on when the ignition is switched on *(→ Dipped beam)*.

Switching on the rear fog light

1. Tap the REAR function button.

   The indicator lamp in the button lights up. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display additionally lights up yellow.

Switching off the rear fog light

1. Tap the REAR function button again.

If the rear fog light is switched on with switched-off lights, switched-on side lights or switched-on automatic lighting control AUTO, the dipped beam headlights will be switched on independently of the ambient brightness level.

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket: the vehicle's rear fog light is not switched on if a trailer with rear fog light is electrically connected to the vehicle.

Side lights

When the side lights are switched on, both headlights light up with side lights together with parts of the tail light clusters, the number plate light and various buttons in the vehicle interior. The automatic lighting control is activated from a speed of around 10 km/h (6 mph) or when a distance of about 100 m (around 328 ft) has been driven.

If the vehicle is not locked from outside when the ignition is switched off and the side lights are switched on, the continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle switches on automatically after around 10 minutes to reduce the load on the 12-volt vehicle battery *(→ Parking light)*.

Automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights

The vehicle will detect a weak 12-volt vehicle battery and switch off the side lights or parking lights in good time so that the engine can still be started – however, this will occur after 2 hours at the earliest.

If the battery capacity is not sufficient for the side lights or parking light to remain switched on for 2 hours, the 12-volt vehicle battery can be discharged to such an extent that it is no longer possible to start the engine →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious or fatal injuries can occur if the vehicle is parked without sufficient illumination, as other road users might have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or may not see it at all.

- Always park the vehicle safely and with sufficient lighting.
- Observe any applicable country-specific legal requirements.
- Switch on the parking light on the right or left side if possible if illumination of the vehicle for several hours is necessary.

Switching parking lights on and off



Fig. 1 On the left-hand side of the steering column: lever for turn signal, main beam and wipers.

(A) Right-hand parking light P is switched on.

(B) Left-hand parking light P is switched on.

Switching one-sided parking lights on and off

When the parking lights are switched on, the headlight with side light and parts of the tail light cluster on the corresponding side of the vehicle light up. The activation duration of the one-sided parking light is generally twice that of the continuous parking light on both sides.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the lever from the centre position to the desired position → *Fig. 1*.
3. To switch off the one-sided parking light, move the lever to the basic position.

Switching the continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle on and off

Both headlights light up with side lights as well as parts of the tail light clusters if continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle is switched on:

1. Switch on the side lights .
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Lock the vehicle from outside.
4. To switch off the continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle, unlock the vehicle from the outside.

Automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights

The vehicle will detect a weak 12-volt vehicle battery and switch off the side lights or parking lights in good time so that the engine can still be started – however, this will occur after 2 hours at the earliest.

If the battery capacity is not sufficient for the side lights or parking light to remain switched on for 2 hours, the 12-volt vehicle battery can be discharged to such an extent that it is no longer possible to start the engine →.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious or fatal injuries can occur if the vehicle is parked without sufficient illumination, as other road users might have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or may not see it at all.

- Always park the vehicle safely and with sufficient lighting.
- Observe any applicable country-specific legal requirements.
- Switch on the parking light on the right or left side if possible if illumination of the vehicle for several hours is necessary.

Coming Home and Leaving Home function (orientation lighting)

The Coming Home and Leaving Home function lights up the area immediately surrounding the vehicle when you get in or out of the vehicle in darkness.

The Coming Home and Leaving Home function is controlled automatically by a rain and light sensor.

The switch-off delay can be set and the function activated or deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Switching on the Coming Home function

1. Switch off the ignition.

The Coming Home lighting is switched on when the automatic lighting control AUTO is switched on and the rain and light sensor detects darkness.

The switch-off delay starts when the last vehicle door or the boot lid is closed.

Switching off the Coming Home function

1. Automatically after the set switch-off delay has elapsed.

   Or: automatically if a vehicle door or the boot lid is opened approximately 30 seconds after switch-on.

   Or: switch off the lights.

   Or: switch on the ignition.

Switching on the Leaving Home function

1. Unlock the vehicle when the automatic headlights function AUTO is switched on and the rain and light sensor detects darkness.

Switching off the Leaving Home function

1. Automatically after the switch-off delay.

   Or: lock the vehicle.

   Or: switch off the lights.

   Or: switch on the ignition.

When the Coming home function is switched on, no acoustic warning will be given as a reminder that a light is still switched on when the driver door is opened.

Some settings can be stored in the personalised user accounts and therefore change when the user account changes.

Cornering light

When dipped beam is switched on, a cornering light is switched on when turning slowly or driving around very tight bends.

When reverse gear is engaged, the cornering light on both sides of the vehicle switches on to provide better illumination of the surrounding area when manoeuvring.

Automatic lighting control

When the automatic lighting control AUTO is switched on, the vehicle lighting and the instrument and switch lighting will switch on under the following conditions:

— The light sensor has detected darkness.

— The windscreen wipers have been switched on for an extended period.

When the lights are switched on, the indicator lamp AUTO lights up yellow *(→ Dipped beam)*.

The automatic lighting control is merely an aid and will not always be able to detect all driving situations.

In vehicles with a corresponding equipment level, the switch-on time of the automatic headlights can be set in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Headlight range control

Headlight range control can be used to adjust the light cone of the dipped beam headlights to the vehicle load level. This gives the driver the best visibility possible and means that oncoming traffic will not be dazzled.

Depending on equipment, the headlight range can be adjusted manually with the touch slider in the Infotainment system → *Fig. 1* (1) , → ⚠.

The headlight range cannot be adjusted manually if the vehicle has dynamic headlight range control.

Manual headlight range control



Fig. 1 In the Infotainment system: touch slider for headlight range control.

1. Press the MENU button or function button.
2. To open the **Vehicle settings** menu, tap the function buttons Vehicle, .
3. Tap the Light function button to open the **Light settings** menu.
4. Tap the Headlight range control function button → *Fig. 1* (1).
5. Tap the required position (typical vehicle load level).

Setting in the Infotainment system

0

Front seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.

2

All seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.

4

All seats occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded.

Towing a trailer with a low drawbar load.

6

Only the driver seat occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded.

Towing a trailer with maximum drawbar load.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle can change the ride height so that the headlights dazzle and distract other road users. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always adapt the light cone to the load level of the vehicle to avoid dazzling other road users.

Dynamic headlight range control

The headlight range is automatically adapted to suit the vehicle load level as soon as the headlights are switched on → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Failure or malfunction in the headlight range control can cause the headlights to dazzle or distract other road users. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have the headlight range control checked by a suitably qualified workshop as soon as possible. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Switching over headlights for driving abroad (travel mode)

If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the dipped beam headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. The headlights may therefore have to be switched over when you travel to these countries. Depending on equipment, the alignment or functions of the headlights must be adapted in the Infotainment system in the Vehicle settings menu under Headlights or under Light settings with the travel mode *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Travel mode may only be used for a short period. Please contact a suitably qualified workshop if permanent conversion is required. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

Acoustic warnings if lights are not switched off

When the ignition has been switched off and the driver door is opened, acoustic warnings will sound under the following conditions:

— If the parking light is switched on.

— If the side lights are switched on.

— If the rear fog light is switched on.

When the orientation lighting is switched on, no acoustic warning will be given as a reminder that a light is still switched on when leaving the vehicle *(→ Orientation lighting)*.

Instrument and switch lighting

The brightness of the instrument and switch lighting can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Depending on equipment, it is possible to adjust the basic brightness level of the head-up display *(→ Head-up display)*.

The brightness setting is automatically adjusted to the changing ambient light conditions in the vehicle.

When the automatic lighting control AUTO is switched on, a sensor automatically detects the ambient brightness level and switches the dipped beam and the lighting in the instruments and switches on and off.

Interior and reading lights, background lighting



Fig. 1 In the roof console: touch-sensitive reading lights.

Switching the interior and reading lights on or off

Tap the corresponding symbol:

Switch the interior lights on or off.

Function switched off: the interior lights switch on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or left.

Touch-sensitive reading lights with manual dimming function

There may be touch-sensitive reading lights in the roof console and above the rear doors, depending on the vehicle equipment *→ Fig. 1*. The individual reading lights can be switched on or off by tapping the light surface.

To activate the manual dimming function, keep touching the light surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Glove box and luggage compartment lights

Depending on equipment, the glove box and luggage compartment may be equipped with lights.

The respective light will be switched on or off when the glove box or boot lid is opened or closed.

Background lighting

The background lighting provides indirect light in the various areas of the vehicle interior.

The brightness and, depending on equipment level, colour of the background lighting can be adjusted in the **Background lighting** menu in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*. Depending on the equipment, the colour of the background lighting changes based on the driving profile setting if the setting **Auto** is selected.

If the ignition has been switched off, the lights go out when the vehicle is locked, or they switch off automatically after a few minutes. This prevents the 12-volt vehicle battery from discharging.

Some settings can be stored in the personalised user accounts and therefore change when the user account changes.

Operating the wiper lever



Fig. 1 On the left-hand side of the steering column: lever for turn signal, main beam and wipers.

The wipers function only when the ignition is switched on and the bonnet or boot lid are closed.

(1) Operating the front windscreen wipers

(2) Operating the front windscreen flick wipe function and the wash and wipe system.

(3) Operating the rear window wiper.

Switch on the windscreen wipers

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Turn the switch to the required position → *Fig. 1* (1):

HIGH
Fast wipe.

LOW
Slow wipe.

AUTO
Vehicles without rain and light sensor: Interval wipe. There are two wiping interval settings.

Vehicles with rain and light sensor: Automatic wiping depending on the intensity of the rain. There are two settings for the sensitivity of the rain and light sensor.

Switching off the front windscreen wipers

1. Turn switch → *Fig. 1* (1) to the **OFF** position.

Flick wipe – switching short wiping on and off

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Push the → *Fig. 1* (2) button to the first position and hold →.

To switch off the flick wipe function, release the button.

Switching the wash and wipe system on and off for cleaning the front windscreen

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Push the → *Fig. 1* (2) button to the second position and hold →.

To switch off the wash and wipe system, release the button.

To avoid the smell of the washer fluid in the vehicle interior, Climatronic switches to air recirculation mode for around 30 seconds.

Switching on the rear window wiper

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Move switch → *Fig. 1* (3) to the centre position .

   The wiper will wipe the window approximately every six seconds.

Switching off the rear window wiper

1. Move switch → *Fig. 1* (3) to the left to the **OFF** position.

Switching the wash and wipe system on and off for the rear window wiper

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Move switch → *Fig. 1* (3) to the right position and hold → .

To switch off the wash and wipe system, release the button.

WARNING

Without adequate anti-freeze, the washer fluid may freeze onto the windscreen and obscure your view. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- At winter temperatures, use the window washer system only when adequate anti-freeze has been added.
- Never use the windscreen washer system at winter temperatures before the windscreen has been heated by the ventilation system.

WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always change the wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreen properly *(→ Wiper blades)*.

NOTICE

Incorrect handling of the wipers can lead to damage to the windscreen and wiper blades and also to the wiper motor.

- Before starting your journey and switching on the ignition, check to make sure that the wiper lever is in its basic position.
- Remove snow and ice from the wipers and windows.
- Always carefully loosen wiper blades that have become frozen onto the window.
- Do not switch on the wipers when the window is dry.

When switched on, the wipers will temporarily be switched to the next setting down when the vehicle is stationary.

Some settings can be stored in the personalised user accounts and therefore change when the user account changes.

If the vehicle is parked during cold weather, the service position of the windscreen wiper may be helpful in order to be able to release the wiper blades better from the windscreen *(→ Wiper blades)*.

Wiper function

Window wipe/wash system for cleaning the windscreen or rear window

The window wipe/wash system cleans the windscreen or rear window with the wipers and washer fluid. To ensure that the system functions correctly in all weather conditions, sufficient anti-freeze must be added to the washer fluid *(→ Washer fluid)*.

NOTICE

Washer fluid without sufficient anti-freeze can freeze in the water-carrying hoses and washer fluid reservoir at low temperatures. This can result in damage to the washer fluid pump.

- Always use washer fluid with sufficient anti-freeze.

Automatic activation of the rear window wiper

The rear window wiper is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Automatic activation when reverse gear is engaged can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Rear view camera cleaning system

The rear view camera cleaning system cleans the rear view camera and works in conjunction with the wash and wipe system for cleaning the rear window.

If the view from the camera remains obscured after it has been cleaned several times, the camera lens must be cleaned manually *(→ Rear view)*, *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*.

Rain and light sensor

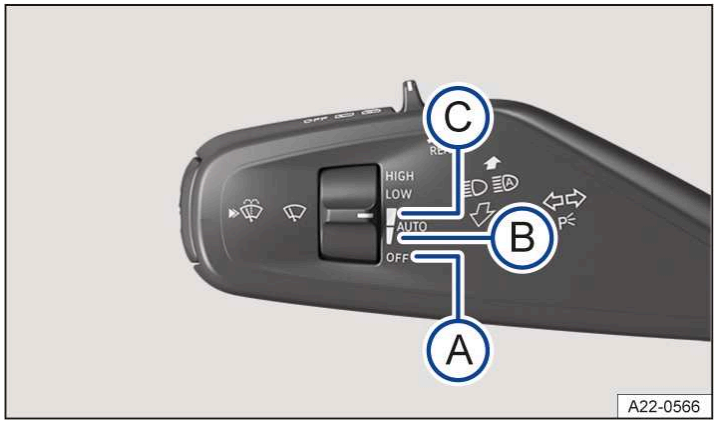


Fig. 1 On the left-hand side of the steering column: lever for turn signal, main beam and wipers.

(A) The rain and light sensor is deactivated.

(B) Rain and light sensor activated, setting 1.

(C) Rain and light sensor activated, setting 2.

When the rain and light sensor is activated, it automatically controls the frequency and speed of the wipers, depending on the intensity of the rain.

The automatic wipe function can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)* →⚠.

Activating the rain and light sensor

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Turn the switch to the required position *→ Fig. 1*:
   - Position (B): Low sensitivity of the rain and light sensor.
   - Position (C): High sensitivity of the rain and light sensor.

If the automatic wipe function is deactivated in the Infotainment system, the intervals are set at fixed levels.

Deactivating the rain and light sensor

1. Turn the switch to position → *Fig. 1* (A).

WARNING

The rain and light sensor cannot always detect all precipitation sufficiently and activate the wipers. If visibility is restricted, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- If necessary, switch on the wipers manually if the water on the windscreen restricts the field of vision.

Some settings can be stored in the personalised user accounts and therefore change when the user account changes.

Troubleshooting

Washer fluid level too low

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Fill up the washer fluid reservoir as soon as possible *(→ Washer fluid)*.

Fault in wipers

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The wipers do not wipe.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fault in rain and light sensor

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The wipers are not switched on automatically if it rains during rain and light sensor operation.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Changes in the response of the rain and light sensor

Possible causes for faults and misinterpretations relating to the sensitive surface of the rain and light sensor *(→ Front view)* include:

— **Damaged wiper blades:** a film of water or smears caused by damaged wiper blades can increase the time the wipers are switched on, can shorten the length of the intervals between wipes or cause the wipers to run quickly and continuously.

— **Insects:** insects hitting the windscreen surface can cause the wipers to be activated.

— **Salt deposits:** in winter, salt deposits can cause the wipers to continue to wipe the windscreen when it is almost dry.

— **Soiling:** dry dust, wax, windscreen coatings (lotus effect), or detergent deposits (from an automatic car wash) can cause the rain and light sensor to become less sensitive and react too slowly, or prevent it from reacting at all. Clean the sensitive surface of the rain and light sensor at regular intervals and inspect the wiper blades for damage *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*.

— **Crack in the windscreen:** a wipe cycle will be triggered if the rain and light sensor is switched on when the windscreen is impacted by a stone. The rain and light sensor will then register the reduction in sensitivity of the surfaces and adjust accordingly. The size of the crack can affect the way in which the rain and light sensor activates the wipers.

The wipers will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the window. The wipers will stop moving if the obstacle blocks their path.

1. Remove the obstacle and switch the wipers back on again.

General safety notes

The driver can use the exterior mirrors and interior mirror to observe the traffic behind and adjust the driving style accordingly.

For safety reasons, it is important that the driver positions the exterior and interior mirrors correctly before starting a journey.

Looking in the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror does not allow the driver to see the entire area around the side and rear of the vehicle. The area that cannot be seen is known as the blind spot. There may be objects and other road users in the blind spot.

WARNING

Adjusting the exterior and interior mirrors while driving may cause the driver to become distracted. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Adjust the exterior mirrors and interior mirror only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Always ensure that the mirrors are positioned correctly and that the rear view is not restricted by ice, snow, condensation or any other objects.

WARNING

The fields of view of the exterior mirrors and interior mirror do not cover the entire area around the vehicle at the sides and rear. There may be objects and other road users in these blind spots. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- When parking, changing lane, overtaking or turning, always pay careful attention to the area around the vehicle.

WARNING

Curved mirrors (depending on country: convex or aspheric) enlarge the field of vision and can make objects in the mirror seem smaller and further away than they actually are. This leads to an inaccurate estimation of the distance from vehicles following behind (e.g. when changing lanes). This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Whenever possible, use the interior mirror to check the exact distance between your vehicle and following traffic or other objects.
- Ensure that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.

WARNING

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which could leak if the mirror is broken. Contact with this fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes and respiratory organs, especially in people who suffer from asthma or similar illnesses. This can cause serious injuries.

- If you have swallowed electrolyte fluid, rinse your mouth immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.
- Immediately make sure that there is a sufficient supply of fresh air and get out of the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all windows and doors.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolyte fluid, wash the affected location immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If your shoes or clothing come into contact with the electrolyte fluid, wash them immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Clean shoes and clothes thoroughly before wearing them again.

NOTICE

If the glass of an automatic anti-dazzle mirror is broken, electrolyte fluid can leak from the mirror. This fluid attacks plastic surfaces.

- Remove any fluid that has leaked out as soon as possible, e.g. with a wet sponge.

Interior mirror

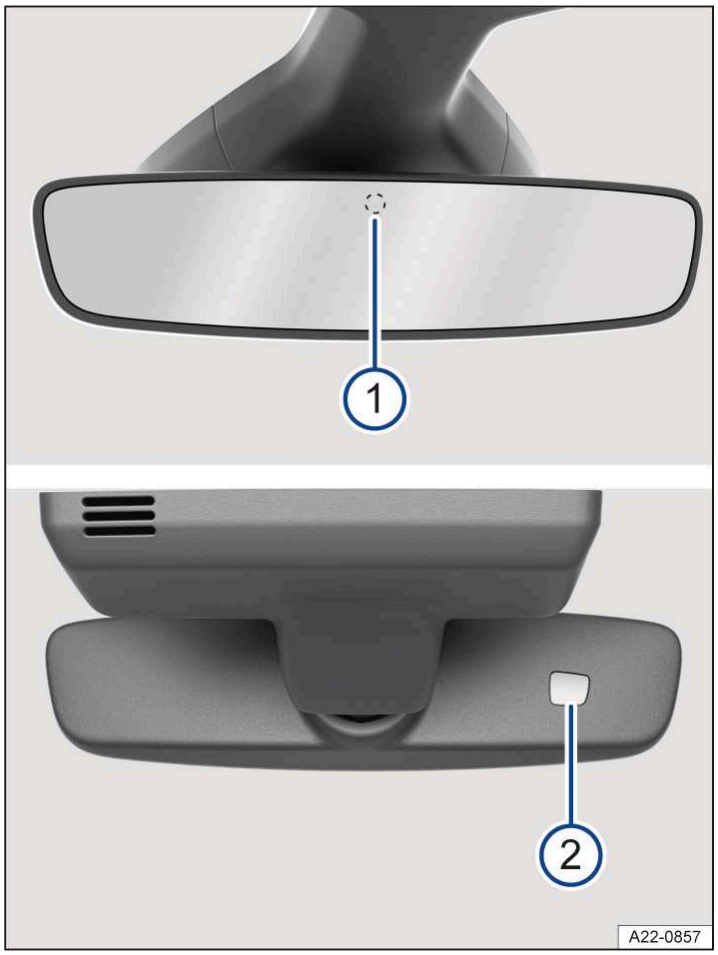


Fig. 1 On the windscreen: automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

(1) Sensor for light incidence from the rear.

(2) Sensor for light incidence from the front.

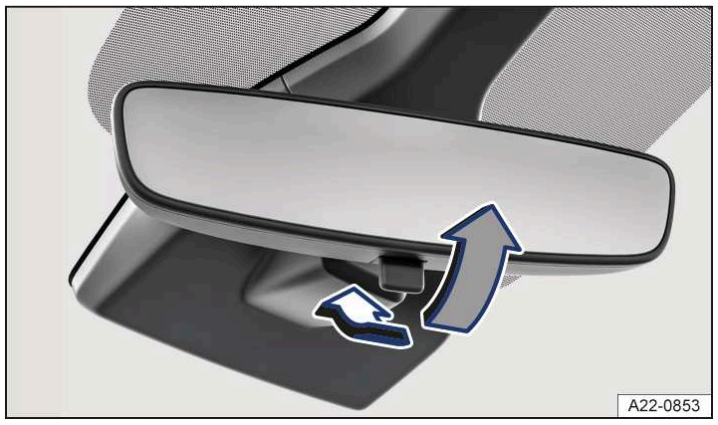


Fig. 2 On the windscreen: manual anti-dazzle interior mirror.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

When the ignition is turned on, the sensors measure the incident light from the rear → *Fig. 1* (1) and from the front (2).

Depending on the values measured, the interior mirror dims automatically.

If the incident light on the sensors is hindered or interrupted, e.g. by a sun blind or other hanging objects, the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror will not function or will not function correctly. Mobile navigation devices attached to the windscreen or near the interior automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror can also influence the sensors →⚠.

The automatic anti-dazzle function will be deactivated in some situations, e.g. when the interior lighting in the roof console is switched on or when reverse gear is engaged.

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

— Basic position: the lever on the lower part of the mirror is pointing forwards towards the windscreen.

— Pull the lever back to select the anti-dazzle function → *Fig. 2*.

⚠ WARNING

The illuminated display of a mobile navigation system can interfere with operation of the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror. As a result, the interior mirror cannot be used to check the exact distance between your vehicle and following traffic or other objects. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch off the mobile navigation system in such cases.

Exterior mirrors

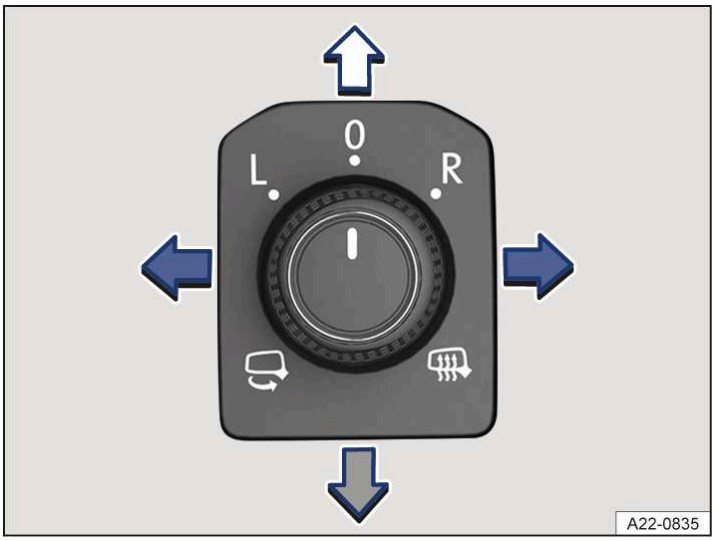


Fig. 1 In the driver door: rotary knob for the exterior mirrors.

The exterior mirror functions for left-hand drive vehicles are described below. Position **L** corresponds to the exterior mirror on the driver side and position **R** to the exterior mirror on the front passenger side. These instructions are mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Turn the rotary knob in the driver door to the desired symbol → *Fig. 1*.
3. To adjust the exterior mirror, press the rotary knob forward, back, right or left in the direction of the arrows.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the scope and appearance of the controls in the driver door may vary:

Fold exterior mirrors into the body electrically →⚠.

Fold exterior mirrors into the body electrically →⚠.

Switch on the exterior mirror heating. The exterior mirror heating heats only at ambient temperatures below around +20°C (around +68°F) and initially with the highest setting. Heating takes place dependent on the ambient temperature after around two minutes.

L

Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror.

R

Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror.

0

Neutral position. The exterior mirror cannot be adjusted and all functions are switched off.

Activating the exterior mirror functions

The following exterior mirror functions must be activated once in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Synchronous mirror adjustment

The synchronous mirror adjustment function simultaneously adjusts the right exterior mirror when the left exterior mirror is adjusted.

1. Turn the rotary knob to position **L**.
2. Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror. The right-hand exterior mirror will be adjusted at the same time (synchronous adjustment).
3. To correct the adjustment of the right exterior mirror if necessary, turn the rotary knob to position **R** and adjust the right exterior mirror.

Automatic anti-dazzle exterior mirror on the driver side

The automatic anti-dazzle exterior mirror is controlled together with the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror *(→ Interior mirror)*.

Folding in the exterior mirrors while parking

The exterior mirrors fold in or out automatically when the vehicle is locked or unlocked from the outside. In order for this to happen, the rotary knob must be in position , **L**, **R** or **0**.

The exterior mirrors remain folded in if the rotary knob for the electrically adjustable exterior mirrors is in the position or .

Storing front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing

1. Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key to which the settings should be assigned.
2. Switch on the electronic parking brake.
3. Switch on the ignition.
4. Put the gearbox into neutral.
5. Select reverse gear.
6. Adjust the exterior mirror on the front passenger side so that you have a good view of the kerb area, for example.
7. Put the gearbox into neutral.
8. Switch off the ignition.

   The settings for the mirror position will be saved and assigned to the vehicle key.

Activating the front passenger exterior mirror setting for reversing

1. Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors to the position for adjusting the front passenger exterior mirror.
2. With the ignition switched on, select reverse gear.

   The front passenger exterior mirror will now adjust itself to the stored position.

The front passenger exterior mirror will move out of the position saved for reversing when the vehicle is driven forwards faster than approximately 15 km/h (around 9 mph) or when the rotary knob is turned to another position.

⚠ WARNING

If the exterior mirrors are folded out or in without paying due attention, fingers can be trapped between the exterior mirror and the mirror base. This can cause serious injuries.

- Fold the exterior mirrors in or out only when there is no obstruction in the path of the mirror.

NOTICE

Exterior mirrors may be damaged if they are not folded in when driving through a car wash.

- Always fold in the exterior mirrors.

NOTICE

Folding in the electrically adjustable exterior mirrors mechanically can lead to increased wear or damage the electric drive.

- Do not fold electrically adjustable exterior mirrors in or out by hand.

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Fuel is otherwise wasted.

In the event of a fault, the electric exterior mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the outer edge of the mirror.

Some settings can be stored in the personalised user accounts and therefore change when the user account changes.

Sun visors



Fig. 1 In the front headliner: sun visor.

(1) Light.

(A) Pull out of the holder.

(B) Slide the cover open.

Adjustment options for sun visors

— Folded down over the windscreen.

— Pulled out of the bracket and swung over towards the door → *Fig. 1* (A).

Additional adjustment option of the sun visor

In some vehicle models, the sun visor can be pushed backwards along its axis when it has been swivelled in parallel with the door.

Illuminated vanity mirror

There is a vanity mirror behind a cover on the inside of the sun visor. When you open the cover → *Fig. 1* (B), the lamp → *Fig. 1* (1) lights up.

The vanity mirror light goes out in the following situations:

— The cover is pushed closed.

— The sun visor is pushed upwards or fully forwards.

— The sun visor is moved lengthways or not fully pushed in.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with the sun visors folded down and the sun blinds pulled out can reduce your view of the road. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Sun visors should always be folded away and sun blinds should always be retracted if they are not being used.

In certain circumstances, the lamp above the sun visor will go out automatically after a few minutes. This prevents the 12-volt vehicle battery from discharging.

Sun blind in the glass roof



Fig. 1 In the roof: function button for controlling the sun blind.

The electric sun blind works when the ignition is switched on.

When the glass roof is fully tilted, the sun blind is automatically moved to a ventilation position. The sun blind remains in the ventilation position when the glass roof is closed.

Opening the sun blind

— One-touch function: Swipe backwards over the function button → *Fig. 1*. The one-touch function is interrupted by tapping the function button or swiping over it again.

— Manual operation: swipe backwards over the function button and hold until the desired position is reached.

Closing the sun blind

— One-touch function: Swipe forwards over the function button → *Fig. 1*. The one-touch function is interrupted by tapping the function button or swiping over it again.

— Manual operation: Swipe forwards over the function button and hold until the desired position is reached.

Roll-back function for the sun blind

The roll-back function can reduce the risk of injuries when closing the sun blind →⚠. The sun blind will open again automatically if it is unable to close because it is stiff or obstructed.

1. Check to see why the sun blind has not closed.
2. Try to close the sun blind again.

   The sun blind will open again immediately if it is still unable to close because it is stiff or obstructed. After opening, the sun blind can be closed again within a short period of time without the roll-back function.
3. If the sun blind still cannot be closed, close it without the roll-back function.

Closing the sun blind without the roll-back function

1. Try to close the sun blind again.
2. If the sun blind still cannot be closed, swipe forward over the function button within 5 seconds and hold → *Fig. 1* until the sun blind is fully closed.

   The sun blind will now close without the roll-back function.
3. Please go to a suitably qualified workshop if the sun blind still cannot be closed. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If you let go of the function button during the closing procedure, the sun blind will open automatically.

Touch panel reacts differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panel.

1. Always keep the touch panel clean and dry.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the sun blind without the roll-back function can cause serious injuries.
- Always take care when closing the sun blind.
- Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the sun blind, especially if the roll-back function is not active when it is closed.

Sun blind for the rear side windows

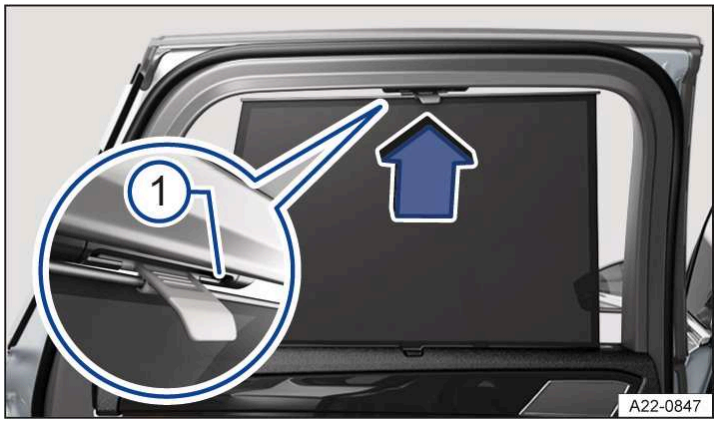


Fig. 1 In the rear window: sun blind (illustration).

The sun blinds for the rear side windows are fitted in the door trim at each window.

1. Use the protruding handle to fully pull up the sun blind in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.
2. Hook both rings on the bar into the corresponding brackets → *Fig. 1* (1).
3. Ensure that the extended sun blind is secured firmly in the bracket.

To retract the sun blind, unhook it at the top and guide it down by hand →ⓘ.

NOTICE

Uncontrolled retraction of the sun blind can damage the sun blind or the interior trim.

- Always guide the sun blind down by hand and do not allow it to “snap” down.

Windscreen with communication window



Fig. 1 Next to the mirror base: communication window (illustration).

Heat-insulating glass windscreens may have an infrared-reflecting coating and can be heated wirelessly with some equipment levels. To ensure that any radio equipment purchased as an accessory, e.g. a toll system, functions properly, there are uncoated areas (communication windows) on either side of the interior mirror → *Fig. 1*.

The uncoated areas should not be covered either from the outside or the inside, nor should any stickers be applied to this area as this could cause a fault.

Overview of the Climatronic

The Climatronic is an automatic air conditioning system that heats, cools and dehumidifies the air. Automatic mode enables the Climatronic to control the air temperature, air distribution and air volume automatically.

The air conditioning block is displayed continuously at the bottom edge of the screen in the Infotainment system. You can find the currently set temperature there, for example.

Some functions of the air conditioning system and an air conditioning block for the rear seats depend on the vehicle equipment.

Using the air conditioning system efficiently

The air conditioning system will work most effectively if the vehicle interior is kept closed. If heat has built up in the vehicle interior, cooling can be accelerated by briefly airing the vehicle.

Display of active functions

Functions that are switched on are indicated by illuminated symbols on the sensor fields, as well as function buttons highlighted in colour on the Infotainment system.

Adjusting functions in the air conditioning block

You can exchange some functions in the air conditioning block in the Infotainment system.

1. Tap and hold the function in the air conditioning block.
2. Select the desired air conditioning system function from the displayed overview.

Operating the air conditioning system with voice commands

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some functions of the air conditioning system can be operated with the voice assistant .

⚠ WARNING

Iced-up, snow-covered or misted-up windows severely restrict visibility. This increases the risk of collisions and accidents, which can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Keep all windows free of ice, snow and condensation.
- Adjust the heating, air conditioning and rear window heating to prevent condensation from forming on the windows *(→ Heating and air conditioning system)*.
- Only set off once all windows are clear.
- Use air recirculation mode for a short period only. Condensation could otherwise form very quickly on the windows, greatly reducing visibility.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode as soon as it is no longer required.

Some settings can be stored in the user accounts of the personalisation function and therefore change when the user account changes .

Air conditioning system menu in the Infotainment system

CLIMA Open the air conditioning menu via the air conditioning block in the Infotainment system.

Open the air conditioning menu via the app overview in the Infotainment system.

The air conditioning menu contains the functions for air distribution, for example *(→ Air distribution of the air conditioning system)*.

Some functions and menus depend on the vehicle equipment level.

Air conditioning system operating conditions

The air conditioning system operating conditions are highlighted in colour:

Cooling.

Heating.

Air conditioning settings submenu

Depending on equipment, you will find additional convenience features in the **Air conditioning settings** submenu:

— Allow automatic auxiliary heating measure *(→ Automatic supplementary heating function)*.

— Switch on seat heating and seat ventilation automatically at the start of the journey *(→ Seat heating and seat ventilation)*.

— Switch on the steering wheel heating automatically at the start of the journey *(→ Steering wheel heating)*.

Switching the Climatronic on and off

In the air conditioning menu: top edge of the screen

Switch the air conditioning system on and off.

If the air conditioning system is switched off, **OFF** is displayed at the bottom edge of the screen in the Infotainment system.

Switching off the air conditioning block for the rear seats

REAR Open the settings for the rear seats in the air conditioning menu.

REAR Switch off the air conditioning block for the rear seats.

1. Open the air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap REAR to open the settings for the rear seats in the air conditioning menu.
3. Tap REAR to switch off the air conditioning block for the rear seats.

Climatronic automatic mode

In the air conditioning menu or in the air conditioning block

AUTO The set air temperature is kept constant. The volume of air and air distribution are controlled automatically. Automatic mode switches off when the blower speed is adjusted manually.

Climatronic automatic mode is also switched on if you switch on a Smart Climate function *(→ Air distribution of the air conditioning system)*.

Selecting an air conditioning profile

You can adjust the blower speed in automatic mode by means of the air conditioning profiles.

1. Open the air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap AUTO to switch on Climatronic automatic mode.
3. Tap AUTO again and select the desired air conditioning profile in the pop-up window.

Air Care

In the air conditioning menu

The enhanced air filter with activated carbon in the Air Care Climatronic can reduce the amount of pollutants and also allergens that enter the vehicle interior.

When Air Care is switched on, the air conditioning system's air recirculation mode is maximised to the extent of the risk of window fogging – depending on the interior humidity and outside temperature. The air recirculation mode is automatically regulated and features continuous adjustment in order to prevent fatigue of the vehicle occupants.

Temperature control

Adjust the temperature via touch sliders on the Infotainment system. The temperature settings are permanently displayed at the bottom of the screen in the Infotainment system.

The set temperature for the rear seat row is shown on the display of the air conditioning block for the rear seats.

In the air conditioning menu or in the air conditioning block

A/C The air is cooled and dehumidified in cooling mode.

A/C MAX Switch maximum cooling output on and off.

Air recirculation mode is automatically switched on and the Climatronic automatically directs air to the upper body.

SYNC Adopt temperature settings of driver side for all seats.

Setting the temperature for the rear row of seats

REAR Open the settings for the rear seats in the air conditioning menu.

REAR If **REAR LOCK** is switched on, the rear air conditioning block cannot be operated.

1. Open the air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap REAR.
3. Tap function button or .

   Or: tap or in the air conditioning block for the rear seats.

   The temperatures set for the rear row of seats are shown on the displays of the air conditioning block for the rear seats.

Air distribution and blower speed

Vents

There are vents in the vehicle in the following locations:

— Driver side.

— Front passenger side.

— Front centre console.

— Rear centre console.

NOTICE

Foodstuffs, medicines and objects that are sensitive to heat or cold can be damaged or made unusable by the air flowing out of the vents.

- Never leave food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects in front of the vents.

Air distribution functions in the air conditioning menu

Adjust the blower speed.

Direct air onto the windscreen.

Direct air towards upper body.

Direct air into the footwell.

Air distribution with Smart Climate

Climatronic automatic mode is also switched on if a Smart Climate function is switched on. The Smart Climate functions remain switched on for a short time. Automatic mode remains switched on after this time elapses.

Clear the windscreen of ice and misting.

Direct warm air into the footwell.

Direct warm air onto the steering wheel.

Direct cold air into the footwell.

Direct fresh air from the outside into the vehicle interior.

Briefly increase the cooling system output.

Defrost function

In the air conditioning block



The defrost function of Climatronic clears the windscreen of ice and condensation.

The air is dehumidified and the blower is set to a high speed.

Air recirculation mode

When air recirculation mode is switched on, no fresh air enters the vehicle interior →⚠.

Switch air recirculation mode on and off in the air conditioning block at the bottom edge of the screen or in the air conditioning menu.

When does air recirculation mode switch off?

Air recirculation mode switches itself off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

— The defrost function is switched on.

— A sensor detects that condensation might form on the vehicle's windows.

⚠ WARNING

A lacking fresh air supply can lead to restricted visibility due to misted-up windows and to fast driver fatigue due to the stale air. This can lead to collisions and accidents and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Use air recirculation mode for a short period only.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode as soon as it is no longer required.

NOTICE

Tobacco smoke can leave a residue on the evaporator of the air conditioning system and the enhanced air filter with activated carbon, producing a lasting unpleasant odour.

- To prevent lasting unpleasant odours, do not smoke in the vehicle when air recirculation mode is switched on.

When reversing the vehicle or when the window wipe/wash system is being used, the air recirculation mode of Climatronic will switch on to prevent odours from entering the vehicle interior.

Overview of the seat heating and seat ventilation

The front seats may be equipped either with seat heating or seat heating and seat ventilation. The outer rear seats may be equipped with seat heating →⚠.

The seat ventilation function ventilates the seat with the air from the vehicle interior. The moisture from the body is removed. There is no direct cooling of the seat.

The seat heating and seat ventilation work when the engine is running.

Heating and ventilation settings

The operating states of the seat heating and seat ventilation are shown in red and blue in the Infotainment system.



Seat heating switched off.



Seat heating switched on at highest temperature setting.



Seat ventilation switched off.



Seat ventilation switched on at highest ventilation setting.

When should the seat heating and seat ventilation be switched off?

Switch off the seat heating and seat ventilation if one of the following conditions applies:

— A person with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature is sitting on the seat →⚠.

— The seat is not occupied.

— A child seat is installed on the seat.

— Objects are covering the seat cushion, e.g. protective covers, jackets, blankets or bags.

— The seat cushion is damp or wet.

— Seat heating only: The temperature in the vehicle interior or the outside temperature is above +25°C (+77 °F).

⚠ WARNING

Magnetic fields are produced during operation of the seat heating. In isolated cases, these magnetic fields can affect active medical implants, e.g. pacemakers.

- If you have a medical implant, you should consult your doctor or the implant manufacturer before operating the seat heating.
- Also make the other vehicle occupants aware of this.

⚠ WARNING

Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes) can sustain burns or cold injuries on their back, buttocks and legs when using the seat heating or seat ventilation. These injuries may take a long time to heal, or may never heal fully.

- Never use the seat heating and seat ventilation if you have reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature, leave the “Automatic seat air conditioning at the start of a journey” function switched off *(→ Seat climate control)* and do not use the automatic mode of the seat air conditioning *(→ Seat climate control)*.
- Consult a doctor if you have questions about your own state of health.

⚠ WARNING

Wet seat covers can cause a malfunctions in the seat heating and increase the risk of burns.

- Ensure that the seat cushion is dry before using the seat heating.
- Do not sit on the seat in wet clothing.
- Do not place any wet objects or items of clothing on the seat.
- Do not spill any liquids on the seat.

NOTICE

The heater elements of the seat heating can be damaged by point loads and insulating materials.

- Do not kneel on the seats and do not apply any other point loads to the seat cushion and backrest.
- Do not load the seat cushion and backrest with pointed objects.
- Switch off the seat heating if insulating materials are fitted on the seat, e.g. a protective cover or child seat.
- Use the seat heating only if the seat is equipped with the original seat covers.
- If odours develop, switch off the seat heating immediately and have it checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Operating seat heating and seat ventilation

1. Tap or at the bottom of the screen to switch on the seat heating or seat ventilation with the highest temperature or ventilation setting.
2. Tap or repeatedly to adjust the temperature or ventilation setting.
3. To switch off the seat heating or seat ventilation, tap or repeatedly until or is displayed.

   Or: to switch the seat heating on or off, tap the touch sliders under the Infotainment system on the driver or front passenger side with two fingers.

To save fuel, switch off the seat heating and seat ventilation as soon as possible.

Seat heating and seat ventilation switch on and off automatically

The most recent temperature or ventilation setting for the driver seat is switched on automatically if you start the engine again within approximately 10 minutes. If the front passenger seat is occupied, the most recent temperature or ventilation setting for the front passenger seat is also switched on automatically.

If the front passenger leaves the seat when the seat heating and seat ventilation are switched on and the engine is running, the seat heating and seat ventilation of the front passenger seat will be switched off automatically. The display on the Infotainment system will change to or after around 2 seconds. If the front passenger returns to the seat when the engine is still running, the seat heating and seat ventilation of the front passenger seat will be switched on again automatically.

Automatic seat air conditioning at the start of a journey

1. Open the air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap to open the **Air conditioning settings** submenu.
3. To select the temperature and ventilation settings at the start of the journey, tap ∨ in the **Seat heating** or **Seat ventilation** menu option.

   After starting the engine, the selected temperature and ventilation settings are automatically switched on depending on the outside temperature.

   Or: select **Off** in the respective menu option if you do not want the seat heating or seat ventilation to switch on automatically at the start of the journey.

Automatic mode of the seat air conditioning

Automatic control of seat air conditioning is available depending on the vehicle equipment.

Opening the Seat air conditioning menu

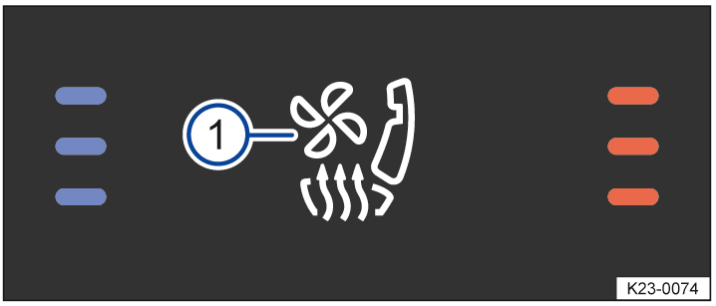


Fig. 1 In the Infotainment system: seat ventilation, seat settings and seat heating.

1. To open the **Seats** menu, tap function button → *Fig. 1* (1) on the driver or front passenger side.

   Or: open the **Seats** menu in the app overview.

2. Open the **Seat air conditioning** submenu.

Automatic functions in the Seat air conditioning submenu

AUTO In automatic mode, the seat heating and seat ventilation are controlled depending on the temperature and moisture in the seat. Automatic mode is switched off if the heating or ventilation setting of the seat heating or seat ventilation is changed manually. You can adjust the intensity of seat air conditioning in the **Seat air conditioning settings** menu.

Maximum temperature setting of the seat heating for a limited time.

Combines heating and ventilation for a limited time by first heating the seat. The temperature setting is reduced automatically after a certain time and the ventilation setting is increased.

Maximum ventilation setting of the seat ventilation for a limited time.

Automatic mode of the seat air conditioning remains switched on after this time elapses.

Displays of the automatic seat air conditioning

When you switch on automatic mode of the seat air conditioning, the following operating states may be displayed in the air conditioning block:

Seat heating and seat ventilation switched off.

Seat heating switched on and seat ventilation switched off.

Seat heating switched off and seat ventilation switched on.

Seat heating and seat ventilation switched on.

Adjusting the intensity of the seat air conditioning

You can adjust the intensity of the seat heating and seat ventilation separately for the seat and the seat cushion if, for example, you wish to heat or ventilate the backrest of the driver's seat less than the seat cushion.

1. Open the **Seats** menu in the app overview.

2. Open the **Settings** submenu.
3. Select the **Seat air conditioning settings** menu.
4. Select the driver side or front passenger side.
5. To adjust the intensity of the seat heating or seat ventilation, move the sliders for the seat cushion and backrest to the right or left.

   If you select a higher intensity, heating or ventilation takes place for longer and more intensively.

Steering wheel heating

The steering wheel heating functions when the engine is running.

Switch the steering wheel heating on and off in the air conditioning menu.

Switch the steering wheel heating on and off on the multifunction steering wheel.

Temperature settings of the steering wheel heating

The steering wheel heating operating states are shown in colour in the Infotainment system and on the instrument cluster display. The symbol is coloured red at the highest temperature setting.

Highest temperature setting of the steering wheel heating.

Operating the heated steering wheel

1. Open the air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap to switch on the steering wheel heating at the highest temperature setting.

   Or: press on the multifunction steering wheel.
3. To adjust the temperature setting, tap repeatedly.
4. To switch off the steering wheel heating, tap repeatedly until the symbol is coloured white.

Steering wheel heating switches on automatically

The most recent temperature setting is switched on automatically if you start the engine again within approximately 10 minutes.

Switching the steering wheel heating on automatically at the start of the journey

1. Open the air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap to open the **Air conditioning settings** submenu.
3. Activate the **Steering wheel heating** checkbox.

   After starting the engine, the steering wheel heating is automatically switched on depending on the outside temperature and temperature of the steering wheel.

Switching on the steering wheel heating automatically with the Smart Climate function

Direct warm air onto the steering wheel.

When you switch on the Smart Climate function in the air conditioning menu, the steering wheel heating will be switched on automatically with the highest temperature setting. The steering wheel heating will remain switched on after the time elapses.

If the steering wheel heating is already switched on before you switch on the Smart Climate function , the already adjusted temperature setting of the steering wheel heating will remain selected.

Steering wheel heating switches off automatically

The steering wheel heating switches itself off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

— The power consumption is too high.

— There is a fault in the steering wheel heating system.

Windscreen heating

The windscreen heating works when the engine is running.

Switch the windscreen heating on and off in the air conditioning menu.

The windscreen heating switches itself off depending on the outside temperature or after around 8 minutes at the latest.

Automatic windscreen heating

The windscreen heating is switched on automatically if there is a risk of condensation forming on a window.

1. Open the air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Switch the automatic windscreen heating on or off with ▶ **Automatic windscreen heating**.

Automatic windscreen heating is also active when the air conditioning system is switched off.

Windscreen heating using the defrost function

The windscreen heating will be switched on automatically when the defrost function is switched on and a sensor detects that condensation may form on the windscreen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically

The windscreen heating switches itself off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

— The power consumption is too high.

— There is a fault in the air conditioning system.

— The specified time has elapsed.

Rear window heating

The rear window heating works when the engine is running.



Switch the rear window heating on and off in the air conditioning block.

The rear window heating switches off automatically after around 10 minutes at the latest.

NOTICE

Stickers that are affixed over the heating conductors of the rear window heating on the inside of the rear window or objects that are in contact with the inside of the rear window can damage the rear window heating.

- Do not stick any stickers over the heating conductors of the rear window heating.
- Load the luggage compartment only up to a height where no objects are in contact with the rear window.



To save fuel, switch off the rear window heating as soon as possible.

Automatic supplementary heating function

Switching the automatic supplementary heating function on and off

The availability of the automatic supplementary heating function depends on the vehicle equipment. An additional heater can help to warm up the vehicle interior more quickly.

1. Open the air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap to open the **Air conditioning settings** submenu.
3. Tap **Automatic supplementary heater**.

   The heating unit is switched on automatically depending on the outside temperature and switches off again automatically after a short time.

Vehicles with auxiliary heater (depending on equipment)

When the engine has been started, the auxiliary heater can continue operation as a supplementary heater. The following conditions must be met for this:

— The **Automatic supplementary heater** function is switched on in the air conditioning menu.

— The outside temperature is lower than +5°C (+41°F).

The automatic supplementary heating function is switched off automatically after a while.

Introduction to the topic

The auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation systems allow the vehicle interior to be heated in winter and ventilated in summer. The auxiliary heater allows ice, condensation or a thin covering of snow to be cleared from the windscreen. The auxiliary heater is supplied with fuel from the vehicle fuel tank and can be operated when the vehicle is stationary with the ignition switched off. The auxiliary ventilation system is supplied with power by the 12-volt vehicle battery.

Operating mode of the auxiliary heater

When the auxiliary heater is switched on, the vehicle automatically sets the operating mode Heating or Ventilation depending on the outside temperature and the temperature set in the Climatronic air conditioning block.

At high outside temperatures, the auxiliary ventilation function supplies fresh air to the vehicle interior and helps prevent a build-up of heat.

Exhaust system of the auxiliary heater

The emissions generated by the auxiliary heater are removed via an exhaust pipe underneath the vehicle. The exhaust pipe must not be blocked by snow, mud or any objects.

DANGER

The emissions from the auxiliary heater contain carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.

- Never switch on the auxiliary heater and leave the auxiliary heater running if the vehicle is located in enclosed or unventilated spaces.
- Never program the auxiliary heater so that it is switched on and runs in unventilated or enclosed spaces.

WARNING

Parts of the auxiliary heater's exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heater.

NOTICE

Foodstuffs, medicines and objects that are sensitive to heat or cold can be damaged or made unusable by the air flowing out of the vents.

- Never leave food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects in front of the vents.

Switching the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation on and off

The auxiliary heater can be operated when the ignition is switched on and off.

Opening the Stationary air conditioning menu

Open the **Stationary air conditioning** menu in the Infotainment system

1. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap .

Switching on the auxiliary heater

Immediate heat function in the **Stationary air conditioning** menu in the Infotainment system.

Button on the remote control .

You can also switch on the auxiliary heater automatically for a planned departure time *(→ Auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation)*.

When the auxiliary heater is switched on, the yellow LED for the auxiliary heater lights up in the instrument cluster.

The auxiliary heater will not switch on if the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is low or the fuel tank is empty.

Switching off the auxiliary heater manually

Immediate heat function in the **Stationary air conditioning** menu in the Infotainment system.

OFF Button on the remote control .

Auxiliary heater switches off automatically

The auxiliary heater switches itself off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

— The programmed departure time has been reached or the set operating time has elapsed *(→ Auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation)*.

— The yellow fuel gauge indicator lamp lights up .

— The charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low.

In order to burn the remaining fuel in the auxiliary heater, the auxiliary heater will continue running for a short time after being switched off manually or automatically.

When the vehicle is at a standstill, the auxiliary heater can be activated up to three times in succession for the maximum operating duration.

Operating noises can be heard if the auxiliary heater is switched on.

The 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge if the auxiliary heater or auxiliary ventilation is run several times over an extended period. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the 12-volt vehicle battery.

If you park on a downhill slope with very little fuel in the tank, just above reserve level, the fuel gauge may be inaccurate and lead to functional restrictions of the auxiliary heater.

Programming the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary heater can be programmed for your planned departure time in the Infotainment system. You can program the desired temperature of the vehicle interior for a planned departure time.

Setting the running time of the auxiliary heater

1. Open the **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
2. Tap ⚙.
3. Set the desired running time.

The set running time applies when the auxiliary heater is switched on with the immediate heat function or using the remote control.

The maximum running time of the auxiliary heater is 60 minutes.

Setting desired temperature

The auxiliary heater warms up the interior depending on the desired temperature. The vehicle interior warms up evenly.

1. Open the **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
2. Tap .
3. Set the desired temperature by means of ⊖ and ⊕.

If you switch on the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation when the ignition is switched on, the vehicle interior is air-conditioned to the temperature you have set in the air conditioning block in the Infotainment system.

Programming departure time

1. Before programming, check that the date and time set in the vehicle are correct *(→ Clock)*.
2. Open the **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
3. Tap to open the timer menu.
4. Set the planned departure time.
5. Tap .
6. To switch on the timer, activate the checkbox.

   On the basis of the programmed departure time, the vehicle automatically calculates the start time for heating or ventilation to the currently set temperature. This also depends on the outside temperature.

   The earliest programmed departure time is shown in the exit menu in the Infotainment system and can be switched on or off there *(→ Exit menu)*.

Checking programming

If a departure time has been activated, the yellow LED in the instrument cluster will light up for approximately 10 seconds after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ DANGER

The emissions from the auxiliary heater contain carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.

- Never program the auxiliary heater to switch on and run when the vehicle is in an unventilated or enclosed space.

Remote control of the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation

With the remote control, the fuel-operated auxiliary heater can be switched on and off from outside the vehicle.



Fig. 1 Remote control for the auxiliary heater.

Switching on the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation with the remote control

1. Press the button for around 1 second → *Fig. 1*, → ⚠.

Switching off the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation with the remote control

1. Press the OFF button for around 1 second → *Fig. 1*.

LED in the remote control

The LED indicates various operating states after you press a button → *Fig. 1* (2).

- Lights up green: auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation switched on.
- Flashes green at regular intervals: switch-on signal not received. Reduce your distance from the vehicle.
- Flashes green at irregular intervals: auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation blocked.

Operation of the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation will be blocked if one of the following conditions applies:

— The fuel tank is almost empty.

— The voltage of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low.

— There is a system fault.

1. Refuel the vehicle.
2. Drive the vehicle for a sufficiently long distance in order to charge the 12-volt vehicle battery.
3. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

- Lights up red: auxiliary heater switched off.
- Flashes red at regular intervals: switch-off signal not received. Reduce your distance from the vehicle.
- Flashes or lights up orange: the button cell in the remote control is weak. Replace the button cell.

Range

The remote control has a range of several hundred metres when the button cell is charged and under ideal conditions.

— Keep a distance of at least 2 m (7 ft) between the remote control and the vehicle.

— Avoid obstacles between the remote control and vehicle.

— Hold the remote control with the chrome trim → *Fig. 1* (1) pointing vertically upwards.

— Do not cover the aerial.

Poor weather conditions, nearby buildings or a weak button cell will significantly reduce the range.

DANGER

The emissions from the auxiliary heater contain carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.

- Never switch on the auxiliary heater or leave the auxiliary heater running if the vehicle is located in enclosed or unventilated spaces.
- Never program the auxiliary heater so that it is switched on and runs in unventilated or enclosed spaces.

WARNING

Parts of the auxiliary heater's exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heater.

NOTICE

The remote control contains electronic components which can be damaged by moisture, strong vibrations and direct sunlight.

- Protect the remote control from moisture, strong vibrations and direct sunlight.

Replacing the button cell in the remote control

The button cell in the remote control has to be replaced if the LED lights up or flashes orange or does not light up.

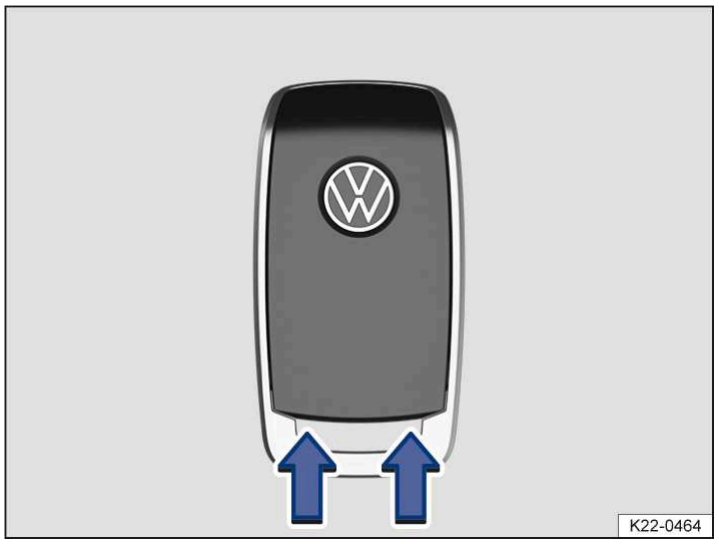


Fig. 1 Remote control: battery compartment cover for battery compartment.



Fig. 2 Replacing the button cell in the remote control.

Replacing the button cell

1. Insert a suitable tool, e.g. a screwdriver, into the recess on the remote control housing in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.
2. Using the tool, lever off the battery compartment cover in an upward direction until the housing catches are released.
3. Carefully push the battery compartment cover in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1* and remove the battery compartment cover.
4. To remove the button cell, carefully insert a tool, such as a screwdriver, in the recess at the button cell → *Fig. 2*.
5. Carefully lever up the button cell with the screwdriver until the button cell is released from the battery compartment; remove the button cell.
6. Insert a new button cell of the same type so that it engages in the battery compartment. Pay attention to the information on the correct polarity and type of the button cell. (This information is located on the inner side of the battery compartment cover).
7. Push the battery compartment cover carefully onto the remote control housing in the opposite direction to the arrow and press slightly until the cover clicks in.

⚠ DANGER

If button cell batteries are swallowed or get into the wind pipe, this can lead to serious or even fatal injuries due to suffocation or internal burns within a very short space of time.

- Call for medical help immediately if you suspect that someone has swallowed a button cell battery.
- If the battery compartment cover cannot be closed, do not use the remote control.

- Always keep the remote control and key fob with button cells out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Unsuitable button cells can damage the remote control.

- Replace a discharged button cell only with a new button cell of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when inserting the button cell.

Dispose of discharged button cells in an environmentally-friendly way.

The button cell in the remote control may contain perchlorate. Observe the legal requirements for disposal.

Troubleshooting

Cooling mode A/C or the heater cannot be switched on or operation is restricted

Cooling mode A/C works only when the engine is running and at ambient temperatures above +3°C (+38°F).

The heating and defrost function are more effective when the engine is warm.

The cooling mode A/C, heating and defrost function may be restricted when the engine is very hot or at extreme outside temperatures.

— Switch on the blower.

— Check the fuse of the air conditioning system .

— Replace enhanced air filter with activated carbon .

— If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

NOTICE

If the air conditioning system is not working and is nevertheless still operated, this can cause secondary damage.

- If the air conditioning system does not cool or heat the air, switch it off immediately.
- Have the air conditioning system checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Condensation on the windows

Condensation may form on the windows if they are colder than the ambient temperature and the air is humid. Cold air can absorb less moisture than warm air, which is why condensation frequently forms on windows in cold weather.

1. In order to improve the heating and cooling output, keep the air intake in front of the windscreen free of ice, snow and leaves *(→ Vehicle care)*.
2. Keep the air slots in the rear area of the luggage compartment clear so that air can flow through the vehicle from the front to the rear.
3. Switch on the defrost function *(→ Defrost function)*.

The wrong unit of temperature has been set

You can change the unit of measurement for all temperature displays in the vehicle using the Infotainment system.

1. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
2. Open the **Settings** menu.
3. Select the **Units** menu option.

Water or water vapour under the vehicle

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, condensation can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

If the outside humidity is high and the ambient temperature is low, condensation may evaporate when the auxiliary heater is running. If this is the case, steam may appear underneath the vehicle. This is not a sign that the vehicle is damaged.

The auxiliary heater cannot be switched on

When the vehicle is at a standstill, the auxiliary heater can be switched on up to three times in succession for the maximum operating duration.

If you park on a downhill slope with very little fuel in the tank, just above reserve level, the fuel gauge may be inaccurate and lead to functional restrictions of the auxiliary heater.

The 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge if the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation are run several times over an extended period.

1. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the 12-volt vehicle battery.

Noises when auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation are switched on

Operating noises when the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation are switched on are normal and not a sign of a malfunction.

Air conditioning block for the rear seats cannot be operated

If REAR is switched on, the rear air conditioning block cannot be operated *(→ Temperature adjustment of the air conditioning system)*.

Touch panels react differently than expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Information on steering

The steering should be locked every time you leave the vehicle to make it more difficult for the vehicle to be stolen.

Steering

The power steering provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering torque and steering angle of the wheels. The electromechanical steering only functions when the engine is running. The steering still functions when the start/stop system intervenes and switches off the engine.

You will need considerably more strength than normal to steer the vehicle if the power steering is reduced or has failed completely.

Vehicles with eco-coasting function: the power steering also works when the engine is switched off while driving →⚠.

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the selected driving profile can affect the behaviour of the power steering.

Electronic steering lock

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depending on equipment: engage the parking lock P.
3. Switch off the ignition and then open the driver door.

   The steering column is locked.

If you do not want the steering column to be locked, first open the driver door and then switch off the ignition. The steering column will remain unlocked as long as the vehicle is not locked.

Counter steering assistance

Counter steering assistance provides the driver with steering assistance in some critical driving situations. In combination with the ESC, additional steering power helps the driver when counter steering →⚠.

Progressive steering

Depending on the vehicle equipment, progressive steering can adjust the required steering movement to the driving situation. Progressive steering only functions when the engine is running.

In urban traffic, less steering input is required when parking, manoeuvring or turning sharply.

When driving on country roads or on the motorway, the progressive steering provides a more sporty, direct steering response and a dynamic feel when cornering, for example.

⚠ WARNING

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the power steering functions only when the engine is running. If the power steering is not working, the steerability of the vehicle will be significantly reduced due to a stiff steering wheel. This can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injuries and death.

- Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

If the electronic steering lock engages, you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. This can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injuries and death.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

The counter steering assistance is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Uncontrolled vehicle movements can occur in critical driving situations in spite of the counter steering assistance. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Please note that the vehicle is not steered by the counter steering assistance.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

Troubleshooting

Steering fault

The warning lamp lights up or flashes red.

There is a fault in the electromechanical steering or electronic steering lock.

If the warning lamp lights up red, the steering may be stiff because the power steering has failed or safe operation of the electromechanical steering cannot be guaranteed.

Do not drive on!

1. Seek expert assistance.

Steering fault

The indicator lamp lights up or flashes yellow.

The steering is harder or more sensitive than usual.

1. Move the steering wheel to and fro to each steering lock.
2. Re-start the engine and drive a short distance slowly.
3. Observe the messages on the instrument cluster display.

4. If the warning lamp stays lit, the system should be checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Information on the pedals

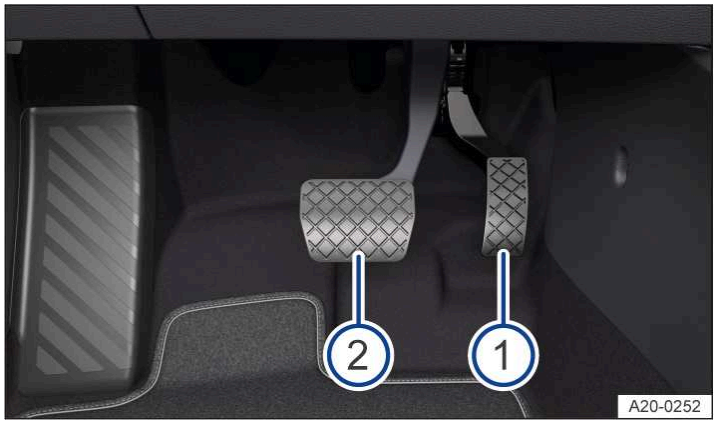


Fig. 1 In the footwell: pedals.

(1) Accelerator.

(2) Brake pedal

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- Use only floor mats that are suitable for your vehicle.
- The floor mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- No additional floor mats or other floor coverings should be placed over the fitted floor mat.
- Make sure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- If there are any objects in the footwell, remove them when the vehicle is parked.
- Always wear shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.

⚠ WARNING

In order to bring the vehicle to a standstill, a longer brake pedal travel is required in the event of failure of a brake circuit. A longer braking distance can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Continue pressing the brake pedal and press the pedal with more force than usual if the braking power is reduced.

Information on the brakes

Running in brake pads

New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during around the first 200 to 300 km (around 100 bis 200 miles) and must first be run in →⚠. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. During the run-in period, the braking distance is longer when the brakes are depressed fully or during emergency braking than with brake pads that have been fully run in. In the run-in period, the brakes should not be depressed fully and situations should be avoided that create a heavy load on the brakes, e.g. when driving up close to the vehicle ahead.

Brake pad wear

The wear of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is used for regular urban trips or short journeys and is driven with a sporty driving style, the brake pads must be regularly checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

External influences on the brakes

When driving with wet brakes, for example after driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed as the brake discs will be wet, or possibly iced up (in winter). The brakes must be "dried" as quickly as possible by careful braking at higher speed. Please ensure that no other vehicles and no road users are put at risk as a result of this action →⚠.

Any salt layer accumulating on the discs and pads will delay the braking effect and increase the braking distance. If the brakes on the vehicle have not been applied for a long time on roads that have been gritted with salt, the layer of salt must be reduced through careful braking →⚠. Please ensure that no other vehicles and no road users are put at risk as a result of this action →⚠.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt in the brake pads are facilitated through long periods of inactivity, low mileage and low load levels. If the brake pads have been hardly used or if they are corroded, Volkswagen recommends that the brake discs and brake pads be cleaned by braking strongly several times from high speed. Please ensure that no other vehicles and no road users are put at risk as a result of this action →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or a faulty brake system can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- If you have reason to believe that the brake pads are worn or the brake system is faulty, go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the brake system checked and have any worn brake pads replaced. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during around the first 300 km (around 200 miles) and must first be run in. An insufficient braking effect can increase the risk of accidents. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Increase the pressure on the brake pedal if you notice that the braking effect is reduced.
- Drive with particular care with new brake pads to reduce the risk of accidents, serious injuries and loss of control of the vehicle.
- Never drive too close to other vehicles when running in new brake pads, and never create a driving situation that will place a heavy load on the brakes.

⚠ WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat. This can significantly reduce the braking performance, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never "ride" the brake pedal or depress the brake pedal too often and for too long.

⚠ WARNING

When driving downhill, the brakes are placed under particular strain and become hot very quickly. Overheated brakes reduce the braking effect and considerably increase the braking distance. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Before starting your journey, make sure that the air supply to the brakes is not covered, e.g. by non-standard or damaged front spoilers.

WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react more slowly and require longer braking distances. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Carefully test the brakes.
- If the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, apply the brakes gently a few times to dry the brakes and remove ice and salt.

WARNING

If the vehicle is driven at a high speed, the driver may have to exert more force to achieve sufficient braking efficiency. Inadequate braking efficiency can increase the risk of accidents and lead to serious or fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum permitted speed.
- Always observe the current traffic regulations and speed limits and think ahead when driving.

Regularly perform a visual check of the thickness of the brake pads through the openings in the wheel rims or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels to carry out a comprehensive check. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Troubleshooting

Brake system fault

The warning lamp lights up red. A text message may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not drive on!

1. Seek expert assistance immediately.

Brake pad wear indicator

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. The brake pads are worn.

1. In this case, go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
2. All brake pads should be checked and renewed as necessary.

and Brakes too hot

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic signal may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop at the next opportunity.
2. Engage the parking lock P.
3. Keep the vehicle stopped with the electronic parking brake switched on and ignition switched on until a further text message appears.
4. Then go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Unusual noises when braking

If you hear scratching or squeaking noises each time you brake, this is an indication that your brake pads on the front and rear axle are worn.

1. In this case, go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
2. All brake pads should be checked and renewed as necessary.

If the braking performance of the vehicle changes

If the brake pads are worn or if you establish that the vehicle is no longer braking in the usual way, for example, in the event of a sudden lengthening of the stopping distance:

1. In this case, go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
2. All brake pads should be checked and renewed as necessary.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorised vehicle key.

Vehicles with starter button

The vehicle key contains a chip that automatically deactivates the immobiliser when a valid vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated as soon as the ignition is switched off *(→ Starter button)*.

The engine can be started only when a Volkswagen Genuine vehicle key with the correct code is used. Coded vehicle keys are available from an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Starter button

The starter button replaces the ignition lock (Press & Drive).

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox: The engine is started by pressing the starter button with the brake pedal depressed.

The vehicle can be activated only if there is a valid vehicle key in the vehicle.

Depending on equipment, the starter button flashes to indicate readiness for operation.

When leaving the vehicle, the electronic steering lock will be activated when the ignition is switched off and the driver door is opened *(→ Steering)*.

Switching the ignition on or off



Fig. 1 In the lower section of the centre console: starter knob.

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox:

1. Press the starter button once without pressing the brake pedal → *Starter button*.

Switching off the ignition automatically

If the combustion engine was switched off by the start/stop system and the driver is detected as being absent by the vehicle, it is possible to continue driving the vehicle within 30 seconds without restarting the engine manually. To do this, the driver's door must be closed and the seat belt fastened.

After the 30 seconds have elapsed, the ignition will otherwise switch off to prevent unintentional discharging of the 12-volt vehicle battery. Observe any messages that appear on the instrument cluster display.

In order to protect the 12-volt vehicle battery, the ignition is switched off automatically when leaving the vehicle (under certain conditions) in order to ensure that the vehicle can be restarted.

Automatically switching on the side lights

If the headlights are switched on at the time the ignition is automatically deactivated, the side lights are switched on either until the vehicle is locked or for no more than about 30 minutes.

Engine restart function

If no valid vehicle key is detected in the vehicle interior when the engine has been switched off unintentionally, it is possible to restart the engine within approximately 5 seconds.

After this time, the engine cannot be restarted without a valid vehicle key in the vehicle interior.

WARNING

The engine will start immediately if the brake pedal is pressed when the ignition is switched on. This can lead to unintentional vehicle movements and cause serious injuries.

- If you do not want to start the engine, avoid pressing the brake pedal when switching on the ignition.

WARNING

If the vehicle key is left unattended in the vehicle, children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine or switch on the ignition and thus operate electrical equipment, e.g. electric windows. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.

WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

WARNING

If the vehicle is left when it is ready to drive, the vehicle could move suddenly or something unexpected could happen that might cause damage, fire and serious injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, particularly if a position is selected.
- Never leave the vehicle when its drive system is active.
- Always switch off the ignition before you leave the vehicle.
- When parking or exiting the vehicle, always ensure that the parking lock **P** is engaged and that the electronic parking brake is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle always ensure that all doors, windows, the boot lid and bonnet are completely closed and locked.

NOTICE

If the vehicle has been driven at high load for a long period, the engine can overheat when it is switched off.

- Allow the engine to run in neutral for approximately 2 minutes before switching it off.

Before leaving the vehicle, always switch off the ignition manually and observe any information shown in the instrument cluster display.

Leaving the vehicle stationary for long periods with the ignition switched on can discharge the 12-volt vehicle battery so that the engine can no longer be started.

Starting the engine

Starting the engine

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Switch on the electronic parking brake.
3. Vehicles with an automatic gearbox: Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has started. Engage position **N** or the parking lock **P**.
4. briefly press the starter button *(→ Starter button)*. Do not press the accelerator when doing this. There must be a valid vehicle key in the vehicle before the engine can be started.
5. Vehicles with a diesel engine: The engine start is delayed until preheating has been completed.
6. If the engine does not start immediately, stop the starting procedure and try again after around 1 minute.
7. the starter button is deactivated if the vehicle was locked using the vehicle key. If you are in the vehicle and need to start the engine, unlock the vehicle first or perform an emergency start.

WARNING

Toxic gases can enter the vehicle interior if the engine is started in unventilated or closed spaces. This can cause serious injuries and lead to death by suffocation.

- Never start the engine in unventilated or closed spaces or allow it to run in unventilated or closed spaces, e.g. in garages.

WARNING

Hot components and exhaust gases can ignite combustible or explosive materials located nearby. This can lead to fires and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never start the engine or allow the engine to run if oil, fuel or other highly flammable service fluids are close to the vehicle or are leaking from the vehicle.
- Never use start boosters.

WARNING

If the vehicle is left unattended with the vehicle's drive system is active, it may lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, particularly if a gear or position has been selected.

NOTICE

Incorrect vehicle handling can increase component wear (e.g. on the engine or starter) or lead to damage.

- Avoid restarting the engine while the vehicle is in motion or directly after switching off the engine.
- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, strong acceleration and high engine loads.
- Please note that the density of air decreases with increasing altitude and this may make it more difficult to start the engine.

NOTICE

Unburnt fuel can damage the catalytic converter.

- Do not tow or push the vehicle to start it.

Do not warm up the engine by running it while the vehicle is stationary. Instead, pull off as soon as there is good visibility through the windows. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.

Electrical consumers with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily when the engine is started.

If there is no vehicle key in the vehicle or if it is not detected, a message will be shown on the instrument cluster display. This may occur if the vehicle key is disrupted by another radio signal or is covered by another item such as an aluminium suitcase.

The engine cannot, for example, be started with the starter button if the button cell in the vehicle key is weak or flat. In this case, use the emergency start function.

When starting from cold, the engine may run with increased operating noise for a short time. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

When the fuel-powered supplementary heater is switched on, there may be slight smoke formation under the vehicle at outside temperatures below around +5°C (around +41°F) on vehicles with a diesel engine.

Troubleshooting

Fault in engine management system

The warning lamp lights up red.

The drive power of the vehicle may be limited or there may be no power at all. It may not be possible to continue driving or this may be possible only with restrictions.

Do not drive on!

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Observe the text message on the instrument cluster display.
3. Seek expert assistance and have the engine management system checked.

Fault in engine management system

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The drive power of the vehicle may be limited.

1. The instrument cluster display shows a text message **Error: drive system. Please visit workshop.**
2. Have the engine checked immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fault in engine management system

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The power has been limited to prevent components of the engine management system from overheating.

— The instrument cluster display shows a text message **Error: drive system. Performance is restricted.** is displayed on the instrument cluster.

— It is possible to continue driving with reduced power.

The power limitation will be cancelled again in the following cases:

— The components of the engine management system are no longer in a critical temperature range.

Engine speed limited

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

In order to prevent the engine from overheating, the engine speed has been limited. The engine speed is also shown in the instrument cluster display.

The engine speed limitation will be cancelled again in the following cases:

— Engine is no longer in a critical temperature range.

— Foot is taken off the accelerator.

together with Engine speed limitation due to fault in the engine management system

The indicator lamps light up yellow.

Engine speed limitation is activated due to a fault in the engine management system.

The power of the drive system may be limited.

1. Make sure that the displayed engine speed is not exceeded.
2. Have the engine checked immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Glow plug system

Vehicles with a diesel engine:

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

When the diesel engine is being pre-heated, the indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display for a few seconds.

No valid vehicle key recognised



Fig. 1 In the centre console: emergency start function.

A notification will appear in the instrument cluster display.

If the button cell in the vehicle key is weak or discharged, it is possible that the vehicle key will not be recognised.

In this case it is necessary to perform an emergency start:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Place the vehicle key on the mat with the key symbol → *Fig. 1* (arrow) and press the starter button.

   The ignition is switched on automatically, and in some cases the engine is started.

Engine cannot be started

A display will be shown in the instrument cluster display if an unauthorised vehicle key is used or there is a system fault.

1. Use an authorised vehicle key.
2. If the fault persists, seek expert assistance.

Switching off the engine

1. Bring the vehicle to a standstill →⚠.
2. Park the vehicle.
3. briefly press the starter button. If the engine cannot be switched off, carry out the emergency switch-off procedure.
4. Follow the instructions in the instrument cluster.

Warning before leaving the vehicle

In order to indicate that the vehicle is capable of rolling when leaving the vehicle, an acoustic warning signal sounds when the driver door is opened and warning messages appear on the display of the instrument cluster.

Water vapour in cold and rainy conditions

If the vehicle is parked after driving in cold and rainy conditions, water vapour may emerge from the radiator grille for a short time. The formation of water vapour on hot engine components is normal and does not constitute a technical defect.

⚠ WARNING

An unattended vehicle that is ready to drive can move unintentionally. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended when the vehicle's drive system is active.
- Always switch the ignition off and always engage the parking lock P before leaving the vehicle.
- Always switch on the electronic parking brake when you park or leave the vehicle.

- When leaving the vehicle always ensure that all doors, windows, the boot lid and bonnet are completely closed and locked.

WARNING

When the engine is switched off, certain vehicle systems do not function or function only to a restricted extent, e.g. brake servo or power steering. As a result, more force has to be used for steering and more pressure has to be applied to the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. If the vehicle is in motion, this can cause loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

The airbags and belt tensioners do not function when the engine is switched off. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, the steering lock may activate and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. If the vehicle is in motion, this can cause loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot and can ignite highly flammable materials, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass or spilt fuel. This can lead to a fire and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Always park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with highly flammable materials underneath the vehicle.
- Never apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, heat shields or particulate filter.

WARNING

If vehicle keys are left unattended in the vehicle, children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine and thus operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.

WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle has been driven at high load for a long period, the engine can overheat when it is switched off.

- Allow the engine to run in neutral for approximately 2 minutes before switching it off.

After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan in the bonnet space may run on for a few minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. The radiator fan will switch itself off automatically.

Troubleshooting

Engine cannot be switched off

The engine cannot be switched off by briefly pressing the starter button.

In this case it is necessary to perform an emergency switch-off procedure:

1. Press the starter button twice within a few seconds or press and hold once.

   The engine switches off automatically *(→ Starter button)*.

Start/stop system

Functional description

The start/stop system automatically switches off the engine shortly before stopping or when the vehicle comes to a standstill and when the vehicle is stationary.

The engine restarts automatically whenever necessary for the vehicle and the detected situation.

Indicator lamps

If the indicator lamp Ⓐ lights up, the start/stop system is available and automatic engine stop is active.

If the indicator lamp lights up, the start/stop system is not available.

Conditions for an automatic restart of the engine

— When the foot is taken off the brake pedal or the accelerator is pressed.

— If the temperature in the vehicle interior greatly increases or decreases.

— If the vehicle starts rolling.

— If the electric voltage of the 12-volt vehicle battery drops.

— Vehicles with mild hybrid system: If the electric voltage of the 48-volt vehicle battery drops.

Conditions that may prevent the engine from switching off automatically

— The driver has not fastened their seat belt.

— The driver door is open.

— The bonnet is open.

— A minimum engine temperature has not been reached.

— The temperature of the vehicle interior is not within the preset temperature range, or the humidity level is too high.

— The defrost function of the air conditioning system is switched on.

— The charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is insufficient.

— Vehicles with mild hybrid system: the charge level of the 48-volt vehicle battery is insufficient.

— The temperature of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low or too high.

— The vehicle is on a steep incline.

— The steering wheel is turned too sharply.

— The windscreen heating is switched on.

— Reverse gear is selected.

— Park Assist is active.

— The **Offroad** driving profile is activated.

The engine can also switch off later if the conditions for automatic engine switch-off are fulfilled only after the vehicle has come to a stop, e.g. if the defrost function is switched off when stationary.

Activating and deactivating the start/stop system manually

The start/stop system can be manually deactivated and activated via the Infotainment system.

The function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on.

The eco-coasting function is not deactivated by deactivation of the start/stop function.

Deactivating the start/stop system manually:

1. Tap the Vehicle function button in the menu selection.
2. Tap the Status function button.

3. Tap the Start/stop function button to deactivate the start/stop system. When the start/stop system is deactivated, the Start/stop function button has a coloured background.

Always deactivate the start/stop system manually when driving through water.

Activating the start/stop system manually:

1. Tap the Vehicle function button in the menu selection.
2. Tap the Status function button.
3. Tap the Start/stop function button to activate the start/stop system.

If the start/stop system has switched the engine off, the engine will start again as soon as the system is deactivated with the function button.

Vehicles with mild hybrid system: if the start/stop system has switched off the engine and the system was deactivated via the function button, the engine will start only when the vehicle is stationary.

In some cases, it may be necessary to restart the engine manually, e.g. if the bonnet is opened. Observe the message on the instrument cluster display →.

Start-Stop mode with automatic Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The engine will be switched off after the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) has brought the vehicle to a standstill with an active braking intervention.

In the following instances, the engine will restart when ACC is active:

— If the accelerator is pressed.

— When ACC has resumed speed and distance control.

The start/stop system is automatically activated when the **Eco** driving profile is selected in vehicles featuring driving profile selection.

WARNING

The engine can start suddenly if the start/stop system is activated when working in the bonnet space. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always deactivate the start/stop system when working in the bonnet space.

WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, certain vehicle systems do not function or function only to a restricted extent (e.g. brake servo or power steering). As a result, more force has to be used for steering and more pressure has to be applied to the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. If the vehicle is in motion, this can cause loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

The airbags and belt tensioners do not function when the ignition is switched off. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, the steering lock may activate and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. If the vehicle is in motion, this can cause loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

If the start/stop system is used in very high outside temperatures over a long period, the 12-volt vehicle battery can be damaged.

- Avoid using the start/stop system at very high outside temperatures.

Troubleshooting

Engine no longer starts automatically

Vehicles with eco-coasting function: If the engine no longer starts automatically, the warning **Error: Vehicle energy system. Please visit workshop** may appear on the instrument cluster display.

1. Start the engine manually *(→ Starting the engine)*.
2. Deactivating the start/stop system manually *(→ Start/stop system)*.
3. In this case, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Driving mode selector

The selected position is shown in the instrument cluster display and on the driving mode selector when the ignition is switched on.

Selecting a position



Fig. 1 On the right of the steering column: driving mode selector of the automatic gearbox.

(1) Button for the parking lock.

(2) Driving mode selector.

To change from neutral position **N** to a gear position, carry out the following:

1. Start the engine.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Turn the driving mode selector in the desired direction → *Fig. 1* (2).

Changing position

The gear shift pattern is shown on the instrument cluster display when the brake is pressed or a gear selector position is selected.

To select the next position, turn the driving mode selector forward or back to the first pressure point. The driving mode selector returns to its initial position.

To skip a position, turn the driving mode selector beyond the pressure point in the desired direction. The driving mode selector returns to its initial position. In this way, it is possible to shift directly from position **D** to position **R**, for example. The position **N** is skipped in this case.

Description of positions

P The drive wheels are blocked. Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To engage the parking lock, press the (P) button → *Fig. 1* (1).

If the engine is switched off in the position **D/S** or **R**, or if incorrect exiting of the vehicle is detected, the gearbox automatically engages the position **P** and the vehicle is secured to prevent it from rolling away.

R Reverse gear is selected. Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N The gearbox is in the neutral position. No force is transmitted to the wheels and the braking effect of the engine is not available.

The roll-away protection and the parking lock **P** are activated if the engine is switched off in **N** gear selector position or if incorrect exiting of the vehicle is detected. The roll-away protection must be deactivated if the vehicle should remain capable of rolling .

D/S Position **D**: Normal mode.

All forward gears are shifted up and down automatically. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.

Position **S**: Sport mode

The forward gears are automatically shifted up later and down earlier than in selector lever position **D**. This exploits the engine's full power reserves. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.

To change between positions **S** and **D**, turn the driving mode selector forwards.

The driving mode selector will always move back to the centre position.

WARNING

The vehicle will start moving if the brake pedal is released when the engine is running and position **D/S** or **R** is engaged. This can lead to unintentional vehicle movements and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Hold the vehicle by the foot brake if the engine is running and the position **D/S** or **R** is engaged.
- The driver must never leave the driver seat when the engine is running and a position has been selected.
- Always engage the electronic parking brake and engage the parking lock **P** on the driving mode selector if you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running.

WARNING

Selecting the wrong position can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never press the accelerator when engaging a gear selector position.
- Never select reverse gear **R** or engage the parking lock **P** when the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

If you leave the vehicle on uphill gradients in neutral position **N**, the vehicle will roll downhill even if the engine is switched on. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle in the neutral position **N**.

NOTICE

If the electronic parking brake is not switched on when the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is released when the parking lock **P** is engaged, the vehicle may move a few centimetres forwards or backwards. This can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Always switch on the electronic parking brake first before releasing the brake pedal.

If you accidentally shift to **N** when driving, take your foot off the accelerator and wait for the engine to reach idling speed in neutral position. Select a position only after this.

Changing gear using Tiptronic

Using Tiptronic, the gears can be shifted up and down manually in an automatic gearbox.

It is possible to change to Tiptronic mode from positions **D** and **S** by pulling a paddle → *Fig. 1*.

Tiptronic mode is activated temporarily from position **D**.

Tiptronic mode is activated continuously from position **S**.

The gear that is currently selected will be maintained when the Tiptronic mode is selected. This applies until the system automatically performs a gear change when the limit engine speed is reached.

As soon as the gearbox has switched to Tiptronic mode, this will be shown on the instrument cluster display with **M**.

If the engine is switched off while the gearbox is in Tiptronic mode, the gearbox will activate the parking lock **P**. The vehicle is then secured against rolling away.

Operating Tiptronic with the paddles



Fig. 1 Behind the steering wheel: paddles for Tiptronic.

— To shift up, pull the right paddle towards the steering wheel → *Fig. 1*.

— To shift down, pull the left paddle towards the steering wheel → *Fig. 1*.

— To select the lowest gear, pull the left paddle towards the steering wheel and hold.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine speed is reached.

When shifting down a gear manually, the gearbox will not change gear until the engine can no longer be overrevved.

Leaving Tiptronic mode

1. Automatically after around 8 seconds if Tiptronic mode was activated from **D** gear selector position.

   Or: pull the right paddle towards the steering wheel for around 3 seconds and then release again.

   Or: engage the **D** position.

Driving with an automatic gearbox

The gearbox changes the forward gears up and down automatically.

Driving down hills

The steeper the downhill gradient, the lower the gear that must be selected. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never allow the vehicle to roll down mountains or hills in the neutral position **N**.

1. Reduce your speed.
2. Shift the gearbox to Tiptronic mode.
3. Shift down using the paddles on the steering wheel.

Stopping and pulling away on uphill gradients

The steeper the incline, the lower the gear that is required.

If you wish to stop the vehicle or pull away when driving uphill you should use the Auto Hold function.

Coasting

In order to save fuel by adopting an anticipatory driving style, the momentum of the vehicle is used when coasting. The engine no longer brakes the vehicle and the vehicle can roll for a longer distance.

Vehicles with combustion engine: The function is available only in the driving profile **Eco** when the accelerator is not pressed and at speeds of about 7 to 130 km/h (about 4 to 80 mph).

If you depress the brake when the vehicle is coasting to a stop below a speed of about 22 km/h (about 14 mph), the engine can switch off and remain switched off until the vehicle is stationary. An automatic engine start may take place in order to ensure reliable engine restarting and to guarantee the power supply of the vehicle electrical system.

Vehicles with mild hybrid system: The function is available only in the driving profiles **Eco** and **Comfort** when the accelerator is not pressed and at speeds of about 7 to 160 km/h (about 4 to 99 mph).

If you depress the brake when the vehicle is coasting to a stop below a speed of about 40 km/h (about 25 mph), the engine remains switched off until the vehicle is stationary. An automatic engine start may take place in order to ensure reliable engine restarting and to guarantee the power supply of the vehicle electrical system.

If you depress the brake when the vehicle is coasting to a stop above a speed of around 40 km/h (around 25 mph), coasting will be interrupted and the engine started.

When coming to a stop without braking, the engine restarts automatically at “creeping speed”.

Initiating and cancelling coasting

Initiating coasting:

1. Select **Eco** driving profile.

   Or: On vehicles with mild hybrid system: Select **Comfort** driving profile.

2. Remove foot from accelerator. The engine will be disengaged and run at idling speed. The vehicle rolls without the braking effect of the engine.

   The engine may additionally switch off on vehicles with mild hybrid system.

Cancelling coasting:

1. Press the accelerator.

   Or: pull paddle towards the steering wheel.

Setting the energy recovery level on vehicles with a mild hybrid system

On vehicles with a mild hybrid system, the brake energy recuperation of the eco-coasting function can be set in two stages in the Infotainment system.

The following settings can be selected:

— Automatic: use of brake energy recuperation to decelerate the vehicle depending on the driving situation and environmental conditions.

— Low: maximum utilisation of coasting within system limits.

1. Open the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.
2. Open the **Vehicle** menu.
3. Open the **Interior** menu.
4. Open the **Hybrid system** submenu.
5. Select setting.

Kickdown function

The kickdown function enables maximum acceleration in the **D** and **S** positions or in Tiptronic mode.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed fully, the gearbox will automatically shift to a lower gear, depending on the speed and engine speed. This will make use of the full vehicle acceleration →.

With the kickdown function, the gearbox does not shift up to the next gear until the engine reaches the maximum engine speed for the current gear.

When **Eco** driving profile is selected and the accelerator is depressed beyond the pressure point, the engine output is automatically regulated to ensure maximum vehicle acceleration.

Launch Control Program

The Launch Control Program gives the vehicle maximum acceleration from a standing start.

1. To start the Launch Control Program, tap **ASR Off** on the Infotainment system.

   Or: tap **ESC Off**.

Or: activate **ESC Sport** by tapping this mode.

2. Depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
3. Select **S** position.

   Or: activate Tiptronic mode.
4. Press the accelerator with your right foot until an engine speed of approximately 2,000 to 4,000 rpm is held automatically.

   Depending on the vehicle model, a text message on the instrument cluster display indicates that the Launch Control Program has been activated.
5. To start the vehicle with maximum acceleration, take your left foot off the brake → ⚠.
6. After acceleration, switch TCS, ESC back on again or switch off ESC Sport.

The Launch Control Program is available only if the gearbox has been “driven warm” and the steering wheel is in “straight-ahead position”.

⚠ WARNING

Fast acceleration or switching off TCS or ESC or activation of ESC Sport can lead to a loss of traction and skidding. On slippery roads in particular, e.g. in wet or icy conditions or on dirty road surfaces, this can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always adapt your driving style to the traffic.
- Use the kickdown function, the Launch Control Program or fast acceleration only if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and other road users are not put at risk due to the vehicle acceleration and the driving style.
- After acceleration, switch TCS or ESC back on again, or switch ESC Sport off again.

⚠ WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat. This can considerably reduce the braking effect, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never “ride” the brake pedal or press the brake pedal too often and for too long.

NOTICE

The gearbox is not lubricated if the vehicle rolls with the engine switched off. The automatic gearbox could overheat and be damaged.

- If the vehicle is stopped on an uphill gradient with an engaged position, do not hold it by pressing the accelerator but by braking.
- Never allow the vehicle to roll in gear selector position **N**, particularly if the engine is switched off.

NOTICE

Vehicles with Launch Control Program: accelerating with the Launch Control Program places heavy strain on all vehicle components. This can lead to higher wear.

- Use the function only when the vehicle is at operating temperature.

NOTICE

If the brake pads “rub” due to light pressure on the brake pedal, this will increase wear.

- If you do not really need to brake, never allow the brakes to “rub” with light pedal pressure.

Troubleshooting

Engine does not start

The indicator lamp lights up green.

Brake pedal was not depressed, e.g. when trying to engage another position with the driving mode selector.

1. To select a position, press the brake pedal.

Gearbox in emergency mode

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic signal may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a fault in the system and the automatic gearbox is operating in an emergency mode. It is not possible to engage reverse gear in some cases.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Danger of rolling away! P not possible

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic signal may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a fault in the system and the parking lock cannot be engaged.

1. When the vehicle is parked, check whether the electronic parking brake is switched on.
2. Seek expert assistance.

Driving mode selector fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic signal may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a fault in the driving mode selector.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Gearbox overheated

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic signal may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

The automatic gearbox can become too hot as a result of moving off frequently on uphill gradients, for example.

1. Stop at the next opportunity and allow the gearbox to cool down with engaged parking lock P and running engine →.
2. If the indicator lamp does not go out, switch on the electronic parking brake and leave the vehicle standing.
3. Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so could result in considerable damage to the gearbox.

Gearbox malfunction

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic signal may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a fault in the gearbox.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Gearbox faulty

The warning lamp lights up red.

An acoustic signal may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a serious fault in the gearbox.

Do not drive on!

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Engage the parking lock.

   Or: switch on the electronic parking brake.

3. Seek expert assistance.

Gearbox overheated

The warning lamp lights up red.

An acoustic signal may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

The automatic gearbox can become too hot as a result of moving off frequently on uphill gradients, for example.

Do not drive on!

1. Allow the gearbox to cool down with engaged parking lock P and running engine →.
2. If the indicator lamp does not go out, switch on the electronic parking brake and leave the vehicle standing.
3. Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so could result in considerable damage to the gearbox.

Manual release of the parking lock

If the power fails in the vehicle, e.g. due to a flat 12-volt vehicle battery, and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the driving mode selector must be released manually.

1. Seek expert assistance.

Vehicle does not move even though position is engaged

If the vehicle will not move in the required direction, the system may have selected the position incorrectly.

1. Depress the brake pedal and reselect the position.
2. If the vehicle still does not move in the required direction, there is a system fault. Seek expert assistance and have the system checked.

WARNING

If the parking lock P is released and the electronic parking brake is switched off, the vehicle can start moving unexpectedly when on uphill and downhill gradients. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never release the parking lock P when the electronic parking brake is switched off.

NOTICE

If the vehicle rolls for an extended period or at high speed with the engine switched off and in gear selector position N, the automatic gearbox will be damaged.

- Do not allow the vehicle to roll for an extended period or at high speed with the engine switched off and in gear selector position N, e.g. when being towed.

NOTICE

If the gearbox becomes too hot or overheats, this can lead to increased wear or damage to the component.

- Avoid moving-off operations and driving at walking pace as long as the gearbox is overheated.
- Drive faster than around 20 km/h (around 12 mph) or park the vehicle in a safe place immediately when a warning is displayed for the first time indicating that the gearbox has overheated.
- Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and switch off the engine if the text message and acoustic warning are repeated around every 10 seconds.
- Allow the gearbox to cool down.
- Continue driving only when the acoustic warning is no longer emitted.

Information on brake support systems

Brake support systems can stabilise the vehicle in critical driving or braking situations and help to increase driving safety. The driver is responsible for driving safety →.

— Continue to brake with the necessary force when a brake support system is performing a control intervention.

— Steer the vehicle if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Brake support systems is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operate only within the limits of the respective system. Driving fast on icy, slippery or wet roads as well as driving too close to the vehicle in front can have an adverse effect on vehicle stability and lead you to lose control over the vehicle. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions. Never take any safety risks.
- Always keep the footwell under the pedals clear so that the brake pedal can move freely.
- Always use suitable tyres because driving stability depends on the grip of the tyres.

— The ESC, ABS and TCS can function properly only if all four wheels are fitted with the correct tyres →⚠.

— If the ABS fails, ESC, TCS and EDS will also cease to function.

The status of the brake functions is checked automatically when the ignition is switched on. The indicator lamps light up briefly and then go out again. If an indicator lamp remains lit up, there is a fault. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

⚠ WARNING

The effectiveness of ESC can be reduced considerably if other components and systems which affect driving dynamics are not serviced properly or are not functioning properly. This applies in particular to changes to the suspension and wheel and tyre combinations that have not been approved. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have vehicle conversions and modifications carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Always use suitable tyres because driving stability depends on the grip of the tyres.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC control intervention to reduce the risk of skidding and improve driving stability →⚠. The indicator lamp flashes yellow.

Traction control system (TCS)

TCS control intervention to prevent the wheels from spinning. The indicator lamp flashes yellow.

TCS reduces the drive output if wheelspin occurs and adapts the output to suit the road surface conditions. The TCS makes it easier to pull away, accelerate and drive up hills →⚠.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking during braking so that the vehicle can still be steered →⚠.

Brake Assist system

BAS can help to reduce the stopping distance. If the driver depresses the brake pedal quickly in an emergency braking situation, the BAS will increase the braking force →⚠.

Swerve support in emergency situations

If Front Assist detects the risk of a collision, an urgent warning of the Front Assist system will be displayed. Swerve support intervenes in emergency situations.

If the driver performs an evasive manoeuvre into another lane, ESC brakes individual wheels and helps to dynamically guide the vehicle around an obstacle. The vehicle is stabilised in the lane into which the evasive manoeuvre has taken place.

Switching a brake support system off and on

Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS)

EDS brakes a spinning wheel automatically and distributes the drive force to the other drive wheels.

XDS is an extension of the electronic differential lock and improves traction by braking interventions in order to keep the vehicle on its intended course.

Automatic Post-Collision Braking System

If the airbag control unit has detected a collision in an accident situation, the Automatic Post-Collision Braking System will initiate braking automatically.

Requirements for automatic braking:

✓ The driver does not press the accelerator.

Electronic brake pressure distribution system

The electronic brake pressure distribution regulates the braking force between the front axle and the rear axle outside of any ABS regulation. This avoids excessive braking of the rear axle and keeps the vehicle stable during braking.

Electromechanical brake servo

The electromechanical brake servo supports the driver's foot movement when the ignition is switched on, and boosts the pressure applied to the brake pedal by the driver →⚠. In the event of a braking intervention by a driver assist system, such as when ACC is performing a control intervention or during emergency braking, the brake pedal may move independently.

The brake pressure boost will reduce gradually after you switch off the ignition. Messages are displayed on the digital instrument cluster display if the vehicle is still held by means of the brake pedal. The brake servo function is restricted in this case.

Secure the stationary vehicle against rolling away *(→ Parking)*.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without the brake servo or with restricted brake servo function can considerably increase the braking distance. This can lead to accidents with serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch the engine or ignition off while the vehicle is in motion.
- Press the brake pedal with more force if the brake servo is not working or if the vehicle is being towed.
- Always keep the footwell under the pedals clear so that the brake pedal can move freely.

Driving situations

Depending on equipment, various brake support systems can be switched on and off.

To prevent any safety risk, brake support systems should not be switched off under normal conditions →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

With the ESC switched off, there is a much greater chance of the vehicle breaking away. Inexperienced drivers may find it difficult to control the vehicle when driving at high speeds. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch off ESC only if you are experienced in offroad driving.
- Switch on the ESC Sport only if you are driving on a closed road or track and have the necessary skills for sporty driving.
- Never take any safety risks.

Switching on and off

1. Open the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.
2. Open the **Vehicle** menu.
3. Open the **Exterior** menu.
4. Open the **Brakes** menu.
5. Activate the function in the **ESC system** drop-down list.

When the setting is no longer used, the brake support system should be switched back on fully →⚠.

TCS

It can help to switch off TCS when driving on loose terrain or when rocking the vehicle “backwards and forwards” if it has become stuck →⚠.

TCS Switched off manually. The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

ESC Sport

This function supports a sporty driving style. The ESC intervenes later to stabilise the vehicle, for example when taking bends in the road at high speed →⚠.

ESC Sport switched on. The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

ESC Off

This function supports experienced drivers when driving offroad. The ESC is switched off and no stabilising interventions take place. Always observe the safety warnings →⚠.

ESC Switched off manually. The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Depending on the equipment, confirm the selection in the instrument cluster.

Creating ESC operation as a favourite in the Infotainment system

In order to access the ESC settings directly, you can create a favourite function in the Infotainment system Control Centre, for example for switching off ESC. This function depends on the vehicle equipment *(→ Infotainment system overview)*.

Troubleshooting

Electromechanical brake servo failure

Do not drive on!

The warning lamp lights up red.

A text message may also be displayed.

1. Press the brake pedal more firmly as the braking distance will increase due to the lack of brake servo support.
2. Seek expert assistance.

Electromechanical brake servo fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

A text message is displayed for a few seconds.

The brake pedal may pulsate when pressed.

1. Press the brake pedal more firmly as the braking distance will increase due to the reduced brake servo support.
2. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Anti-lock brake system failure or fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The vehicle can be braked without ABS.

ESC fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. ESC has been switched off.

There is a fault or a malfunction.

1. Switch the ignition off and on.
2. Drive a short distance at a speed of approx. 15 km/h (around 9 mph) to approx. 20 km/h (around 12 mph).
3. If the indicator lamp remains lit, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Noises of the brake support systems

The brake pedal may move or noises may occur while the brake support systems are performing a control intervention.

1. Continue to brake with the necessary force, and steer the vehicle if necessary.

WARNING

If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the indicator lamp, the control function of the ABS may have failed. This can cause the rear wheels to lock when you brake. This may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and can result in accidents with serious or fatal injuries.

- To have the brake system checked, drive at reduced speed to the nearest suitably qualified specialist workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.

WARNING

The ABS is not functioning correctly if the indicator lamp does not go out or comes on while the vehicle is in motion. The vehicle can be stopped using the normal brakes only. Any restriction of the ABS can cause accidents and may result in vehicle damage and serious or fatal injury.

- Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Hill Start Assist

Hill Start Assist supports moving off on uphill gradients by actively holding the vehicle and is activated in all driving profiles as of an uphill gradient of around 6%.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites need to be met simultaneously:

✓ The Auto Hold function is switched off.

✓ On an incline, the stationary vehicle must be held in position with the foot brake until the vehicle starts moving.

✓ The engine is running “smoothly”.

✓ A gear selector position is engaged for driving uphill.

To move off, take your foot off the brake pedal and press the accelerator immediately. The brake will gradually be released as the vehicle pulls away.

The hold function of the Hill Start Assist only remains active for a short time. Start driving within about 2 seconds.

Function conditions

Hill Start Assist is deactivated immediately under the following conditions:

— If the vehicle is left.

— If the engine is not running smoothly or there is an engine fault.

— If the engine is switched off or has stalled.

— When the gearbox is in neutral position **N**.

— When a gear selector position facing down the hill is selected.

⚠ CAUTION

If you do not drive off immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may roll opposite the direction of travel when moving off. This can lead to injuries or damage.

- In this case, press the brake pedal immediately or switch on the electronic parking brake.
- If you want to prevent the vehicle rolling opposite the direction of travel when you drive off on an uphill gradient in dense traffic, press the brake pedal before you drive off.

Downhill speed control

Downhill speed control helps the rider when travelling downhill.

Function

The dual clutch gearbox DSG® selects the best gear depending on the steepness of the gradient and the current speed. The **D/S** position must be engaged for this. The downhill speed control system is not active in Tiptronic mode.

As the downhill speed control can shift down only as far as third gear, it may be necessary to activate the Tiptronic mode when driving down particularly steep inclines. In order to use the braking effect of the engine and relieve the load on the brakes, shift manually to second or first gear in Tiptronic mode.

The start/stop system is automatically deactivated as long as downhill speed control is active.

Activating downhill speed control automatically

— If the downhill gradient is greater than approximately 6%.

And: if the **D/S** position is engaged.

— In addition, if Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is switched off: if the vehicle speed is less than around 80 km/h (around 50 mph).

Or: the brake is pressed.

— In addition, if Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active: if the stored speed is exceeded.

Deactivating downhill speed control automatically

— If the downhill gradient becomes less steep.

— If the gearbox shifts up because the maximum engine speed of the function has been reached.

— If Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is also active: if the stored speed can be maintained.

⚠ WARNING

The downhill speed control system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The downhill speed control system cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents due to unintentional vehicle movements. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Please note that the downhill speed control system cannot always hold the vehicle on an uphill gradient or sufficiently brake the vehicle on downhill gradients, e.g. on slippery or icy surfaces.
- Always be ready to brake, particularly on slippery or icy surfaces.
- Brake the vehicle manually if the vehicle becomes faster in spite of downhill speed control.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

Introduction to the topic

By selecting different driving profiles, the driver can adapt the characteristics of the vehicle systems to the current driving situation, the desired ride comfort and an economical driving style. The adaptable vehicle systems include the chassis, steering, drive and the air conditioning system.

Different driving profiles are available, depending on the vehicle equipment level. The effect on the vehicle systems in the individual driving profiles depends on the vehicle equipment level.

Vehicles with adaptive chassis control (DCC Pro)

The adaptive chassis control (DCC Pro) continuously adjusts the chassis damping to the current road surface and driving situation while the vehicle is in motion. The DCC Pro takes the chassis tuning of the selected driving profile into account

Presentation mode

If the driving profile is changed or the slider is moved in the **Individual** driving profile when the vehicle is stationary with the ignition switched on, the adaptive chassis control will be activated for around 30 seconds. Within this time, the adaptive chassis control can be tested in the different settings.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Select driving profile.

   Or: move the slider in the **Individual** driving profile.
3. Move the vehicle at the luggage compartment load sill or roof side member →.

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged if pressure is exerted on the vehicle body in an inappropriate way, e.g. by pressing on the wing, bonnet or roof.

- Press only from above onto the luggage compartment load sill or from the side against the roof side member.

Some settings can be stored in the personalised user accounts and therefore change when the user account changes.

Selecting a driving profile

The driving profile can be selected when the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is stationary or while driving.

If you have selected a driving profile while driving, the vehicle systems will be switched immediately to the new driving profile except for **Drive**.

1. To also activate the newly selected driving profile for the **Drive** system, briefly take your foot off the accelerator as soon as permitted by the traffic situation.

Selecting the driving profile via the Infotainment system

1. Tap the MODE function button on the Infotainment system.
2. Set preferred driving profile.

Adapting the Individual driving profile

The settings for various vehicle systems can be adjusted in the **Individual** driving profile:

1. Select the **Individual** driving profile.
2. Tap on the function button.
3. Adjust the vehicle systems.

Displaying information on the driving profile

Additional information on the driving profile can be displayed on the Infotainment system:

1. Tap at the function button of the driving profile.

WARNING

Selecting a driving profile while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.

Characteristics of the driving profiles

The selected driving profile is shown on the instrument cluster display.

In the **Offroad** driving profile, it is not possible to shift to gear selector position **S**. When an offroad driving profile is selected, information is shown in the instrument cluster display.

1. Select a different driving profile in order to be able to select the **S** position.

The **Eco** driving profile switches the vehicle into economical mode and helps you to drive the vehicle in an energy-efficient manner.

The **Comfort** driving profile corresponds to the basic setting of the vehicle systems and leads to a comfort-oriented vehicle setup. It is suitable for everyday use, for example.

The **Sport** driving profile gives you a sporty driving feeling. If you select the **Sport** driving profile, gear selector position **S** will be selected on vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

You can use the **Individual** driving profile to tailor individual vehicle systems to suit your personal requirements.

The **Offroad** driving profile makes it easier to control acceleration with the accelerator when driving offroad. The braking action of the engine is always available and gearshifts can be prevented in critical situations. Hill Descent Control is active in the **Offroad** driving profile. In order to provide better support in poor visibility conditions, the dynamic cornering light function is adapted.

Standard behaviour of the driving profiles and vehicle systems

The **Comfort** driving profile corresponds to the basic settings of the vehicle systems when the ignition is switched on.

Behaviour of the driving profiles when the ignition is switched off and on

The vehicle system settings are reset to the **Comfort** driving profile when the ignition is switched off and then back on again.

The desired driving profile can be activated again:

1. Select the desired driving profile again by means of the driving profile selection.

Troubleshooting

Fault in the adaptive chassis control (DCC Pro)

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The message **Fault: damper** may be displayed on the instrument cluster display.

1. In this case, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The driving profiles or vehicle systems do not behave as expected.

1. Note the standard behaviour of the driving profiles and vehicle systems *(→ Driving profile selection)*.

Introduction to the topic

The example stated in this chapter must be understood as general guidelines that are intended to help the driver to drive safely when driving offroad. However, it is not possible to predict whether these guidelines will be valid for all situations that could occur. Before driving in unknown terrain, it is crucial to obtain knowledge about the characteristics of the terrain ahead. This will enable you to assess potential danger in advance. The driver is responsible for deciding whether the vehicle is suitable for the terrain in question and whether it is possible to drive across the terrain.

Driving offroad demands different skills and driving styles in comparison to driving on roads.

The vehicle is not built for “expedition-type” travel.

Switch off the driver assist and parking systems when driving offroad.

Checklist

Before every journey, the following steps should be taken in order to be able to drive and control the vehicle away from surfaced roads:

✓ Observe the general safety notes for driving off-road *(→ Offroad driving)*.

✓ Fold in or remove the ball coupling.

✓ Adjust the seat position so that you have a good view to the front. Fasten seat belts *(→ Sitting position)*.

✓ Always wear suitable, well-fitting shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.

A responsible driver should respect the environment when driving offroad. Remember that driving through undergrowth and on meadows can destroy animal and plant habitats.

Leaking service fluids due to vehicle damage can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

Take suitable accessories and equipment with you when driving offroad.

Safety notes for offroad driving

WARNING

ABS and ESC is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver. These systems were developed exclusively for driving on surfaced roads and operate only within the overall limits of the respective system. ABS and ESC are not suitable for offroad driving. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the systems. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit the terrain conditions. Difficult ground conditions can lead to vehicle instability in spite of ABS and switched-on ESC, for example when braking hard or in bends.

WARNING

Driving offroad can be difficult and dangerous and lead to critical driving situations for the vehicle occupants. Such situations can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, damage to the vehicle, vehicle breakdown far away from any assistance and also to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never choose a dangerous route and do not take any risks.
- Turn around and choose another route if you are not able to continue or if you are unsure about the safety of the route.
- Explore the terrain on foot beforehand, even if it appears that driving over it is straightforward.
- Drive particularly carefully and think ahead when driving offroad.
- Never drive faster than the current terrain, road conditions, traffic and weather allow.

WARNING

Driving over embankments, ramps or slopes at an excessive speed can lead to the vehicle losing contact with the ground. If the wheels are not pointing straight ahead when the vehicle lands, it could roll over. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not drive at excessive speeds when driving offroad.
- Always keep the front wheels in the straight-ahead position if the vehicle should lift off the ground.

WARNING

Sections of terrain that appear harmless can be very dangerous and result in danger for the vehicle occupants. Potholes, hollows, ditches, precipices, obstacles, shallows, soft and boggy surfaces are often not recognisable as such and can be covered either fully or partly by snow, water, grass or branches lying on the ground. Driving over such sections of terrain can lead to the vehicle breaking down, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Check any unknown sections of the route on foot carefully before driving through them.
- Never choose unsafe routes and do not take any risks.
- Turn around and choose another route if you are unsure about the safety of the route.
- Always adjust your speed and driving to match vehicle load levels and terrain, visibility and weather conditions.

WARNING

Sport utility vehicles have a higher centre of gravity and therefore have a higher risk of rolling over when driving than a normal on-road vehicle that is unsuited for offroad driving *(→ Offroad driving)*. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts. In the event of an accident, vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are subjected to a considerably higher risk of fatal injury than those wearing seat belts.
- Never drive too fast, particularly when driving through bends.
- Do not carry out any extreme driving manoeuvres.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit the terrain conditions.

WARNING

Luggage and other items transported on the roof of the vehicle raise the centre of gravity and will make the vehicle more likely to roll over. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always stow luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment if possible. Stow heavy luggage and objects as low down as possible.

WARNING

The driver assist systems were designed for use on surfaced roads only. The driver assist systems are not suited to driving offroad and therefore may even be dangerous. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never use the driver assist systems when driving offroad.

WARNING

Driving the vehicle when the fuel level is too low could lead to your vehicle breaking down offroad. If the engine stutters or stalls due to low fuel or irregular fuel supply, the steering and brake support systems will not operate. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Fill up with sufficient fuel before driving offroad.

NOTICE

Any rain entering the vehicle when the windows or glass roof are open can soak the interior equipment and cause damage to the vehicle.

- Always keep the windows and glass roof closed when driving offroad.

Explanation of technical terms

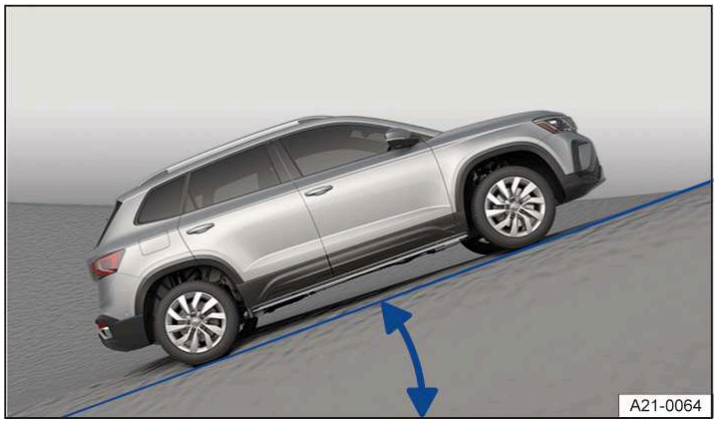


Fig. 1 Illustration: gradient angle.

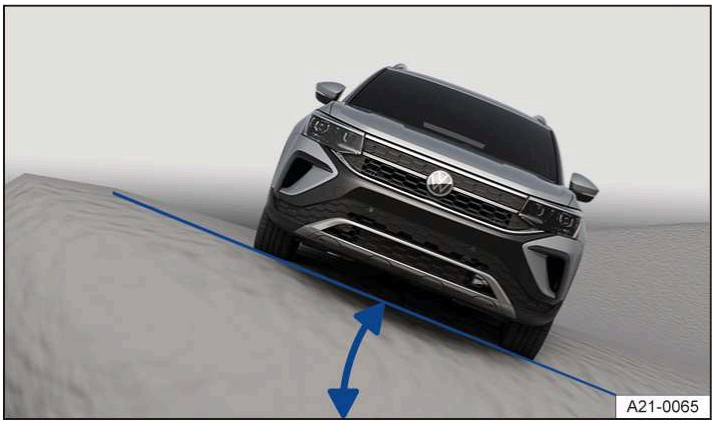


Fig. 2 Illustration: inclination angle.

Centre of gravity

The centre of gravity of a vehicle influences its propensity to roll over. The vehicle has a higher ground clearance and therefore a higher centre of gravity than “normal” road vehicles so that it can be driven offroad. The higher centre of gravity means that there is a greater danger of roll-over when driving. Always remember this fact when driving and follow the safety tips and warnings given in this owner's manual.

Ground clearance

This is the vertical distance between the road surface and the lowest point on the vehicle underbody.

Gradient

Indication of gradient that the vehicle can drive up under its own power. The number of metres in height gained over a distance of 100 m (approx. 330 ft) (uphill gradient) is specified as a percentage or in degrees → *Fig. 1*. The maximum gradient angle that the vehicle can overcome depends among other things on the road surface and engine power.

Inclination

Maximum angle at which the vehicle may be driven across a slope without the vehicle tipping over (dependent on the centre of gravity) → *Fig. 2*.

Breakover angle

Maximum permitted angle given in degrees that a vehicle driven at low speed can drive over a ramp without the underbody of the vehicle touching the ramp.

Ramp angle

Transition from the horizontal level surface to a gradient, or from a gradient back to the level surface. Maximum permitted angle given in degrees that a vehicle can clear a ramp without the underbody of the vehicle touching the ramp.

Fall line

This is the vertical drop route.

Articulation

The vehicle's torsional flexibility when driving over objects with just one side of the vehicle.

Checklist “Before driving offroad”

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following points before driving offroad:

- ✓ Inform yourself sufficiently about the nature of the terrain ahead before you drive into the terrain.
- ✓ Fill the tank up to the maximum capacity. Fuel consumption is considerably higher offroad.
- ✓ Check whether the tyre tread of all tyres and the tyre type are suitable for the planned offroad trip.
- ✓ Check and adjust the tyre pressure for all tyres.
- ✓ Check engine oil level and refill engine oil as necessary. Oil will still reach the engine even when the vehicle is tilted only if the engine oil level is sufficient.
- ✓ Completely refill the washer fluid reservoir with water and washer fluid.
- ✓ Stow luggage in the vehicle as evenly and as low as possible. Secure all loose items.

General rules and driving tips

— Volkswagen recommends never driving offroad alone. You should drive offroad with at least two offroad vehicles driving as a team. Unexpected situations can always occur. We recommend that you carry equipment you can use for calling for help.

— Stop your vehicle when you reach difficult sections and check the route ahead on foot.

— Drive slowly over the crests of hills so the vehicle does not lose contact with the ground, become damaged and possibly leave you unable to manoeuvre.

— Drive slowly when the route is difficult. Shift up a gear when on slippery ground and always keep the vehicle in motion.

— The ground is predominantly soft when driving offroad meaning the tyres could sink into the ground. This will reduce ground clearance and the wading depth. If possible, always drive on flat and firm ground.

— Even when driving at low speeds, always keep your distance from other vehicles. If the first vehicle suddenly gets stuck, the following vehicle can stop without getting stuck.

NOTICE

If the bottom of the vehicle contacts the ground, this can cause serious damage to the vehicle underbody. This damage could cause the vehicle to break down and thus make it impossible to drive on.

- Always make sure that there is enough ground clearance underneath the vehicle.

Changing gear correctly

The choice of gear depends on the terrain.

Before attempting to drive through difficult terrain it can be helpful to stop and consider which gear you should select. After several trips offroad, you will learn which gear to select in conjunction with the step-down ratio for different types of terrain.

— With the correct gear selected, the vehicle will normally not have to be braked so much using the foot brake when driving downhill as the engine braking effect will normally be sufficient.

— Only accelerate as much as is necessary. If you accelerate too hard, the wheels could spin and you could lose control of the vehicle.

— Select position **D** when driving in normal, flat offroad terrain.

— Adjust your speed when driving on soft or slippery ground, and select the highest suitable position for the Tiptronic.

— On steep downhill or uphill gradients, select position **1** for the Tiptronic.

— When driving through mud, sand, water or hilly terrain, drive with the Tiptronic in positions **3** or **2** *(→ Automatic gearbox)*.

— Use the Auto Hold function *(→ Auto Hold function)*.

Driving on rough terrain

1. Select a suitable driving profile *(→ Driving profile selection)* and drive through rocky terrain no faster than walking pace.
2. If you are not able to drive around a rock, drive carefully onto the rock with one front wheel and drive over it slowly →ⓘ.

Even obstacles that are smaller than the available ground clearance could come into contact with the vehicle underbody and thus cause damage which could lead to a vehicle breakdown. This applies in particular if there is a ditch or soft ground either in front of or behind the obstacle. This also applies in cases when you drive too quickly over the obstacle causing the vehicle to bounce.

NOTICE

Objects that are larger than the ground clearance will damage components on the underbody if the vehicle is driven over them. This damage could cause the vehicle to break down and thus make it impossible to drive on.

- Never drive the vehicle over very large objects either centrally or on one side, e.g. rocks or tree stumps.

Driving through standing or flowing water

Driving through flooded terrain or bodies of water could damage the vehicle.

It is possible to carefully drive the vehicle through water levels up to the lower edge of the body.

1. Observe the maximum fording depth of the vehicle.
2. When driving through water, always select a section where the ground is solid and where the depth of the water does not exceed the maximum permitted fording depth of the vehicle.
3. Observe further information on driving through water on roads *(→ Driving through water on roads)*.

Before driving through water

Stop the vehicle, get out and assess the situation →⚠:

1. Measure the depth of the water to the other side. Ensure that the ground is firm enough and also watch out for underwater hollows and obstacles →ⓘ.
2. Make sure that it is possible to drive into and out of the water safely.
3. Check the ramp angle and the firmness of the ground on the banks.
4. Select a suitable driving profile *(→ Driving profile selection)*.

Driving through standing or slow-moving water

If the ground is firm enough, your vehicle can be driven through standing and slow-moving water →⚠.

1. Drive slowly into the water following the direction of flow. Never exceed the ramp and inclination angles.
2. Drive at constant speed to the opposite bank.

Driving with a constant speed makes it possible to avoid engine damage due to ingress of water. It also enables an air pocket to form in front of the engine which supplies the necessary oxygen to the engine. You will create a bow wave in front of the vehicle if you drive at speed into or through the water. This bow wave could get into the engine air intake duct and seriously damage the engine.

Driving through fast-flowing water

The force, speed and depth of the water can be unpredictable and dangerous →⚠. The vehicle can be can be swept away by the water. Even vehicles with greater ground clearance can get stuck if the ground under the vehicle is swept away. Flowing water builds up at one side of the vehicle, making it deeper at that point.

Do not take any risks. Find a calmer place to cross through the water or turn round.

After driving through water

1. Check the vehicle for damage.
2. Dry the brakes using careful braking manoeuvres.

⚠ WARNING

Flowing water can develop enormous power and can sweep the vehicle away. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never stop the vehicle in water.

⚠ WARNING

Soft ground surfaces, underwater obstacles and shallows or water in the bonnet space can lead to critical situations and can cause the vehicle to break down. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not exceed the maximum fording depth of the vehicle.
- Always make sure that there is enough ground clearance underneath the vehicle.

NOTICE

If you drive through salt water, parts of the vehicle, such as the engine, drive train, running gear and vehicle electrics, could sustain severe damage.

- Never drive over salt, salt flats or through salt water as salt can cause corrosion.
- Immediately rinse all vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt or salt water using fresh water.

NOTICE

Objects in the water can enter the openings of the extended washer jets of the headlight washer system. The washer jets cannot then be retracted to their initial position.

- Do not use the headlight washer system when driving through water.

Driving in sand and mud

ESC and TCS must be switched on .

1. Select a suitable driving profile *(→ Driving profile selection)*.
2. Select a suitable gear and remain in this gear until you have reached more solid ground *(→ Changing gear correctly)*.
3. Always drive at a steady speed through sand or mud, do not make any manual gear changes and do not stop.

The tyres can lose their traction when driving through sand or mud.

— Do not change speed or direction.

— If the vehicle slides, steer in the direction needed to get the vehicle under control.

— If the tyres have lost their grip, turn the steering wheel back and forth quickly. This will briefly give the front wheel tyres better grip for these ground conditions.

WARNING

The vehicle can slip uncontrollably when driving through sand and mud. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive carefully through sand, mud and slush.
- Turn around or choose another route if you are not able to continue or if you have any doubts about the safety of the route.
- Never choose a dangerous route or take a risk that endangers you and the other vehicle occupants.

WARNING

Incorrect tyre pressures will increase the levels of wear on the tyres and will negatively affect the vehicle's driving response. This can cause overheating and sudden tyre damage, including tyre bursts and detachment of the tread surface, and can thus lead to loss of control over the vehicle. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Adjust the correct tyre pressure again after driving through sand if you reduced it for this beforehand.

If your vehicle gets stuck

The vehicle is stuck if the wheels have sunk so deep into the ground that the vehicle can no longer drive forward or back under its own power.

Rocking a vehicle out of sand or mud requires a great deal of training and feeling for the vehicle. If you make a mistake when rocking the vehicle, it can sink deeper and you will need assistance to get the vehicle out.

Never allow the wheels to spin for long periods as this will cause the vehicle to sink deeper →⚠.

Preparations

1. Carefully dig out all the wheels and check that no other parts of the vehicle are stuck in the sand or mud.
2. Select reverse gear.
3. Accelerate carefully and reverse over your own tracks.

If this does not help, place brushwood, floor mats or sacking directly behind the wheels to increase grip and achieve improved traction →⚠.

Rocking the vehicle free

1. Switch off TCS .
2. Position the steering wheel so that it is facing straight ahead.
3. Reverse until the point where the wheels just start to spin.
4. Immediately select first gear and drive forwards until the wheels start to spin again.
5. Repeat driving to and fro until you have enough momentum to free yourself.
6. Switch TCS on again after rocking the vehicle free.

⚠ WARNING

Spinning wheels can propel stones, brushwood, pieces of wood or other objects that are in front or behind the wheels at high speed. Persons who are standing in front of or behind the vehicle can be injured as a result. In the event of a sudden vehicle movement, persons who are standing in front of or behind the vehicle can be injured or run over. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that there is no-one either in front or behind the vehicle if you are attempting to free a stuck vehicle.

Driving in steep terrain

Driving up and down hills

Get out of the vehicle and assess the situation before you attempt to drive up or down a hill:

— Walk along the section and check the firmness of the ground. Look out for obstacles and other hidden dangers →⚠.

— Check the section beyond the hill.

— You should not follow the route if it is too steep, uneven or if the ground surface is too loose. Select another route.

— Drive slowly and at constant speed straight up or down a slope.

— Never attempt to stop or turn on a slope.

— Accelerate only to the speed you need to climb the slope. Too much acceleration can cause the wheels to spin and lead to loss of control of the vehicle. Too little acceleration increases the probability of stalling the engine.

— Vehicles with an automatic gearbox Do not change gear during the climbing phase.

If you cannot continue to drive up a hill

— Never turn the vehicle around on an uphill gradient.

— If the engine has stalled, depress the foot brake and start the engine again.

— Engage reverse gear and slowly move back on a straight path.

— Use the foot brake to keep a constant speed until you have reached safe and flat ground.

Driving downhill

There is an increased risk of rolling over when driving downhill. Concentrate on steering the vehicle, especially when driving downhill.

— Drive down steep inclines in first gear.

— Use the foot brake carefully so you do not lose control of the vehicle.

— Never exceed the inclination angle of the vehicle.

— If it is possible and not dangerous, drive straight down the slope on the maximum gradient (in the fall line).

⚠ WARNING

If you drive on an uphill or downhill gradient that is too steep for the vehicle, the vehicle can slip, tip over or roll over. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that the gradient or tilt angle is no greater than the maximum permissible value for the vehicle.
- Always drive up and down hills in the fall line.
- Never turn or turn round when driving up or down a gradient. The vehicle could tip over or slide away sideways.
- Carry out the described activities if the engine stops or if it is not possible to drive on → *If you cannot continue to drive up a hill*.
- If the engine does not start, press the brake pedal with constant force and allow the vehicle to roll back in its own path. Maintain a slow and constant speed.
- Never let the vehicle roll backwards down a slope in neutral.

Traversing a slope



Fig. 1 Illustration: steering into the fall line.

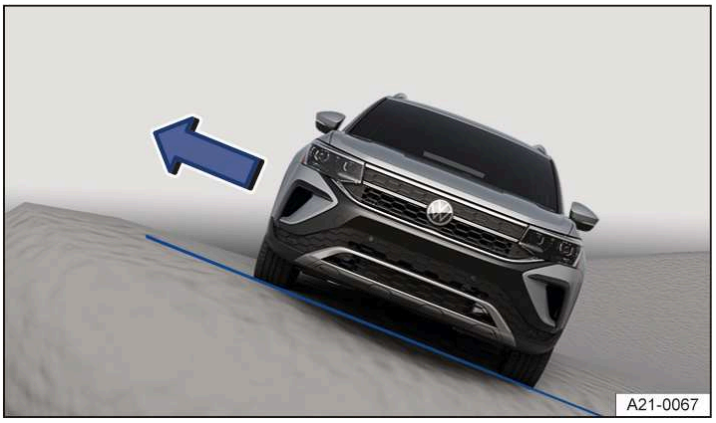


Fig. 2 Illustration: use the doors facing up hill to get out of the vehicle.

Traversing a slope is one of the most dangerous offroad situations →⚠.

Check whether you can use another safer route before driving across a slope.

If you have to traverse a slope:

— The vehicle's centre of gravity should be as low as possible. People with a larger or heavier build should sit on the higher side of the vehicle. Remove the roof carrier and secure heavy items. The vehicle could tip over if items were to slide suddenly →⚠.

— If possible, the ground must be firm. The vehicle is more likely to slip sideways and tip over on slippery or soft ground. Always make sure that the inclination angle does not become too great due to uneven ground. If the inclination angle is too great, the vehicle could tip and roll over.

— When driving across a slope at a large tilt angle, the wheels on the lower side of the vehicle must never enter dips or hollows. The wheels on the higher side of the vehicle must never drive over bumps, for example stones, tree trunks or other obstacles.

— If the vehicle threatens to tip over, steer immediately into the fall line and accelerate slightly → *Fig. 1*. If it is not possible to steer into the fall line, steer up the hill and accelerate slightly.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle that is driving or standing sideways on a slope can slip uncontrollably, tip over, roll over and roll down the slope. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never try to drive at an angle on a slope, particularly if the slope is too steep for the vehicle.
- Never choose a dangerous route or take a risk that endangers you and the vehicle occupants.
- Turn around and choose another route if you are not able to continue or if you are unsure about the safety of the route.
- You should never underestimate the difficulty and danger of traversing a slope.
- Never allow the wheels on the lower side of the vehicle to enter dips or hollows.
- Never drive over bumps, for example stones, tree trunks or other obstacles, with the wheels on the higher side of the vehicle.
- Make sure that you can steer into the fall line before driving across a slope. Choose a different route if this is not possible.
- If the vehicle threatens to tip over, steer immediately into the fall line and accelerate slightly → *Fig. 1*.

⚠ WARNING

Getting out of a vehicle that is standing on a slope and tilted at a large sideways angle is dangerous. The overall centre of gravity can move to the side and the vehicle can lose its grip, tip over or roll over and roll down the slope. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Avoid abrupt and uncontrolled movements in the vehicle.
- Always leave the vehicle calmly by the doors that are facing up the slope → *Fig. 2*.
- Never leave the vehicle through a door that is facing down the slope.
- When getting out the vehicle, make sure that the vehicle door which opens uphill does not close with its own weight or through carelessness thus potentially causing injury.

Driving through ditches

1. Check whether the slope and tilt angles are small enough to drive through the ditch with the vehicle. The tilt angle must not get too large when driving through the ditch →⚠.
2. Find a suitable place to cross the ditch.
3. If possible, cross the ditch at an acute angle →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the slope and tilt angle are too steep for the vehicle or the ditch is too deep, the vehicle may tip, slide and roll over. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never drive through a ditch if the slope and tilt angle are too steep for the vehicle and the ditch is too deep.

NOTICE

If you drive into the ditch at a right angle, the front wheels will fall in. The vehicle can bottom on the ground, be damaged and break down.

- Never drive through a ditch if the slope and tilt angle are too steep for the vehicle and the ditch is too deep.
- Please note that it is almost impossible to get out of the ditch despite having all-wheel drive.

After offroad driving

Checklist

✓ Clean the vehicle.

✓ Check the vehicle for damage.

✓ Check the tyres for damage and remove dirt, stones and other foreign bodies from the tyre tread.

✓ Inspect the vehicle underbody and remove all items that are jammed in the brake system, in the wheels, in the running gear, in the exhaust system and in the engine, such as branches, leaves or pieces of wood →⚠. If you find damage or leaks, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

✓ Check the bonnet space to see if dirt is affecting engine operation *(→ In the bonnet space)*.

⚠ WARNING

Objects caught underneath the vehicle underbody are a danger. The fuel lines, brake system, seals and other parts of the running gear could be damaged or flammable materials (e.g. dry leaves) could ignite on hot vehicle components. This can cause an accident, fire and serious or fatal injuries.

- Each time after driving offroad, always check for objects that are caught on the vehicle and remove them.
- Never drive if objects are trapped in the underbody, brake system, wheels, running gear, exhaust system and engine.
- Remove flammable materials (e.g. dry leaves) from the vehicle underbody.

General driving tips

Think ahead when driving

Repeated acceleration and braking will increase fuel consumption. Keeping a close eye on the traffic can help to avoid frequent acceleration and braking. Keeping your vehicle at a sufficient distance from the vehicle in front can help you to think ahead when driving.

Avoid strong acceleration

The rolling and air resistance increase at excessively high speeds. This in turn increases the force needed to move the vehicle. Never drive the vehicle at top speed.

Observe the correct tyre pressures

An inadequate tyre pressure does not just mean greater wear, but also increases the rolling resistance of the tyres and thus the fuel consumption. Use tyres with optimised rolling resistance.

Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load:

— Observe the information on the tyre pressure sticker *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

— Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.

— Tyre Pressure Monitoring System *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

Driving the engine warm

Frequent short journeys can lead to foreign substances, e.g. condensation water, accumulating in the engine oil, which in turn can lead to increased engine wear.

If the driving behaviour leads to an increased accumulation of foreign matter in the engine oil, a text message will appear in the instrument cluster display. In this case, drive the engine warm until the operating temperature is reached and the message disappears.

At low outside temperatures, it may take longer for the engine to warm up and reach operating temperature. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

Use low viscosity engine oils

Synthetic, low viscosity engine oils decrease frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and more quickly, especially for cold starts.

WARNING

Lack of attention when driving in traffic can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always observe the current traffic regulations and speed limits and think ahead when driving.
- When travelling long distances, stop and take a break regularly – at least around every 2 hours.

WARNING

Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics can severely impair perception, reaction times and driving safety. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not drive under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medicines and narcotics.

WARNING

Driving at high speed and without a sufficient safety distance can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Running in the combustion engine

A new combustion engine has to be run in during the first 1,500 km (approx.) (about 1,000 miles). All moving parts have to adapt themselves to each other. During the first few operating hours, the combustion engine has higher internal friction than it does later.

Up to about 1000 km (about 600 mi)

— Avoid strong acceleration.

— Do not operate the combustion engine at more than 2/3 of the maximum engine speed.

— Do not drive with a trailer attached.

Between about 1,000 and 1,500 km (about 600 to 1,000 miles)

1. Gradually increase speed and engine speed.

The driving style during the first 1,500 km (approx.) (about 1,000 miles) will also affect the quality of the combustion engine. In order to reduce engine wear and increase the possible mileage, the vehicle should also be driven at moderate engine speeds afterwards – especially when the combustion engine is cold.

New tyres and brake pads have to be run in carefully.

NOTICE

Driving with an engine speed that is too low can lead to increased wear and damage to the engine.

- Do not drive at engine speeds that are too low.
- Shift down a gear if the combustion engine is not running “smoothly”.

If the new combustion engine is run in gently, its life will be increased and its oil consumption reduced.

Gear-change indicator

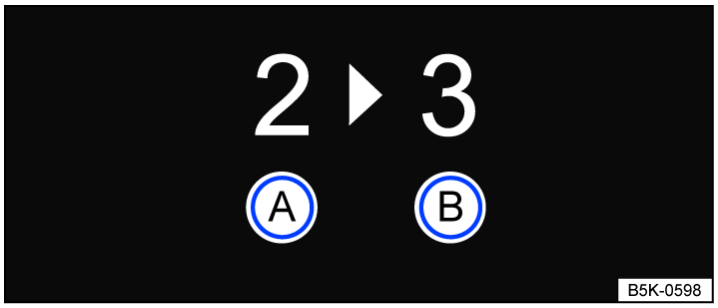


Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: gear-change indicator.

(A) Currently selected gear.

(B) Recommended gear.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the instrument cluster display may indicate which gear should be selected in order to reduce fuel consumption while the vehicle is in motion → *Fig. 1*.

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox: the gearbox must be in Tiptronic mode for this.

No recommended gear is indicated if the most suitable gear is already selected. The currently selected gear is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

The gear-change indicator is designed only to assist the driver and is not a substitute for the full attention and responsibility of the driver. Accidents and injuries can occur if an unsuitable gear is selected for the driving situation.

- Always select the correct gear for the respective driving situation, e.g. when overtaking or driving downhill.

Information on cleaning the particulate filter

The engine management system recognises when the particulate filter is becoming saturated and supports regeneration of the filter by recommending the most suitable gear when driving. As an exception compared with normal driving, this may mean driving with an increased engine speed *(→ Particulate filter)*.

Driving in the correct gear can help to reduce fuel consumption.

Driving economically

Adopting the correct driving style can reduce fuel consumption, pollution and wear-and-tear on the engine, brakes and tyres. The following section lists a few tips for easing the strain on the environment and your bank account.

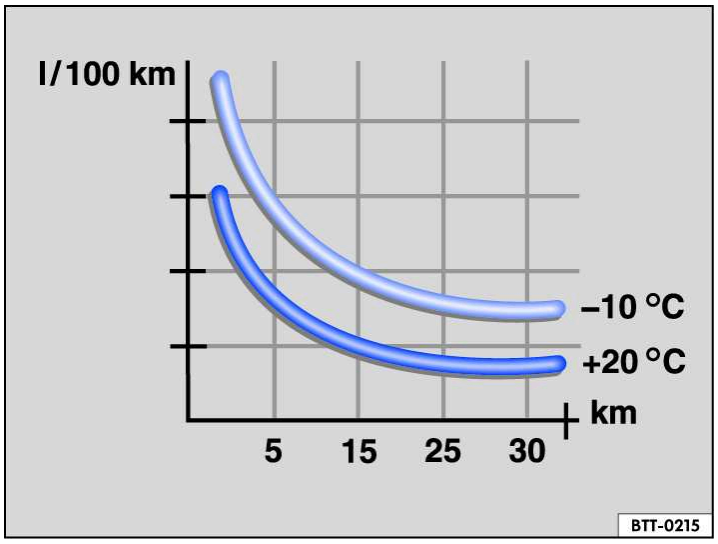


Fig. 1 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two different outside temperatures.

Brake energy recuperation on vehicles with mild hybrid system

Energy can be recovered and stored when the vehicle is braked or decelerates.

If it is necessary to brake and coasting to a stop is not possible, the changeover from the accelerator to the brake pedal should take place rapidly and uniformly. This makes it possible to use brake energy recuperation most efficiently. No fuel is consumed during this process.

Using Eco Assistance

The Eco Assistance function helps the driver to drive with an anticipatory driving style and to save energy by providing situation-dependent information *(→ Eco assistance)*.

Use coasting

On vehicles with automatic gearbox and active coasting function, the vehicle rolls (“coasts”) almost without consuming any energy *(→ Automatic gearbox)*.

Reduce idling

Drive off immediately at low engine speeds. If you are stopped for a long period, do not allow the engine to idle but switch it off, e.g. when in a traffic jam or at a railway crossing. In vehicles with an activated start/stop system, the engine can switch off automatically when the vehicle is stopping and when the vehicle is stationary.

Do not overfill the fuel tank

Filling the fuel tank all the way to the top will increase the vehicle weight. A fuel tank that is half to three quarters full is sufficient for urban journeys in particular.

Avoid short journeys

Engines consume a lot of fuel when cold. They do not reach optimum operating temperature until the vehicle has travelled a few kilometres (miles). The fuel consumption is above average at very low ambient temperatures, e.g. in winter → *Fig. 1*. Plan your journeys economically and combine several short trips.

Have your vehicle serviced on a regular basis

Regular maintenance is an essential prerequisite for economical driving and increases the service life of the vehicle.

Do not drive with unnecessary loads in the vehicle

You can reduce fuel consumption by clearing out the luggage compartment before setting off, for example by removing empty drink crates or unused child seats.

In order to keep the drag coefficient of the vehicle as low as possible, remove attachments and add-on parts such as ski, bicycle or roof carriers after use.

Save energy

The alternator powered by the engine generates electricity for convenience features, such as the air conditioning system, window heating or ventilation system. Saving electrical energy is easy, for example:

— At high ambient temperatures, ventilate the car before starting a journey and drive a short distance with open window. Only then switch on the air conditioning system.

— Switch off all convenience features that are not needed.

NOTICE

The gearbox is not lubricated if the vehicle rolls down mountains or hills in neutral position **N**. The automatic gearbox could overheat and be damaged.

- Do not allow the vehicle to roll in neutral position **N**, particularly if the engine is switched off.

Your authorised Volkswagen repairer will gladly provide you with further information on correct maintenance and replacement parts that are particularly energy-efficient, e.g. new tyres.

Driving a loaded vehicle

For good vehicle handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

— Stow all items of luggage securely .

— Accelerate particularly cautiously and carefully.

— Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.

— Brake earlier than in normal driving.

— If applicable, observe the information concerning the roof carrier *(→ Roof carrier)*.

— If applicable, observe the information about driving with a trailer .

WARNING

Shifting loads can severely impair the vehicle's stability and driving safety and lengthen the braking distance in the event of hard or emergency braking. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Secure the load properly to prevent it from slipping.
- Use suitable lashing or securing straps when securing heavy objects.
- Securely engage the rear seat backrests and also the adjustable rear seats, if installed.

Driving with an open boot lid

Driving with an open boot lid is particularly dangerous. All objects and the open tailgate must be secured properly.

Appropriate measures must be taken to reduce the amount of toxic exhaust gases entering the vehicle.

WARNING

When driving with the boot lid unlocked or open, loose items can fall out of the vehicle and hit following road users. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always drive with the boot lid closed.
- Stow all items securely in the luggage compartment.
- Always drive carefully and ensure that you think ahead.
- Avoid any abrupt or sudden driving and braking manoeuvres as this can cause the open boot lid to move unpredictably.
- If you have to drive with the boot lid open, always remove a luggage rack mounted on the boot lid together with its load.

WARNING

Items that protrude from the luggage compartment change the length of the vehicle and may endanger other road users. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Observe legal requirements.
- Mark any objects protruding from the luggage compartment to ensure that they are visible to other road users.
- Never use the boot lid to jam or fix objects in position.

WARNING

Among other things, exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless toxic gas. When driving with the boot lid open, toxic exhaust gases can enter the vehicle interior and lead to unconsciousness, carbon monoxide poisoning, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with the boot lid closed in order to prevent toxic exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.
- Close all windows.
- Close the glass roof.
- Switch off air recirculation mode.
- Open all vents in the dash panel.
- Switch the blower to the highest blower speed.
- If the load can be transported with the boot lid closed, always drive with the boot lid closed.

NOTICE

The height and possibly also length of the vehicle are different when the boot lid is open. This can lead to damage to the vehicle if due care is not taken when driving.

- Pay attention to the changed exterior dimensions, e.g. when driving through underpasses.

Driving through water on roads

Please follow these rules to help prevent damage to your vehicle when driving through water, for example if the road is flooded:

— The water level must be no higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body →⚠.

— Do not drive faster than walking speed.

— Never stop the vehicle, reverse or switch off the engine while in water.

— Oncoming vehicles will create waves that could increase the water level for your vehicle to such an extent that it is not safe to drive through the water.

— Always deactivate the start/stop system manually when driving through water .

⚠ WARNING

After driving through water, mud, slush etc., the brakes may react slowly and the braking distance will be increased as the brake discs and pads will be wet, or possibly iced up in winter. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- In order to brake the brakes dry and free of ice, perform careful braking manoeuvres.
- Do not endanger other road users when performing braking manoeuvres and do not ignore any legal requirements.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking manoeuvres directly after driving through water.

NOTICE

If you drive through water, parts of the vehicle, e.g. electronics, could sustain severe damage or corrode.

- Never drive through salt water.
- Immediately rinse all vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water using fresh water.
- Protect electronic components from contact with water.

Using the vehicle in other countries and continents

Registration regulations

The vehicle has been manufactured specifically for a particular country and complies with the requirements and registration regulations that applied in that country at the time of vehicle production.

If you want to use the vehicle abroad temporarily or for a short period, the relevant information must be observed.

Safety standards and regulations

In some countries, special safety standards and regulations apply that the vehicle may not comply with. Volkswagen recommends that you visit your authorised Volkswagen repairer before travelling abroad to find out about any legal requirements at your destination.

Selling the vehicle abroad

If the vehicle is going to be sold in another country or used in another country for an extended period, the legal requirements applicable in that country must be observed.

In some cases, certain equipment will have to be fitted or removed and functions deactivated. The service scope and service types could also be affected. This is particularly important if the vehicle is driven in another climatic region for a long period of time.

Functioning of the Infotainment system

Because different frequency bands are used in different countries, the factory-fitted Infotainment system may not work in other countries.

Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of availability of Genuine Parts.

Volkswagen cannot be held responsible if the vehicle does not comply with or only partly complies with the relevant legal requirements in other countries and continents.

WARNING

The density of air decreases with increasing altitude. The lower air density can result in a reduction in engine power and vehicle components may be damaged if the vehicle is driven for an extended period at very high altitudes. A reduction in the engine power can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries, e.g. when overtaking.

- Consult a suitably qualified workshop before driving abroad, particularly if the vehicle will be driven at altitudes of more than around 3,000 m (around 9,843 ft) above sea level. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the vehicle has driver assist systems that increase comfort and convenience when driving. Some of these driver assist systems use sensors or cameras for operation (also referred to as “sensors” below). These are visible to you in some cases and in other cases not.

The sensors and cameras visually detect the vehicle surroundings using ultrasound or radar waves.

Installed sensors

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sensors may be installed:

— Radar sensors at the front of the vehicle.

— Radar sensors in the rear of the vehicle.

— Camera behind the windscreen.

— Ultrasound sensors in the front of the vehicle.

— Ultrasound sensors in the rear of the vehicle.

Information on the respective sensor locations is provided in the vehicle overviews .

WARNING

The driver assist systems is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operate only within the limits of the respective system. The driver assist systems cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may warn or react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the limits of the sensors and the system limits of the individual systems.
- Adapt your speed and the distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Be ready at all times to override or cancel automatic interventions.
- Observe the information on the instrument cluster display and respond according to the displays if permitted by the traffic situation.
- Do not use the driver assist systems if you suspect there is a problem or damage.

Limits of the sensors

Limits of the radar sensors

Driver assist systems that use radar sensors can react unexpectedly, with a delay or not at all in the following situations:

— Driving in poor weather conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snow or heavy spray.

— Driving through road works, tunnels or toll stations.

— Driving on winding roads, e.g. mountain roads.

— Over crests or through dips.

— Driving offroad.

— Driving in multi-storey car parks.

— Driving on roads with embedded metal objects, e.g. railway tracks.

— Driving on roads with loose chippings.

— In complex driving situations, e.g. traffic islands.

— After external force on components in the area of the radar sensors, e.g. after a rear-end collision.

— The radar sensors are covered, dirty, displaced or damaged.

Limits of the camera behind the windscreen

Driver assist systems that use the camera behind the windscreen can react unexpectedly, with a delay or not at all in the following situations:

— Over crests or through dips.

— Driving through road works.

— Driving offroad.

— Driving in poor weather conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snow, fog or heavy spray, and on poor roads.

— When the sun is low in the sky, in darkness or with glare from oncoming vehicles.

— The camera is temporarily unavailable due to prolonged exposure to direct sunlight or high ambient temperatures.

— The camera window is covered, dirty or damaged.

— The camera has been displaced.

Delayed response

If the sensor system is exposed to environmental conditions that impair sensor functioning, the driver assist systems may detect this only after a certain delay. For this reason, any restrictions to functions may be displayed only after a delay at the start of the journey and when driving .

Limits in certain driving situations

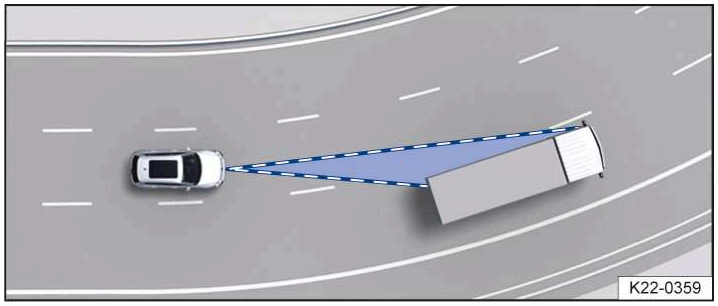


Fig. 1 Driving through bends.

The sensors always measure straight ahead. For this reason, vehicles may be incorrectly detected or vehicles driving ahead not detected in tight bends.

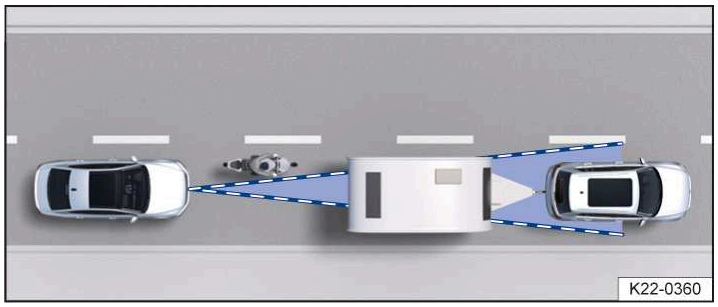


Fig. 2 Narrow vehicle.

Vehicles that are driving outside the sensor range in close proximity to your vehicle, e.g. motorbikes, cannot be detected.

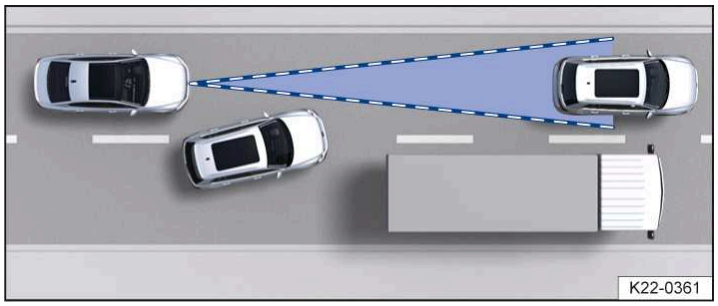


Fig. 3 Vehicle changes lane.

Vehicles that change into your lane directly in front of your vehicle cannot be detected. This also applies to vehicles with bodies or attachments that project beyond the vehicle.

Specific system limits

In addition to the limits of the sensors, each driver assist system also has additional functionally related system limits. Also observe these:

— Predictive speed limiter *(→ Speed limiter with predictive control)*.

— Eco Assistance *(→ Eco assistance)*.

— Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) *(→ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC))*.

— Predictive cruise control system *(→ Predictive cruise control system)*.

— Automatic Emergency Braking (Front Assist) *(→ Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist))*.

— Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) *(→ Lane keeping system (Lane Assist))*.

— Semi-automated driving assistance (Travel Assist) *(→ Travel Assist)*.

— Emergency Assist *(→ Emergency Assist)*.

— Lane change system (Side Assist) *(→ Lane change system (Side Assist))*.

— Advanced Road Sign Display *(→ Advanced Road Sign Display)*.

Troubleshooting

No or restricted sensor visibility in forward direction

Some of the sensors at the front of the vehicle are not available or their availability is restricted. The yellow symbol and a text message are displayed for a few seconds.

— The sensor areas are dirty or the visibility of the sensors is impaired due to the weather conditions (e.g. snow) or due to detergent deposits or coatings. Clean the sensor areas at the front of the vehicle and on the windscreen *(→ Vehicle care)*.

— The sensor areas are obstructed by add-on parts, number plate holders with trim frames or stickers. Keep the area around the sensors clear *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The sensors have been displaced or damaged, for example due to damage to the front of the vehicle or the windscreen. Check whether damage is visible *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— Paint work or structural modifications were carried out on the front of the vehicle or windscreen *(→ Repairs and technical modifications)*.

— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.

— When the cause of the problem has been rectified, some driver assist systems will initially remain unavailable. Drive a short distance until the indicator lamp goes out and the driver assist systems are operational again. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If the sensor visibility is restricted, driver assist systems may not be available or may be available only to a limited extent. Observe any other indicator lamps of the driver assist systems *(→ Symbols in the instrument cluster)*.

Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Introduction to the topic

The speed limiter helps to prevent the vehicle from exceeding a speed that you have stored.

Speed range

The speed limiter is available when driving forwards at speeds from around 30 km/h (around 20 mph).

Driving with the speed limiter

You can interrupt the speed limiter function at any time by fully depressing the accelerator beyond the point of resistance. As soon as the stored speed is exceeded, the green indicator lamp will flash and an acoustic warning may sound. The speed remains stored in the memory.

The speed limiter function is activated again automatically as soon as the speed drops below the stored speed.

Displays

When the speed limiter is switched on, the instrument cluster display shows the stored speed and the status of the speed limiter.

One of the following indicator lamps will light up depending on the driving situation:



Speed limiter switched on, system control active.



Speed limiter switched on, system control not active.

Driving downhill

The vehicle cannot maintain the stored speed in all driving situations. Always be prepared to brake the vehicle.

1. Shift down before extended downhill stretches.

   In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.

WARNING

Use of the speed limiter in adverse weather conditions is dangerous and can cause accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Ensure that your speed is always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions. The driver is responsible for the vehicle speed at all times.
- Do not drive at full throttle if this is not necessary.
- Never use the speed limiter on slippery roads (e.g. as a result of aquaplaning, snow, ice or leaves).
- In order to avoid unintentional control interventions, switch off the speed limiter when you do not need it.

Operating the speed limiter



Fig. 1 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching on

1. Press the MODE button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the speed limiter is selected.
2. Press the OK button on the right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel or wait for a short time.

   The speed limiter is switched on. The system is not yet active.

Starting control

1. While driving, press the SET button.

   The current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

Adjusting the speed

You can adjust the stored speed:

+ 1 km/h (1 mph):
  Press the RES button.

- 1 km/h (1 mph):
  Press the SET button.

+ 10 km/h (5 mph):
  Press the + button. The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next higher ten (km/h) or five (mph) increment.

- 10 km/h (5 mph):
  Press the – button. The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next lower ten (km/h) or fives (mph) increment

Press and hold the corresponding button to continuously change the stored speed.

Cancelling system control

1. Briefly press the CNCL button.

   The speed remains stored in the memory.

Resuming control

1. Press the RES button.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter not available

Fault or malfunction. The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Switch off and restart the engine.
2. If the problem persists, switch off the speed limiter and go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Control is interrupted automatically

— ESC is switched off.

— The brakes have overheated. Allow the brakes to cool down and check their functionality again.

— If the problem persists, switch off the speed limiter and go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

For safety reasons, the speed limiter switches itself off completely only when you release the accelerator once or switch off the system manually.

Introduction to the topic

The predictive speed limiter automatically adapts a maximum speed that you have stored to detected speed limits.

The predictive speed limiter is an extension of the speed limiter and makes use of Dynamic Road Sign Display and the navigation data provided in the Infotainment system.

The predictive speed limiter is dependent on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all countries.

WARNING

The predictive speed limiter is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The predictive speed limiter cannot detect all applicable speed limits and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is responsible for the stored vehicle speed at all times.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Speed limiter with predictive control)*.
- Ensure that your speed is always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.
- Keep the navigation data up-to-date.
- Always observe the maximum speed limit.
- Please note that the speeds regulated by the system do not necessarily correspond to your driving style.

Please also observe the safety-relevant information on the speed limiter.

The system also uses navigation data even if the vehicle does not have a navigation system. Keep the navigation data up-to-date *(→ Navigation)*. If you have any questions, please contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

System limits of the predictive speed limiter

In addition to the system limits of the Dynamic Road Sign Display, the predictive speed limiter has the following additional, system-related limits:

— The predictive speed limiter detects only road signs that show a speed limit.

— Road signs that indicate a speed limit indirectly, e.g. place-name signs, will be detected only on the basis of the navigation data.

— If a speed limit is announced on the basis of the navigation data but is not detected by the Dynamic Road Sign Display function, the announced speed will be reset to the last-stored speed.

— The predictive speed limiter is not available for detected speed limits below around 30 km/h (around 20 mph). A corresponding text message is shown on the instrument cluster display in this case.

Joining and leaving motorways

— When you join a motorway, the recommended speed or the maximum permitted speed will automatically be stored as the speed, depending on country.

— The predictive speed limiter will be deactivated when you leave a motorway.

Function limitations

In the following situations, it is possible that the predictive speed limiter will not change the stored speed or will change it with a delay or in an unexpected way:

— There is a fault in the Dynamic Road Sign Display system.

— The navigation data is out-of-date.

— You are driving without route guidance.

— You leave the route calculated by the navigation system.

— The vehicle position cannot be determined correctly due to imprecise GPS data.

Activating the predictive speed limiter

1. Open the Assist systems menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the speed limiter.
3. Switch on the reaction to permitted speeds.
4. Switch on the speed limiter and start control *(→ Speed limiter)*.

Driving with the predictive speed limiter

Displays

30 The system has detected a speed limit on the route.

30 The system has stored the detected speed limit and performs control interventions accordingly.

Cancelling speed adaptation

If you do not want to adopt an announced speed, you can cancel speed adaptation:

— Press the RES button.

Or: if the announced speed is lower than the currently saved speed, release the accelerator twice and press again.

The last-stored speed is resumed again.

— Press the SET button.

The current speed is adopted.

— Press the CNCL button.

System control is interrupted.

Prioritising speed adaptation

As soon as a higher speed than the currently stored speed is announced in the instrument cluster display, you can prioritise speed adaptation:

1. Press the + button.

   Or: release the accelerator twice and then press it again.

Adjusting the announced speed

+ 10 km/h (5 mph):
Press the + button. The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next higher ten (km/h) or five (mph) increment.

- 10 km/h (5 mph):
Press the − button. The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next lower ten (km/h) or fives (mph) increment

If you adjust the announced speed excessively, predictive control will be terminated.

If a speed limit is detected, the predictive speed limiter will adjust the stored speed even if the speed limiter is not regulating.

If the current speed significantly exceeds a speed limit detected by the Dynamic Road Sign Display function, a warning will appear on the instrument cluster display.

Troubleshooting

A message is displayed that the predictive speed limiter is currently not available or is not available in your country

1. If this message is displayed for an extended period and the predictive speed limiter is available in your country, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status *(→ Digital instrument cluster (Pro))*.

Eco Assistance

The Eco Assistance function helps the driver to drive with an anticipatory driving style and to save energy by providing situation-dependent information.

The Eco Assistance function uses the navigation data of the Infotainment system and the sensors of the driver assist systems. When you drive with route guidance, Eco Assistance also takes into account the entered route. The most probable route is used when you drive without route guidance.

The Eco Assistance function is dependent on the equipment level and is not available in all countries.

Driving with Eco Assistance

When you approach a speed limit or a road section that has to be taken into account when driving on the route, the symbol and information on the type of event will be displayed on the head-up display and on the instrument cluster display.

Vehicles without mild hybrid system:

Depending on the selected driving profile, you use the coasting function and therefore save energy as soon as you take your foot off the accelerator.

Vehicles with mild hybrid system:

As soon as you take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle adjusts the brake energy recuperation and the speed. The vehicle takes into account the selected driving profile and the distance to the event. In combination with the **D** position and energy recovery level set to **Automatic** *(→ Automatic gearbox)*, Eco Assistance automatically adjusts energy recovery to the ideal level.

The available energy recovery level depends on the condition of the mild hybrid system and may be restricted at times.

If the accelerator is not pressed, Eco Assistance also supports deceleration for a vehicle driving in front without any displayed message. The system does not use the vehicle brake. When you are driving downhill, the system also cannot brake the vehicle sufficiently in all driving situations.

You can override Eco Assistance interventions at any time by accelerating or braking.

Displays

The following symbols are displayed, depending on driving situation:

Remove foot from accelerator.

Vehicle ahead.

Junction ahead.

Motorway exit ahead.

Roundabout ahead.

Bend to the left ahead.

Bend to the right ahead.

Slope ahead.

30 Speed limit ahead, example.

Switching on and off

You can switch Eco Assistance on and off in the Assist systems menu of the Infotainment system.

The Eco Assistance function will be automatically deactivated temporarily in the following cases:

— The **Sport** driving profile is activated.

— When driving with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

However, Eco Assistance displays may still be shown, depending on the situation and driving behaviour.

Eco Assistance will be activated again when the reason for deactivation is no longer present if the function is switched on in the Infotainment system.

WARNING

Eco Assistance is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Eco Assistance cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Please note that road signs on the road and traffic regulations always have priority over driving recommendations.

Introduction to the topic

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) maintains a constant speed that you have set. If the vehicle approaches a vehicle in front, the ACC automatically adapts the speed so that a distance you have selected is maintained.

Does the vehicle have ACC?

The vehicle is equipped with ACC if you can select ACC with the MODE button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Speed range

You can set a speed between 20 km/h (15 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph). Depending on equipment and country, the maximum speed that can be set may be lower.

Driving with ACC

You can override a control intervention by the ACC system at any time. Cruise control will be stopped if you brake. If you accelerate, control will be interrupted while you are accelerating and then resumed with the set speed.

The intervention by the ACC system is less dynamic when towing a trailer.

Driver intervention prompt

If automatic deceleration by the ACC system is not sufficient or the system limits have been reached, the ACC system will request you to brake additionally by a corresponding message on the instrument cluster. In addition, the red warning lamp lights up and an acoustic warning is given. Take over control of the vehicle and be prepared to brake.

WARNING

ACC is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. ACC cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC))*.
- Adapt your speed and the distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Take control of the vehicle immediately if requested to do so by a prompt on the instrument cluster display or if the speed reduction by ACC is not sufficient.
- Brake if the vehicle starts moving unintentionally, e.g. after a driver intervention prompt.

Special driving situations

The functions described below are dependent on the equipment level and are not available in all countries.

Predictive cruise control system

If the vehicle is equipped with the Dynamic Road Sign Display function, ACC can predictively adapt the vehicle speed to detected speed limits and the course of the road ahead .

Overtaking

If you indicate left (left-hand traffic: indicate right) to overtake, ACC can accelerate the vehicle and thus reduce the distance from the vehicle in front. Your set speed will not be exceeded.

If ACC does not detect any vehicle in front after you have changed lane, ACC will accelerate the vehicle up to the set speed.

Stop-and-go traffic

ACC can brake the vehicle to a standstill and keep it stationary. ACC remains active and the instrument cluster display shows **ACC ready to start** for a few seconds.

Vehicles with Travel Assist: You can extend this time by continuing to hold the steering wheel.

As long as ACC remains active, the vehicle will move off again automatically as soon as the vehicle in front moves off and if no obstacle is detected.

Extending or reactivating readiness to drive:

1. Press the RES button.

   Or: Vehicles with Travel Assist: take hold of the steering wheel again.

Moving off when readiness to drive has ended and the vehicle in front has already moved away:

1. Press the RES button.

   Or: depress the accelerator briefly.

ACC remains inactive in the following cases:

— The vehicle is stationary for several minutes.

— The driver door is opened.

— The ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

If the message **ACC ready to start** is shown on the instrument cluster display and the vehicle in front moves off, your vehicle will move off automatically. In some cases, obstacles in the vehicle's path may not be detected. This can result in serious injury and accidents.

- Always check the road ahead before moving off and brake the vehicle if necessary.

Inside Overtaking Prevention System

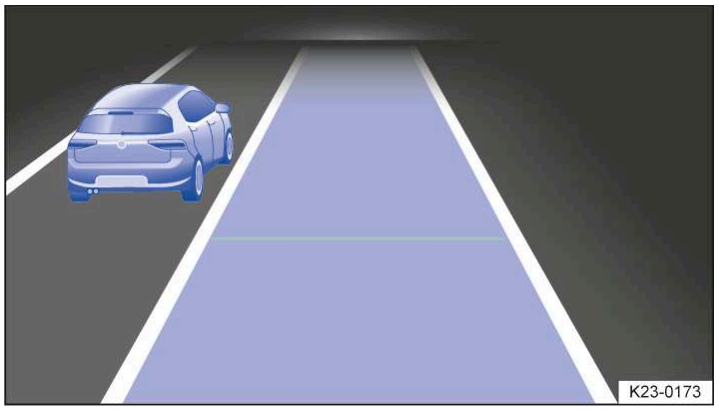


Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: slower vehicle detected in the left-hand lane (illustration).

Vehicles with Inside Overtaking Prevention System: If ACC detects a slower vehicle in the left-hand lane (left-hand traffic: in the right-hand lane), ACC will brake the vehicle gently within the system limits and can therefore prevent a prohibited overtaking manoeuvre. The function is active from a speed of around 80 km/h (around 50 mph).

Vehicles without Inside Overtaking Prevention System: When driving on a multi-lane road, cancel control if vehicles in the overtaking lane are driving more slowly.

System limits of ACC

Limits of the sensors

ACC detects driving situations by means of the radar and ultrasound sensors in the front of the vehicle and the camera behind the windscreen. The range of the radar sensor is up to approximately 160 m (around 520 ft).

⚠ WARNING

If you use ACC in driving situations that are outside the system limits, this could result in accidents and serious injuries as well as violations of legal regulations.

- Observe the limits of the sensors *(→ Sensors)* and cancel control in the specified situations.

Objects that cannot be detected

ACC detects only vehicles that are moving in the same direction or stationary. The following are not detected:

— Persons.

— Animals.

— Crossing or oncoming vehicles.

— Other stationary obstacles.

Stationary vehicles

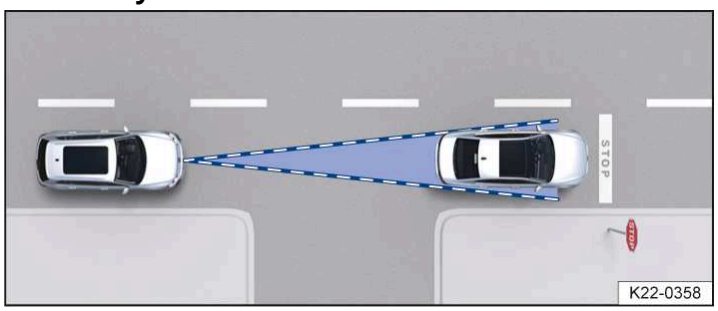


Fig. 1 Stationary vehicle.

ACC reacts to stationary vehicles to a limited extent up to a speed of around 60 km/h (around 37 mph), provided a stationary vehicle is detected and your own vehicle can be comfortably braked behind the stationary vehicle, subject to the system limits of the ACC. ACC does not perform emergency braking *→ Fig. 1*.

The response to stationary vehicles depends on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all countries.

Switching the ACC on and off



Fig. 1 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching on

1. Press the MODE button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until ACC is selected.
2. Press the OK button on the right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel or wait for a short time.

   ACC is switched on.

Starting control

If you change from Travel Assist to ACC and control by Travel Assist was active, control of the vehicle remains active. ACC is active.

Otherwise you must start control:

1. While driving forwards, press the SET button.

   ACC stores the current speed and maintains the set distance. If the current speed is outside the defined speed range, ACC will set the minimum speed when driving more slowly than the limit or the maximum speed when driving faster than the limit.

   Relevant brake support systems are also activated *(→ Brake support systems)*.

The following indicator lamps light up, depending on the driving situation:

ACC has taken control; no vehicle detected ahead.

ACC has taken control; vehicle detected ahead.

ACC is not performing a control intervention; no vehicle detected ahead.

ACC is not performing a control intervention; vehicle detected ahead.

Cancelling system control

1. Briefly press the CNCL button.

   Or: depress the brake pedal while driving.

   The indicator lamp corresponding to the driving situation lights up grey, the speed and distance remain stored.

If a relevant brake support system is deactivated, control is automatically interrupted *(→ Brake support systems)*.

Resuming control

1. Press the RES button.

   ACC adopts the last set speed and last set distance. The instrument cluster display shows the set speed and the indicator lamp corresponding to the driving situation lights up.

Setting the ACC

Setting the distance

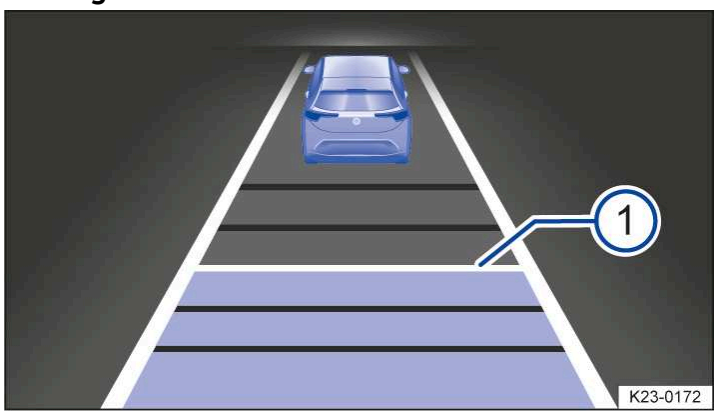


Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: set distance for control (illustration).

You can set the distance in five steps from very small to very large:

1. Press the button.
2. Press the button + or −.

   Or: press the button repeatedly until the required distance is selected.

   The instrument cluster display shows the chosen distance setting → *Fig. 1* (1). Please observe any country-specific regulations for the minimum distance.

Control always starts at the level that the respective user had set at the end of the last trip.

Adjusting the speed

You can adjust the stored speed within the defined speed range by means of the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel:

+ 1 km/h (1 mph):
  Press the RES button, only when ACC is active.

- 1 km/h (1 mph):
  Press the SET button, only when ACC is active.

+ 10 km/h (5 mph):
  Press the + button. The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next higher ten (km/h) or five (mph) increment.

- 10 km/h (5 mph):
  Press the − button. The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next lower ten (km/h) or fives (mph) increment

Press and hold the corresponding button to continuously change the stored speed.

⚠ WARNING

ACC cannot detect all driving situations correctly. If you do not maintain the minimum distance to the vehicle in front or if the difference in speed between the vehicle in front and your own vehicle is so great that the braking action of ACC is insufficient, you are in danger of colliding with the vehicle in front. This can cause serious injuries or death.

- Always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- Press the accelerator to override Adaptive Cruise Control. ACC does not brake automatically in this case.
- Observe any country-specific regulations relating to the minimum distance.
- Always set a larger distance in wet or snowy conditions or when visibility is poor.

Setting the system behaviour

You can influence how dynamically ACC reacts:

— Vehicles with driving profile selection:

Set preferred driving profile.

— Vehicles without driving profile selection:

Select the desired gearbox program in the Assist systems menu of the Infotainment system.

Some settings can be stored in the user accounts of the personalisation function and therefore change automatically when the user account changes.

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

— The radar sensors are dirty. Clean the radar sensors *(→ Vehicle care)*.

— The view of the radar sensors has been impaired by the weather, e.g. by snow, or cleaning agent residue or coatings. Clean the radar sensors *(→ Vehicle care)*.

— The view of the radar sensors is impaired by add-on parts, number plate holders with trim frames or stickers. Keep the area around the radar sensors free *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The radar sensors have been displaced or damaged, e.g. due to damage to the front of the vehicle. Check whether damage is visible *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.

— Paint work or structural modifications were carried out on the front of the vehicle *(→ Repairs and technical modifications)*.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The ACC does not function as expected

— The camera window or radar sensors are dirty. Clean the radar sensors and windscreen *(→ Vehicle care)*.

— The ultrasound sensors are dirty, covered or damaged. Clean the ultrasound sensors *(→ Vehicle care)*.

Keep the area around the ultrasound sensors clear and check whether there is any visible damage *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The system limits have been exceeded *(→ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC))*.

— The brakes have overheated, control was cancelled automatically. Allow the brakes to cool down and check their functionality again.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Control cannot be started

Make sure that the following conditions are met:

— A position has been selected for driving forward.

— The brake lights on the vehicle are working.

— The brake lights on the electrically connected trailer are in working order.

— ESC is not performing a control intervention.

— The brake pedal is not depressed.

Unusual noises during automatic braking

This is normal and is not a fault.

Introduction to the topic

The predictive cruise control adapts the vehicle speed to detected speed limits and the course of the road ahead, e.g. bends, junctions, roundabouts.

The predictive cruise control is an extension of ACC and makes use of Dynamic Road Sign Display and navigation data provided in the Infotainment system.

The predictive cruise control function is dependent on the equipment level and is not available in all countries.

Reaction to the end of a traffic jam

Vehicles with V2X technology (depending on vehicle equipment and not available in all countries) interact with other vehicles in their vicinity. As a result, your vehicle can be informed about a traffic jam ahead and can reduce speed early on.

Prerequisites:

— V2X is activated in the Infotainment system.

— The reaction to the end of a traffic jam is activated in the Infotainment system *(→ Predictive cruise control system)*.

WARNING

The predictive cruise control system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The predictive cruise control system cannot detect all applicable speed limits and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is responsible for the stored vehicle speed at all times.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Predictive cruise control system)*.
- Ensure that your speed is always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.
- Keep the navigation data up-to-date.
- Always observe the maximum speed limit.
- Please note that the speeds regulated by the system do not necessarily correspond to your driving style.

Also observe the system limits and the information for ACC.

The system also uses navigation data even if the vehicle does not have a navigation system. Keep the navigation data up-to-date *(→ Navigation)*. If you have any questions, please contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

System limits of predictive cruise control

In addition to the system limits of the Dynamic Road Sign Display function and ACC, the predictive cruise control function is subject to the following additional, system-related limitations:

— The predictive cruise control function detects only road signs that show a speed limit. In particular, predictive cruise control does not take into account the right of way or traffic lights.

— Road signs that indicate a speed limit indirectly, e.g. place-name signs, will be detected only on the basis of the navigation data.

— Road signs with sub-plates containing a restriction that applies only at certain times, for example, will be taken into account only if they are included in the navigation data and if they are recognised by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system.

— Predictive cruise control is not available on roads which are not recorded in the navigation data or not recorded with sufficient accuracy.

— If a speed limit is announced on the basis of the navigation data but is not detected by the Dynamic Road Sign Display function, the announced speed will be reset to the last-stored speed.

— The predictive cruise control system cannot control speeds below the minimum speed *(→ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC))*.

— The predictive cruise control system cannot detect the intention to turn off in the following situations, for example:

  — A dashed road lane marking was detected on the side on which you have set the turn signal.

  — You have not operated the turn signal for long enough.

Function limitations

In the following situations, it is possible that the predictive cruise control will not change the speed or will change it with a delay or in an unexpected way:

— There is a fault in the Dynamic Road Sign Display system. No speed limit is shown in the instrument cluster display.

— Road signs are not detected or are not detected correctly.

— The navigation data is out-of-date.

— You are driving without route guidance.

— You leave the route calculated by the navigation system.

— The vehicle position cannot be determined correctly due to imprecise GPS data.

— The intention to turn off was not detected or was incorrectly recognised as such.

— You have indicated an intention to turn off too late.

Activating predictive cruise control

You can adjust the settings for the events to which the vehicle should react:

— Reaction to the road layout.

— Reaction to the permitted speed.

— Reaction to the end of a traffic jam.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assist systems menu.
2. Select Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
3. Adjust the setting as desired.

If you have activated at least one event, predictive cruise control will also be switched on automatically when ACC is switched on.

Some settings can be stored in the user accounts of the personalisation function and therefore change automatically when the user account changes.

Driving with predictive cruise control

Driving with route guidance

When you drive with route guidance, the predictive cruise control will adapt the speed to the entered route.

Driving without route guidance

When you drive without route guidance, the predictive cruise control will adapt the speed to the most probable route.

Indicating the intention to turn off

If you indicate the intention to turn off by setting the turn signal, the predictive cruise control can brake the vehicle at the next possible turn-off – irrespectively of whether you are driving with or without route guidance.

Displays

A corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display as soon as the system has detected a speed limit or is going to reduce the speed based on the route.



Speed limit ahead, example.



Speed regulation due to speed limit, example.


Lifting of a speed limit ahead.


Speed regulation due to cancellation of the speed limit.


Roundabout ahead.


Speed regulation due to a roundabout.


Junction ahead.


Speed regulation due to a junction.


Bend to the left ahead.


Speed regulation due to a left-hand bend.


Bend to the right ahead.


Speed regulation due to a right-hand bend.


End of traffic jam ahead.


Speed regulation due to the end of a traffic jam.

When automatic speed control is assumed due to a speed limit, the detected speed is stored as the new desired speed. When automatic speed control is assumed due to the road layout, the vehicle will subsequently accelerate back up to the previously stored speed.

The behaviour of the predictive cruise control depends on the driving profile .

Cancelling speed adaptation

If you do not want to adopt an announced speed, you can cancel speed adaptation:

— Press the RES button.

The last-stored speed is resumed again.

— Press the SET button.

The current speed is adopted.

— Press the CNCL button.

Control is cancelled.

Prioritising speed adaptation

As soon as a higher speed than the currently stored speed is announced in the instrument cluster display, you can prioritise speed adaptation:

1. Press the + button.

   The vehicle will then accelerate to the detected speed.

Adjusting the announced speed

The announced speed can be adjusted only in the case of speed regulation due to a speed limit.

+ 10 km/h (5 mph):
Press the + button. The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next higher ten (km/h) or five (mph) increment.

- 10 km/h (5 mph):
Press the − button. The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next lower ten (km/h) or fives (mph) increment

If you adjust the announced speed excessively, predictive cruise control will be terminated.

If a speed limit is detected, the predictive cruise control function will adjust the stored speed even if ACC is deactivated. However, speed regulation will not take place.

When a speed limit is lifted on a motorway, the recommended speed will automatically be stored as the desired speed. However, if a higher speed has previously been stored on a motorway without a speed limit, this will be adopted instead of the recommended speed.

Troubleshooting

A message is displayed that predictive cruise control is currently not available or is not available in your country

1. If this message is displayed for an extended period and predictive cruise control is available in your country, go to a correspondingly qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Introduction to the topic

The Automatic Emergency Braking (Front Assist) can detect imminent frontal collisions and issue corresponding warnings. The system can also assist when braking and initiate automatic braking.

Front Assist can help to avoid accidents, but is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

Front Assist functions only within the system limits. The warning times vary depending on the traffic situation and driver behaviour.

Functions

Front Assist includes the following additional functions depending on vehicle equipment and country:

— Swerve support.

— Oncoming vehicle braking when turning.

— Front Cross Traffic Assist.

Detectable objects

Front Assist can detect the following objects:

— Vehicles.

— Bicycles and motorcycles.

— Pedestrians.

Driving with Front Assist

You can cancel the automatic braking interventions by steering or pressing the accelerator.

You can cancel automatic steering interventions by steering in the opposite direction.

Automatic braking

Front Assist can decelerate the vehicle to a standstill. The vehicle will then not be held permanently. Depress the brake pedal!

The brake pedal will feel harder during an automatic braking operation.

⚠ WARNING

Front Assist is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Front Assist cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist))*.
- Adapt your speed and the distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- You should consider cancelling the automatic interventions by Front Assist if necessary.
- If Front Assist issues a warning, brake your vehicle immediately depending on the traffic situation or avoid the obstacle.
- If you are unsure about what systems your vehicle has depending on the vehicle equipment and country, please enquire at a suitably qualified workshop before starting your journey. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Warning levels and braking intervention

Speed ranges

Front Assist provides assistance in the following maximum speed ranges:

— Reaction to vehicles: around 5 km/h (around 3 mph) to around 250 km/h (around 155 mph).

— Reaction to bicycles and motorcycles: around 5 km/h (around 3 mph) to around 250 km/h (around 155 mph).

— Reaction to pedestrians: around 5 km/h (around 3 mph) to around 85 km/h (around 53 mph).

The assistance may include an advance warning, an urgent warning and automatic braking or a braking intervention. A distance warning may also be displayed.

Influencing factors

Whether and in what speed range Front Assist reacts to the specified objects depends on the following factors:

— Type of object.

— Direction of travel of the object.

— Speed of the object.

— Speed of the vehicle.

The operating range may therefore be restricted if the vehicle approaches an object very quickly and there is therefore little time for a reaction.

In addition, not all warning levels are used in all situations. Depending on speed, there may not be an advance warning or an urgent warning, for example. Instead, automatic braking may take place immediately in order to ensure optimum protection for the object.

Distance warning



Front Assist detects when safety is endangered by driving too close to the vehicle in front.

The indicator lamp lights up. Increase the distance.

Advance warning



Front Assist detects a possible collision and prepares the vehicle for possible emergency braking.

An acoustic warning sounds and the red warning lamp lights up. Brake or take avoiding action.

Urgent warning

If you do not react to the advance warning, the system may initiate a short braking jolt in order to draw attention to the increasing collision risk. Brake or take avoiding action.

Automatic braking

Front Assist can brake the vehicle automatically in several stages with increasing braking force. The reduced speed means that it is possible to minimise the consequences of an accident.

Braking intervention

If the system detects that you are braking insufficiently when there is a risk of collision, Front Assist can increase the braking force and help prevent a collision. The braking intervention takes place only for as long as you press the brake pedal hard.

System limits of Front Assist

Limits of the sensors

Front Assist detects traffic situations using the radar sensors in the front of the vehicle and a camera behind the windscreen.

Observe the limits of the sensors *(→ Sensors)*. Always pay due attention and intervene yourself if necessary.

After vehicle start

Front Assist is not available or its functions are restricted immediately after the vehicle is started. The white indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display during this time.

Objects that cannot be detected

Front Assist cannot react – or will react with a delay – in the case of the following objects:

— When pedestrians and cyclists are not detected, for example because they are partially or fully hidden.

— Animals.

In addition, Front Assist cannot react or will react with a delay in the case of the following objects, depending on equipment and country:

— Oncoming vehicles.

— Crossing vehicles.

— Oncoming pedestrians or cyclists.

Function limitations

In addition to the situations specified in the section on the limits of the sensors, Front Assist may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way in the following situations, among others:

— Reversing.

— If ESC is performing a control intervention or faulty.

— If several brake lights on the vehicle are faulty.

— If there is a fault in at least one brake light on a trailer or bicycle carrier with an electrical connection to the vehicle.

— If the vehicle accelerates strongly or the accelerator is fully depressed.

— In unclear traffic situations, e.g. vehicles ahead are braking heavily or turning off.

— When driving into and out of tunnels.

— If there is a fault in Front Assist.

Switching off Front Assist

Front Assist is not suitable for use in the following situations due to the limitations of the system and must be switched off →⚠:

— If the vehicle is utilised in a capacity beyond usage on public roads, e.g. off-road or on a race track.

— If the vehicle is being towed or is loaded onto another vehicle.

— If add-on parts cover the radar sensors or camera.

— If the camera or radar sensors are faulty.

— After external force on components in the area of the radar sensors, e.g. after a rear-end collision.

— If the windscreen is damaged in the area of the camera window.

— In the event of multiple unwanted interventions.

⚠ WARNING

If you use Front Assist in the situations mentioned, this can result in accidents and serious injuries or even death.

● Switch off Front Assist in the specified situations.

Front Cross Traffic Assist

Front Cross Traffic Assist can prevent the vehicle from colliding with a crossing vehicle when entering a junction, for example.

If there is a risk of a collision when driving out of an exit or driving into a junction, Front Cross Traffic Assist can issue a visual and acoustic warning and brake the vehicle. This can reduce the risk of an accident.

Information

At low speeds, the Park Distance Control display shows detected crossing traffic by means of coloured segments.

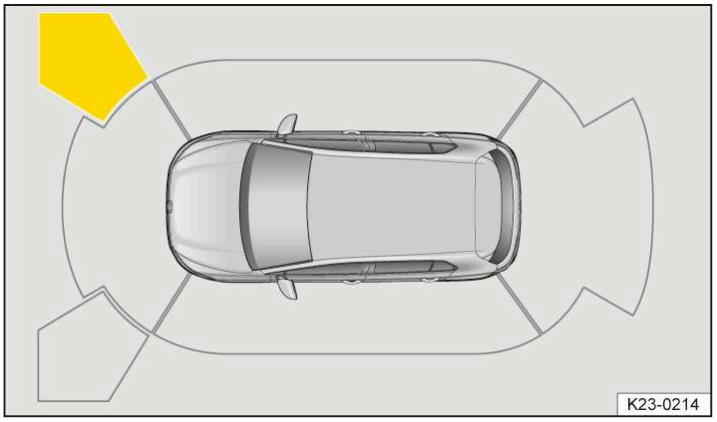


Fig. 1 On the Infotainment system: Front Cross Traffic Assist display (illustration).

Yellow display segment: Front Cross Traffic Assist has detected crossing traffic. Pay attention and be ready to brake.

Red display segment: Front Cross Traffic Assist has detected a possible collision with crossing traffic. Brake!

Depending on the driving situation, coloured direction arrows are additionally shown in the head-up display or in the main **Driver assist** display of the instrument cluster display. These indicate the direction from which the crossing traffic is approaching.

Speed range

Front Cross Traffic Assist is available in a speed range from 0 km/h (0 mph) up to around 65 km/h (around 40 mph).

Limits

Front Cross Traffic Assist does not react to road users who are hidden by structures or by other road users. Road users that emerge from a place where they are hidden may be detected with a delay.

Always also observe the fundamental system limits of Front Assist *(→ Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist))*.

Swerve support

The swerve support function can help to steer the vehicle around an obstacle in critical driving situations.

If you steer to avoid an obstacle after an urgent warning, swerve support can help you. Swerve support brakes individual wheels and supports you with a corrective steering intervention as long as you steer.

Speed range

Swerve support is available in a speed range from around 30 km/h (20 mph) up to a maximum speed of around 150 km/h (90 mph).

Limits

Swerve support does not react to crossing objects. Always also observe the fundamental system limits of Front Assist *(→ Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist))*.

Oncoming vehicle braking when turning

The oncoming vehicle braking when turning function can prevent the vehicle from colliding with an oncoming road user during a turn.

If there is a risk of the vehicle colliding with an oncoming vehicle in the adjacent lane when turning, the oncoming vehicle braking when turning function can brake your vehicle. Depending on equipment and country, this also applies to pedestrians or oncoming cyclists. A collision can therefore be avoided.

Speed range

The oncoming vehicle braking when turning function is available up to around 30 km/h (around 20 mph).

Limits

The oncoming vehicle braking when turning function is available only if you indicate, have turned the steering wheel and have therefore started the turning manoeuvre. After changing from right-hand traffic to left-hand traffic or vice versa, the oncoming vehicle braking when turning function is available only after some time.

Always also observe the fundamental system limits of Front Assist *(→ Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist))*.

Operating Front Assist

Front Assist and all the included functions (depending on equipment and country) are automatically switched on when you switch on the ignition.

 However, Front Assist is not available or only partially available as long as the white indicator lamp is lit up.

Volkswagen recommends that Front Assist and all the included equipment- and country-dependent functions are switched on at all times. Exceptions *(→ Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist))*.

Switching on and off

You can switch Front Assist on and off manually when the vehicle is stationary.

On the display of the instrument cluster:

1. Press the △ or ▽ buttons on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the driver assist system view is shown in the main display area.
2. Press the OK button.

   The list of driver assist systems is displayed.
3. Select Front Assist using the △ or ▽ buttons and switch on or off with OK.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assist systems menu.
2. Switch Front Assist on or off in the corresponding submenu.



If you switch off Front Assist, all the included equipment- and country-dependent functions are also switched off. The yellow indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display.

The yellow indicator lamp also lights up if Front Assist has been deactivated automatically, e.g. when towing has been detected.

Setting

If Front Assist is switched on, you can adjust the following settings in the Assist systems menu of the Infotainment system:

— Switch the distance warning on and off; initially always set corresponding to your previous journey.

— Switch swerve support on and off.

— Switch the oncoming vehicle braking when turning function on and off.

— Switch Front Cross Traffic Assist on and off.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is starting up

The indicator lamp lights up white.

— Front Assist is temporarily unavailable or limited. Front Assist is available after driving straight ahead for a short time, and the indicator light goes out. When the vehicle is not in motion, the indicator lamp may light up continuously.

Front Assist not available or availability restricted

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

— The camera window or radar sensors are dirty. Clean the radar sensors and windscreen *(→ Vehicle care)*.

— The view of the radar sensors or camera is impaired due to the weather conditions, e.g. snow, or due to detergent deposits or coatings. Clean the radar sensors and windscreen *(→ Vehicle care)*.

— The view of the radar sensors is impaired by add-on parts, number plate holders with trim frames or stickers. Keep the area around the radar sensors free *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The view of the camera is impaired by add-on parts or stickers. Keep the area around the camera window free *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The camera or radar sensors have been displaced or damaged, e.g. due to damage to the front of the vehicle or the windscreen. Check whether damage is visible *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The camera was deactivated automatically due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. When the camera is available again, Front Assist will also be available once more.

— Paint work or structural modifications were carried out on the front of the vehicle *(→ Repairs and technical modifications)*.

— If the problem persists, switch off Front Assist and go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Front Assist does not function as expected or is triggered unnecessarily several times

— The sensors are not working correctly. Check remedies for sensors that are not available or whose availability is restricted → *Front Assist not available or availability restricted*.

— The system limits have been exceeded *(→ Autonomous Emergency Braking (Front Assist))*.

— Low sun or darkness.

— If the problem persists, switch off Front Assist and go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

Within the system limits, the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) helps the driver to stay in lane. The function is not designed to keep the vehicle in lane automatically, nor is it suited to this purpose.

If your vehicle moves too close to a road lane marking that Lane Assist has recognised, it will warn the driver with a corrective steering intervention. The corrective steering intervention can be overridden by the driver at any time.

Speed range

Within the limits of the system, Lane Assist is ready to perform control interventions (system status active) when road lane markings are detected at speeds between around 65 km/h (approx. 40 mph) to around 215 km/h (around 135 mph).

⚠ WARNING

Lane Assist is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Lane Assist cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for staying in the lane.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Lane keeping system (Lane Assist))*.
- Adapt your speed and the distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Immediately override any undesired intervention by the system by steering.
- Observe the information on the instrument cluster display and respond according to the prompts, if permitted by the traffic situation.

System limits of Lane Assist

Limits of the sensors

Lane Assist detects road lane markings by means of the camera behind the windscreen.

Observe the limits of the camera *(→ Sensors)*. Always pay due attention and intervene yourself if necessary.

Road lane marking that are not detected or not detected correctly

Lane Assist cannot recognise all road lane markings correctly. If road lane markings are not recognised or are incorrectly recognised as such, this may mean that supporting control interventions do not take place or Lane Assist may perform undesired control interventions. In addition to the situations specified in the section on the camera limits, this can occur in the following situations, among others:

— If there are no road lane markings.

— If the driving style is very dynamic.

— When not driving on motorways or well-developed country roads.

— On poor roads, or if road structures or objects are present.

— If there are reflections or glare effects.

Always pay attention and intervene yourself and override an undesired system intervention immediately if necessary. Switch off Lane Assist temporarily if necessary.

Lane Assist not ready to perform control interventions

Lane Assist is not ready to perform control interventions under the following conditions (passive system status):

— The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is switched off.

— ESC Sport is active.

— The driving speed is less than around 60 km/h (around 35 mph) or more than around 215 km/h (around 135 mph).

— Lane Assist has not detected a road lane marking.

— If the lanes are too narrow and in tight bends.

— Temporarily if the driving style is very dynamic.

— If the driver oversteers a system intervention.

— If there is an intervention by the Automatic Emergency Braking system (Front Assist).

Lane Assist is not ready to perform control interventions on at least one side in the following situations:

— If the turn signal is switched on in the direction of the planned lane change.

— On the inside of a bend that you are intentionally driving through well to the inside.

Driving with Lane Assist

Switching on and off

Depending on country, Lane Assist is always switched on when the ignition is switched on. You can also switch Lane Assist on and off manually and view the current status.

On the display of the instrument cluster:

1. Press the △ or ▽ buttons on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the driver assist system view is shown in the main display area.
2. Press the OK button.

   The list of driver assist systems is displayed.
3. Select Lane Assist using the △ or ▽ buttons and switch on or off with OK.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assist systems menu.
2. Switch Lane Assist on or off in the corresponding submenu.

If you switch Lane Assist off, the yellow indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster, depending on country.

If there is a system fault, Lane Assist can switch itself off automatically.

Displays

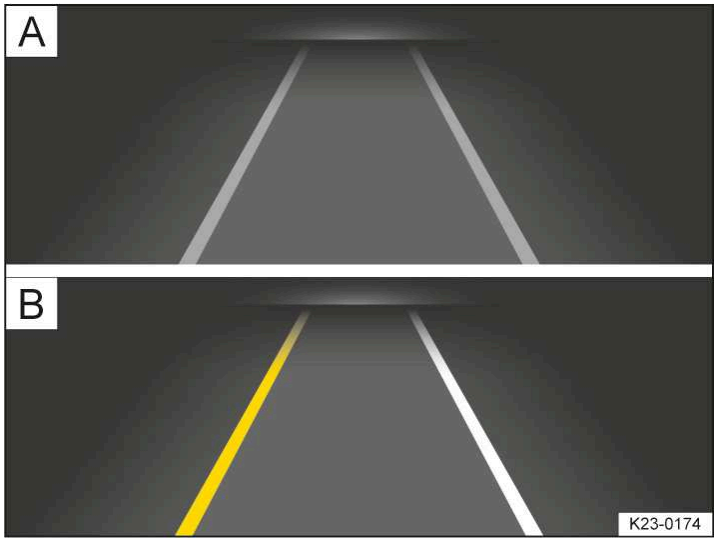


Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: Lane Assist displays.

A Grey line: road lane marking detected. The system is not ready to intervene on the side shown.

B Yellow line: road lane marking detected. System is actively intervening on the indicated side.

White line: road lane marking detected. The system is ready to intervene on the side shown.

With some equipment levels, additional details about the road lane marking may also be shown on the instrument cluster display, e.g. dashed lane markings.

With some equipment levels, a display is also shown on the head-up display

One of the following indicator lamps will light up in the instrument cluster depending on the driving situation:

System switched on, passive and not ready to perform control interventions.

System active and ready to intervene on at least one side.

System is actively intervening on the shown side (corrective steering intervention).

If Travel Assist is actively performing a control operation, there is no steering intervention and no display by Lane Assist.

Driver intervention prompt

If there is no steering activity, a corresponding display is shown on the instrument cluster display and acoustic warnings sound.

If you do not react to this, Emergency Assist will be activated, depending on the vehicle equipment.

Independently of the steering activity, a corresponding display is also shown on the instrument cluster display in combination with acoustic warnings if a corrective steering intervention is performed for an extended time.

Steering wheel vibration

You can select the **Steering wheel vibration** option in the Assist systems menu of the Infotainment system. In this case, the steering wheel will vibrate if the vehicle drives over a detected road lane marking when Lane Assist is active.

Troubleshooting

Lane Assist not available

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

— The camera window is dirty. Clean the windscreen *(→ Vehicle care)*.
— The view of the camera is impaired due to the weather conditions, e.g. snow, or due to detergent deposits or coatings. Clean the windscreen *(→ Vehicle care)*.
— The view of the camera is impaired by add-on parts or stickers. Keep the area around the camera window free *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.
— The camera has been displaced or damaged, e.g. due to damage to the windscreen. Check whether damage is visible *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.
— The camera was deactivated automatically due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. When the camera is available again, Lane Assist will also be available once more. Switch off and restart the engine.
— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.
— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

It can take a few seconds before a system fault is detected after the ignition is switched on.

If Lane Assist is not available, Travel Assist is also not available.

The system is not responding as expected

1. Do not attach any objects to the steering wheel.

Introduction to the topic

Within the system limits, Travel Assist allows the vehicle to maintain a distance from the vehicle in front that has been preselected by the driver and stay in the preferred position within the lane (adaptive lane guidance).

Does the vehicle have Travel Assist?

The vehicle is equipped with Travel Assist if you can select Travel Assist with the MODE button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Speed range

You can set a speed between 20 km/h (15 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph). This speed range may differ depending on country.

System limits of Travel Assist

Travel Assist detects driving situations with the same sensors as the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and the lane keeping system (Lane Assist).

Observe the system limits and information for ACC and Lane Assist. Always pay due attention and intervene yourself if necessary.

Driving with Travel Assist

Travel Assist automatically regulates the speed and steers the vehicle. Within the system limits, Travel Assist can decelerate the vehicle to a standstill behind a vehicle that is stopping. It can also start driving again by itself.

You can override control by Travel Assist at any time. Cruise control will be stopped if you brake. If you accelerate, Adaptive Cruise Control is interrupted for the duration of the acceleration process; adaptive lane guidance remains active. This applies up to around 250 km/h (around 155 mph).

Displays

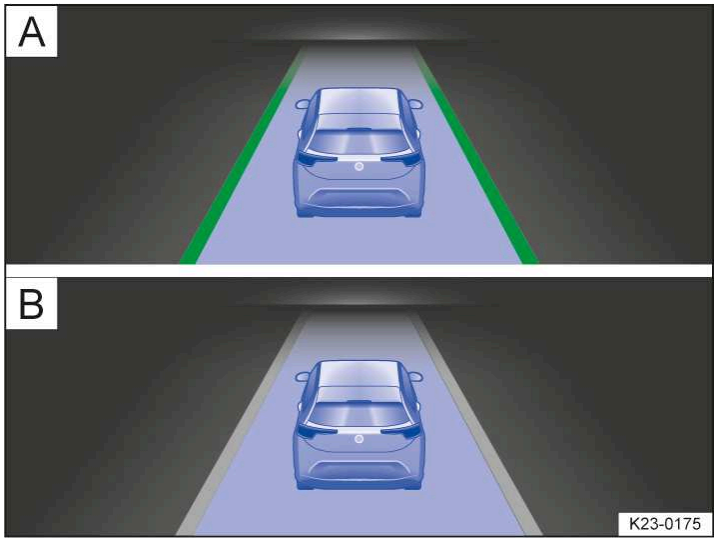


Fig. 1 On the instrument cluster display: displays for active control intervention (illustration).

A Green line: adaptive lane guidance active.

B Grey line: adaptive lane guidance passive.

With some equipment levels, additional details of any lane boundaries may also be displayed, such as dashed road lane markings and road users driving in front.

With some equipment levels, a display is also shown on the head-up display

Depending on the driving situation, one of the following indicator lamps lights up on the instrument cluster:

Travel Assist active, Adaptive Cruise Control and adaptive lane guidance active.

Travel Assist passive, Adaptive Cruise Control active, adaptive lane guidance passive.

Travel Assist deactivated, no regulation.

Driver intervention prompt

If you take your hands off the steering wheel, the system prompts you within a few seconds to take over active steering by way of acoustic warnings and a display on the instrument cluster.

Travel Assist will be deactivated if you do not respond to the prompt.

Alternatively, Emergency Assist will be activated (with some equipment levels). Travel Assist will be deactivated if Emergency Assist is not available.

⚠ WARNING

Travel Assist is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Travel Assist cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits of ACC *(→ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC))* and Lane Assist *(→ Lane keeping system (Lane Assist))*.
- Adapt your speed and the distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Take control of the vehicle immediately if requested to do so by a prompt on the instrument cluster display or if the speed reduction by Travel Assist is not sufficient.
- Brake if the vehicle starts moving unintentionally, e.g. after a driver intervention prompt.

Operating Travel Assist



Fig. 1 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching on

1. Press the MODE button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until Travel Assist is selected.
2. Press the OK button on the right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel or wait for a short time.

   Travel Assist is switched on.

Starting control

If you switch from Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) to Travel Assist, the vehicle will change to the following system statuses in Travel Assist, depending on the driving situation:

— When ACC is active, Travel Assist maintains the current speed and the preset distance to the vehicle in front (system status passive).

When lane markings are detected, the vehicle is simultaneously kept in the lane by steering movements (system status active).

— If ACC is not active, Travel Assist is switched on but remains deactivated.

You must start system control if you were previously driving with another assist system or if Travel Assist remains deactivated after switching on:

1. Press the SET button.

   Travel Assist switches to active or passive system status according to the driving situation.

   The indicator lamp corresponding to the driving situation lights up in the instrument cluster display.

Cancelling system control

1. Briefly press the CNCL button.

   Or: depress the brake pedal.

   The set distance remains stored.

Making other settings

The other operating functions of Travel Assist correspond to operation of ACC *(→ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC))*.

Troubleshooting

Travel Assist is not available or does not function as expected

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

— There is a fault in the sensor system. Check the causes and remedies described in the information on ACC or Lane Assist.

— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.

— The system limits have been exceeded.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Take over steering

The indicator lamp lights up white and a message is displayed in the instrument cluster display.

You have released the steering wheel for a few seconds.

1. Take hold of the steering wheel and take over vehicle control.

Take over steering immediately

The warning lamp lights up red and a message is displayed in the instrument cluster display. An acoustic warning is issued or the steering wheel vibrates, depending on the driving situation.

You have let go of the steering wheel for an extended time or the system limits have been reached.

1. Take hold of the steering wheel immediately and take over vehicle control.

Travel Assist switches off automatically

— Vehicles without Emergency Assist:

You have released the steering wheel for an extended period of time.

— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Control is interrupted unexpectedly

— You have activated the turn signal.

Introduction to the topic

Emergency Assist can detect a lack of activity on the part of the driver and keep the vehicle in the lane automatically, or brake the vehicle to a standstill if required. The system can therefore actively contribute to preventing or reducing the consequences of an accident.

System limits of Emergency Assist

Emergency Assist detects driving situations with the same sensors as the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and the lane keeping system (Lane Assist).

⚠ WARNING

Emergency Assist is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Emergency Assist cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. In addition, Emergency Assist cannot always independently prevent accidents. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits of ACC *(→ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC))* and Lane Assist *(→ Lane keeping system (Lane Assist))*.
- Adapt your speed and the distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- If the vehicle behaves differently than expected, cancel the intervention of Emergency Assist.

Driving with Emergency Assist

Prerequisites

Emergency Assist is always switched on after the ignition is switched on and is ready to intervene if the following prerequisites are met:

— The lane keeping system (Lane Assist) or semi-automated driving assistance (Travel Assist) function is switched on.

— The system has detected at least one road lane marking on the left or right of the vehicle.

If there is a system fault, Emergency Assist is not available.

Driver intervention prompt

If there is no driver activity, Emergency Assist prompts the driver to take control of the vehicle by acoustic warnings and by a braking jolt. A message is also displayed on the instrument cluster display and the volume of the Infotainment system is reduced.

Depending on equipment, the proactive occupant protection system is triggered at the same time.

System intervention

If the driver does not respond, the system can brake the vehicle and keep it in lane if road lane markings are detected.

One of the following warning lamps lights up in the instrument cluster display, depending on the driving situation:



System performing control intervention, adaptive lane guidance active.



System performing control intervention, adaptive lane guidance passive.

You can cancel control at any time by accelerating, braking or steering strongly as appropriate for the driving situation.

Other road users will be warned as follows when Emergency Assist is actively performing control interventions:

— The hazard warning lights will be switched on after a short time.

— The vehicle horn will sound, depending on the speed.

If the remaining stopping distance is sufficient, the vehicle will be braked to a standstill if necessary.

The following will happen as soon as the vehicle is stationary:

— The electronic parking brake is switched on.

— The position **P** is engaged.

— The doors will be unlocked.

— The interior lighting will be switched on.

— An emergency call will be made, depending on the vehicle equipment.

Troubleshooting

Emergency Assist not available

Fault or malfunction. The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

1. Switch off and restart the engine.
2. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The system is triggered in an undesired way or behaves differently than expected

Fault or malfunction.

— Switch off the lane keeping system (Lane Assist).

— Do not use semi-automated driving assistance (Travel Assist).

— Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

The lane change system (Side Assist) helps the driver to recognise the traffic situation behind the vehicle.

Radar sensors behind the rear bumper cover monitor the area behind the vehicle. The system measures the distance and difference in speed in relation to other vehicles and uses visual signals in the exterior mirror housings to inform the driver.

Use Side Assist only on surfaced roads.

Speed range

When Side Assist is switched on, Side Assist is active from a speed of around 10 km/h (around 6 mph). Side Assist is deactivated at a vehicle speed below around 5 km/h (around 3 mph).

⚠ WARNING

Side Assist is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Side Assist cannot recognise all driving situations or all objects in the surroundings and may possibly not issue a warning or may issue a warning with a delay or when not desired. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks and lane changes.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Lane change system (Side Assist))*.
- Adapt your speed and the distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Observe the displays in the exterior mirror housings and on the instrument cluster display and act in accordance with the requests.

System limits of Side Assist

Limits of the sensors

Side Assist recognises driving situations using the radar sensors at the rear of the vehicle.

Observe the limits of the radar sensors *(→ Sensors)* and always pay due attention.

Function limitations

In addition to the situations specified in the section on the limits of the sensors, Side Assist may not interpret the traffic situation correctly in the following situations, among others:

— When driving in the middle of two lanes.

— When road lanes are of varying width.

— Where there are special roadside structures, e.g. high or offset crash barriers.

Side Assist also does not detect stationary vehicles.

Restricted visibility

It may be hard to see the display in the exterior mirror in direct sunlight.

Driving with Side Assist

Switching on and off

Side Assist is always switched on when the ignition is switched on. You can also switch Side Assist on and off manually and view the current status.

On the display of the instrument cluster:

1. Press the △ or ▽ buttons on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the driver assist system view is shown in the main display area.
2. Press the OK button.

   The list of driver assist systems is displayed.
3. Select Side Assist using the △ or ▽ buttons and switch on or off with OK.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assist systems menu.
2. Switch Side Assist on or off in the corresponding submenu.

After switching on, the yellow indicator lamps in the exterior mirror housings light up once briefly.

If there is a system fault, Side Assist can switch itself off automatically.

Deactivation for trailer towing

If you use the factory-fitted towing bracket and have set up the necessary electrical connection, Side Assist switches off automatically. Once a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle and the driver pulls away, a notification appears in the instrument cluster display to inform the driver that Side Assist has been deactivated. After you have disconnected the electrical connection, Side Assist is switched back on automatically.

If the towing bracket is not a factory-fitted towing bracket, you must manually switch off Side Assist and then switch it back on again.

Displays in the exterior mirror



Fig. 1 In the exterior mirror housing: Side Assist displays.

- Flashing: a vehicle has been detected in the blind spot and the turn signal has also been activated in the direction of the detected vehicle.

- Lit up: your vehicle is being overtaken or you are overtaking another vehicle with a speed difference of up to around 15 km/h (around 9 mph).

  No display will be shown if the overtaking manoeuvre is much faster.

The quicker the vehicle approaches, the earlier it causes the indicator in the exterior mirror housing to light up.

Lane change system “Side Assist Plus”

If the vehicle is equipped with a lane keeping system (Lane Assist) and it is switched on and ready to perform control interventions, you will be warned by a corrective steering intervention when changing lanes during a possible critical situation (information level, warning level). The steering intervention also occurs when you have activated the turn signal for the corresponding direction. If you override the steering intervention, the steering wheel vibrates to give an additional warning. For this, steering wheel vibration must be activated in the Assist systems menu in the Infotainment system.

Brightness

The brightness of the visual display will change automatically depending on the ambient light levels.

You can adjust the basic brightness of the display in the Assist systems menu in the Infotainment system. Side Assist is not active during the adjusting procedure.

Some settings can be stored in the user accounts of the personalisation function and therefore change automatically when the user account changes.

Troubleshooting

Side Assist fault

Fault or malfunction. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display lights up yellow. The yellow central warning lamp ⚠ also lights up.

1. Switch off and restart the engine.
2. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

No sensor visibility, fault message, system switches itself off

— Clean the radar sensors and remove stickers or accessories from the radar sensors or bumper *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*, *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— Check for any visible damage *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The system is not responding as expected

— The radar sensors are dirty. Clean the radar sensors *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*.

— The radar sensors are covered by water.

— The view of the radar sensors is impaired due to the weather conditions, e.g. snow, or due to dirt, detergent deposits or coatings. Clean the radar sensors *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*.

— The system limits have been exceeded *(→ Lane change system (Side Assist))*.

— The vehicle is damaged in the area of the radar sensors, e.g. due to parking collisions. Check for any visible damage *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— The view of the radar sensors is impaired by add-on parts, bicycle carrier systems or stickers. Keep the area around the radar sensors free *(→ Accessories and replacement parts)*.

— Paint work or structural modifications have been carried out in the area of the radar sensors, at the rear of the vehicle or on the running gear *(→ Repairs and technical modifications)*.

— The side windows have been retrofitted with tinted window films *(→ Repairs and technical modifications)*.

— If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Parking

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Engage the parking lock **P**.
3. Switch on the electronic parking brake.
4. On uphill and downhill slopes, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle will roll against the kerb if it starts to move.
5. Stop the engine and switch off the ignition.

   The Ⓟindicator lamp in the instrument cluster display lights up red →⚠.
6. Release the brake.
7. Get out of the vehicle →⚠. Watch out for other road users!
8. Take all vehicle keys with you and lock the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is not parked properly, it can roll away even on a slight downhill gradient. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electronic parking brake is switched on and that the Ⓟ indicator lamp lights up red in the digital instrument cluster.
- Always follow the described sequence when parking the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Parking spaces and surrounding area

To avoid damage and dangerous situations, always park the vehicle in a suitable parking space →ⓘ.

NOTICE

The vehicle can slip away on uneven, loose, slippery or icy surfaces and may not be held securely even if the electronic parking brake is switched on. This could result in damage to the vehicle.

- Always park the vehicle on a level and suitable surface.

NOTICE

Low-lying vehicle components such as bumpers, spoilers and parts of the running gear can collide with obstacles protruding from the ground when driving over them. The vehicle may be damaged.

- Drive carefully over drives, ramps, kerbs, borders and dips.

Manoeuvring in a parking space

You can manoeuvre the vehicle in a parking space at low speed if you have already opened the door and unfastened the seat belt.

✓ The Auto Hold function was switched off.

1. Operate the foot brake and switch off the electronic parking brake.
2. Shift to a gear selector position **D/S** or **R**.
3. Manoeuvre the vehicle carefully.
4. Before exiting, switch on the electronic parking brake and engage the parking lock **P** →ⓘ.

NOTICE

If you leave the vehicle incorrectly, the electronic parking brake may switch on automatically only with a delay. A slight vehicle movement can occur. A very close obstacle can damage the vehicle.

- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electronic parking brake is switched on and that the Ⓟ indicator lamp lights up red in the digital instrument cluster.

Rear seat reminder

The function depends on the vehicle equipment.

When the ignition is switched off, a text message in the Infotainment system reminds you not to leave any passengers behind in the rear seats →⚠.

If a rear door was used before the journey, a text message is also displayed in the digital instrument cluster and an acoustic warning may sound. The acoustic warning can be activated and deactivated using the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system.

Rear seat reminder muted.

Electronic parking brake

The electronic parking brake secures the stationary vehicle against rolling away. In an emergency, the vehicle's brakes can be applied.

Switching on



Fig. 1 In centre console: button for the electronic parking brake.

1. When the vehicle is stationary, pull and hold the Ⓟ button for the electronic parking brake → *Fig. 1*.

Ⓟ The indicator lamp in the digital instrument cluster lights up red when the electronic parking brake is switched on.

The indicator lamp in the Ⓟ button lights up yellow → *Fig. 1*.

Switching off

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Depress the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ button.

   The indicator lamp in the Ⓟ button → *Fig. 1* and the red indicator lamp Ⓟ in the digital instrument cluster go out.

Automatic switch-on if the driver does not leave the vehicle correctly

In vehicles with automatic gearbox, the electronic parking brake may switch itself on automatically if it is detected that the driver has not left the vehicle correctly →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is not parked properly, it can roll away even on a slight downhill gradient. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always follow the described sequence when parking the vehicle *(→ Parking)*.
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electronic parking brake is switched on and that the Ⓟ indicator lamp lights up red in the digital instrument cluster when the ignition is switched off.

Automatic switch-off when driving off

If the driver door is closed and a gear selector position is then engaged and the accelerator pressed, the electronic parking brake will release automatically upon moving off →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the accelerator is unintentionally pressed when the electronic parking brake is engaged, the electronic parking brake may release. The vehicle starts to move. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- If the vehicle should be kept stationary, do not press the accelerator when the engine is running and a gear selector position is engaged.

Moving off on uphill gradients with increased vehicle weight

If higher engine power is required when moving off on a gradient, the electronic parking brake can be prevented from switching off automatically for a maximum of 30 seconds by pulling the Ⓟ button.

This can make it easier to move off when towing a trailer.

1. Select a gear position.
2. Pull the Ⓟ button.
3. Press the accelerator.
4. Release the Ⓟ button when sufficient engine power is available.

   The electronic parking brake is switched off.

Holding force on steep gradients

If the slope of the parking location is too steep, it may not be possible for the vehicle to be held continuously.

Ⓟ The indicator lamp in the digital instrument cluster display flashes red and a text message is displayed.

1. Park the vehicle in another parking space with less of a gradient.

The vehicle is not held securely until the Ⓟ indicator lamp lights up continuously.

Deactivating the roll-away protection

In certain situations, for example, for towing or in a car wash, the vehicle must remain able to roll and the electronic parking brake must not activate automatically. For this, the roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated in selector lever position **N** →ⓘ.

Prerequisites

✓ Vehicle is stationary.

✓ Ignition is switched on.

✓ Electronic parking brake was switched off.

1. Depress the brake pedal.

2. Select neutral position **N**.
3. Confirm the text message **The roll-away protection will be deactivated.** on the Infotainment system.
4. To activate the roll-away protection again, press the brake pedal and engage a gear selector position.

   Or: switch the ignition off and then back on again.

The automatic text message when the neutral position **N** is engaged can be deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system. The roll-away protection can also be deactivated in this menu.

NOTICE

If the electronic parking brake engages automatically in the car wash or when towing, the vehicle may be damaged.

- Deactivate the roll-away protection in these situations.
- Leave the vehicle key in the vehicle. Otherwise, the ignition will then switch off automatically and the roll-away protection function will be activated again.

Using a car wash

— To prevent the electronic parking brake from switching on automatically, deactivate the roll-away protection in the Infotainment system.

Emergency braking function

The emergency braking function should be used only in those situations where the vehicle cannot be stopped using the foot brake→ ⚠!

1. Pull and hold the (P) button.

   The vehicle brakes strongly. An acoustic warning sounds at the same time.

   The electronic parking brake is switched on when the vehicle comes to a stop.

WARNING

The electronic parking brake is not designed to brake the vehicle, as this increases the braking distance. This can result in accidents and severe or fatal injuries.

- To brake the vehicle, always use the foot brake and never the electronic parking brake, except in an emergency.

Noises may be heard when the electronic parking brake is switched on or off. This can also be the case with an automatic test.

Troubleshooting

Fault in electronic parking brake

The (!) warning lamp lights up red. A text message is displayed.

There is a system fault. The electronic parking brake does not switch on completely or does not switch off when driving.

Do not drive on!

1. Switch the ignition off and then back on again.
2. Operate the (P) button again.

   The vehicle is safely parked if the (P) indicator lamp lights up red in the digital instrument cluster without any other warning lamp lighting up.

Red warning lamp (!) remains lit

1. **Do not drive on!**
2. Park the vehicle on flat ground if possible and secure against rolling away by engaging the parking lock **P**.
3. Seek expert assistance.

Fault in electronic parking brake

The yellow warning lamp remains lit continuously. A text message is displayed.

There is a system fault.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

/ Button for the electronic parking brake is defective or faulty

When the button for the electronic parking brake is operated, the indicator lamp flashes red and the yellow warning lamp lights up continuously.

The button may be faulty or it is operated for longer than around 30 seconds.

1. If the button was operated for too long, hold the vehicle with the brake pedal and release the button.
2. To park the vehicle safely, switch on the electronic parking brake again and check whether the indicator lamp lights up continuously.

   Or: if the fault is still displayed, engage the parking lock **P**.
3. If the button is faulty, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The electronic parking brake is working but does not switch itself off

— The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged *(→ Jump starting)*.

Exit warning system

If another road user is approaching from the rear, the exit warning system issues a warning about obstacles when the doors are opened.

Function



Fig. 1 In the exterior mirror housings: display of the exit warning system (illustration).

Radar sensors behind the rear bumper cover monitor the area behind the vehicle. When cyclists are approaching, for example, the indicator lamps in the housing of the exterior mirror light up yellow → *Fig. 1*. If the door is opened, the indicator lamps first flash briefly and a warning signal sounds →.

WARNING

The exit warning system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and works exclusively within the system limits. For stationary, slow-moving or very fast approaching objects, the indicator may not light up or may not light up in time. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- When opening doors, pay attention to the vehicle surroundings, e.g. pedestrians or cyclists.

Prerequisites

✓ Vehicle is stationary.

✓ The function was switched on in the Infotainment system.

The exit warning system remains active for approximately 3 minutes after the ignition is switched off or the doors are opened for the first time.

1. Switch on the ignition to activate the function again.

Switching on and off

Depending on the country, the exit warning system is always switched on when the ignition is switched on.

1. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.

   The menu for parking systems is opened.
2. Tap the Settings function button.
3. Switch the exit warning system on or off.

The exit warning system can also be switched on and off in the vehicle settings *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Depending on country, this setting can be saved in the user accounts of the personalisation function and can therefore change automatically when the user account is changed.

Driving with a trailer

If a trailer is electrically connected to a factory-fitted towing bracket, the exit warning system is switched off. After disconnecting the electrical trailer connection, the exit warning system is automatically switched on again.

The exit warning system must be switched off and on manually if a non-factory-fitted towing bracket is used.

Auto Hold function

The Auto Hold function secures the vehicle against rolling away when stationary, without the vehicle having to be held by the foot brake.

Prerequisites

✓ The driver door is closed.

✓ The engine is switched on.

✓ A gear selector position **D**, **R**, **S** or **P** has been selected.

When the gearbox is in neutral, the Auto Hold function does not engage or disengages. The vehicle will not be kept stationary automatically →⚠.

Switching on

1. Open the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.
2. Open the **Brakes** menu.
3. Switch on the Auto Hold function.

   Auto Hold is ready for use, but the car is not necessarily stopped →⚠.

AUTO HOLD The indicator lamp in the digital instrument cluster lights up grey.

The Auto Hold function remains active when the ignition is switched on again.

Keeping the vehicle stationary with the Auto Hold function

1. Bring the vehicle to a standstill using the brake with the Auto Hold function switched on.
2. Release the brake →⚠.

   The vehicle will be kept stationary.

AUTO HOLD The indicator lamp in the digital instrument cluster lights up green.

The hold function stops if the vehicle is driven off or if the prerequisites for the Auto Hold function are not met.

Switching off

1. Open the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.
2. Open the **Brakes** menu.
3. Switch off the Auto Hold function.

The electronic parking brake will not switch on automatically if the brake pedal is pressed when the Auto Hold function is switched off →⚠.

The Auto Hold function can be added as a quick access function in the Control Centre of the Infotainment system *(→ Infotainment system overview)*.

⚠ WARNING

The Auto Hold function is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and works exclusively within the system limits. The vehicle cannot be held securely under all circumstances, for example on slopes or slippery surfaces. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Make sure that the indicator lamp for the Auto Hold function on the digital instrument cluster display lights up green if the vehicle is to be held securely.
- Never leave the vehicle while the engine is running, even if the Auto Hold function is active.

NOTICE

In car washes where the vehicle is towed, an active Auto Hold function can lock the wheels. This can cause damage to the vehicle and car wash.

- Switch off the Auto Hold function before driving into a car wash.

Safety notes

Limits of sensors and cameras

There are various sensors and cameras on the vehicle which detect and monitor the area around the vehicle by means of ultrasound, radar waves and optical systems. The various parking systems use different combinations of the sensors. Common to all sensors is the fact that they are subject to technical and physical limits →⚠.

— Some objects may not be detected under certain circumstances, such as trailer drawbars, thin bars, fences, posts, trees, very low or high obstacles, as well as open or opening boot lids →ⓘ.

— Environmental and weather conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snowfall, severe temperature changes, can impair operation.

— The detection ranges of the parking systems have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.

— In some cases, dirt or ice and water on the sensors and cameras could be registered as an obstacle or impair detection of objects. The sensor visibility may be impaired by dirt and snow, as well as residue from cleaning agents or coatings *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*.

— External sources of sound and certain surfaces on objects and clothing may influence the sensors' signals. In certain circumstances, the systems will be unable to detect or properly detect people and objects.

— Certain objects, for example narrow posts or railings, may be difficult or impossible to see on the screen because of its low resolution or poor light conditions.

— The cameras show only two-dimensional images on the screen. The lack of depth of field means that potholes and protruding objects on the ground may only be detected with difficulty, or may not be detected at all.

⚠ WARNING

The parking systems is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operate only within the limits of the respective system. The parking systems cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- When parking, always look in the direction of travel and observe the vehicle surroundings.
- Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects when parking.
- Do not allow the parking system displays to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Please note that the parking system may not react if an obstacle is approached too fast and will then not issue a warning.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged by obstacles when manoeuvring in parking spaces without kerb borders.

- Observe a safety distance of around 50 cm (around 20 in) from walls and buildings.

Volkswagen recommends that drivers practise using the parking systems in a traffic-calmed area or car park in order to familiarise themselves with their functions.

Prerequisites

General information

The following prerequisites must be met so that the sensors and cameras are best able to detect the surroundings of the vehicle and display this information on the Infotainment system screen.

✓ The doors and boot lid are closed.

✓ Exterior mirrors are not folded in.

✓ Sensors or cameras are not covered by add-on parts, e.g. a bicycle carrier, or number plate holders with trim frames. The number plate holder with trim frame must not project at the sides or downwards.

✓ The surrounding area has a flat surface.

✓ Vehicle does not have a heavy load at the rear or on one side.

✓ Engine running.

✓ Brake support systems such as ESC or TCS are switched on.

✓ The length and width of the parking space must be larger than the vehicle dimensions and offer sufficient space for manoeuvring.

The parking function and the acoustic warnings will be deactivated if other functions are operated on the Infotainment system during a parking operation. This does not apply when reverse gear is engaged. The parking function cannot be deactivated in this case.

The use of parking systems, e.g. with camera assistance, may not be allowed in some countries and regions due to legal requirements.

Automatic braking intervention

The automatic braking intervention of a parking system is designed to avoid a collision as soon as an obstacle is detected.

Parking systems with braking intervention

Depending on equipment, the vehicle may have parking systems with a manoeuvring or emergency braking function →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The automatic braking intervention function is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. In some driving situations, the automatic braking intervention may be restricted or undesired or there may be no intervention at all. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Use the foot brake to brake the vehicle in a hazardous situation before an obstacle.
- React early to warnings from the parking system (e.g. Park Distance Control).

When is the automatic braking intervention available?

✓ The driver has switched on a parking system.

✓ Park Distance Control: manoeuvre braking is activated in the Infotainment system.

✓ The vehicle speed does not exceed a maximum of around 10 km/h (around 6 mph) when manoeuvring.

What happens when an automatic braking intervention takes place?

The vehicle brakes to a standstill and is held for around 2 seconds.

Automatic braking intervention by manoeuvre braking. Hold the vehicle with the foot brake!

Automatic braking intervention of Rear Traffic Alert. Hold the vehicle with the foot brake!

A text message may also be shown on the Infotainment system or digital instrument cluster display, depending on the vehicle equipment.

In the event of automatic braking intervention by Park Assist Plus, the vehicle brakes to a standstill and is held by the electronic parking brake. The parking procedure is aborted and must be restarted.

Manoeuvre braking function of Park Distance Control

The manoeuvre braking function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on.

Manoeuvre braking can be deactivated temporarily in the Park Distance Control settings in the Infotainment system.

Manoeuvre braking deactivated.

If Park Distance Control has been activated automatically when driving forwards, there will be no automatic braking intervention in the front area *(→ Park Distance Control)*.

After a braking intervention, manoeuvre braking may be inactive for a short distance or will only function again after a change in the direction of travel. Continue driving carefully for the first few metres, e.g. if there are other obstacles in the vicinity.

Further information

If the automatic braking intervention is undesired or occurs too frequently, switch off the parking system temporarily and manoeuvre the vehicle carefully, e.g. when driving off-road or driving into a garage.

After emergency braking by the Rear Traffic Alert, around 10 seconds must elapse before automatic braking intervention can take place again.

Driving with a trailer

The automatic braking intervention at the rear of the vehicle is deactivated if a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle.

The parking system must be deactivated manually if a non-factory-fitted towing bracket is used.

Troubleshooting

The parking system is not responding as expected

— The prerequisites for the parking system are not met *(→ Parking systems)*.

— The sensors or the camera are dirty or iced-up *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)* →ⓘ.

— The ultrasound signal is subject to interference from external noise sources, for example when driving over cobblestones →ⓘ.

— The vehicle is damaged in the area around the sensors or the camera, e.g. caused by parking collisions or an accident →ⓘ.

— Changes have been made to the paintwork or structural modifications have been made in the area of the sensors or the camera, e.g. on the vehicle front end or the running gear →ⓘ.

— The detection range of the sensors or camera is blocked by add-on parts, e.g. bicycle carriers.

Fault displays

1. Observe the text messages on the display of the digital instrument cluster and in the Infotainment system.

NOTICE

The vehicle may be damaged if the parking system is used in spite of a fault in the sensors or cameras or restricted detection ranges.

- In the event of a fault in the parking system, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

No screen display of parking function after activation

The parking system was switched on or activated and the Infotainment system display does not change to the function-specific screen (e.g. the segment display of Park Distance Control or the camera display of Park Assist Plus).

1. Switch the parking system off and then back on again.
2. If the screen display still does not appear, there is a fault in the system. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fault in exit warning system or Rear Traffic Alert

The exit warning system or Rear Traffic Alert has been deactivated. An error message is displayed.

1. Check sensors on the vehicle for damage or dirt.
2. If the issue persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

Park Distance Control assists the driver when parking and provides warnings about obstacles.

Function

Park Distance Control uses ultrasound sensors to detect the distance of the vehicle from an obstacle.

Park Distance Control warns about a collision by means of colour segments on the Infotainment system screen and acoustic signals *→ Fig. 1*, *→ ⓘ*.

An automatic braking intervention can take place if the driver does not react when an obstacle is approaching *(→ Automatic braking intervention)*.

WARNING

The Park Distance Control system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Park Distance Control may possibly not detect some obstacles and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- React promptly to the visual and acoustic warnings of Park Distance Control.
- Use the foot brake to brake the vehicle before an obstacle.

NOTICE

Visual and acoustic warnings are given only for obstacles in the vehicle path. The collision area has been reached when the penultimate segment is displayed on the Park Distance Control screen or a continuous acoustic warning sounds, if not before. There is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

- Always brake the vehicle in good time before an obstacle.

NOTICE

With some equipment levels, distances to obstacles in the side areas are also displayed. An obstacle entering these areas from the outside will not be displayed. This may result in damage to the vehicle.

- Drive the vehicle a few metres forwards or backwards in order to scan and display the side areas in full.

Displays

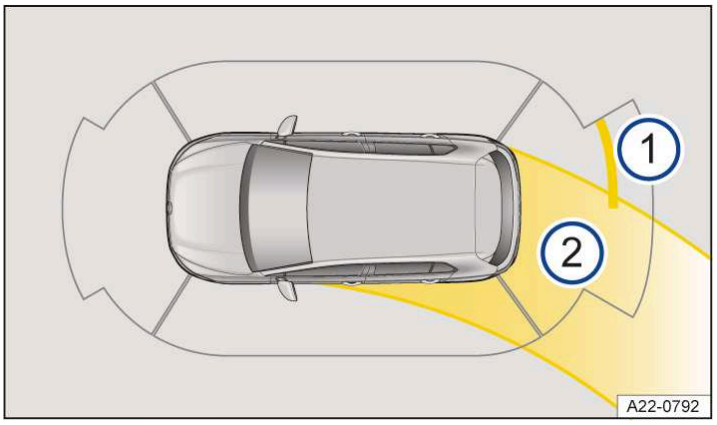


Fig. 1 Infotainment system: Park Distance Control display (illustration).

(1) Obstacle detection.

(2) Steering wheel angle.

Red image segment: close obstacle. The vehicle is at risk. Brake!

Yellow image segment: obstacle in the vehicle path. The vehicle is at risk. Adjust the steering wheel angle.

Grey image segment: obstacle outside the path of the vehicle or faulty sensor area.

Manoeuvre braking is deactivated or faulty.

Mute audio signals.

Park Distance Control settings

1. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.
2. Tap Settings.
3. Tap Park Distance Control settings.
4. Select a setting, e.g. automatic activation when driving forwards, volume of the acoustic signal.

Driving with a trailer

The rear and side sensors of Park Distance Control are not switched on if a trailer is electrically connected:

— No warnings are given for obstacles.

— The manoeuvre braking function is also automatically deactivated.

Some Park Distance Control settings, e.g. the volume of the acoustic signals, can be stored in the personalised user accounts. The settings change automatically when the user account is changed.

Switch Park Distance Control on and off

Switching on

1. Select reverse gear.

   Or: tap the P function button on the Infotainment system. Then tap the or function button.

   Or: the vehicle rolls backwards.

Switching off

1. Shift out of an engaged reverse gear.
2. Then tap the home button or the function button in the upper area of the Infotainment system.

   Or: switch on the electronic parking brake.

Park Distance Control also switches itself off if the vehicle is driven forwards at higher speed.

Automatic activation when driving forwards

The function can be switched on and off in the Park Distance Control settings in the Infotainment system.

Park Distance Control is activated automatically when an obstacle is encountered in the front area, such as in heavy traffic, or when driving into a garage.

1. To close the Park Distance Control display again, tap the home button or the function button on the Infotainment system.

No automatic braking intervention takes place *(→ Automatic braking intervention)*.

Automatic activation is available again under the following conditions:

— The vehicle was accelerated to over a speed of around 15 km/h (around 9 mph) and then slowed down below this speed again.

Or: the ignition was switched off and then back on again.

If an obstacle is detected in front of the vehicle, the Park Distance Control display appears on the Infotainment system. An acoustic signal also sounds if the vehicle continues to approach the obstacle.

Troubleshooting

! No sensor visibility, or there is a fault in the Park Distance Control

The sensor area is switched off permanently if a sensor fails. The ! symbol indicates the affected sensor area in the Infotainment system.

If there is a fault in the Park Distance Control, a signal tone will sound for several seconds when it is switched on. A text message may also be displayed.

If necessary, Park Distance Control is switched off completely and the P OFF symbol is displayed.

1. Check whether there is a fault in the parking system due to an external cause *(→ Parking systems)*.
2. Switch the system on again once you have rectified the source of the fault.
3. If the issue persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Manoeuvre braking restricted or unavailable

A text message is displayed.

The automatic braking intervention occurs unexpectedly or unusually. If the function is switched off, there is no automatic braking intervention.

1. Check sensors on the vehicle and rear view camera system for damage or dirt, and clean if necessary *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*.
2. Switch the ignition off and then back on again.
3. If the issue persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

The rear view camera system in the rear of the vehicle makes it easier for the driver to see behind the vehicle and provides support for parking manoeuvres.

Function

The rear view camera system shows the area behind the vehicle on the Infotainment system screen. Depending on the operating mode and equipment level, orientation lines aid the view to the rear →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The reversing camera is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and works exclusively within the system limits. Using images from the camera to estimate the distance from persons or obstacles can be inaccurate. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Note that camera lenses can enlarge and distort the field of view.

In the camera image, the orientation lines are shown by the system regardless of the vehicle surroundings. No automatic detection of obstacles by cameras takes place. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the vehicle will fit into the parking space.

No orientation lines for the rear area will be shown in the camera image when a trailer is electrically connected to the factory-fitted towing bracket.

No orientation lines will be shown when the boot lid is open on vehicles where the camera is installed in the boot lid.

Switch the rear view camera system on and off

Switching on

Rear view camera system with parking mode selection:

1. Select reverse gear.

   Or: tap the P function button and then on the Infotainment system.

Switching off

Rear view camera system with parking mode selection:

1. Shift out of an engaged reverse gear.
2. Tap the home button ▢ or the function button in the upper area of the Infotainment system.

The rear view camera system also switches itself off if the vehicle is driven forwards at higher speed.

Driving into a parking space (rear view camera system with parking mode selection)

Displays

Perpendicular parking: Guide lines provide support when reversing into a parking space at right angles to the road.

Crossing traffic: Shows a wide-angle view of the area behind the vehicle and the side areas.

Trailer or off-road support: Shows the area directly behind the vehicle with an enhanced zoom factor and guide lines (depending on equipment).

Red line: boundary or vehicle safety clearance.

Yellow lines: vehicle path depending on the steering angle.

Green horizontal lines: boundaries.

Enlarge the image area.

Clean the rear view camera system (depending on equipment in vehicles without rear window wiper).

Parking mode: parking perpendicular to the road

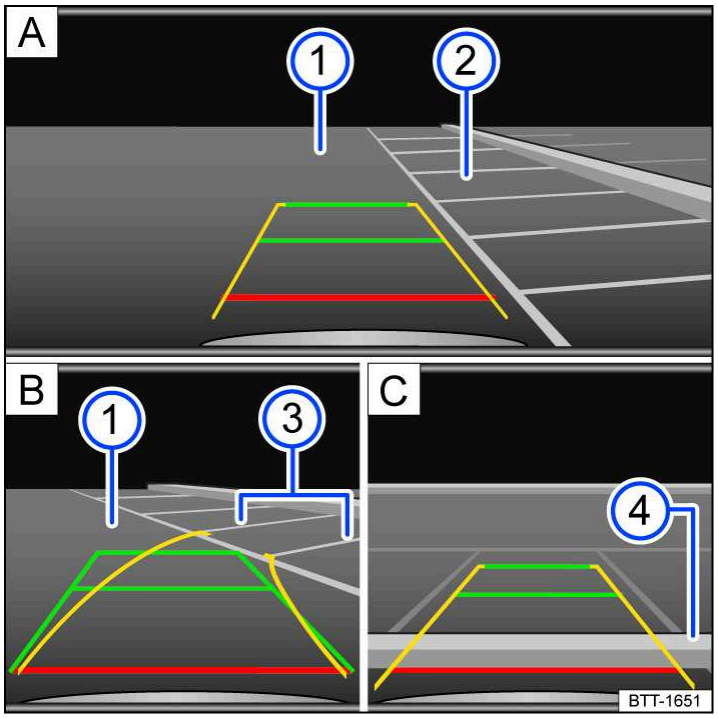


Fig. 1 Infotainment system: parking perpendicular to the road.

(A) Choose parking space.
(B) Drive towards the selected parking space.
(C) Align the vehicle in the parking space.
(1) Road.
(2) Parking space.
(3) Side limit of the parking space.
(4) Rear limit of the parking space.

1. Before driving past the selected parking space, tap the P function button for the parking menu.
2. Tap the function button.
3. To select the parking mode, tap the function button in the Infotainment system.
4. Position the vehicle in front of the parking space → *Fig. 1* A (2).
5. Steer the vehicle so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space. The green and yellow lines must be aligned with the side limit lines → *Fig. 1* B (3).
6. Stop when the red line reaches the rear boundary → *Fig. 1* C (4).

Parking mode: trailer support

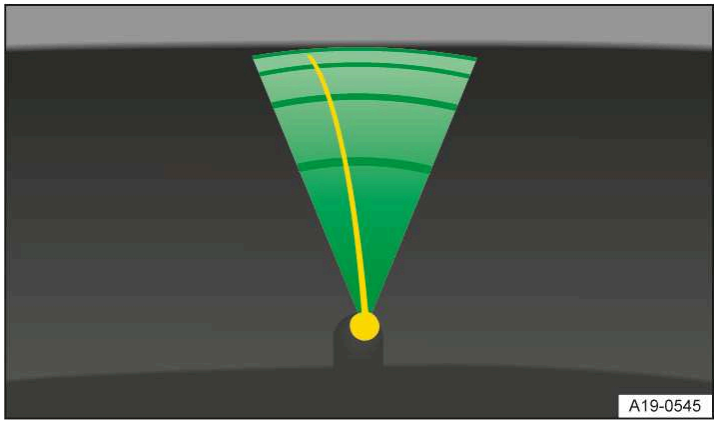


Fig. 2 Infotainment system: trailer support.

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the trailer support function can be used when approaching a trailer drawbar.

1. To select the parking mode, tap the function button.

The rear view camera system shows the vehicle's towing bracket in the lower part of the image. Coloured guide lines assist the manoeuvring process → *Fig. 2*.

Green lines: distance to towing bracket.

Orange line: predicted path of the towing bracket, depending on the steering angle.

Troubleshooting

Fault in camera image of the rear view camera system

The camera image is unclear, is flickering or has been disabled.

There may be a technical fault.

1. Clean the rear view camera system if the camera image is unclear *(→ Vehicle care, exterior)*.

   Or: check whether there is a fault in the parking system due to an external cause *(→ Parking systems)*.
2. If the issue persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

Area View can show the entire vehicle surroundings in real time. This function can help you to detect obstacles at an early stage in confusing situations.

Function

Area View uses several cameras, e.g. in the rear area of the vehicle, at the front and in the exterior mirrors, to show the area around the vehicle, →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Area View is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Using images from the camera to estimate the distance from persons or obstacles can be inaccurate. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Note that camera lenses can enlarge and distort the field of view.

Switching on and off

Switching on

1. Tap the Ⓟ function on the Infotainment system and then .

   Or: engage reverse gear.

Switching off

1. Shift out of an engaged reverse gear.
2. Tap the home button ▢ or the Ⓟ function button in the upper area of the Infotainment system.

Area View also switches itself off if the vehicle is driven forwards at higher speed.

Changing the camera view

Screen areas

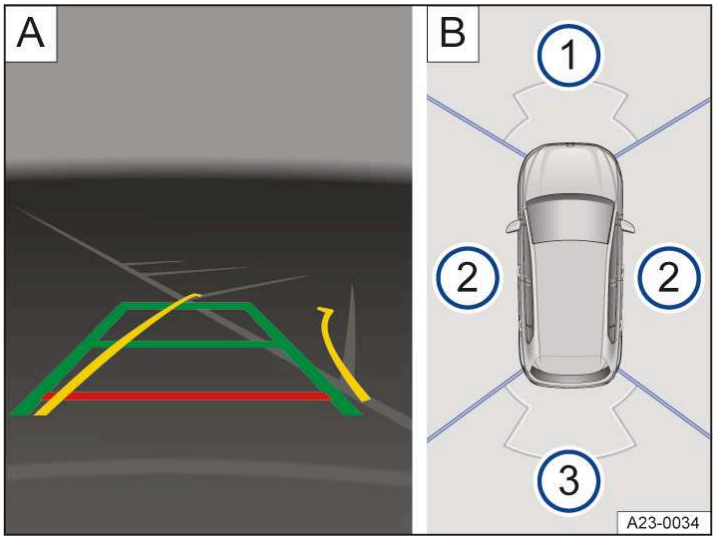


Fig. 1 Infotainment system: Area View with "perpendicular parking mode" camera image (illustration).

(A) Camera image.

(B) Bird's eye view with selectable screen areas.

(1) Area of the screen showing the front camera image.

(2) Area of the screen showing the camera image for both sides of the vehicle.

(3) Area of the screen showing the rear camera image.

Two screen areas are displayed on the Infotainment system → *Fig. 1*:

1. To display the desired camera image on the left → *Fig. 1* (A), tap the area of the screen on the right for the front, rear or side view → *Fig. 1* (B).

Changing the screen display

Other displays of the area around the vehicle can be shown on the screen depending on the selected camera image.

1. Tap the corresponding function button at the edge of the screen.

Front perpendicular parking.

Guide lines provide support when driving forwards into a parking space at right angles to the road.

Front crossing traffic.

Area in front of the vehicle with a wide angle.

Rear perpendicular parking.

Guide lines provide support when reversing into a parking space at right angles to the road.

Rear crossing traffic.

Area behind the vehicle with a wide angle.

Switch to trailer or off-road support (country-dependent).

Other screen displays

Red line: boundary or vehicle safety clearance.

Yellow lines: vehicle path depending on the steering angle.

Green horizontal lines: boundaries.

Enlarge the image area.

Clean the rear view camera system (depending on equipment in vehicles without rear window wiper).

Bird's eye view of the vehicle

1. Tap the vehicle graphic in the screen area → *Fig. 1* (B).

   All areas around the vehicle are shown in a large screen view.

Troubleshooting

Observe the troubleshooting information for the rear view camera system *(→ Rear view camera system)*.

Area View camera faulty

A camera is malfunctioning. The Area View image cannot be created.

There may be a technical fault.

1. Check the cameras in the exterior mirrors as well as in the front and rear areas of the vehicle for damage or contamination.
2. If the issue persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

Park Assist (Park Assist Plus) detects a suitable parking space and manoeuvres the vehicle automatically into the space.

Function

Park Assist Plus takes control of the steering, changes in gear selector position, acceleration and braking of the vehicle →, →.

Available functions

— Display suitable parking spaces on the Infotainment system.

— Load new parking space selection on the Infotainment system.

— Drive into suitable parallel and bay parking spaces.

— Drive out of a suitable parallel parking space. Bay parking spaces are not supported.

The driver must always monitor the area around the vehicle →. An automatic braking intervention can occur if there are obstacles in the vehicle's path or if a hazardous situation occurs *(→ Automatic braking intervention)*.

Automatic hands-free parking with Park Assist Plus may be prohibited or restricted in some countries or regions. Observe legal requirements.

When driving past the parking space, the maximum speed for parking spaces parallel to the road should be around 40 km/h (around 25 mph). The maximum speed for parking spaces perpendicular to the road should be around 20 km/h (around 12 mph).

For safety reasons, Park Assist Plus is not available in fast-moving traffic at speeds above around 50 km/h (around 32 mph).

Driving with a trailer

Park Assist Plus cannot be activated if a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle.

Park Assist Plus must be switched off manually if a non-factory-fitted towing bracket is used.

WARNING

Park Assist Plus is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Park Assist Plus cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle in a hazardous situation.
- Only park the vehicle if you hold a valid driving licence.
- Observe the road traffic regulations of the respective country.
- Do not leave the driver seat during the parking manoeuvre.
- Do not park in parking spaces without structural boundaries, such as those close to the edge of bodies of water or close to slopes without any structural separation.

WARNING

The system can respond only to a limited extent to quickly changing external conditions. This can result in collisions with other road users and can lead to vehicle damage as well as serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not use the parking system in fast-moving traffic.
- Always observe at least one vehicle length from junctions.
- Do not perform a parking procedure when facing oncoming traffic or across several lanes.

WARNING

The vehicle can swing out or move into the path of oncoming traffic during the automatic parking procedure. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Pay careful attention to the parking procedure and the traffic around you and brake the vehicle if necessary.

WARNING

In slippery conditions, the parking procedure cannot be carried out correctly and the vehicle may begin to slide. This can cause accidents and vehicle damage.

- Do not park using Park Assist Plus on icy or frozen roads.

NOTICE

Park Assist Plus may suggest parking spaces that are not suitable for the parking procedure due to the lack of boundaries or due to adjacent objects that could interfere with the parking procedure. This can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Do not park next to overhangs, e.g. loading ramps and parked trailers or under hanging objects.
- Pay close attention to the parking procedure in multi-storey car parks where the parking space is limited by pillars.

Park Assist Plus may not be available in some regions of a country for technical reasons.

— Observe the display on the Infotainment system.

Looking for a parking space

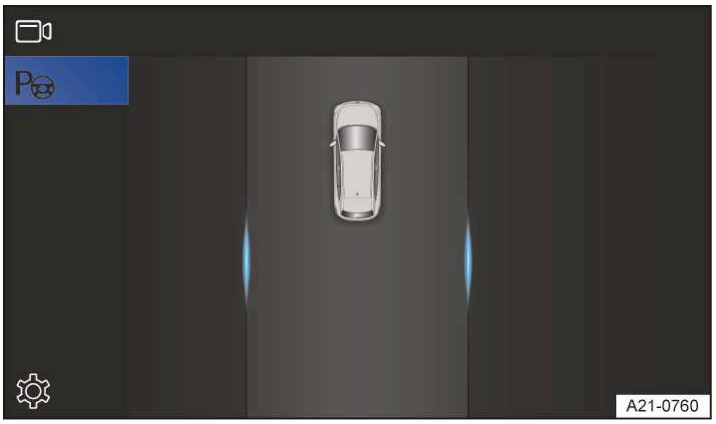


Fig. 1 Infotainment system: Park Assist Plus looking for a parking space (illustration).



Fig. 2 Infotainment system: number of detected parking spaces (red number).

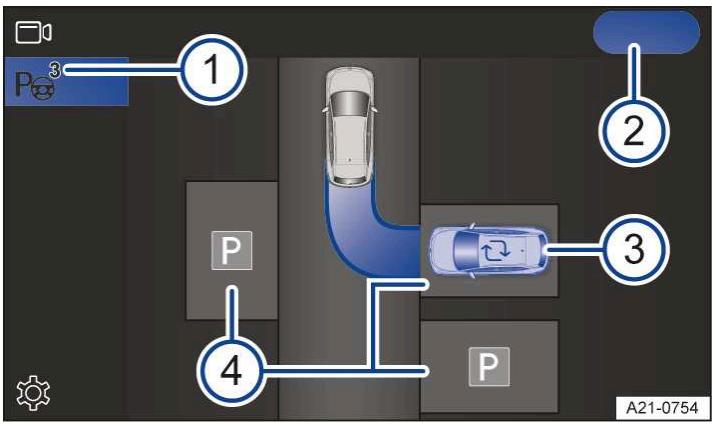


Fig. 3 Infotainment system: selecting a parking space (illustration).

(1) Number of parking spaces.

(2) Start parking procedure.

(3) Selected preferred parking space (blue vehicle).

↻ symbol: load new parking space selection.

(4) Available parking spaces.

Available parking mode

The following parking modes are displayed by the parking spaces shown horizontally and vertically on the Infotainment system:

— Forward perpendicular parking.

— Reverse perpendicular parking.

— Reverse parallel parking.

Looking for a parking space

1. Drive slowly past a row of parked vehicles, paying attention to the traffic.

   Park Assist Plus automatically searches for possible parking spaces.

   The number of detected parking spaces is shown on the function button P or P for Park Assist Plus → *Fig. 2*.

2. Tap P to switch to Park Assist Plus.

   Park Assist Plus shows a preferred parking space with a blue vehicle graphic → *Fig. 3* (3).

3. Decelerate to a stop and press and hold the brake pedal.

Changing the parking space

If several parking spaces are detected along the road, it is possible to change to another parking space.

1. Tap the desired parking space on the Infotainment system screen → *Fig. 3* (4).

   A new preferred parking space is displayed (blue vehicle).

Loading a new parking space selection

1. If available, tap the symbol ↻ → *Fig. 3* (3).

   A corresponding parking view is displayed.

Park Assist Plus can be activated later. If the vehicle has previously driven past a suitable parking space, it will be displayed.

Driving into a parking space

Prerequisites

✓ Park Assist Plus has been activated.

✓ A parking space has been found and selected.

✓ The vehicle is in the starting position and the path is shown in blue on the Infotainment system.

Driving into a parking space

1. Hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.
2. Tap Start on the Infotainment system.

   The parking procedure for driving into a space starts.

   The P symbol and a text message are displayed on the Infotainment system →⚠.
3. Observe any other displays on the Infotainment system.

   If necessary, Park Assist Plus will independently change the vehicle's direction of travel.
4. To ensure the best possible parking result, always wait until Park Assist Plus has finished turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking manoeuvre →⚠.

   When the parking procedure has been completed, a text message will be displayed on the Infotainment system and an acoustic signal will sound.

   The electronic parking brake is switched on.

   The parking lock **P** is engaged automatically.

⚠ WARNING

The steering wheel is turned quickly during manoeuvring. Reaching into the steering wheel can cause serious injuries.
- Take over steering only when the system requests you to do so.
- Take over steering in a hazardous situation.

The lane that is displayed in the Infotainment system during a parking process is a schematic representation. It does not correspond to the actual parking procedure performed by Park Assist.

The speed for automatic parking can be reduced by operating the brake pedal.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling away on uphill gradients, the steering wheel is automatically turned at the end of the parking procedure (country-dependent).

Driving into a parking space after an unfinished manoeuvre

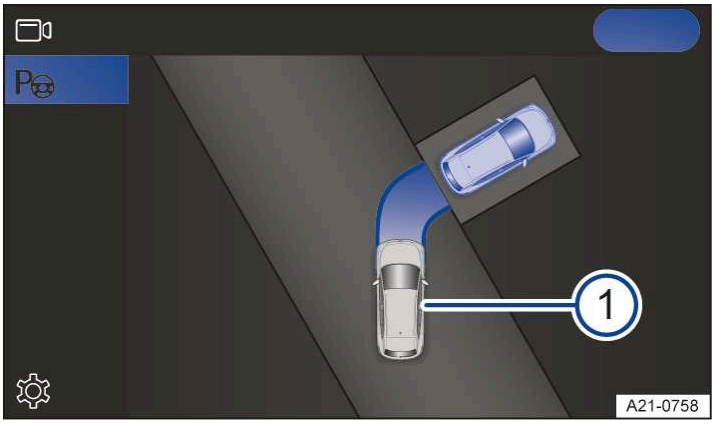


Fig. 1 Infotainment system: taking control of the driver's parking procedure.

(1) Vehicle not fully parked in the parking space.

In a difficult parking situation in which the driver has started driving into a space but has not completed the manoeuvre, Park Assist Plus can take control of the parking procedure and guide the vehicle into the parking space → *Fig. 1*.

Prerequisites

✓ Park Assist Plus is not activated.

✓ The front or rear of the vehicle has been driven into a parking space (the manoeuvre has been started but not completed).

1. Hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.

   A detected parking space is shown on the function button [P] in the Infotainment system.

2. Tap the [P] function button to switch to Park Assist Plus.
3. To start the parking procedure, tap [START] on the Park Assist Plus display.
4. Observe the Infotainment system displays.

Driving out of a parking space

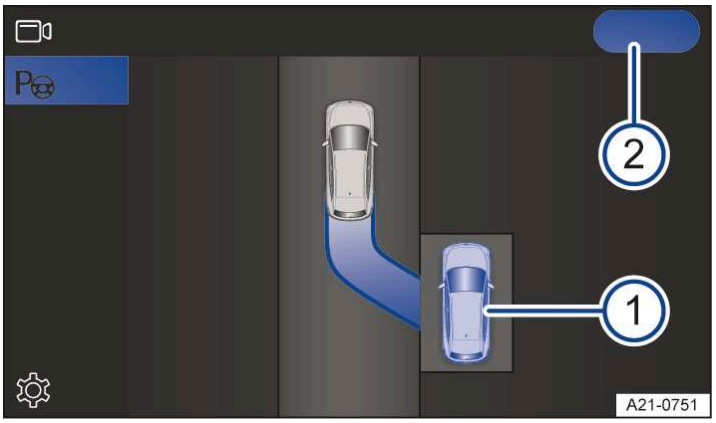


Fig. 1 Infotainment system: start the procedure for driving out of a parking space (illustration).

(1) Vehicle in a parallel parking space.

(2) Function button for starting the procedure for driving out of a parking space.

1. Start the engine.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Activate [P] Park Assist Plus.
4. Use the turn signal lever to select the direction (left or right) in which you would like to drive out of the parking space.
5. Tap [Start] on the Infotainment system screen → *Fig. 1* (2).

   The parking procedure for driving out of a space starts.

   The P symbol and a text message are displayed on the Infotainment system.

6. Observe any other displays on the Infotainment system.

   The vehicle stops after a few metres. The end of the procedure for driving out of the parking space is signalled by a text message and an acoustic signal.

   The parking system does not manoeuvre the vehicle further into the driving lane.

7. Take control of the vehicle and drive all the way out of the parking space in the direction of travel →⚠.

The lane displayed in the Infotainment system is an illustration. It does not correspond to the actual parking procedure.

⚠ WARNING

When driving out of a parking space, there is a danger that the vehicle could drive into moving traffic. This can lead to an accident and to serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive the vehicle out of the parking space only when permitted by the traffic situation.

WARNING

Park Assist Plus does not support exiting from bay parking spaces as obstacles in traffic cannot be fully detected. There is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- When driving out of bay parking space, park independently and keep an eye on the traffic.

Troubleshooting

Park Assist Plus was deactivated or cancelled

The parking system has been deactivated or there is a fault. The indicator lamp and a text message are displayed in the Infotainment system.

1. Park Assist Plus is deactivated after an automatic braking intervention or after the end of the parking procedure. Take over control of the vehicle if necessary.

   Or: in the event of a fault, observe the text message, e.g. **Trailer detected**, and restart Park Assist Plus.

2. If the issue persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Park Assist Plus parks inaccurately after a wheel change

If Park Assist Plus does not park correctly after a wheel change (e.g. vehicle is too far away or too close to the kerb), the system may have to first adopt the new wheel circumferences.

1. Drive a longer distance with the vehicle, including curves.

   Park Assist Plus automatically learns the new wheel circumferences after an ignition change.

Introduction to the topic

Park Assist Plus with memory function provides assistance when parking in frequently used parking spaces, such as garages and driveways. The vehicle manoeuvres automatically on a previously stored route to the parking space.

Function

Park Assist Plus with memory function is an extension of Park Assist Plus.

The parking system uses the front camera to detect the surrounding area and stores the path into the parking space, with a maximum distance of about 50 m (about 164 ft). Once the parking procedure has been stored in the Infotainment system, the vehicle can drive the route to or from the parking space automatically.

The driver must always monitor the area around the vehicle →⚠.

An automatic braking intervention can occur if there are obstacles in the vehicle's path or if a hazardous situation occurs *(→ Automatic braking intervention)*.

Automatic, hands-free parking with Park Assist Plus with memory function may be prohibited or restricted in some regions. Only use Park Assist Plus with memory function if this is permitted by the legal requirements.

Prerequisites

✓ GPS coordinates are available for the vehicle position.

✓ Sufficient space to manoeuvre. The vehicle may first drive a few metres to the programmed path.

Driving with a trailer

Park Assist Plus with memory function cannot be activated if a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle.

Park Assist Plus with memory function must be deactivated manually in the case of non-factory-fitted towing brackets.

⚠ WARNING

Park Assist Plus with memory function cannot replace the driver's full attention and works exclusively within the system limits. Park Assist Plus with memory function cannot detect all driving situations and may not react at all, react too late or react undesirably. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle in a hazardous situation.
- Only park the vehicle if you hold a valid driving licence.
- Observe the road traffic regulations of the respective country.
- Do not leave the driver seat during the parking manoeuvre.
- Do not use Park Assist with memory function for parking spaces without structural boundaries, e.g. close to the edge of bodies of water or close to slopes without any structural separation.

⚠ WARNING

The system can respond only to a limited extent to quickly changing external conditions. This can result in collisions with other road users and can lead to vehicle damage as well as serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not use the parking system in fast-moving traffic.
- Always observe at least one vehicle length from junctions.
- Do not perform a parking procedure when facing oncoming traffic or across several lanes.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can swing out or move into the path of oncoming traffic during the automatic parking procedure. This can result in accidents with vehicle damage and serious or fatal injuries.

- Pay careful attention to the parking procedure and the traffic around you and brake the vehicle if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

In slippery conditions, the parking procedure cannot be carried out correctly and the vehicle may begin to slide. This can lead to accidents with vehicle damage and to serious injuries.

- Do not use Park Assist Plus with memory function when parking on slippery or frozen roads.

Park Assist Plus may not be available in some regions of a country for technical reasons.

— Observe the display on the Infotainment system.

Programming the parking procedure

Finding a suitable parking space

✓ The parking space is clearly visible and unobstructed →.

✓ Visibility is good, meaning no heavy rain, mist, snow or darkness.

NOTICE

If there is not sufficient distance to kerbs or other obstacles in the parking area, the vehicle may be damaged during the parking process.

- Carry out the parking procedure again if Park Distance Control indicates an obstacle with a continuous tone.

Programming the procedure for driving into a parking space

1. Drive to the selected parking space as usual.
2. Park the vehicle safely.
3. Store the parking procedure as a parking space in the Infotainment system (variant 1 or 2).

Variant 1: saving the parking procedure for driving into a space in the Park Assist Plus with memory function menu

1. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.
2. Tap for Park Assist Plus.
3. Tap for Park Assist Plus with memory function.
4. Tap ⊕.
5. Choose the function button then assign the desired symbol and confirm.

   The parking procedure is saved as a new parking space.

Variant 2: saving the parking procedure for driving into a space in the vehicle's exit menu

When leaving the vehicle, the Exit menu is displayed in the Infotainment system.

1. Tap Save parking procedure.

More information about programming the parking procedure for driving into a space:

— park as smoothly as possible.

— Avoid corrections to the vehicle path on the last few metres to the parking space.

— Do not turn the steering wheel to full lock or too quickly or change direction too often.

To use a name in the Infotainment system instead of the GPS coordinates, edit the stored parking space in the parking system menu.

Programming the procedure for driving out of a parking space

✓ The vehicle is in a parking space for which a procedure for driving into a parking space is stored and available in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on the ignition and start the engine.
2. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.

3. Tap for Park Assist Plus with memory function.
4. Select the stored parking space (driving into a parking space).

   A text message appears on the Infotainment system.
5. Drive out of the parking space.
6. Confirm the end of the procedure for driving out of the parking space with the function button in the Infotainment system.

   The procedure for driving out of the parking space is also stored for the current parking space in the menu.

The programming operation is cancelled automatically if the speed is too high or if the distance covered exceeds more than around 25 m (around 82 ft).

Reprogramming the parking procedure

If you want to reprogram the parking procedure, e.g. to improve the parking result or to drive into the parking space from a different direction of travel, first delete the stored parking space from the menu.

The procedures for driving into and out of the parking space are always deleted.

Displaying and editing parking spaces

Opening the menu

Up to five stored parking procedures can be stored as favourites in the menu for Park Assist Plus with memory function.

1. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.
2. Tap for Park Assist Plus with memory function.

Managing parking spaces

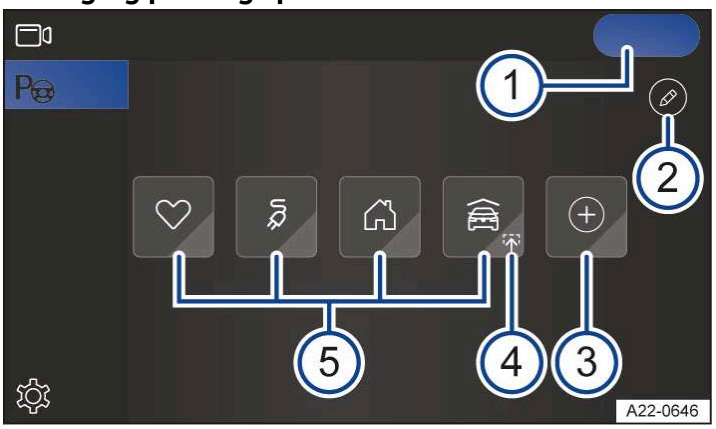


Fig. 1 Infotainment system: menu for Park Assist Plus with memory function.

1. Start parking procedure.
2. Edit stored parking spaces.
3. Add last parking procedure.
4. Parking procedure available.
5. Maximum of five stored parking spaces.

Editing, sorting or deleting parking spaces

1. Tap → *Fig. 1* 3.

   You can edit all stored parking spaces.
2. To rename a parking space or assign a new symbol, tap on the parking space symbol.

Or: to reorder the parking spaces, press and hold the function button for a parking space and move it to the new position.

Or: to delete a parking space, tap on the parking space symbol.

To delete all parking spaces, tap on the function button for all parking spaces.

Status of stored parking spaces

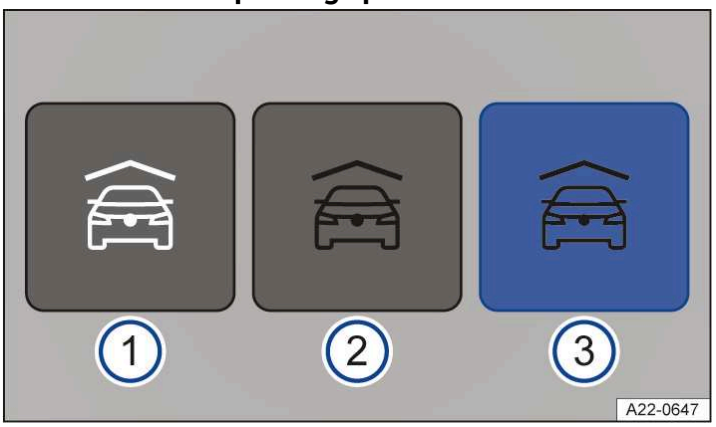


Fig. 2 Infotainment system: parking spaces without navigation.

1. Parking space not available.
2. Parking space available.
3. Automatic parking procedure selected.

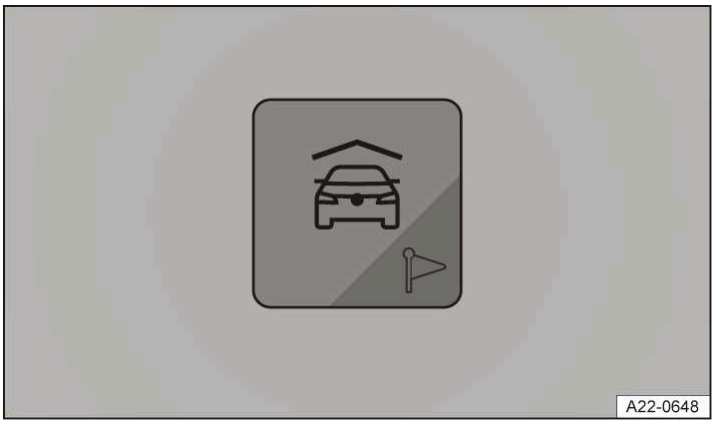


Fig. 3 Infotainment system: parking space with route guidance for the navigation system (depends on the and country).

Driving into and out of parking spaces

Driving into a parking space

When the vehicle approaches a stored parking space, a parking procedure is displayed automatically in the Infotainment system by means of a text message.

1. Stop the vehicle and hold it stationary with the foot brake.
2. If necessary, open the parking system menu in the Infotainment system and tap the available parking space.

   The function button is shown in blue.
3. Tap Start.

   The parking procedure for driving into a space starts →.

   The P symbol and a text message are displayed on the Infotainment system →.
4. Observe any other displays on the Infotainment system.

5. To ensure the best possible result, always wait until Park Assist Plus with memory function has finished turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking manoeuvre →⚠.

   When the parking procedure has been completed, a text message will be displayed on the Infotainment system and an acoustic signal will sound.

   The electronic parking brake is switched on.

   The parking lock P is engaged automatically.

⚠ WARNING

The steering wheel is turned quickly during manoeuvring. Reaching into the steering wheel can cause serious injuries.
- Take over steering only when the system requests you to do so.
- Take over steering in a hazardous situation.

NOTICE

The vehicle can perform steering movements and corrections during manoeuvring to the vehicle path. Damage can occur if there are obstacles in the surrounding area.
- Ensure that there is a sufficient distance to obstacles.
- Use the foot brake to brake the vehicle if necessary.

Also observe the following instructions for Park Assist Plus with memory function.

— Stop as close as possible and at most around 1 m (around 3.28 ft) away from the stored vehicle path.

— Always approach the starting position from the same direction of travel.

— If possible, do not drive into and out of parking spaces in very poor visibility conditions as there may be functional restrictions in this case, for example due to darkness or snow.

Driving into a parking space in underground car parks

In multi-storey car parks with underground parking, a possible procedure for driving into a parking space is not automatically offered with a text message in the Infotainment system. The driver starts the parking procedure in the parking system menu.

1. Stop the vehicle on the correct level of the underground car park and in the immediate vicinity of the taught-in parking procedure.
2. Tap the [P] function button to switch to the parking system.
3. Follow the steps described above.

Driving out of a parking space

✓ The vehicle is in the target position of the stored parking manoeuvre.

✓ The ⇳ symbol is displayed for the stored parking space in the Infotainment system.

1. Start the engine.
2. Open the parking system menu in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap the available parking space with a stored procedure for driving out of a space.

   The function button is shown in blue.
4. Hold the vehicle with the foot brake.
5. Tap [Start] on the Infotainment system.

   The parking procedure for driving out of a space starts.

   The P symbol and a text message are displayed on the Infotainment system →⚠.
6. Observe any other displays on the Infotainment system.
7. To ensure the best possible result, always wait until Park Assist Plus with memory function has finished turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking manoeuvre →⚠.
8. Take control of the vehicle →⚠.

WARNING

When driving out of a parking space, there is a danger that the vehicle could drive into moving traffic. This can lead to an accident and to serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive the vehicle out of the parking space only when permitted by the traffic situation.

When drive out of a parking space, the vehicle may drive more slowly than usual over the first few metres. If there is an obstacle at the parking space it can take evasive action and deviate from the stored travel path.

Navigating to a parking space as a destination

Which parking spaces can be set as navigation destinations?

Stored parking spaces with a navigation symbol can be transferred to the navigation system as a destination. The function depends on the country.

Starting route guidance

1. To select a destination, tap on a parking space marked with a navigation symbol in the parking system menu on the Infotainment system.
2. Confirm the text message on the Infotainment system.

   Route guidance starts and the parking menu is closed.

   Or: follow the instructions for driving out of a parking space with the parking system.
3. When the vehicle has arrived at its destination, observe the text message in the Infotainment system.

   Park Assist Plus with memory function is ready to park the vehicle automatically.

Troubleshooting

Park Assist Plus with memory function does not detect the stored parking space or vehicle path

The vehicle may not be able to detect the area around the stored parking space.

1. Stop vehicle in immediate vicinity of the stored vehicle path.

   Or: do not use the parking system in very poor weather or lighting conditions.

   Or: clean the windscreen in the area of the front camera if necessary.

   Or: check if the vehicle is connected to the internet. The parking system always determines the vehicle's position using GPS coordinates.

Camera of Park Assist Plus with memory function deactivated

The camera for the assist systems was deactivated automatically due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. When the camera is available again, Park Assist Plus with memory function will also be available once more.

1. Switch off and restart the engine if necessary.

Introduction to the topic

The driver can control the parking procedure from outside the vehicle by means of an app on their mobile telephone.

Function

Park Assist Pro with remote parking capability is an extension of Park Assist Plus.

Remote parking is also possible with Park Assist Plus with memory function.

The driver has all vehicle keys in the proximity of the vehicle with them and operates the app on the mobile telephone. The parking system carries out steering, gear selector position changes, acceleration and braking of the vehicle →, →.

Function button or display on the Infotainment system.

Available functions of Park Assist Pro

— Drive into suitable parallel and bay parking spaces.

— Manoeuvres from driving out of a suitable parallel or bay parking space.

In the case of a parallel parking space, the vehicle is positioned so that the driver has to drive fully out of the parking space.

Available functions of the memory function for Park Assist Pro

— Drive into a stored parking space nearby.

The driver must always monitor the area around the vehicle →. An automatic braking intervention can occur if there are obstacles in the vehicle's path or if a hazardous situation occurs *(→ Automatic braking intervention)*.

Remote parking with Park Assist Pro may be prohibited or restricted in some countries or regions. Observe legal requirements.

WARNING

Park Assist Pro is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The parking system cannot detect all driving situations and may not react at all or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Carefully observe the remote parking procedure from outside the vehicle and cancel the parking procedure in the Volkswagen app if there is a dangerous situation.
- Only park the vehicle and drive it out of parking spaces if you hold a valid driving licence.
- Observe the road traffic regulations of the respective country.
- Leave the driver seat only when the vehicle requests you to do so.
- Do not use the parking system for parking spaces without structural boundaries (e.g. close to bodies of water, watersides or slopes without any barriers).

WARNING

The system can respond only to a limited extent to quickly changing external conditions. This can result in collisions with other road users and can lead to vehicle damage as well as serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not use the parking system in fast-moving traffic.
- Always observe at least one vehicle length from junctions.
- Do not perform a parking procedure when facing oncoming traffic or across several lanes.

WARNING

The vehicle can swing out or move into the path of oncoming traffic during the automatic parking procedure. This can result in accidents with vehicle damage and serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not stand in the path of the vehicle.
- Carefully observe the parking procedure and traffic and cancel the parking procedure in the Volkswagen app if there is a dangerous situation.

WARNING

In slippery conditions, the parking procedure cannot be carried out correctly and the vehicle may begin to slide. This can lead to accidents with vehicle damage and to serious injuries.

- Do not park using parking system on icy or frozen roads.

NOTICE

The parking system may suggest parking spaces that are not suitable for the parking procedure due to the lack of boundaries or due to adjacent objects. This can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Do not park next to overhangs, e.g. loading ramps and parked trailers or under hanging objects.
- Pay close attention to the parking procedure in multi-storey car parks where the parking space is limited by pillars.

Volkswagen app for remote parking

The Volkswagen app for Park Assist Pro is available in the respective app stores →⚠, →⚠.

WARNING

There may be functional restrictions if an incompatible mobile telephone is used (e.g. delayed vehicle reaction during remote parking). Vehicle damage and serious injuries can occur as a result.

- Observe the information on compatibility in the app on your mobile telephone.

1. Install and launch the Volkswagen app on a compatible mobile telephone →⚠.
2. Pair the mobile telephone with the vehicle *(→ Park Assist (Park Assist Plus) with remote control)*.

CAUTION

The remote parking function may not be carried out correctly if the mobile telephone is damaged (e.g. touchscreen damage) or if functions are restricted (e.g. delayed reactions when operating). This can result in accidents with vehicle damage and injuries.

- Use only a fully functional and compatible mobile telephone.

CAUTION

Technical manipulation by the user can interfere with the remote parking procedure. This can result in accidents with vehicle damage and injuries.

- Do not perform any modifications to the software, the mobile telephone or its operating system or the vehicle.

Pairing and connecting a mobile telephone

The mobile telephone must be paired once with the vehicle via Bluetooth®.

For further use of the Volkswagen app, the mobile device need then only be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth®.

Pairing a mobile telephone with the vehicle

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.
3. Tap Settings.
4. Tap the Remote-controlled parking function button.
5. Scan the displayed QR code with the Volkswagen app.

   The mobile telephone is paired.
6. Observe the further information in the Volkswagen app.

Cancelling pairing

Remote parking is no longer possible as soon as pairing is cancelled in the app or vehicle.

The data of all mobile telephones and the app can be removed in the Infotainment system.

1. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.
2. Remove the mobile telephones from the **Remote-controlled parking** menu in the Settings menu.

   All mobile telephones are removed simultaneously.

To completely cancel pairing, also remove the vehicle from the Volkswagen app.

Driving into and out of parking spaces

Prerequisites

✓ Park Assist Plus displays a parking manoeuvre in the Infotainment system.

Or: Park Assist Plus with memory function displays a stored parking manoeuvre (parking space) in the Infotainment system.

✓ There is a Bluetooth® connection between the vehicle and paired mobile telephone.

✓ The driver is holding all the vehicle keys that are in the proximity of the vehicle.

✓ The driver with the mobile telephone is at a safe distance of no more than around 6 m (around 19 ft) away from the vehicle →⚠.

✓ Keyless Access is activated in the **Opening and closing** menu of the Infotainment system.

Driving into a parking space

1. Hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.
2. Tap the function button for remote parking in the parking system menu.

   The symbol lights up white.
3. Leave the vehicle quickly, taking all vehicle keys located nearby with you.
4. Check the driving path and start the parking procedure with the Volkswagen app →⚠.

   When the parking procedure has been completed, a text message will be displayed in the Volkswagen app.

   The electronic parking brake is switched on in the vehicle and the engine is switched off.

   The parking lock **P** is engaged automatically.

⚠ WARNING

The parking procedure may be aborted if the driver is located too far away from the vehicle. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Stay in a safe and suitable position in the vicinity of the vehicle.

The lane that is displayed in the Infotainment system during a parking process is a schematic representation. It does not correspond to the actual parking procedure performed by Park Assist.

Driving out of a parking space

This function is available only for Park Assist Pro without memory function.

1. Open the Volkswagen app.
2. Start the engine with the Volkswagen app.
3. Select the desired procedure for driving out of the parking space.
4. Check the driving path and start the procedure for driving out of the parking space with the Volkswagen app.
5. When the procedure for driving out of the parking space has been completed, take over control of the vehicle to continue driving and observe the text messages on the Infotainment system →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

When driving out of a parking space, there is a danger that the vehicle could drive into moving traffic. This can lead to an accident and to serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive the vehicle out of the parking space only when permitted by the traffic situation.

Interrupting a parking procedure prematurely and taking over control of the vehicle

It is possible to interrupt an active parking procedure at any time and take over control of the vehicle to continue driving.

1. Release the function button in the Volkswagen app.

2. Get into the vehicle.
3. Press the brake pedal and select a gear selector position.

Troubleshooting

Bluetooth® connection of Park Assist Pro with remote parking capability is lost

The parking procedure was started on the mobile telephone and is interrupted suddenly, e.g. when a phone call is received.

— Driving into a parking space: drive past the parking space again and select the desire parking space on the Infotainment system.

— Driving out of a parking space: open the Volkswagen app and start the procedure for driving out of the parking space again.

Introduction to the topic

The trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) helps the driver when manoeuvring the vehicle backwards when towing a trailer.

Trailer Assist steers a trailer in the direction set by the driver (using the rotary knob for adjusting the exterior mirror position). The driver operates the accelerator and the brake →⚠.

Trailer Assist determines the required data using the rear view camera system.

⚠ WARNING

Trailer Assist works solely within the system limits and is not a substitute for the driver paying full attention. Trailer Assist provides support when manoeuvring a trailer and does not detect any obstacles in the area around the vehicle. In rare cases, the trailer may move differently than set. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Always pay close attention to the movements of the trailer and break off the manoeuvre yourself if necessary.
- Do not rely solely on the displays in the digital instrument cluster.
- Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle in good time when an obstacle is encountered.

For technical reasons, Trailer Assist cannot always detect trailers with LED tail light clusters correctly.

Trailer Assist requirements

Prerequisites

✓ The trailer has unsteered axles and is correctly attached.

✓ The drawbar must not be covered.

✓ The vehicle and trailer are stationary.

✓ Driver door and boot lid are closed.

✓ The maximum vehicle and trailer angle (jackknifing angle) is not exceeded.

✓ Exterior mirrors are not folded in.

✓ ESC is switched on.

✓ A driver interaction must take place within around 3 minutes, otherwise the manoeuvring procedure will be terminated and Trailer Assist ended.

Synchronising the trailer

In order to determine the drawbar length again, the trailer must be synchronised each time the vehicle and trailer combination is changed.

There is a maximum of four end stops for the angle display: around 30°, 45°, 60° and 75°.

The more accurately it can determine the length of the drawbar, the more angles are available when manoeuvring.

1. Attach the one- or two-axle trailer and connect electrically to the vehicle.
2. Perform as many different turning and cornering manoeuvres with the trailer as possible.

Manoeuvring the vehicle and trailer

Switching on

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Select reverse gear.
3. Tap the (P) function button on the Infotainment system.
4. Tap the function button.

   The symbol lights up when the function is active.
5. Tap START.

   The manoeuvring procedure can be started.

Manoeuvring

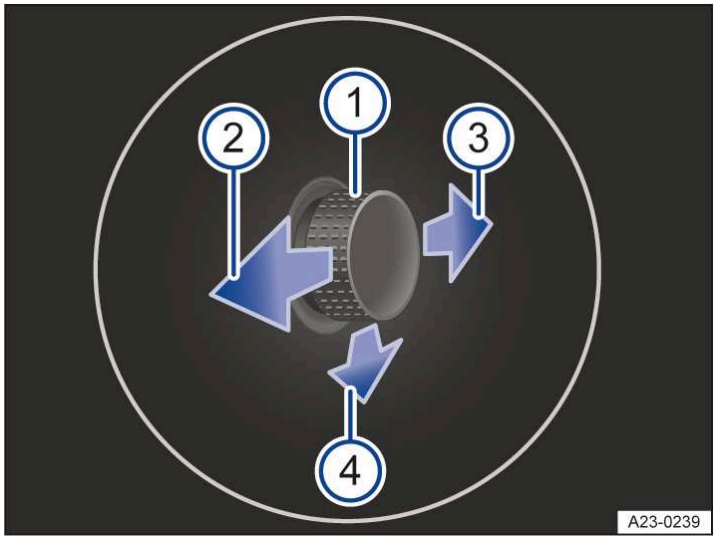


Fig. 1 In the digital instrument cluster display: operating the rotary knob in the driver door.

1. Rotary knob for adjusting the exterior mirror position.
2. Align the trailer to the left.
3. Align the trailer to the right.
4. Drive into the towing bracket.

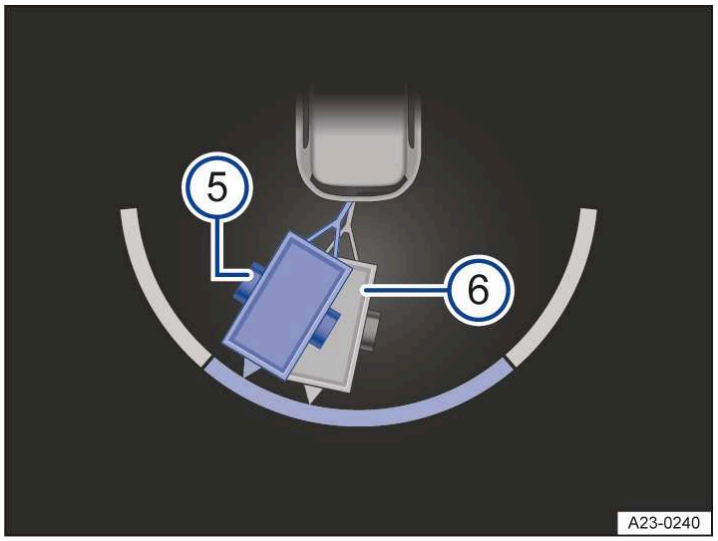


Fig. 2 In the digital instrument cluster display: adjusting the vehicle and trailer angle.

(5) Target trailer position.

(6) Current position of the trailer.

1. Check that the prerequisites for Trailer Assist are met *(→ Trailer manoeuvring system)*.
2. Release the steering wheel →⚠.
3. Tilt the rotary knob in the driver door until the desired direction is reached.

   A representation of the vehicle and trailer in the target position →*Fig. 2* (5) and current position →*Fig. 2* (6) is shown on the digital instrument cluster display for orientation purposes
4. Slowly accelerate and reverse. Keep an eye on the area around the vehicle.
5. Using the rotary knob →*Fig. 1* (1), correct the angle to the left (2) or right (3) if necessary.

   Or: to drive in the direction of the trailer, press the rotary knob downward (4).

   The symbol indicates that the vehicle is being steered straight and in the direction of the trailer.
6. Manoeuvre the vehicle until the required position is reached.

   The manoeuvring operation has been completed when a corresponding message is displayed on the digital instrument cluster. An acoustic signal may also sound.

⚠ WARNING

The steering wheel is turned quickly during manoeuvring. Reaching into the steering wheel can cause serious injuries.
- Take over steering only when the system requests you to do so.
- Take over steering in a hazardous situation.

The exterior mirrors cannot be adjusted while Trailer Assist is active.

The vehicle cannot be driven at speeds above around 6 km/h (around 4 mph) while Trailer Assist is active.

Rear Traffic Alert

Rear Traffic Alert monitors crossing traffic at the rear when reversing out of a parking space or manoeuvring.

Function

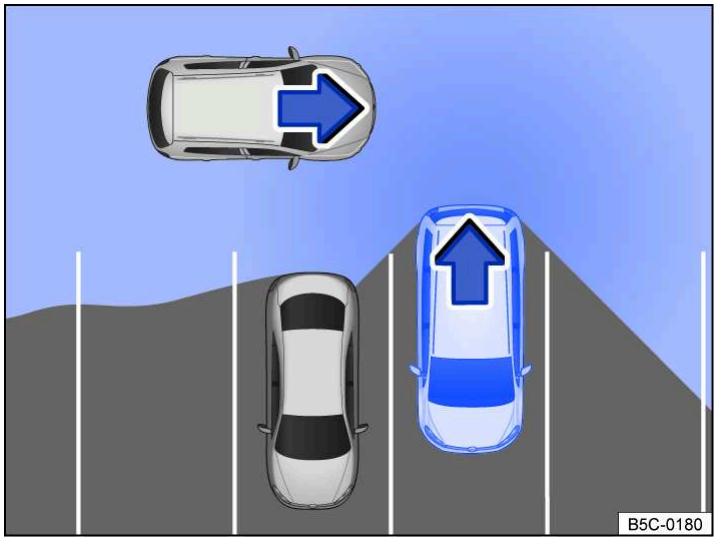


Fig. 1 Monitored area around the vehicle leaving the parking space (illustration).

Radar sensors behind the rear bumper cover monitor the rear and side areas of the vehicle.

The system detects approaching moving objects and warns the driver about the obstacle → *Fig. 2*, → ⚠. A warning signal is issued and the obstacle area is shown in colour in the Infotainment system → *Fig. 2*.

An automatic braking intervention can take place if the driver does not react *(→ Automatic braking intervention)*.

⚠ WARNING

Rear Traffic Alert is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. For stationary, slow-moving or very fast approaching objects, the system may not react or may not react in time. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle when driving out of a parking space.
- React promptly to the visual and acoustic warnings of Rear Traffic Alert.

Switching on and off

1. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.
2. Tap the Settings function button.
3. Switch Rear Traffic Alert on or off.

Rear Traffic Alert can also be switched on and off in the vehicle settings *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Depending on country, Rear Traffic Alert is always switched on when the ignition is switched on.

Depending on country, this setting can be saved in the user accounts of the personalisation function and can therefore change automatically when the user account is changed.

Display

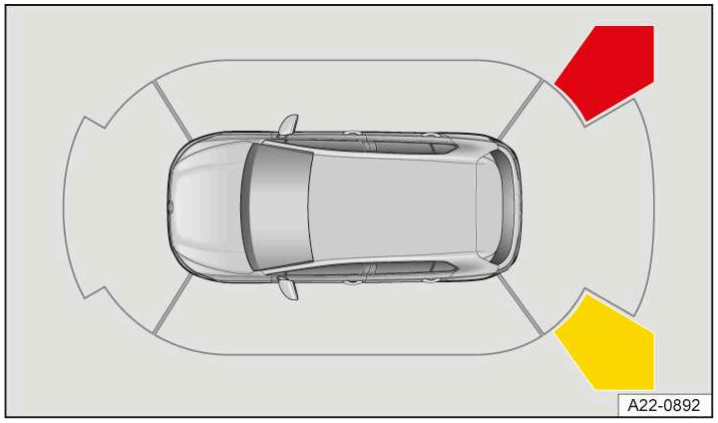


Fig. 2 Infotainment system: Rear Traffic Alert display (illustration).

Red image segment: close obstacle. The vehicle is at risk. Drive carefully out of the parking space and brake if necessary.

Yellow image segment: other road users in the vicinity of the vehicle.

Setting the volume

The volume of the warning signal can be adjusted via the rear volume setting of Park Distance Control.

1. Tap the P function button on the Infotainment system.
2. Tap Settings.
3. Tap Park Distance Control settings.
4. Adjust value for **Rear volume**.

Driving with a trailer

If a trailer is electrically connected to a factory-fitted towing bracket, Rear Traffic Alert is switched off. After disconnecting the electrical trailer connection, Rear Traffic Alert is automatically switched on again.

Rear Traffic Alert must be switched off and on manually if a non-factory-fitted towing bracket is used.

Introduction to the topic

WARNING

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can lead to loss of control over the vehicle and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Stow objects only in closed stowage compartments.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not place mobile devices or similar objects in the stowage system of the rear centre armrest while the vehicle is in motion.
- The coat hooks in the vehicle should only be used for lightweight clothing weighing max. 2.5 kg (approx. 5.5 lbs).
- Never leave any heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets of clothing.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the drink holders can cause injury. While driving, in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident, objects located in the drink holder can be flung about the vehicle and hot drinks spilled. This can cause serious injuries and serious scalding.

- Place only soft, break-proof and closed containers in the drink holder.
- Integrated stowage systems in the rear centre armrest must always be used in the locked end positions.
- Never place hot drinks in a drink holder.
- Make sure that only drinks of the appropriate size are placed in the drink holder. Drinks must always be stored securely in the drink holder.

WARNING

If the glove box is open while driving, objects could be flung through the vehicle interior. This can lead to loss of control over the vehicle and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always keep the glove box closed while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

Any lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or lit without being noticed, for example by high surface temperatures. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before closing stowage areas or compartments always make sure that there is no lighter in the way.
- Never stow lighters in stowage areas or compartments or on other surfaces in the vehicle.

WARNING

Closed drink bottles can explode in the vehicle in extreme heat or burst in extremely cold temperatures and cause serious injuries.

- Never leave closed drink bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle for extended periods.

NOTICE

Objects kept in the vehicle could be damaged or could cause damage to the vehicle when exposed to strong sunlight or the effects of heat or cold.

- Do not stow any temperature-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle.
- Please note that objects made of translucent materials, e.g. transparent suction pads on the windows, concentrate sunlight.

NOTICE

Depending on equipment, the rear centre armrest may have a stowage system. Folding in the rear centre armrest when the stowage system is open can damage the drink holder.

- Before folding in the rear centre armrest, make sure that any objects have been removed and that the integrated stowage systems are closed or folded in.

Fold-out stowage system



Fig. 1 In the backrest of the middle seat: fold-out rear centre armrest (illustration).



Fig. 2 In the rear centre armrest: fold-out stowage system (illustration).

There is a fold-out stowage system in the rear centre armrest.

Opening the stowage system

1. Fold out the centre armrest in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.
2. Fold the stowage compartment open in forward direction until it engages in position.

   The stowage system is then in the first detent position → *Fig. 2*.
3. Press the button between the drink holders and fold out the stowage system further until it engages in position once more.

   The stowage system is now in the second detent position.

Adjusting the centre armrest

— To move it backwards and forwards: push the centre armrest in the direction of the arrow all the way forwards or all the way backwards → *Fig. 2*.

Closing the stowage system

1. Push the centre armrest all the way to the rear in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 2*.
2. Fold in the stowage compartment to the rear in the opposite direction to the arrow until it engages in position → *Fig. 2*.
3. Fold the centre armrest upwards in the opposite direction of the arrow and push it into the backrest as far as it will go → *Fig. 1*.

Do not use the middle seat on the rear bench seat to transport passengers when the centre armrest is folded down.

Introduction to the topic

Electrical equipment can be connected to the sockets in the vehicle.

The 12-volt socket will work only when the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Improper use of the sockets and connected electrical accessories can cause fires and serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch off electrical devices immediately and disconnect them from the power supply if the electrical devices become too warm.
- Please note that sockets and devices connected to them can also be used when the ignition is switched off, e.g. by children in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Unsuitable, non-approved or incorrectly connected electrical devices can cause damage to the vehicle and the electronic components.

- Never connect electrical devices that supply electric power, such as solar panels or a battery charger, to the 12-volt socket to charge the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Use only electrical devices that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
- Do not use faulty devices.
- In order to avoid damage due to voltage fluctuations, always switch off any electrical devices before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.
- Observe the operating instructions of the electrical devices.

NOTICE

The vehicle's electrical system can be damaged if the maximum power output is exceeded.

- Never connect electrical devices requiring more than the rated power to a 12-volt socket.

Using electrical consumers with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the 12-volt battery.

With some equipment levels, unshielded devices can cause interference with the Infotainment system and vehicle electronics.

Sockets in the vehicle

The maximum power of the sockets must not be exceeded. The power consumption of the external devices is specified on their type plates.

12-volt socket



Fig. 1 In the storage compartment in the centre console under the centre armrest, on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment: fold-open 12-volt socket (depending on equipment).

The continuous power of all 12-volt sockets in the vehicle is 120 W in total *(→ Sockets)*.

The maximum power of a 12-volt socket in the vehicle is a total of 180 W when the engine is running.

NOTICE

The fuse can blow as a result of extended operation of the 12-volt sockets at maximum power.

- Never use the 12-volt sockets at maximum power for longer than 10 minutes.
- Always use only one 12-volt socket with maximum power.

NOTICE

If two or more 12-volt sockets are used simultaneously, the total power consumption of the connected electrical devices must not exceed 190 W. This can cause the fuse to blow.

- Always use only one 12-volt socket with maximum power.

230-volt socket



Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment on the right-hand side: 230-volt socket (depending on equipment).

The maximum power is 150 W (300 W peak power).

The socket is activated automatically as soon as a plug is inserted when the engine is running. If there is sufficient energy available, the socket can also still be used when the engine is switched off.

Connecting an electrical device

1. In order to release the child socket protection, open the cover if necessary and plug the plug into the socket as far as it will go.

   Electricity will not flow until the child socket protection has been unlocked.

Temperature switch-off

The inverter in the 230-volt socket will switch itself off automatically if the temperature exceeds a specific value. The switch-off function prevents the connected device from overheating when the power consumption is too high or if the ambient temperature is too high. The 230-volt socket cannot be used again until after the cool-down phase.

The plug on the connected device must first be removed and then reinserted before using the 230-volt socket again after the cooling phase. This prevents the electrical devices being switched on again unintentionally.

DANGER

Contact with the high voltage in the electrical system, e.g. sockets, can cause electric shocks, serious burns and death.

- Do not spill any liquids over the sockets.
- Do not plug any adapters, power strips, multiple adapters or extension cables into the 230-volt socket.
- Never insert any items made of conductive materials, e.g. a screwdriver, into the contacts of the 230-volt socket.
- Do not use faulty devices with the 230-volt socket.
- Disconnect devices from the 230-volt socket if a fault occurs.

NOTICE

The vehicle sockets can be damaged if they are not used correctly. This can result in damage to the electronics and vehicle.

- Only connect devices to the socket with a voltage that matches the voltage of the socket.
- Do not plug any very heavy devices or plugs, such as mains adapters, directly into the socket.

If devices with a high starting current are prevented from being switched on, this may be due to the integrated overcurrent cut-out function. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the electrical device and connect again after waiting approximately 10 seconds.

Functional restrictions may occur with some devices when they are connected to the 230-volt socket due to the lower power output (wattage).

Charging options for mobile devices

Mobile devices can be charged in the vehicle either via the installed USB-C connections or wirelessly.

Charging via the USB-C ports

The following USB-C ports may be available in the vehicle:

Identification of a USB connection for data transfer and charging.

Identification of a USB connection suitable only for charging.

Available charging capacity

Voltages of up to 20 V are made available via the USB port. These voltages permit a charging capacity of up to 45 W.

Depending on equipment, the following charging profiles can be supported by the USB connections:

— Legacy charging (2.5 W).

— BC1.2 (7.5 W).

— USB-C charging (15 W).

— USB power delivery (up to 45 W).

The charging capacity actually tapped by the connected device depends on the following:

— Supported charging profiles.

— Charge level of the device.

— Device temperature.

— Charging cables used.

In the case of double USB ports, the charging capacity can be split between both ports.

Wireless charging function

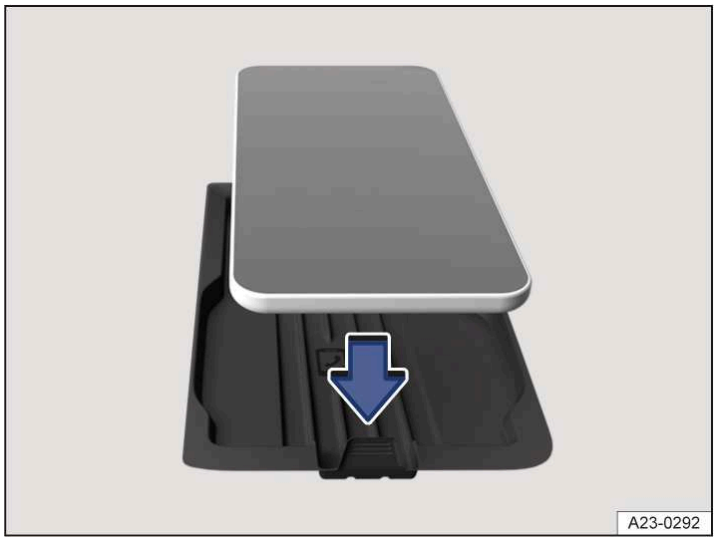


Fig. 1 In the centre console: lining mat for the wireless charging function (illustration).

The wireless charging function is dependent on the equipment level and is not available in all countries.

The wireless charging function enables wireless energy transmission by electromagnetic induction over a short distance for Qi-certified mobile telephones.

The lining mat with shelf area for the wireless charging function is located in the area of the centre console and is designed for only one Qi-certified mobile telephone → *Fig. 1*.

In some vehicles, the lining mat has a telephone symbol which marks the centre position → *Fig. 1*.

The charging capacity is 15 W.

Qi standard

The Qi standard enables wireless charging of suitable Qi-certified mobile telephones. Consult the operating instructions for the mobile telephone to find out if it is compatible with the Qi standard. An overview of Qi-certified mobile telephones can be found at the following external link of Wireless Power Consortium, Inc.:

https://www.wirelesspowerconsortium.com/products

Volkswagen AG does not assume any liability for the completeness and correctness of this list. The manufacturer of the mobile telephone can provide further information on compatibility, if necessary.

There may be charging restrictions with mobile telephones that are not Qi-certified.

The Qi symbol is displayed on the Infotainment system to indicate the wireless charging status.

Charging a mobile telephone wirelessly

Prerequisite

✓ The optimum operating temperature in the vehicle for wireless charging is between -40°C and +35°C (around -40°F to +95°F).

✓ A suitable mobile telephone that is not larger than the marked shelf area and is Qi-certified.

1. Remove any foreign objects from the stowage compartment before charging →⚠.
2. After removing the protective cover and any other foreign material, place the mobile telephone in the centre of the shelf area with the display facing upwards and so that its entire surface is flat on the area.

   The charging process starts automatically.
3. Follow the operating instructions for the mobile telephone.

The Infotainment system will provide information about the start of the charging operation and, where applicable, about any foreign objects with metallic components that are detected in the stowage compartment.

Depending on equipment, the charging function can be deactivated manually in the Infotainment system.

If the ambient temperature in the vehicle is outside the temperature range of -40°C to +35°C (around -40°F to +95°F), the charging process may be interrupted or the charging time extended.

Wireless charging will function normally again as soon as the ambient temperature in the vehicle is within the temperature range.

Meaning of the Qi symbols

The white Qi symbol with the On/Off switch indicates that wireless charging is switched off.

The white Qi symbol indicates that the mobile telephone is being charged.

The red Qi symbol indicates that wireless charging is not possible.

Tap the Qi symbol for explanations on the status and to switch on wireless charging if necessary.

Stowage compartment cover



Fig. 2 In the centre console: stowage compartment with open cover (illustration).

The stowage compartment for the wireless charging function has a cover for the mobile telephone display.

The cover can avoid distractions caused by the mobile telephone, such as incoming messages.

1. Place the mobile telephone in the stowage compartment.
2. Keep the cover closed when driving so that the mobile telephone display is fully covered →⚠.

WARNING

Notifications on the mobile telephone display can distract the driver. This can lead to an accident and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that no objects impede the closing function of the cover.
- If the shelf has a cover, always keep the cover closed while driving.

WARNING

Metallic objects on the shelf can become very hot. This can cause burns or fires.

- Do not place any metal or metallic objects on the shelf for the wireless charging function.
- Remove any foreign objects immediately.

NOTICE

If cards or objects with a magnetic stripe or chip are placed on the shelf for the wireless charging function, this may damage the data stored on them.

- Do not place any ID, bank and credit cards etc. with a magnetic stripe or chip on the shelf for the wireless charging function.

The mobile telephone can become hot during wireless charging. Keep the ventilation grooves clean as they improve the airflow around the mobile telephone → *Fig. 1*.

Troubleshooting

Mobile telephone is not charged

A message about a foreign object in the stowage compartment may be displayed on the Infotainment system.

An unfavourable position of the mobile telephone on the lining mat can impair the charging function. This can already be the case in the event of small changes in position, e.g. due to vibrations.

The position of the mobile telephone must be corrected to re-establish the correct charging function.

1. Align the mobile telephone centrally on the charging area.

The charging function can also be impaired by metal and above all magnetic parts of a mobile telephone or its protective cover.

1. Turn the mobile telephone by around 180° and align on the charging area with the display still facing upwards.

If cards or objects with a magnetic stripe or chip are placed on the lining mat for the wireless charging function, this may damage the data stored on them.

Depending on model, an error message with the red Qi symbol may be displayed on the Infotainment system. It is then not possible to use the wireless charging function.

1. Remove ID cards, bank cards and credit cards with magnetic stripe or chip from the lining mat. The error message closes automatically.

   You can then charge the mobile telephone again using the wireless charging function.

If the mobile telephone becomes too hot on the mat, it may switch off for safety reasons. It is then not possible to use the wireless charging function.

1. Remove the mobile telephone from the mat and allow it to cool down in another stowage compartment. You can then charge it again using the wireless charging function.

Cybersecurity

Cybersecurity comprises measures to reduce the risk of unauthorised access by malware or an internet attack on vehicle functions, data and control units. Connectivity components in particular are subject to the risk of unauthorised access or internet attacks.

Connectivity components are control units for data transmission, interfaces, media and diagnostic connections via which information and data can be exchanged between the vehicle and mobile devices or the internet.

Connectivity components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems.

The connectivity components include the following in particular:

— Diagnostic port.

— Control unit with embedded eSIM card.

— Mobile phone interface.

— App-Connect.

— Wi-Fi® hotspot.

— NFC radio technology.

— Bluetooth® interface.

— USB port.

— SD card slot.

The type and number of connectivity components present in your vehicle depend on the equipment and country.

Software and security mechanisms

The software and security mechanisms in the vehicle are subject to ongoing development. Like with computers or the operating systems of mobile telephones, the software and security mechanisms in the vehicle may also be updated at irregular intervals.

Updates improve the security, stability and running speeds of the vehicle systems. An update is a preventive measure to optimise functionality and protect against malware, for example.

The software of vehicle control units is updated with an update.

There are two options for updating your vehicle, depending on vehicle and country:

— Updates by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

— Update via an over-the-air update.

WARNING

Malware can access data and information that are stored in control units, in the Infotainment system and on connected or paired mobile telephones. In spite of integrated security mechanisms and regularly performed over-the-air updates, malware can still damage or cause malfunctions of the control units and vehicle. Damage to and malfunctions of the control units and vehicle can also occur if you connect mobile devices to the vehicle that are infected with malware. The damage may mean complete loss of the data, and malfunctions can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- If the vehicle functions or reacts differently than normal, reduce speed in a controlled manner and contact a suitably qualified workshop.
- After updates are made available, carry them out as quickly as possible or have them installed by a suitably qualified workshop.
- Protect mobile devices by means of a suitable anti-virus program and generally known precautionary measures. Regularly update the appropriate anti-virus program with the updates from the respective provider.

Minimising risks

You too can reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions:

— Use only data media, Bluetooth devices and mobile telephones in the vehicle than do not contain manipulated data or malware.

— Have updates that are made available by Volkswagen carried out by a suitably qualified workshop as soon as possible after they are made available. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer. If it is possible for you to perform over-the-air updates for your vehicle and in your country, carry out updates that are made available by Volkswagen immediately. If the driver

repeatedly rejects the over-the-air update, it is then necessary to visit a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

— Have the vehicle serviced, repaired and maintained only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

Over-the-air updates allow you to always keep your vehicle up-to-date, for example in order to optimise the vehicle functions and for protection against malware.

Over-the-air updates and app updates

Two types of updates are offered to you in your vehicle: over-the-air updates and app updates.

The over-the-air updates are comprehensive updates and update the vehicle's entire control software. Over-the-air updates are available to you only after you have concluded a contract with Volkswagen AG for use of the online services.

Further information on using mobile online services .

App updates update the apps available in the vehicle and are also available without a current contract with Volkswagen AG for use of the online services.

Further information on app updates *(→ In-Car Shop)*.

How can you recognise when an over-the-air update is available?

An available over-the-air update is displayed to you in the Infotainment system.

If several over-the-air updates are available for the vehicle at the same time, one over-the-air update must first be completed successfully before the next over-the-air update can be performed.

In your own interest, over-the-air updates should be carried out as soon as possible. If the driver repeatedly rejects the over-the-air update, it is then necessary to visit a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

It is possible in very rare cases that a control unit will not function properly after an over-the-air update. Malfunctions of a control unit and the vehicle can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Reduce speed in a controlled manner if the vehicle functions or reacts differently than usual when driving.
- Please contact a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

If the instrument cluster does not function after an over-the-air update, no instruments, warning lamps, symbols or text messages can be displayed. Driving with an instrument cluster that is not working can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Do not use the vehicle. Contact Volkswagen Customer Care.

NOTICE

If special modifications have been performed on vehicles that are outside the scope of responsibility of Volkswagen AG (e.g. for emergency services vehicles or taxis), there is a risk that the special functions (e.g. taximeter) will no longer function correctly after an over-the-air update.

- Consult your authorised Volkswagen repairer before you carry out an over-the-air update.

A measure to increase performance or efficiency (e.g. engine tuning) that has not been performed by Volkswagen may be deleted by an over-the-air update.

Depending on equipment, release notes may be displayed once before or after an over-the-air update. These notes describe the changes to the vehicle status.

The over-the-air update does not update any apps or, if present depending on vehicle and model, any functions or apps purchased via the In-Car Shop.

Prerequisites for an over-the-air update.

The following prerequisites must be met so that an over-the-air update can be downloaded and so that you can perform software installation of the over-the-air update:

✓ The over-the-air update function is offered in your country.

✓ You have set up a Volkswagen ID user account *(→ Volkswagen ID)*.

✓ You have concluded a current contract for use of the online services.

✓ You have assigned the vehicle to your active user account.

✓ You have agreed to over-the-air updates in your user account.

✓ There is a primary user available. You may have to log in as the primary user *(→ Manage users)*.

✓ The vehicle is in an area with sufficient mobile reception.

✓ Your current privacy settings allow data and information to be transmitted and received *(→ Privacy settings)*.

✓ The 12-volt vehicle battery is appropriately charged.

Depending on the model, you may also be able to perform an over-the-air update without signing a contract and without a user account.

Downloading and installing an over-the-air update

Download costs

Download of over-the-air updates takes place via the factory-fitted control unit with eSIM card and is free of charge. Volkswagen pays the connection costs.

Time of download

Download takes place automatically without any previous notification and is also possible when driving. When download has been completed, a message will be displayed to inform you that an over-the-air update is available.

The duration of a download process depends on the network quality, file size and type of over-the-air update. It is possible that the download process may be interrupted. The download process will be resumed as required when the ignition is switched on.

Prerequisites for software installation

— The vehicle is parked safely in accordance with legal requirements and local conditions .

— The previously provided over-the-air updates have been installed.

Installing software from an over-the-air update

Choose a time for the over-the-air update when the vehicle does not have to be driven by yourself or others.

WARNING

Control units will be deactivated and will not function while software installation is taking place. Driving with deactivated or malfunctioning control units can cause accidents and fatal injuries.

- Carry out software installation so that other road users are not hindered.
- Never use your vehicle during a software installation procedure.

1. Stop the engine and switch on the electronic parking brake.
2. Close the bonnet, boot lid, all windows, the glass roof, if installed, and all doors.
3. Confirm software installation in the Infotainment system.
4. Make sure that all vehicle occupants get out and that no animals are left behind in the vehicle.
5. Take all vehicle keys with you and get out of the vehicle.
6. Lock the vehicle.

Functional restrictions during software installation

Control units, the central computer, functions and displays are not available during software installation. Do not use the vehicle and do not operate the Infotainment system during this time.

— Mobile online services are not available.

— The Emergency Call Service, breakdown call and the statutory eCall Emergency System are not available.

— Park Distance Control is not available.

— V2X technology is not available.

— Park Assist Plus is not available.

After software installation

After software installation and before starting the engine, read the message in the Infotainment system or instrument cluster about completed software installation. The vehicle requires up to 1 minute to display the status of the over-the-air update.

— The vehicle can be used again after successful software installation.

— If software installation is unsuccessful: *(→ System update)*.

Troubleshooting

Installation of an over-the-air update has failed

— If installation of an over-the-air update is unsuccessful, a corresponding error message will be displayed on the Infotainment system or instrument cluster. Observe the corresponding messages and warnings.

Control units will no longer function or will not function correctly in the event of a critical installation error. Functions and displays are not available until the error is corrected. Do not use the vehicle. In this case, contact Volkswagen Customer Care.

Can I interrupt installation of an over-the-air update?

No, this is not possible.

What happens if installation of an over-the-air update is interrupted?

If installation is interrupted, for example due to damage to the electrical system in the vehicle, it is possible that control units will be not be updated and may be damaged due to incomplete installation of the over-the-air update.

Introduction to the topic

V2X technology, referred to below as V2X, permits close-range communication between several vehicles and between vehicles and the traffic infrastructure, referred to below as “participants”.

Function of V2X

Communication between participants takes place based on manufacturer-independent V2X and Wi-Fi® standards.

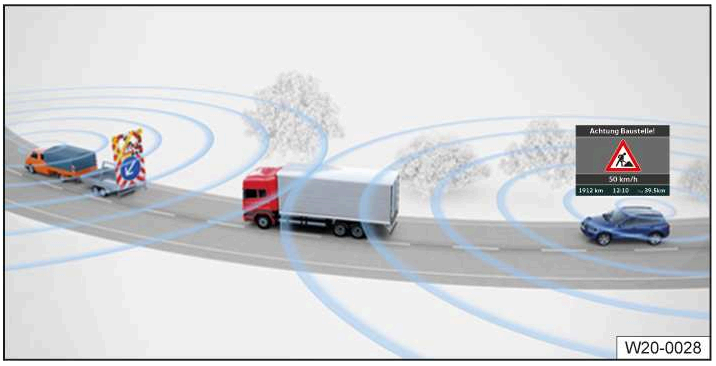


Fig. 1 Communication between participants (illustration).

When V2X is switched on, data is transmitted continuously between the participants, irrespective of whether the vehicle is in online or offline mode.

Data transmission

When V2X is activated, the following data is sent and received:

— Vehicle data, e.g. speed.

— Position data.

— Event data, e.g. for accidents, in the form of a traffic hazard alert.

The use of constantly changing, temporary IDs for the V2X data minimises the risk of the transmitted data being traced back to you or misused.

Activate online mode in the vehicle at least once a month to update V2X certificates and to ensure that V2X remains activated.

For more information on data processing, see the Infotainment system .

Activating V2X

The availability of V2X depends on country and equipment. If you can activate V2X under the following path, this means that the vehicle is equipped with V2X technology.

1. In the app overview, tap ▶ ▶ **Privacy settings** or **Privacy and services.**

When V2X is switched on, data is transmitted continuously between the participants, irrespective of whether the vehicle is in online or offline mode. If the vehicle is in offline mode when V2X is activated, the following symbol is displayed on the Infotainment system:

or

Offline mode is active, V2X is sending data.

If you are in online mode, there is no separate display for V2X irrespective of whether you have activated V2X or not. If you want to check whether V2X is transmitting data in online mode, check whether V2X has been activated in the app overview ▶ under ▶**Privacy settings** or **Privacy settings and services**.

Limits of V2X

Data exchange

V2X in your vehicle communicates only with participants that are equipped with functional and compatible V2X technology.

Participants with deactivated, faulty or incompatible V2X are not detected.

Range

Depending on the weather and surroundings, V2X participants can communicate in a near range of up to around 800 m (around 2,625 ft). Not all of the functions based on V2X make full use of the possible range.

Function limitations

Functioning of V2X may be restricted in the following cases:

— The environmental conditions may prevent data reaching the participant.

— Trailer operation prevents data reaching the participant.

— Vehicle add-on parts prevent data reaching the participant.

— The event is not detected as such by participants.

Activating and deactivating V2X

When you log in as a user in the vehicle for the first time, check whether the V2X setting meets your requirements and deactivate V2X manually if necessary.

Activating V2X

1. In the app overview, tap ▶ ▶ **Privacy and services**.
2. Activate **V2X**.

WARNING

When V2X is activated, the limits for electromagnetic radiation could be exceeded outside the vehicle. Increased limits for electromagnetic radiation can pose a health risk for persons with active medical implants, such as pacemakers.

V2X aerials are located on the vehicle roof and in some cases in the mirror triangle of the windscreen.

- Keep a distance of 20 cm (approx. 8 in) from the activated V2X aerial outside the vehicle.
- Deactivate V2X if you suspect adverse effects on an active medical implant (e.g. pacemaker) or other medical device.

Deactivating V2X manually

1. In the app overview, tap ▶ ▶ **Privacy and services**.
2. Deactivate **V2X**.

Automatic deactivation of V2X

V2X can deactivate itself automatically in some cases *(→ V2X technology)*.

V2X is activated again when the reason for automatic deactivation has been remedied.

1. To check the activation status of V2X, go to the app overview and tap ▶ ▶ **Privacy settings and services**.

Troubleshooting

V2X deactivates itself automatically

— V2X is not permitted in the country in which the vehicle is currently being driven.

— The vehicle was offline too long so that certificates were not updated.

Adapt the privacy settings so that an online connection is established in order to allow the certificates to be updated.

— System fault.

Please contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

No V2X data is displayed

— Functioning of V2X is restricted.

— There are no participants transmitting data in the vicinity.

— There are transmitting participants in the vicinity, but they are not relevant for your vehicle.

— V2X aerials are blocked by add-on parts or covers.

Keep the areas around V2X aerials clear.

— Data exchange between participants is impaired or not possible due to the weather conditions.

— There is already a driver reaction to the hazard ahead.

Traffic hazard alert

The traffic hazard alert function uses V2X technology and warns about nearby traffic hazards based on the current situation. This can prevent accidents and improve traffic flow.

Depending on the type of traffic hazard, the driving speed and the degree of vehicle deceleration, a warning about a relevant traffic hazard is provided as follows:

— Acoustic warning.

— Text message with symbol on the digital instrument cluster.

WARNING

The traffic hazard alert function is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the system limits of V2X. The traffic hazard alert function cannot recognise all dangerous situations and may not issue a warning or may issue a warning with a delay. If you rely exclusively on the traffic hazard alert function, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always drive with due care and attention and with an anticipatory driving style and be ready to intervene at all times.
- Observe the system limits *(→ V2X technology)*.
- Always adapt your driving style to the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

WARNING

Failure to observe traffic hazard alerts can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never ignore traffic hazard alerts.

Symbols for critical hazards

Red symbols warn about critical hazards.



Accident ahead.



Emergency vehicle on active call.



End of traffic jam ahead.



Intervention of an assist system in a vehicle ahead, such as Automatic Emergency Braking.

Symbols of the information level

Yellow symbols warn when a traffic hazard is detected.



Accident ahead.

Emergency vehicle on active call. This symbol may be supplemented by a symbol that indicates the direction from which the emergency service vehicle is approaching.



Direction from which emergency service vehicle is approaching, e.g. from the rear.

End of traffic jam ahead.



Stationary car or breakdown ahead.

Road works ahead.

Introduction to the topic

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment system by cable and wireless connections present in the vehicle.

The type and number of cable and wireless connections differ according to the vehicle equipment and country. The connections may also be different within a model series or in special-edition models.

In the case of cable connections, use only the original device connecting cables or, if available, the factory-supplied connecting cables for your vehicle.

If the plug on the connecting cable cannot be inserted, check the angle of insertion and the connections.

NOTICE

If unsuitable or damaged connecting cables are used or if the connecting cable connector is inserted with strong pressure or in the wrong position, this can lead to malfunctions and damage to the device, e.g. the device connection and the connecting cable connector may be damaged.

- Use only suitable and undamaged connecting cables.
- When inserting the plugs of the connecting cables into the appropriate connection, ensure that they are correctly positioned and apply only light pressure.
- Make sure that the connecting cable is not trapped or sharply bent.

If a connected device is not recognised, disconnect all devices and connect the device again. If necessary, check that the connecting cable you are using is working properly.

If a connected device malfunctions, restart the device. In some cases this will remedy the fault.

USB connection

The USB port allows data transfer and device charging or only device charging.

USB-C port



Fig. 1 USB-C port in the vehicle (illustration).

The following USB-C ports may be available in the vehicle:

Identification of a USB port suitable for data transfer and charging.

Identification of a USB port suitable only for charging.

Information on charging options and charging capacity is provided in this owner's manual *(→ Charging options for mobile devices)*.

Possible fitting locations of USB connections

The number and fitting locations of USB connections depend on the vehicle and equipment and the connections are not available in all countries.

— In the centre console stowage compartment.

— Depending on equipment: two USB connections on the rear of the centre console for the second seat row.

USB connections on the rear seats are equipped only with the charging function.

Available data transfer functions

The following USB data transfer functions are available, depending on equipment.

— App-Connect .

— Media playback .

— Update function, e.g. for navigation data *(→ Navigation)*.

Notes and restrictions

— Use only suitable USB connecting cables. The USB connecting cable must match the USB connection installed in the vehicle.

— Dirty, overheated or damaged data media may be unusable. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

— Differences in the quality of data media from different manufacturers can interfere with media playback.

— If USB extension cables, USB plug adapters or USB hubs are used, this can lead to faults or failure of the USB functions.

Bluetooth® interface

The Bluetooth interface is a wireless connection.

In Bluetooth audio mode, audio files from a mobile device that is connected via Bluetooth (e.g. mobile telephone) can be played over the vehicle loudspeakers.

Bluetooth audio mode is available if the vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted mobile phone interface that supports this function.

Bluetooth profiles

A maximum of three mobile devices can be connected simultaneously via Bluetooth: two for telephony and one for music playback.

The following Bluetooth functions are supported:

— Telephony and handsfree mode.

— Music playback.

— Displaying and operating music playback.

— Transmission of Cover Arts.

— Access to phone book and call lists.

— Access to SMS and email.

Prerequisites for using the Bluetooth interface for music playback

✓ The mobile device supports the Bluetooth profile Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP).

✓ Permission for audio and media transmission to the Infotainment system must be given in the settings on the mobile device.

You can find more detailed information on using a mobile device for music playback in this owner's manual .

Pairing a mobile device with the vehicle via Bluetooth

There are various ways to pair your mobile telephone with the vehicle via Bluetooth. The easiest way is to pair via one of the following main menus: **Radio/Media** or **Telephone**.

Pairing via **Telephone**

---

1. Open the app overview and tap **Telephone**.
2. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment system.
3. If mobile telephones are already connected and another mobile telephone is to be connected, tap ⚙ ▶ **Select mobile telephone**.
4. Select the mobile telephone to be connected.

Pairing via **Radio/Media**

---

1. Open the app overview and tap **Radio/Media** ▶ **Media** ▶ **Source** ▶ **Bluetooth**.
2. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment system.
3. If **Bluetooth** is already selected under **Source** but another mobile telephone is to be used, tap **Source** ▶ **Bluetooth** again.

   Or: tap ⚙ ▶ **Media** ▶ **Select Bluetooth audio device**.

Mobile devices menu

If pairing via the mobile phone interface or the **Radio/Media** menu should fail, pairing can also be performed in the menu ⚙ ▶ **Network** ▶ **Mobile devices**.

1. In the app overview, tap ⚙ ▶ **Network** ▶ **Mobile devices**.
2. In the factory settings, both Bluetooth and visibility are always activated. If Bluetooth is disabled, tap ⚙ and activate **Bluetooth** and **Visibility**.

3. Open the list of available Bluetooth devices on the mobile telephone and select the Bluetooth device name of the Infotainment system. In the factory settings, the Bluetooth® device name of the Infotainment system is “my VW” and the last four digits of the VIN.
4. Observe the messages on the mobile telephone and Infotainment system and confirm as necessary.

   If pairing was successful, the data of the mobile telephone will be stored in the user profile.
5. *Optional:* confirm message for data transfer on the mobile telephone.

As a general rule, it is only necessary to pair a mobile telephone once. The mobile telephone connection to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth can be restored at any time without having to pair the mobile telephone again.

The extent to which the Infotainment system can be used to control the mobile telephone connected via Bluetooth depends on the respective mobile device.

You can find more detailed information on using a mobile device via a Bluetooth connection in this owner’s manual .

Always switch off the warning and service tones on a connected mobile telephone, e.g. key tones, to prevent interference noise and malfunctions.

Introduction to the topic

Two options are available for using the internet in the vehicle.

— Via the hotspot of a mobile device, e.g. mobile telephone.

— Via the vehicle's eSIM *(→ Wi-Fi)*.

The types of internet connections possible are dependent on the country and equipment and the Infotainment system used.

Depending on your mobile telephone tariff, using the hotspot of a mobile device may incur additional costs, e.g. roaming charges, for loading and using data packages from the internet, especially if you use these services abroad. Due to the potentially high volume of data in use, Volkswagen recommends using a mobile device tariff which includes a data flat rate. For more information contact your mobile telephone provider.

If the eSIM is used, you must purchase data plans via the web shop of Volkswagen’s external mobile communications partner. However, you do not need any data plans of the external mobile communications partner in order to use the mobile online services of Volkswagen AG. This requires a contract for use of the mobile online services, which may be subject to a charge.

Irrespective of how you establish the internet connection, whether via the hotspot of a mobile device or via the vehicle’s eSIM, you can use the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi® hotspot for eight further mobile devices *(→ Wi-Fi)*. This function is dependent on the equipment level and is not available in all vehicles.

Setting up an internet connection

Activating an internet connection via the eSIM

1. In the app overview, tap ⚙ ▶ **Network** ▶ **Data connection**.
2. Activate **Streaming via integrated data connection (eSIM)**.

Using an internet connection via a mobile device

1. Activate tethering/Wi-Fi® hotspot on the mobile device, refer to the manufacturer's operating instructions.
2. In the app overview, tap ⚙ ▶ **Network** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **Wi-Fi:** ▶ **Search for Wi-Fi**.

   The Infotainment system searches for Wi-Fi hotspots nearby. It can take several seconds before available Wi-Fi hotspots are shown. The search for available networks continues until **Search for Wi-Fi** is deactivated again.
3. Select the Wi-Fi network of the desired mobile device.
4. Enter the network key of the mobile device on the Infotainment system and confirm.

   The Wi-Fi connection between the mobile device and Infotainment system is now set up. Further inputs may be required on the mobile device to complete the connection.

Due to the large number of possible mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee fault-free operation of all functions.

The availability of the function for using the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot is country-dependent and may vary.

The Wi-Fi connection can be set up only to protected Wi-Fi networks that support the WPA2 or WPA3 standard. Older encryption methods and open networks are not supported.

Setting up and deactivating a Wi-Fi® hotspot

Setting up a Wi-Fi hotspot

Inputs are necessary both on the Infotainment system and on the mobile device.

1. In the app overview, tap ⚙ ▶ **Network** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **Infotainment system as hotspot**.
2. Tap **Use as hotspot** and activate.
3. Find the network name displayed on the Infotainment system on the mobile device.
4. Enter the password displayed on the Infotainment system on the mobile device and confirm.

   The Wi-Fi connection between the mobile device and Infotainment system is now set up. Further inputs may be required on the mobile device to complete the connection.
5. *Optional:* repeat the procedure to connect further mobile devices.

The network name and the network key are generated automatically. You can then change the network name and the network key yourself.

Deactivating a Wi-Fi hotspot

1. In the app overview, tap ⚙ ▶ **Network** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **Infotainment system as hotspot**.
2. Tap **Use as hotspot** and deactivate.

Quick connection

Quick connection with the Infotainment system

The quick connection function makes it possible to easily and quickly set up a Wi-Fi® connection with encryption by scanning a QR Code®.

If the camera app of your mobile telephone cannot scan a QR Code®, install a suitable app for scanning a QR Code®.

1. In the app overview, tap ⚙ ▶ **Network** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **Quick connection to Infotainment system**.
2. Scan the QR Code® on the Infotainment system with the mobile device.

   The Wi-Fi connection is set up. Further inputs may be required on the mobile device to complete the connection.

Technical specifications

The technical specifications of the internet connections in the vehicle that are described here depend on the vehicle equipment and are available only in some countries.

— Wi-Fi® in accordance with IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac.

— Transfer in 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz.

— Up to eight mobile devices can be connected simultaneously.

— Internet connection via Wi-Fi:

  — Tethering via mobile telephone.

  — Hotspot for clients in the vehicle.

— Apple CarPlay® via Wi-Fi.

— Android Auto® via Wi-Fi.

— Simplified pairing process via QR Code®.

Possible types of data connections

The available types of possible data connections depend on the equipment level and are only available in some countries.

Mobile device:

Use the Wi-Fi hotspot of a mobile device *(→ Wi-Fi)*.

eSIM (embedded SIM):

The vehicle has a control unit with embedded eSIM card (SIM). In order to use the Wi-Fi hotspot, you must purchase data plans from the In-Car Shop or the web shop of Volkswagen's external mobile communications partner.

Prerequisites

✓ **Network settings** ▶ **Allow internet connection** is activated in the settings menu.

Or: Data connection ▶ **Integrated data connection** is activated.

Introduction to the topic

App-Connect enables the user to display and operate content and functions from the mobile telephone on the Infotainment system screen.

For this, the mobile telephone must be connected to the Infotainment system using a USB interface with data transfer function.

Some technologies can also be used with App-Connect Wireless via the Bluetooth® interface and the Wi-Fi® hotspot of the Infotainment system.

The following technologies may be available:

— Apple CarPlay®.

— Apple CarPlay® Wireless.

— Android Auto®.

— Android Auto® Wireless.

The above-named technologies are operated by third parties and are not made available by Volkswagen. Volkswagen is not responsible if these technologies are terminated, discontinued or deactivated during the service life of the vehicle. There may be problems with compatibility with third-party apps. We are unable to guarantee that the available apps can be run on all mobile telephones and all operating systems.

The availability of the App-Connect technologies is country-dependent and may vary according to the mobile telephone. A wide range of apps may be available and they may depend on the vehicle and country. The content, scope and providers of apps can vary. Some apps also depend on availability of services offered by third parties.

For more information, please visit the Volkswagen website.

Apps, their use, and the necessary mobile network connection may be subject to charges.

WARNING

Using apps while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road. Serious accidents and fatal injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.

WARNING

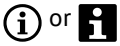
Use of unsuitable apps or incorrect use of apps can cause damage to the vehicle and accidents with serious injuries, or even death.

- Protect the mobile telephone with its apps against misuse.

Volkswagen is not responsible for damage to the vehicle caused by poor-quality or faulty third-party apps, inadequate programming of third-party apps, insufficient network strength, data loss, misuse of mobile devices, or malware on data media, computers, tablets and mobile telephones.

Symbols

The display of symbols depends on the equipment and the country.

 Show more information.

 Select Apple CarPlay® technology.

 Select Android Auto® technology.

Connecting a mobile telephone with App-Connect

In order to use App-Connect or App-Connect Wireless, you must connect the mobile telephone to the Infotainment system via **App-Connect** in the app overview. With App-Connect Wireless, the connection is initiated via Bluetooth® and then established via the Wi-Fi® hotspot of the Infotainment system.

As long as a mobile telephone is connected via App-Connect, no other mobile telephones can be used via the Infotainment system, e.g. to make phone calls via the Bluetooth® mobile phone interface.

If Apple CarPlay® is used, the Bluetooth® connection is terminated again as soon as the connection via the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system has been set up.

If Android Auto® is used, the Bluetooth® connection is maintained.

Connecting a mobile telephone via USB cable

1. For App-Connect, connect the mobile telephone with the Infotainment system using a USB cable.
2. Grant the Infotainment system the necessary permissions. To do this, confirm the permission requests on the mobile telephone.

   App-Connect is now set up.

Connecting a mobile telephone for App-Connect Wireless

1. In the app overview, tap **App Connect** ▶ ⓘ/🅘.
2. Select the desired technology Apple CarPlay or Android Auto in the pop-up menu.
3. In the Bluetooth menu of the mobile telephone, search for the displayed device name and pair the mobile telephone with the Infotainment system.

   In the factory settings, the device name of the Infotainment system is “my VW” and the last four digits of the VIN.
4. Grant the Infotainment system the necessary permissions. To do this, confirm the permission requests on the mobile telephone.

   App-Connect Wireless is now set up.

App-Connect and App-Connect Wireless will not be available if you do not confirm the pop-up menus during the connection process. In this case, Volkswagen recommends deleting the mobile telephones in both the device settings and on the Infotainment system and restarting the connection process.

Apple CarPlay®

Prerequisites

The following conditions must be fulfilled in order to use Apple CarPlay:

✓ The iPhone must support Apple CarPlay.

✓ The voice assistant (Siri) must be activated on the iPhone.

✓ Apple CarPlay must be activated in the iPhone settings without any restrictions.

✓ For Apple CarPlay Wireless, Bluetooth® and the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi® hotspot must be activated on the iPhone.

✓ If Apple CarPlay Wireless is not possible, the iPhone must be connected to the Infotainment system via a USB connection with data transfer capability. Only USB ports with data transfer capability are suitable for using Apple CarPlay.

✓ The USB cable used should be an Apple-certified, approved USB cable, e.g. the original Apple cable or one from Volkswagen Genuine Accessories.

The availability of the technologies depends on the country and may vary.

Information on technical requirements, compatible iPhones, certified apps and availability is available on the Volkswagen and Apple CarPlay websites or from your authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Opening Apple CarPlay

1. To start Apple CarPlay, open the app overview and tap **Apple CarPlay**.

Disconnecting the connection

1. To open the **App-Connect** main menu when in Apple CarPlay mode, tap .
2. Tap or to disconnect the active connection.

How the function buttons are displayed on the screen may vary.

Points to note

Please note the following points during an active Apple CarPlay connection:

— The phone book can be accessed only via Apple CarPlay for the iPhone that is connected to the Infotainment system via Apple CarPlay. Other telephone functions can also be performed via the mobile phone interface of the Infotainment system.

— It is not possible to use the Apple CarPlay navigation at the same time as the internal navigation. The last route guidance to be started terminates the previous active route guidance.

— Depending on the Infotainment system, the instrument cluster display may show information about telephone mode.

— The iPhone sends navigation information to the Infotainment system only if the navigation app used is Apple Maps. The iPhone does not send navigation information to the instrument cluster if other navigation apps are used.

— You can accept or reject incoming calls or end a telephone call via the multifunction steering wheel.

Voice assistant

The “voice assistant” function is available depending on the vehicle equipment.

1. Briefly tap on the multifunction steering wheel to start the IDA voice assistant of the Infotainment system.

   Or: long-tap on the multifunction steering wheel to start the voice assistant (Siri) of the connected iPhone.

Android Auto®

Prerequisites

The following conditions must be fulfilled in order to use Android Auto:

✓ The smartphone must support Android Auto.

✓ An Android Auto app must be installed on the smartphone.

✓ For Android Auto Wireless, Bluetooth® must be activated on the smartphone and in the Infotainment system. In addition, the Infotainment system must also be activated as a Wi-Fi® hotspot.

✓ If Android Auto Wireless is not possible, the smartphone must be connected to the Infotainment system using a USB connection with data transfer capability. Only USB connections with data transfer capability are suitable for using Android Auto.

✓ The USB cable used should be a USB cable certified and approved by the smartphone manufacturer or one from Volkswagen Genuine Accessories.

The availability of the technologies depends on the country and may vary.

Information on technical requirements, compatible smartphones, certified apps and availability is available on the Volkswagen and Android Auto websites or from your authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Opening Android Auto

1. To start Android Auto, open the app overview and tap **Android Auto**.

Disconnecting the connection

1. To open the **App-Connect** main menu when in Android Auto mode, tap .
2. Tap or to disconnect the active connection.

How the function buttons are displayed on the screen may vary.

Points to note

The following points apply when an Android Auto connection is active:

— An active Android Auto device can also be connected simultaneously to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth (hands-free profile, HFP).

— Telephone functions are possible via Android Auto. If the Android Auto device is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth at the same time, the telephone function on the Infotainment system can also be used.

— It is not possible to use the Android Auto navigation at the same time as the internal navigation. The last route guidance to be started terminates the previous active route guidance.

— The instrument cluster display shows information about the telephone mode.

— Depending on the Infotainment system and navigation app you are using, turning instructions may be shown on the instrument cluster display.

— You can accept or reject incoming calls or end a telephone call via the multifunction steering wheel.

Voice assistant

The “voice assistant” function is available depending on the vehicle equipment.

1. Briefly tap on the multifunction steering wheel to start the IDA voice assistant of the Infotainment system.

   Or: long-tap on the multifunction steering wheel to start the voice assistant of the connected smartphone.

Introduction to mobile online services

Mobile online services, referred to below as online services, allow you to connect your vehicle to the internet. This allows you to extend the scope of various vehicle functions with online functionalities, e.g. receive real-time data for navigation. The general availability of online services is country-dependent. You can find out whether online services are offered in your country from your authorised Volkswagen repairer. A description of all available online services and further information on registration and help can be found on the internet at:

https://connect.volkswagen.com

You can find the myVolkswagen customer area on the internet at:

https://www.myvolkswagen.net/start/en.html

Online services can be activated only after concluding a contract with Volkswagen AG for use of the online services, whereby this may be subject to a charge. Mobile online services are subject to a country-dependent restriction of the contract term.

The provision and availability of mobile online services can vary from country to country and depend on the vehicle and vehicle equipment. For further information, refer to the Terms and Conditions for the mobile online services.

In areas with insufficient mobile phone and GPS reception, no emergency calls and phone calls can be made and no data can be transmitted.

Observe the warnings .

Volkswagen is not responsible for damage to the vehicle caused by poor-quality or faulty third-party apps, inadequate programming of third-party apps, insufficient network strength, data loss, misuse of mobile devices, or malware on data media, computers, tablets and mobile telephones.

An overview of the online services activated for you is available in the Infotainment system in the **Privacy settings and services** *(→ Privacy settings)* menu, on the internet in the myVolkswagen customer area, or in the Volkswagen app, referred to below as app.

Execution of mobile online services using the app can consume data and cause costs. The transmission speed will be reduced if the contractually agreed data volume is exceeded, and this can cause delays in execution of the mobile online services.

Registering for mobile online services

To use the mobile online services in the vehicle, you must carry out the following steps:

1. Create a Volkswagen ID *(→ Volkswagen ID)*.
2. Create a new user *(→ Manage users)*.
3. Become the primary user *(→ Manage users)* and carry out the Volkswagen Ident process if necessary in order to use security-relevant online services *(→ Volkswagen Ident process)*.

Data processing

Valid in EU countries where the General Data Protection Regulation of the European Union is effective:

When using the services, information about the vehicle is transmitted and processed online. This data can also indirectly provide information about the respective driver, e.g. about driving behaviour. You can find the Privacy Policy for use of the Volkswagen mobile online services in the app overview in the Infotainment system under **Legal information**.

To ensure that the information under **Legal information** is up to date, the vehicle must not be permanently in offline mode. Otherwise, the information cannot be updated. If the information is out of date, you will be informed of this via a pop-up.

Restricting data transmission

Communication of your vehicle with the Volkswagen data server and processing of vehicle and personal data can be restricted directly via the Infotainment system *(→ Privacy settings)*.

Permanent transfer of the vehicle

If the vehicle has been purchased as a used vehicle or handed over to you by another person for permanent use, online services may already be activated and the previous user may still have the possibility to view collected data and control certain vehicle functions via online services.

You can delete all existing users by resetting the Infotainment system to the factory settings.

Prerequisites for using the online services

In order to be able to use the full scope of the online services, the following prerequisites must be met.

✓ The hardware for use of the online services was also ordered for the vehicle and has been installed at the factory.

✓ The vehicle and user are located in the area covered by the services.

✓ Data transmission is possible without restrictions at the location of the user and vehicle.

✓ The mobile device is compatible with the app.

✓ The privacy settings in the Infotainment system permit data transmission for the online services.

✓ The settings in the mobile device permit data transmission for the mobile online services.

✓ A personal user account, Volkswagen ID, has been set up *(→ Volkswagen ID)*.

✓ There is a valid contract with Volkswagen AG for use of the online services.

✓ A vehicle has been added to the user account *(→ Virtual vehicle)*.

✓ Neither the online connectivity unit nor individual online services are deactivated or decommissioned.

⚠ WARNING

Using apps, services and functions while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road. Serious accidents and fatal injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.

⚠ WARNING

Using services without due care or unsupervised can result in the serious injury or even death of people in and around the vehicle, for example if they are locked inside the vehicle unintentionally.

- Always carry out the services carefully and responsibly.

The vehicle added in the user account must first be driven for a few kilometres before individual services can record, transmit and display correct data.

Do not pass on your access data, your password and the S-PIN and keep them in a safe place so that they cannot be accessed or viewed by other persons.

Change your password at regular intervals.

Interference

Even when the prerequisites for using the services are met, the provision of the online services can be impaired or interrupted due to factors that are beyond the control of Volkswagen. Such factors include in particular:

— Maintenance, repairs, deactivations, updates and technical changes to your service provider's telecommunication systems, satellites, servers and databases.

— Change in the mobile communications standard for the transmission of mobile data by telecommunications providers, e.g. from LTE or UMTS to EDGE or GPRS.

— An existing mobile telecommunications standard has been switched off by the telecommunications provider.

— Disturbance, interference or interruption of mobile and GPS reception, e.g. due to high speeds, weather, landscape, interfering devices or intensive use of the mobile network in the relevant cells.

— If your current location is in an area with no or insufficient mobile communications and GPS reception. This can also include tunnels, streets with tall buildings, garages, multi-storey car parks, underpasses, mountains and valleys.

— Restricted availability, completeness or correctness of information provided by third parties, e.g. maps.

— Countries, states and regions where mobile online services are not available.

Activation-free services

The following services can also be used if the vehicle is not added to a user account.

This is the maximum possible range of functions. Not all services are available in all vehicles and countries.

— Information Call.

  Depending on the model, the vehicle may have to be added to a user account in order to use the “Information Call” service.

— Emergency Call Service .

— eCall Emergency System .

— Breakdown Call without transmission of vehicle data.

  Depending on the model, the vehicle may have to be added to a user account in order to use the “Breakdown Call” service.

The Emergency Call Service is available independently of logging into the Infotainment system.

In Europe, further information is available on the internet and on the Volkswagen website.

Setting up a Volkswagen ID

The Volkswagen ID provides personal access to the digital world of Volkswagen. The Volkswagen ID enables you to log into Volkswagen apps and websites.

You need a Volkswagen ID in order to use the services. You can register for the Volkswagen ID via myVolkswagen or via the Volkswagen app, referred to below as app.

Registering via myVolkswagen

1. Open www.myvolkswagen.net.
2. Create a user account in the **Login or register** area.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Registering via the app

1. Install the app.
2. Follow the instructions in the app.

Changing and deleting Volkswagen ID user data

You can change or delete your user and login data. Any changes to your login details will simultaneously also apply to the all other Volkswagen systems that use the Volkswagen ID.

Changing user data via myVolkswagen

1. In the myVolkswagen customer area, open **Profile & settings** and open one of the following areas:
   — **Volkswagen ID**.
   — **Privacy settings and consents**.
2. Click on **Volkswagen ID ▶ Adapt data**.
3. Change and save the user data.
4. If necessary, adapt and save the information in the **Privacy settings and consents** area.

Deleting user data via myVolkswagen

1. In the myVolkswagen customer area, click on **Profile & settings ▶ Volkswagen ID ▶ Delete data**.

   Your data will be deleted. Your Volkswagen ID will not be deleted.

Carrying out Volkswagen Ident

The identity of the primary user must be confirmed in order to use security-relevant services. You can provide proof of identity either personally at an authorised Volkswagen repairer or through Volkswagen Ident directly in the Volkswagen app.

1. When a message about the identity check is displayed upon using a security-relevant service for the first time, observe the information and tap **Start**.
2. Have your identity document ready.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

   A message confirms that the identity check has been performed successfully.

Managing vehicles

After you have set up your Volkswagen ID and thus created your user account, you must add your vehicle to your user account by entering the 17-character vehicle identification number. You will be prompted to do so when creating your user account. As soon as your vehicle has been added to your user account, you can activate mobile online services. In order to activate some services, you must be logged into the vehicle with your user account.

Adding vehicles

You can add vehicles either via myVolkswagen or the app. Log in with your user account and follow the instructions in the corresponding area.

If you add the vehicle to your user account, the user account is not automatically also created in the vehicle. To do this, you must log in as a new user in the Infotainment system of your vehicle .

If you wish to verify yourself as the primary user for the vehicle, please refer to the chapter on the primary user *(→ Manage users)*.

Removing a vehicle via the app or myVolkswagen

If you are logged in as a user in your vehicle and delete this vehicle via the app or myVolkswagen, the user will also be deleted from this vehicle. If you remove the vehicle with which you are logged in as the primary user in your vehicle, this is equivalent to resetting the user management to the factory settings. All users will be deleted in the vehicle and will lose the rights assigned to their respective role to use mobile online services. The vehicle must be in online mode in order to completely remove the link between the vehicle and the Volkswagen ID.

1. Open the vehicle overview and tap **Delete vehicle** or **Remove vehicle**.

Setting or changing the S-PIN

Input of the security PIN (S-PIN) is requested in addition to the password as part of user authentication and acts as a second security level to protect security-relevant services from unauthorised access.

The S-PIN is a multi-digit number sequence that can be freely selected during the registration process for mobile online services.

When creating the S-PIN, avoid easy-to-guess number sequences and generally known birthday dates. You must treat the S-PIN as strictly confidential. For security reasons, you should change the S-PIN if the S-PIN is disclosed to a third party.

Setting the S-PIN via myVolkswagen and via the app

— When adding your vehicle to the user account, you will be prompted to set the S-PIN.

The S-PIN should consist of four non-identical digits that are not sequential in either ascending or descending order.

Changing the S-PIN via myVolkswagen and via the app

To change the S-PIN, you must enter and confirm both the previous and new S-PIN.

— In myVolkswagen, you can change the S-PIN under **Mobile online services settings**.

Please note that it is only possible to change the S-PIN in myVolkswagen if your vehicle is listed under **My vehicles & products**, you are logged into the vehicle and your vehicle is in online mode.

— In the app, you can change the S-PIN in your user profile.

If you enter the S-PIN incorrectly several times, the input field will be blocked for a certain period.

Getting help

Various information sources are available to get help on the functions or operation of individual services.

Help via myVolkswagen or the app

Depending on country, information on registration, individual services and frequently asked questions (FAQ) is available in the **Help & Contact** area under **Help for apps and digital services**.

Introduction to the topic

It is possible to create user accounts for different vehicle users in your vehicle. This allows personalised vehicle settings, e.g. for the air conditioning system, to be saved in a user account.

User selection after switching on the ignition

If user accounts have been created in the vehicle, a welcome menu opens when the ignition is switched on. The vehicle user can select a user account in this welcome menu. If the selected user account has been protected with an S-PIN, the S-PIN must be entered.

If you activate the **Save S-PIN** option, you will no longer be asked to enter your S-PIN for user account selection. However, remember that third parties can then access your personal data.

The settings stored in the user profile will be loaded in the vehicle as soon as a user has been selected.

Automatic assignment of a user account to the vehicle key

Once a user account has been created successfully in the vehicle, the vehicle settings are automatically assigned to the vehicle key active in the vehicle. When the vehicle is opened with a vehicle key to which a user account has been assigned, the user account assigned to the vehicle key is offered for selection in the welcome menu. If the user account is changed, the vehicle settings of the selected user account are assigned to the active vehicle key.

Opening user management

1. Tap **Users** in the app overview or in the top display bar.

Description of user roles

The following user roles are available in the vehicle:

Primary user

— The “primary user” role is intended for the vehicle keeper or for users who do not just have temporary authorisation to use the vehicle, such as a lessee or company car driver. The primary user has unrestricted rights and can assign additional rights to other users of the vehicle by inviting them as secondary users. If a new primary user legitimises themselves for the vehicle, the previous primary user will automatically lose their primary user role.

Secondary user

— The “Secondary user” user role is intended for users who also use the vehicle regularly. Secondary users derive their role from the primary user and must be invited for the vehicle by the primary user. The primary user can withdraw the permissions to use the online services from a secondary user at any time. The procedure for inviting secondary users is described in this owner’s manual *(→ Manage users)*.

Guest users

— The “Guest user” user role is intended for users who use a vehicle occasionally or only once. A guest user can log in themselves in every vehicle with service capability. Involvement of the primary user is not necessary. The guest user has only restricted access to certain services.

Guest

— The “Guest” user account is a non person-specific account that exists locally in the vehicle and cannot be synchronised with the server. The “Guest” user account is intended for anonymous users. These are persons who have access to the vehicle but do not log in. This user account exists only once in vehicles with online personalisation and cannot be deleted. If the “Guest” user account is activated in the vehicle, e.g. by deleting a currently selected user account, all users who are logged in on the vehicle are temporarily logged out. The current vehicle settings are saved in the “Guest” user account and are kept until a person-specific user account is selected again.

Creating a new user

To create a new user in the vehicle, you must create a Volkswagen ID in the app on the mobile telephone or online via myVolkswagen.

Users have not yet been created in the vehicle

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Tap **Login**.

   The **Connect to Volkswagen in just a few steps** menu is opened.
3. If a Volkswagen ID has already been created, tap **Log in** again.

   Or: if no Volkswagen ID has been created yet, tap **Register**.

   When registering a new user, you will be prompted to create an S-PIN. For further information, please refer to *(→ S-PIN)*.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment system.
5. Log in using the displayed QR Code® or alternatively by means of **Log in with e-mail**.

   The user is displayed in the user management area as soon as login has been completed successfully.

Users already exist in the vehicle

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Tap **Change users** ▶ ⊕.

   Or: open the app overview and tap **Users** ▶ **Other** ▶ ⊕.

   The **Connect to Volkswagen in just a few steps** menu is opened.
3. If a Volkswagen ID has already been created, tap **Log in** again.

   Or: if no Volkswagen ID has been created yet, tap **Register**.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment system.
5. Log in using the displayed QR Code® or alternatively by means of **Log in with e-mail**.

   The user is displayed in the user management area as soon as login has been completed successfully.

Becoming the primary user

The “primary user” role is intended for the vehicle keeper or for users who do not just have temporary authorisation to use the vehicle (e.g. a lessee or company car driver). There is only one primary user per vehicle.

For verification as primary user, you need the two vehicle keys of your vehicle and a valid contract for use of the online services. If you have not yet concluded a contract for use of the online services, you can conclude this contract during the process. You need the Volkswagen app for this.

1. Open the **Become primary user** menu:
   - If there is not yet a primary user assigned in the vehicle, you will be asked whether you want to become the primary user when the first user is created. If you want to become the primary user, tap **Become primary user**.
   - If a primary user already exists, but another user is to be the primary user, tap **Users** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Become primary user**.
2. Press on the first vehicle key.
3. Press on the second vehicle key.

   After the Infotainment system has processed the wireless signals, you are then the primary user of the vehicle.

Inviting secondary users via myVolkswagen

After successful registration and verification as the primary user, you can assign rights to other vehicle users.

1. Open the **Vehicle users** ▶ **Manage users** area.
2. Click **Invite as secondary user** next to the user you want to invite as a secondary user.

   The invited person receives a notification in the app that they have been invited as a secondary user. You can activate the services for this person as soon as they accept the invitation.
3. You can withdraw invitations again if necessary in the **Manage users** area.

Protecting your user profile

Your user account is protected by your personal password and your S-PIN. The password and S-PIN can be changed using the app or online via myVolkswagen.

As the default setting, your user profile is protected against unauthorised changes by an S-PIN. Your user profile is no longer protected if you have activated the **Save S-PIN** function in the welcome menu. If you want to protect your user profile with an S-PIN again, you can activate the S-PIN. Login is then possible only after entering the S-PIN. If you protect your user profile by means of an S-PIN, you must enter your S-PIN each time before starting a journey.

1. Tap **Users** ▶ ⚙ ▶ **Protect user profile**.
2. Activate **Protect with S-PIN**.

Deleting a user

Every vehicle user can delete every user profile in the vehicle. In this case, only the user profile is deleted from the user management, but not the Volkswagen ID and data linked to the Volkswagen ID.

Deleting the primary user

The primary user can be deleted in three different ways:

1. Reset the Infotainment system to the factory settings.
   — All users and vehicle settings will be deleted.
   — All users lose the rights for the mobile online services assigned to the respective role.
2. Delete the user profile of the primary user.
   — The primary user will be deleted. All other users continue to exist in the vehicle.
   The rights assigned to the respective role are still available to all users.
3. Delete the user profile of the primary user and revoke their rights.
   — The primary user will be deleted. All other users continue to exist in the vehicle.
   The rights assigned to the respective role are no longer available to all users.
4. Verify as new primary user.
   — The previous primary user and all other users will be deleted. The previous primary user loses their rights for the mobile online services.
   — The rights assigned to the respective role are no longer available to all other users.

Deleting the primary user by resetting the Infotainment system to the factory settings

1. Set privacy settings to “Share my position” mode or “Online”.
2. Reset the Infotainment system to the factory settings *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

If a different privacy setting is chosen, the primary user may still be present on the server.

Deleting the primary user

In the Infotainment system you can see whether a person is assigned to your vehicle as the primary user.

1. Tap **Users** ▶ ⚙ ▶ **Become primary user**.
2. Check under **Current primary user** whether there is already a primary user assigned to your vehicle.
3. To delete the current primary user, tap **Delete primary user**. You will be asked whether you want to delete the primary user profile from the vehicle or revoke the primary user’s rights.
   — **What happens if you delete the user profile via Delete or Delete profile**?
   As a result of this, only the previous user profile of the primary user is deleted from the vehicle. The rights to use mobile online services to their full extent and to manage the roles of other users are retained. All other users remain present in the vehicle and retain their assigned role and thus also the rights to use the mobile online services as secondary users.
   — **What happens if you cancel the rights as the primary user via Revoke rights or Revoke**?
   The user profile of the primary user is deleted from the vehicle. You lose your rights to use mobile online services as the primary user. The secondary users thus also lose their rights to use mobile online services as secondary users, even if the users are still present in the vehicle.

Becoming the primary user

The previous primary user is deleted from the vehicle after verification of a new primary user.

Deleting a user

Every vehicle user can delete a user account. The logged-in user can either delete their own user account or that of another user.

The data is only deleted from the vehicle when users are deleted. The associated Volkswagen ID with the stored vehicle settings continues to exist and can be loaded in the vehicle again by means of the login process. Consents given in the registration process or online services are not saved.

1. Tap **Users** ▶ ⚙ ▶ **Delete user profile**.

   The logged-in user is deleted.

   Or: tap **Users** ▶ ✎.

   Users that can be deleted are marked with 🗑.

2. Tap 🗑 next to the user you want to delete.

   The selected user is deleted.

   All vehicle settings are saved in the “Guest” user role.

3. Tap ✎ to return to the user management area again.

Deleting the active user

The logged-in user can delete their own user account.

The data is only deleted from the vehicle when the user account is deleted. The associated Volkswagen ID continues to exist and can be loaded in the vehicle again by means of the login process.

1. Tap **Users** ▶ ⚙ ▶ **Delete active user** ▶ **Delete**.

   The logged-in user is deleted and the “Guest” user account is activated.

Troubleshooting

Where is my user account?

If you have previously created a user account in the vehicle and it is no longer visible in the user management area, it is possible that it has been deleted. Log into the vehicle again *(→ Manage users)*.

I have forgotten my S-PIN

If you have forgotten your S-PIN, you can have it reset again under myVolkswagen or in the app.

Privacy settings

The privacy settings can be used to allow or prevent data transfer between the vehicle and internet via the Infotainment system in several levels.

Please note that every vehicle user can adjust individual settings in the “Privacy settings and services” function. These settings may be different from those preferred by the vehicle keeper.

If data transfer is restricted, online vehicle functions such as updates or tracking services for the vehicle cannot be executed.

Data transfer by mobile devices and communication by these devices with the vehicle or legally required services cannot be blocked or deactivated by settings made in “Privacy settings and services”.

Some online vehicle functions and tracking services are available only in some countries and vehicle models.

The restrictions also apply to new online vehicle functions and tracking services that are provided for the vehicle in future.

Connection to the Internet

Depending on the selected status, the following symbols are shown in the top display bar of the Infotainment system:

Offline mode:

Your vehicle is offline. The mobile online services are not available.

Online mode (currently no connection):

Online mode is selected but it is not currently possible to connect to the internet.

Online mode:

Your vehicle can transmit and receive data for activated online services.

or

Offline mode – V2X technology active.

Your vehicle is in offline mode and is continuing to transmit data via the “V2X technology” function *(→ V2X technology)*.

Making privacy settings

Opening the **Privacy settings and services** menu

1. Tap **Users** ▶ ⚙ ▶ **Privacy settings and services**.

The corresponding mode is selected when you tap the respective symbol. You can see which mode is selected by the fact that the corresponding symbol is highlighted or by the symbol in the top display bar of the Infotainment system.

Selecting offline mode

Offline mode.

— All services are deactivated and do not send any data.

All tracking services are deactivated.

— The eSIM card is deactivated.

All vehicle functions that require an online connection via the eSIM card are deactivated.

It is not possible to update information and data stored in the control units, e.g. emergency call numbers, when in offline mode. Out-of-date information and data can restrict functions and services or mean that they are not available.

Selecting online mode without location data

"No position data" mode.

— The current position of the vehicle is not transmitted.

All tracking services are deactivated.

— The eSIM card remains activated.

All vehicle functions that require an online connection via the eSIM card are activated.

Selecting online mode with Use location data

"Use my position" mode.

— Information on the current position of the vehicle is not provided to other persons.

All tracking services are deactivated.

— The eSIM card remains activated.

All vehicle functions that require an online connection via the eSIM card are activated.

Selecting online mode with Share location data

"Share my position" mode.

— Online services can transmit and receive data without restriction.

All tracking services are activated.

The primary and secondary users can access the vehicle's positioning data online at myVolkswagen or via the app.

— The eSIM card is activated.

All vehicle functions that require an online connection via the eSIM card are activated.

Managing services

The following are possible in the Manage services area of the Infotainment system:

— Checking which online services are currently available in the vehicle.

— Displaying the number of activated and deactivated online services.

— Activating or deactivating individual online services.

Further information:

https://connect.volkswagen.com

Opening service management

1. Tap **Users** ▶ ⚙ ▶ **Privacy settings and services**.

If you deactivate all online services individually, the control unit with embedded eSIM card can still transmit data.

Settings

Using the **Filter by:** function, you can select the online services that you want to have shown in the overview:

— All – show all online services.

— Activated – show only activated online services.

— Deactivated – show only deactivated online services.

— Not available – show only online services that are not available.

Activating or deactivating online services

The services can be activated and deactivated individually.

1. Open service management.
2. Tap the service and activate or deactivate **Allow in vehicle**.

If data transmission is restricted by the “privacy settings”, it is not possible to activate or deactivate services individually.

Alternatively, you can activate or deactivate the online services via myVolkswagen or in the app.

Some online services can be activated or deactivated only together, even if they are listed separately in the individual menu.

Legally required services and their data transmissions cannot be switched off and cannot be deactivated, e.g. “eCall Emergency System”.

Introduction to the topic

The personalisation function allows personalised vehicle settings, e.g. for the air conditioning system, to be saved in a user account. User identification takes place when logging into the Infotainment system. Changes to the settings are assigned to the user account active in the vehicle and are automatically saved online in the user account via an existing internet connection.

Opening the configuration wizard for personalised vehicle settings

1. In the app overview, tap ⚙ ▶ **Configuration** ▶ **Configuration wizard**.

Personalised vehicle settings

The vehicle functions that can be configured depend on the equipment level. Some personalisable functions are not stored online, but are only assigned to the user account locally in the vehicle.

Not all vehicle functions are available in all vehicles and countries.

The following functions can be personalised:

— Ambient settings.

— Selected settings of driver assist systems.

— Selected Infotainment system settings, e.g. radio station.

— Date and time display.

— Settings for switch-on times for dipped beam and convenience turn signal.

— Air conditioning system settings.

— Navigation setup.

— Wiper settings.

— Multifunction display and selection of displays in the head-up display.

— Driving profile selection.

— Multifunction display and selection of displays in the instrument cluster.

— Seat and mirror settings.

Synchronising vehicle settings

Depending on equipment and country, the vehicle has an online personalisation function. With online personalisation, vehicle settings changed in the vehicle are automatically assigned to the active user account and are stored online on a cyclical basis. The vehicle settings are also automatically synchronised with the data stored online in the following situations when an Internet connection has been established:

— When the ignition and Infotainment system are switched on: synchronises all user accounts stored in the vehicle that have recently been used.
— When switching to another user account: synchronises the newly activated user account and the user account that has now been deactivated.
— At the end of the journey and when the ignition is switched off: synchronises the last active user account.

You can also start the synchronisation manually in the user management menu, for example if automatic synchronisation fails when logging in. Synchronisation cannot take place automatically if the online status of the vehicle is impaired, e.g. in underground garages, or if you have activated offline mode.

If an inactive user account is active in another vehicle and settings are synchronised from there, these settings are also transferred to your vehicle and assigned to the corresponding user account.

In-Car Shop

The In-Car Shop offers you the possibility of renewing or purchasing the following online services or functions directly in the vehicle.

— Activate additional functions for your vehicle (upgrades) .

— Extend the contract term of online services.

— Purchase and download apps, update the apps purchased in the In-Car Shop and delete the apps again.

— Depending on country and equipment: purchase data plans.

In addition, you can select the country and the language for the In-Car Shop under 🛒 ▶ ⚙. The products offered and their availability vary depending on selected country.

App update

There are two different procedures for an app update.

— The apps purchased in the In-Car Shop are updated in the In-Car Shop. You will be notified when an app update is available. You must log in as the primary user in order to carry out the app update.

— If an app update is available for other apps, you will be notified and can carry out the app update without opening the In-Car Shop. These app updates can be carried out by every vehicle user.

Introduction to the topic

With Upgrades, the vehicle can be permanently or temporarily extended by new functions.

Functions

Depending on the vehicle model, you can permanently or temporarily activate convenience and Infotainment system functions and also driver assist systems for a fee.

Activation of functions depends on the country and vehicle.

Some Infotainment systems contain a list of activated functions.

Activated functions are not linked to the duration of the user account.

Inform the user or buyer about permanently activated and time-limited functions when renting or selling the vehicle.

WARNING

Activating functions while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road. Serious accidents and fatal injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Only activate functions when the vehicle is stationary.
- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.

If the required hardware for the respective activatable function is not available in the vehicle, it can be retrofitted in some cases by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If the required software for the activatable function is not available in the vehicle, the software can be retrofitted . Retrofitting may be subject to charge, depending on the type of software.

Status of the function

Function activated.

Function faulty or temporarily not available.

You can view the contract term of the respective function in the Volkswagen Connect Shop in the myVolkswagen customer area or, depending on the equipment, in the Infotainment system under ▶ ▶ **Privacy settings and services**.

Viewing and activating functions

Before restarting the engine, read the notification in the Infotainment system about the completed activation process. Observe the instructions if activation was not successful.

Prerequisites

✓ A suitable Infotainment system is installed in the vehicle.

✓ The hardware in the vehicle is compatible and offers the required performance.

✓ A valid contract for use of the services exists between you and Volkswagen AG.

✓ The vehicle is assigned to your user account.

✓ You have the “primary user” role for the vehicle *(→ Manage users)*.

✓ Sufficient mobile reception is available at the current location of the vehicle.

✓ The electrical system in the vehicle is ready for use.

✓ The 12-volt vehicle battery is appropriately charged.

✓ The factory-fitted control unit with integrated eSIM card is present.

Viewing functions

1. Tap ▶ in the app overview.
2. Open the **Privacy settings and services** menu.

All available functions for the vehicle can also be viewed in the In-Car Shop in the Infotainment system.

The primary user can activate the available functions for the vehicle in the In-Car Shop of the Infotainment system or in the Volkswagen Connect shop.

Activating functions

Do not drive the vehicle during activation of functions.

All features on demand for the vehicle are displayed in the In-Car Shop of the Infotainment system.

1. To open the In-Car Shop of the Infotainment system, tap in the app overview.
2. Tap the function in the In-Car Shop and follow the instructions in the Infotainment system.

Follow the instructions in the Infotainment system during and after activation.

After successful activation, some functions require you to park the vehicle for around 10 minutes.

1. Switch off the engine and, depending on equipment, switch on the electronic parking brake or apply the handbrake.
2. Close the bonnet, boot lid, all windows and all doors.
3. Make sure that all vehicle occupants get out and that no animals are left behind in the vehicle.
4. Take all vehicle keys with you and get out of the vehicle.
5. Lock the vehicle and remove the vehicle keys from the detection range of the vehicle.

If you have the “primary user” role for the vehicle *(→ Manage users)*, you can also view activated functions in the app.

Troubleshooting

Where can I obtain functions?

Functions are available from a web shop accessible via your user account.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, functions can also be activated directly via the Infotainment system in the In-Car shop.

Are there any function restrictions during activation?

The function is not available during activation.

Where is successful activation shown?

Successful activation is displayed in the Infotainment system.

When will the activated function be available?

Depending on the activated function, the function is either available immediately or after switching the ignition back on.

Introduction to the topic

The functions and settings of the Infotainment system depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

Before using for the first time

Before using the Infotainment system for the first time, please observe the following points so you can make full use of the available functions and settings:

— Observe the safety instructions *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

— Reset the Infotainment system to the factory settings *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

— Refer to the section on caring for the vehicle interior for information on cleaning the screen of the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle care, interior)*.

— Find your favourite radio stations (also referred to below just as “stations”) and store them to memory locations for quick access .

— Use only suitable audio sources and data media .

— Use current map data for the navigation system.

— Pair a mobile telephone to make calls using the mobile phone interface .

— Register for the mobile online services to use the corresponding services .

Other applicable documents

In addition to this manual, please observe the following documents when using this Infotainment system and its components:

— Supplements to the vehicle wallet of your vehicle.

— The operating instructions for the mobile telephone or audio sources.

— The operating instructions for external data media and playback devices.

— Instructions for any Infotainment accessories subsequently installed or additionally used.

— Digital owner’s manual in the Infotainment system, depending on equipment and not available in all countries.

Safety notes

Some functions may contain links to websites that are operated by third parties. Volkswagen does not assume ownership of the third-party websites that are reached via links and is not responsible for their content.

Some functions may contain external information supplied by third parties. Volkswagen is not responsible for external information being correct, up-to-date and complete, or for any infringement of third-party rights.

The radio stations or owners of the data storage media and audio sources are responsible for the content provided.

Multi-storey car parks, garages, underpasses, tunnels, tall buildings, mountains, valleys, and other electrical devices such as battery chargers can impair reception of mobile communications, GPS and radio signals.

Films or metal-coated stickers on the aerial and on the windows can interfere with radio reception.

Read and follow the appropriate operating instructions of the respective manufacturer when using mobile telephones, data media, external devices, external audio and media sources.

⚠ WARNING

The central computer of the Infotainment system is networked with the control units in the vehicle. If the central computer is not repaired correctly or is not removed and installed correctly, there is an increased risk of accidents and injuries due to a control unit that does not function or does not function properly.

- Never replace the central computer with a used central computer taken from an older vehicle or a recycling facility.
- Only have the central computer removed, installed or repaired by a specialist company qualified to perform this work. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

Reading information from the screen, operating the Infotainment system and connecting, inserting or removing a data medium or audio source while driving can distract you from the traffic situation. Unfavourable light conditions and a damaged or dirty screen may result in displays and information not being read or not being read correctly from the screen. This can distract you from the road. Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.

⚠ WARNING

If the volume is set too loud, this will prevent you from hearing acoustic signals. If you do not hear acoustic signals from outside, this can lead to accidents.

- Set the volume so that you can still always hear acoustic signals from outside the vehicle (e.g. emergency service sirens).

⚠ WARNING

A volume that is too loud can damage the hearing, even if the hearing is exposed to loud volumes only for a short time.

- Adjust the volume so that it is pleasant for all vehicle occupants.
- Avoid volumes that are too loud.

⚠ WARNING

Sudden changes in volume, such as when changing or connecting an audio or media source, can distract the driver and lead to accidents and injuries.

- Reduce the volume before switching the audio or media source or connecting a new source, for example.

⚠ WARNING

The following conditions can lead to situations where emergency calls, telephone calls and data transmission are restricted, interrupted or not possible:

- Your current emergency call location is in an area with no or insufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception.
- The mobile communications network of telecommunication providers is not available in areas with sufficient mobile communications and satellite reception.
- If the components in the vehicle required for emergency calls, telephone calls and data transmission are damaged, not working, or do not have sufficient electrical power.
- The battery of the mobile telephone is empty or does not have a sufficient charge level.

⚠ WARNING

Radio stations can transmit catastrophe and danger warnings. If catastrophe and danger warnings cannot be received or output, this can cause accidents and injuries. The following conditions can prevent these warnings from being received or issued:

- Your current location is in an area with no or insufficient radio signal reception.
- The frequency bands of the radio stations are subject to interference or are not available in areas with adequate radio signal reception.
- The loudspeakers and the components required for radio reception in the vehicle are damaged, not working or do not have sufficient electrical power.

WARNING

In some countries and mobile networks, a call for assistance or an emergency call can be made only subject to the following prerequisites:

- A mobile telephone with unlocked SIM card and sufficient call credit is connected to the mobile phone interface of the vehicle.
- Sufficient network coverage is available.

WARNING

If a mobile telephone or two-way radio that is not connected to an external aerial is used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and thus be a health hazard for all vehicle occupants.

- Maintain a minimum distance of 20 cm (around 8 inches) between the aerials on the mobile telephone and an active medical implant (e.g. a pacemaker) since the mobile devices may impair the function of active medical implants.
- Do not carry a mobile telephone that is operational close to or directly above an active medical implant, for example in a breast pocket.
- Switch off mobile telephones immediately if you suspect they may be interfering with an active medical implant (e.g. a pacemaker) or any other medical device.

WARNING

Mobile telephones, external devices and accessories in the vehicle that are loose, unsecured or not properly secured can be flung though the vehicle interior and cause accidents and serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident.

- Safely secure or stow mobile telephones, external devices and accessories outside the deployment zone of the airbags.
- Always secure or stow mobile telephones, external devices, audio sources and accessories securely in the provided stowage areas and holders in the vehicle so that they cannot be flung through the vehicle interior and hinder the driver.
- Never leave any heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets of clothing.
- Arrange the wires for external devices and audio sources so that they do not obstruct the driver.

WARNING

Driving recommendations and displayed traffic signs of the navigation may deviate from the current traffic situation and must not tempt you to take a safety risk.

- Always drive with due care and attention and be ready to intervene at all times.
- Always remember that road signs, traffic signals, traffic regulations and local conditions take precedence over driving recommendations and displays provided by the navigation system.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

NOTICE

The radiation produced by the mobile telephone when switched on may interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in malfunction or damage to the equipment.

- Always switch off your mobile telephone in areas where special regulations apply and when the use of mobile devices is forbidden.

NOTICE

The loudspeakers can be damaged if the volume is set at too high a level and by playback which is too loud or distorted.

- Choose the volume setting so that the loudspeakers are not damaged.

Notes on use

The Infotainment system needs a few seconds for a complete system start and does not respond to inputs during this time. During system startup, only the rear view camera image can be displayed.

The Infotainment system must start up completely before all displays are available and before it is possible to execute functions. The duration of a system start depends on the functional scope of the Infotainment system and can also take longer than usual particularly at low and high temperatures.

When using the Infotainment system and the corresponding accessories, e.g. headphones, please observe the country-specific regulations and legal requirements.

To ensure that the Infotainment system functions correctly, it is important to make sure the system is switched on and that, where applicable, the correct date and time are set in the vehicle.

A missing function button on the screen does not constitute a fault in the unit; It reflects the equipment that is available in the country in question.

Some of the functions and settings of the Infotainment system are available only when the vehicle is stationary. In some countries, the driving mode selector must be additionally turned to neutral position **N** or the (P) button for the electronic parking brake pressed on the driving mode selector. This is not a malfunction, but simply a legal requirement.

There may be restrictions on the use of Bluetooth® devices in some countries. Information is available from the local authorities.

Switch the ignition on before switching the Infotainment system back on if the 12-volt vehicle battery has been disconnected.

If settings are modified, displays on the screen may vary and the Infotainment system may behave differently from the description in this manual in some cases.

The Infotainment system switches off automatically when the engine is switched off and when the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is low.

In certain vehicles with Park Distance Control, the volume of the current audio source is lowered automatically when reverse gear is engaged. It is possible to adjust the volume reduction *(→ Park Distance Control)*.

Information on the software and the licence conditions is stored in the Infotainment system: **Settings ▶ Info**.

If you sell your vehicle or loan it to somebody else, make sure that all the stored data, files and settings are deleted and that the external audio sources and data media are removed where applicable.

Some functions in the Infotainment system require an active Volkswagen ID user account for mobile online services for the vehicle and a connection to the internet . The data transfer must not be restricted for the execution of the functions.

Marks, licences, copyright

Marks and licences

Certain terms in this manual are accompanied by the symbol ® or ™. These symbols indicate trademarks or registered marks. However, the absence of these symbols does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

Other product names are registered marks of the respective legal owners.

— Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

— Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

— All SiriusXM services require a subscription. See the SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at www.siriusxm.com (US) or www.siriusxm.ca (Canada). All fees, content and features are subject to change. Satellite and steaming lineups may vary. SiriusXM, Pandora and all related logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its respective subsidiaries. All rights reserved.

— HD Radio™ Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation, a subsidiary of Xperi Inc., U.S. and Foreign Patents. For patents see https://xperi.com/hd-radio-patents/. Xperi, HD Radio, HD, and “ARC” logos and their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Xperi Inc. and its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

— QR Code® is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

— Apple Music is a trademark of Apple Inc.

— SPOTIFY and the Spotify logo are among the registered trademarks of Spotify AB. Compatible vehicle and Spotify Premium subscription required, where available.

— Android Auto® is a trademark of Google LLC.

— Apple CarPlay® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

— Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

— iPod®, iPad® and iPhone® are trademarks of Apple Inc.

— MPEG-4 HE-AAC audio coding technology and patents are licensed by Fraunhofer IIS.

— SD® and SDHC® are brands or registered brands of SD-3C LLC in the USA and other countries.

— Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

— This product is subject to certain intellectual property rights and copyrights owned by the Microsoft Corporation. The use or distribution of this type of technology outside this product requires a licence from Microsoft or an authorised Microsoft company.

Copyright law

Audio and video files saved on data media and audio sources are normally subject to national and international copyright laws. Observe the legal requirements.

Infotainment system overview



Fig. 1 Overview of the Infotainment system (illustration).

1. Menu button: ⁝⁝⁝.
2. Sensor field for switching the Infotainment system on and off.
3. Touch slider for volume adjustment.
4. Home button: ▢ (below: HOME).
5. Pages.
6. Vehicle favourites.
7. App favourites.
8. Control Centre.
9. Notifications and status displays (availability depends on country).

Further information and tips for operating the Infotainment system are provided in these operating instructions *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

1 Menu button: ⁝⁝⁝

1. Tap ⁝⁝⁝ to open the app overview.

(2) Sensor field for switching the Infotainment system on and off

— To switch the Infotainment system on or off manually, tap and hold the sensor field until the screen switches on or off.

— Tap the sensor field to mute the Infotainment system.

(3) Touch slider for volume adjustment

— Swipe to the left to lower the volume.

— Swipe to the right to increase the volume.

— To zoom the map view in or out, swipe with two fingers simultaneously to the left or right.

(4) Home button: ▢ (below: HOME)

1. Tap HOME to open the home screen.

(5) Pages

Some menus and functions have several pages with different content. The current page is highlighted.

— Tap the marking to change to a page.

— Swipe your finger to the left or to the right across the screen to switch between pages.

(6) Vehicle favourites

Vehicle functions can be saved in the vehicle favourites for quick access, e.g. Auto Hold function. The vehicle favourites can be personalised *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

1. Tap to open the vehicle favourites.

(7) App favourites

Main menus can be saved in the app favourites for quick access. The app favourites can be personalised *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

1. Tap the corresponding function button to open a main menu in the app favourites.

(8) Control Centre

There are additional function buttons in the Control Centre for functions and notifications, e.g. the screen brightness can be adjusted here or the Auto Hold function switched on and off. You can configure the displayed functions *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

1. Tap the marking and slide it down to open the Control Centre.

(9) Notifications and status displays (availability depends on country).

Notifications and status displays of the user management function and “Privacy settings” function with signal strength display of the eSIM, available depending on country.

1. To open notifications, tap Notifications.

   Or: to open the menu for user management or the “Privacy settings” function, tap the status display for user management or the “Privacy settings” function.

Scroll bar (without item number)

Some menus and functions have further content above or below the current screen view.

1. Tap the scroll bar and swipe it up or down to display additional content.

Operating the Infotainment system

Resetting the Infotainment system to the factory settings

1. Open the app overview and tap ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Restore factory settings**.

The vehicle settings are deleted by resetting to the factory settings. This also includes personal data, where applicable. Mobile online services can then no longer be used in this vehicle. The services can be used again only after renewed activation. If there is a primary user in the vehicle, this user will also be deleted and informed about this by email. For further information, refer to the section on mobile online services .

Opening the quick guide for the Infotainment system (if available)

The quick guide for the Infotainment system provides further information and tips for operation of the system.

1. Open the app overview and tap ▶ .

Switching the Infotainment system on or off

The Infotainment system switches on automatically in the following case:

— When the ignition is switched on if the Infotainment system was not manually switched off before.

If the last set volume does not exceed the preset maximum switch-on volume, the Infotainment system will start up at this volume.

The Infotainment system switches off automatically in the following cases:

— If you leave the vehicle when the ignition is inactive.

— After around 30 minutes without a user input if you switch on the Infotainment system manually when the ignition is inactive.

— After about 30 minutes without a user input if you remain seated in the vehicle when the ignition is inactive.

If the Infotainment system no longer reacts, it will restart automatically. If the restart does not work, tap and hold the sensor field for switching the Infotainment system on and off for around 15 seconds.

WARNING

During a restart of the Infotainment system, functions such as the display of the rear view camera system, acoustic and visual warnings of Park Distance Control and Rear Traffic Alert, Park Distance Control, Rear Traffic Alert and other acoustic warnings, may be temporarily unavailable. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the systems. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle when driving into and out of a parking space.
- Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle in a hazardous situation.
- Wait until the Infotainment system and other systems have started up completely.

Operating the screen (touchscreen)

You can operate the functions of the Infotainment system using the screen. The screen brightness can be adjusted via the Control Centre *(→ Infotainment system overview)* (8). You can find a detailed explanation of the different finger gestures in the quick guide to the Infotainment system, where available.

1. Open the app overview and tap ▶ ▶ **Operation**.

Main menus in the app overview

Main menus are visible as function buttons in the app overview and on the home screen. The position of the function buttons can be configured.

Opening main menus

1. Tap the corresponding function button to open a main menu, e.g. for the navigation system.

The following main menus may be included as function buttons in the app overview:

Background lighting, **Background lighting** .

App-Connect .

Assist systems .

Experience.

Driving profile.

Vehicle .

IDA: voice assistant .

Sound *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

Air conditioning .

Navigation .

Users, **User management** .

Parking.

Radio/Media , .

Legal.

Settings *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

Shop.

Seats.

Stat. air con: stationary air conditioning .

Telephone .

Tips/Help: here you can find further information on the functions and operation of the Infotainment system, e.g. the quick guide *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

Configuring the app overview

You can configure the layout of the function buttons and also the pages and displays in the app overview or have them positioned on the basis of factory layout templates.

1. Open the app overview.
2. Tap a function button and hold until an additional window opens.
3. Tap a function button in the additional window and hold until the function button is visibly highlighted.
4. Move the function button to the desired position and release.
5. Tap **Finish**.

Personalisation

Personalise function buttons and pages depending on the vehicle equipment *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

Personalising the Infotainment system

Depending on equipment, you can personalise the Infotainment system to permit faster access to favourite or frequently used functions.

Operating break

If the Infotainment system is operated frequently within a short period of time while driving, there may be a short operating pause. This operating pause will be cancelled automatically after a short time.

You can find tiles for accessing further menus and functions on the pages of the Infotainment system.

Configuring tiles

Configure the tiles by removing or adding pages.

1. Tap HOME.
2. Tap a tile and hold until an additional window opens.
3. To add a new page with tiles, tap ⊕, tap the desired template, and tap **OK**. New tiles are created without functions.

   Or: to remove a page with tiles, tap **Delete page** and confirm.
4. Tap **Finish** to return to the page.

At least two pages are always available. These cannot be removed.

Adapting tiles

Adapt the tiles and the displayed tile functions on the Infotainment system pages in order to customise the Infotainment system to suit your needs.

1. Tap HOME.
2. Tap a tile and hold until an additional window opens.
3. To add functions to a tile, tap the desired tile.
4. Tap the desired function in the additional window. Various functions are available depending on the size of the tile.
5. To remove a function from a tile, tap the desired tile and then tap the desired function in the additional window.
6. Tap **Finish**.

More functions are available for some tiles than are visible at first glance in the additional window. Swipe to the left or right in the additional window to see all functions.

Adapting the Control Centre

Adapt the Control Centre of the Infotainment system to permit faster access to favourite or frequently used functions such as the Auto Hold function.

1. Open the Control Centre.
2. Tap a function and hold until an additional window opens.
3. Tap the desired function in the additional window.
4. Tap **Finish**.

More functions are available for the Control Centre than are visible at first glance in the additional window. Swipe to the left or right in the additional window to see all functions.

Personalising app favourites

1. Tap ⊕ to add a main menu.

   Or: to customise a main menu, tap and hold an assigned memory location until an additional window opens.
2. Tap the desired function in the additional window.
3. Tap **Finish**.

Deleting app favourites

1. Tap ⊕.

Or: tap and hold an assigned memory location until an additional window opens.

2. Tap the desired favourite in the app favourites.
3. Tap ≡ ▶ **Delete favourite** and confirm.
4. Tap **Finish**.

It is also possible to reset all app favourites to the factory settings. To do this, tap ≡ ▶ **Factory settings**.

Personalising vehicle favourites

1. Open the vehicle favourites.
2. Tap ⊕ to add vehicle favourites.

   Or: to customise vehicle favourites, tap and hold an assigned memory location until an additional window opens.
3. Tap the desired function in the additional window.
4. Tap **Finish**.

Deleting vehicle favourites

1. Open the vehicle favourites.
2. Tap ⊕.

   Or: tap and hold an assigned memory location until an additional window opens.
3. Tap the desired favourite in the vehicle favourites.
4. Tap ≡ ▶ **Delete favourite**.
5. Tap **Finish**.

It is also possible to reset all vehicle favourites. To do this, tap ≡ ▶ **Reset all** and confirm.

Opening tips for personalisation (if available)

You can find further information and tips for personalisation in the digital instructions for the Infotainment system.

1. Open the app overview and tap ? ▶ ▶ **Custom**.

System and sound settings

Changing settings

The meanings of the following symbols apply to all system and sound settings.

Changes are automatically stored when a menu is closed.

☑, ◉ or ⬭ The setting is selected and activated or switched on.

☐, ◯ or ⬭ The setting is not selected and is deactivated or switched off.

▽ or ﹀ Open the drop-down list.

\+ Increase the setting values.

− Decrease the setting values.

< Gradually back.

> Gradually forwards.

Change setting values with the slider control (infinitely variable).

System settings

Due to over-the-air updates, some of the system settings listed here may have been omitted or new ones may have been added.

The following functions, information and setting options may be available in the system settings:

— Reset to default settings.

— Screen.

— V2X technology.

— Copyright.

— Data connection.

— Units.

— Wireless charging for mobile devices.

— Configuration wizard.

— Mobile devices.

— Offline mode.

— Voice assistant.

— Language.

— System information.

— Time and date.

— Upgrades.

— Connect VW Connect.

— Wi-Fi®.

— Additional keyboard languages.

Opening system settings

1. Open the app overview and tap ⚙.

Sound settings

The sound settings may contain information and setting options for equaliser, position, volume and settings.

Opening sound settings

1. Open the app overview and tap 🎚.

Adjusting the volume of external audio sources

If you need to increase the output volume of an external audio source, first lower the volume on the Infotainment system.

If the sound from the external audio source is too quiet, increase the output volume of the external audio source. If this is not sufficient, set the input volume to **Medium** or **Loud**.

If the sound from the connected external audio source is too loud or distorted, lower the output volume on the external audio source. If this is not sufficient, set the input volume to **Medium** or **Quiet**.

Electronic Voice Enhancer

The Voice Enhancer depends on the vehicle model and equipment and is only available in some countries.

When the Voice Enhancer is activated, the spoken words of the driver and front passenger are transmitted to the speakers in the rear seats via the hands-free system microphone. This enables good communication between the driver, front passenger and passengers in the rear seats, even at high speeds. The driver can communicate with the vehicle occupants of the rear seats, while driving, without having to turn around or speak more loudly.

Activating or deactivating the Voice Enhancer

1. Tap the touch slider for volume adjustment.

   The symbol for the Voice Enhancer is displayed next to the volume display: .

2. Tap .

   The sound settings open.

3. To activate the function, increase the volume under **Voice enhancer**.

   Or: to deactivate the function, reduce the volume to the minimum setting under **Voice enhancer**.

Adjusting the volume of the Voice Enhancer

1. Tap the touch slider for volume adjustment.

   The symbol for the Voice Enhancer is displayed next to the volume display: .

2. Tap .

   The sound settings open.

3. Adjust the volume under **Voice Enhancer**.

The Voice Enhancer is not active during telephone calls and navigation announcements.

If the Voice Enhancer is activated, this affects recognition of the activation word for the voice assistant . In this case, start the voice assistant via the multifunction steering wheel *(→ Voice assistant)*.

Introduction to the topic

In radio mode, you can receive available radio stations using different reception modes and store your favourites for quick access.

The available reception modes are dependent on the equipment level and are not available in all countries. Frequency bands and reception modes may be discontinued, deactivated or no longer offered in individual countries.

With some equipment levels and in some countries, you can also use Internet Radio *(→ Online functions, radio)*.

The radio stations are responsible for the content of the information sent.

Additional electrical devices connected in the vehicle can interfere with reception of the radio signal and cause noises in the loudspeakers.

Foil or metal-coated stickers attached to the windows may affect reception on vehicles with a window aerial.

Function descriptions

Selecting reception mode

Different stations are available depending on the reception mode. The available reception modes are dependent on the equipment level and are not available in all countries.

1. Tap ∨ to open the list of reception modes.
2. Select the reception mode, e.g. FM.

Searching for and selecting stations

You can search for and select stations in different ways. The possibilities vary depending on reception mode.

Searching for stations in SCAN mode

In SCAN mode, the stations of the reception mode are set automatically one after the other and played back for around 5 seconds. SCAN mode is possible only in the additional window in which the current playback content is displayed.

1. Tap ♫.
2. Tap **SCAN** to start the SCAN function.

   The SCAN function starts and the currently set station is shown on the display.
3. To select a station, tap **SCAN**.

   The SCAN function stops and the station is set.

Selecting stations using the multifunction steering wheel

You can select stations from the station list or from the favourites using the multifunction steering wheel.

— To select the previous station, press ⏮ on the multifunction steering wheel.

— To select the next station, press ⏭ on the multifunction steering wheel.

Selecting stations using the frequency band

1. Select reception mode AM or FM.
2. To open the frequency band, tap 〰.
3. Tap the cursor, move on the frequency band and release at the desired frequency.

   Or: tap a point on the frequency band. The cursor automatically jumps to the corresponding frequency.

   The station at the set frequency is set.

Selecting stations from a station list

The station list shows the stations that can currently be received. The station list is updated automatically. Depending on country, the station list of the FM/DAB reception mode is set as the active station list with the factory settings and the stations in the list are sorted alphabetically.

1. Select the reception mode.
2. Tap the desired station.

   The selected station is set. The best reception mode is selected automatically according to availability of the station.

Changing the sorting order of the station list

The current sorting order of the stations is visible in the station list. The station list can be sorted alphabetically, according to group and according to genre.

1. Open the station list.
2. Tap ∨ next to the display of the current sorting order.

3. Select the desired sorting order.

   The selected sorting order is set.

Selecting a station and storing as a favourite

You can store up to 36 stations or frequencies from different reception modes as favourites.

Saving stations as favourites

1. Select the reception mode.
2. Set the desired station.
3. Tap ♡.

   Or: tap and hold a station in the station list.

   The memory locations are displayed.
4. Tap ⊕.

   Or: tap and hold the memory location already assigned until the station is stored.

   The station is stored in the selected memory location.

   If a station was already stored in the memory location, this station will be removed from the memory location and replaced by the new station.

Showing or hiding display of station logos and DAB slideshow

1. Tap ♫ and swipe from right to left.
2. Tap radio text in the display for the current playback.

Other functions in radio mode

The functions listed below depend on the equipment level and are only available in some countries.

Traffic Programme function (TP function)

The Traffic Programme function (TP function) monitors the traffic announcements from a set traffic news station for Traffic Programme monitoring and automatically outputs them during radio or media mode. Reception of a traffic news station must be possible and the TP function must be activated in the settings in order to receive traffic announcements → *Activating the TP function*. Traffic news stations are not available in all countries. Some stations that do not broadcast their own traffic news support the TP function through a corresponding traffic news station (EON).

Provided that a traffic news station can be received, a traffic news station is automatically set in the background in media mode.

No TP will be shown on the display if no traffic news station can be received. The unit automatically searches for a receivable traffic news station. As soon as a new traffic news station can be received, the status in the display changes to **TP** again.

Activating the TP function

1. In radio mode, tap ⚙ ▸ **Radio** and tap and activate **Traffic Programme (TP)**.

   Or: in media mode, tap ⚙ ▸ **Media** and tap and activate **Traffic Programme (TP)**.

Station logos

Station logos may be pre-installed for some frequency bands in the Infotainment system.

The station logos will be assigned automatically to the stations if **Autoselect station logos** is activated in the settings.

In Internet Radio mode, the Infotainment system accesses station logos from an online database and automatically assigns them to the stations.

Activating automatic assignment of station logos

1. In radio mode, tap ⚙ ▶ **Radio** and tap and activate **Automatically select station logo**.

Manually assigning station logos

1. In radio mode, tap ⚙ ▶ **Radio** ▶ **Station logos**.
2. Select the station to which you wish to assign a station logo.
3. Select the station logo.
4. Repeat the process for further stations if desired.
5. Tap ⮌ to end assignment of station logos.

Switching to similar stations

If reception of a station becomes poor or drops completely, the system automatically switches to an alternative station depending on availability and reception quality, e.g. between neighbouring regional stations.

Activating switching to similar stations

1. Tap and activate ⚙ ▶ **Switch to a similar station if reception is poor**.

Additional DAB announcements

In addition to the messages from the TP function, you can also receive other announcements, e.g. on the weather, from the stations in DAB reception mode.

Activating additional DAB announcements

1. Tap and activate ⚙ ▶ **Additional DAB announcements**.

Functions and symbols

Functions

The functions and possible reception modes depend on the vehicle equipment and are not available in all countries.

— AM tuner.

— FM dual tuner (antenna diversity).

— Combined station list.

  — Combination of FM- and DAB stations in one list.

— Combined preset list for favourites.

— Display of station logos.

— Aerial amplifier.

— DAB/DAB+.

— DAB slide show.

  — Stationary images are transmitted parallel to the current broadcast.

— Internet Radio.

Symbols

The symbols depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries and may also differ in appearance depending on the Infotainment system.

General symbols

1. To open the main menu, open the app overview and tap ♫ ▶ 📻 *(→ Infotainment system overview)*.

 AM Select AM reception mode.

 FM Select FM reception mode.

 FM/DAB Select FM/DAB reception mode.

 Internet Radio Select Internet Radio reception mode.

 Select frequency band or reception mode.

 Open favourites.

Small in a station list: station already saved as a favourite.

 Open the current playback content.

 Mute radio.

 Open frequency band for manual selection of the FM frequency.

Possible only if the combined station list is switched off in the settings in Radio mode.

 Switch between radio and media mode.

 My playlist.

 Add station as favourite.

 Select previous station from the station list or favourites.

 Select next station from the station list or favourites.

 Open the settings.

TP
Traffic Programme function (TP function) for traffic news monitoring is activated.

No TP
The selected traffic news station is not available.

AF Off
Automatic station tracking (AF) is deactivated.

RDS Off
The Radio Data System (RDS) is deactivated.

Symbols for FM and, depending on country, FM/DAB reception modes

 No DAB reception possible.

 DAB station supports slide show.

 Slide show is not available for the DAB station.

Symbols in Internet Radio mode

 Open full-text search.

 No Internet Radio reception possible.

Open the most recently listened to Internet Radio stations.

Open the 100 most listened to Internet Radio stations.

Open available Internet Radio podcasts.

Open Internet Radio stations from the desired country.

Open Internet Radio stations that broadcast their programmes in the desired language.

Open Internet Radio stations whose programmes belong to the desired genre.

Open podcast episodes.

Open the station selection.

Open associated stations and podcasts.

Skip forward 15 seconds in podcast episode.

Skip back 15 seconds in podcast episode.

Online functions

With some equipment levels, the Infotainment system has online functions in radio mode.

Online functions in radio mode are not available in all countries and vehicle models.

The online functions in radio mode include Internet Radio, for example.

Prerequisites for using online functions in radio mode:

✓ The requirements for using the services have been fulfilled *(→ Online services)*.

✓ You have ordered the service and activated it in your vehicle.

✓ Streaming services may require an existing account with the relevant provider.

Internet Radio

Internet Radio is a reception mode for Internet Radio stations and podcasts which is independent of FM and DAB. Due to transmission via the internet, reception is not regionally restricted. Internet Radio is available only when the Infotainment system has an active internet connection . Costs may be incurred for data transmission from the internet when using Internet Radio mode.

In some countries, functioning of Internet Radio depends on the privacy settings in the vehicle *(→ Privacy settings)*.

Searching for and filtering stations

In Internet Radio mode, it is possible to filter stations according to categories or search for stations by means of a full-text search.

1. Open the station selection.
2. Select the category according to which you wish to filter the stations.

   Or: tap ○ to start the full-text search.

   The input field is displayed.
3. Enter the name of the station or category you want to search for.

   The list of found stations is automatically updated during input.
4. Tap the desired station.

Introduction to the topic

In media mode, you can play media files from data media on the Infotainment system and, depending on equipment, store your favourites for quick access.

With some equipment levels, the following data media can be used as a media source:

— USB data medium, e.g. USB stick.

— Bluetooth device, e.g. mobile telephone.

With some equipment levels, the following types of media files can be played back:

— Audio files, e.g. music.

— Video files.

Restrictions and notes on data media

Dirty, overheated or damaged data media may be unusable. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Differences in the quality of data media from different manufacturers can interfere with media playback.

Incorrect configuration of a data medium can render it unreadable.

The read time of data media can be increased by the storage capacity, usage state (copying and deletion processes), file system, folder structure, and the amount of stored data.

Playlists simply specify a playback sequence. They link to the location of the media files within the folder structure. There are no media files stored in a playlist. To play a playlist, the media files must exist in the locations on the data medium referenced by the playlist.

No liability can be accepted for damaged, modified or lost files on data media.

Playing a media file

Connecting and selecting a media source

1. Connect media source.
2. Tap **My media** and select the desired media source.

Searching for and playing media files

You can search for and play media files from a media source in various ways.

Searching in a selected media source

All media files on the connected media source can be found by means of a folder structure or by using the full-text search.

1. Open the folder structure.
2. Search through the folder structure for the desired track.

   Or: to start the full text search, tap ◯ and enter the name of the desired track.

   The list of found tracks updates itself automatically during input of the full text search string.
3. Tap the desired track.

   If the selection is located in a folder on a media source at the start of playback, the media files located in this folder will be added for playback.

   If a playlist is played, all available tracks in the playlist will be added for playback.
4. Close the selection with ×.

Saving a media file as a favourite

Only media files that are saved to **My Media**, e.g. in the **Music** folder, can be stored as favourites. You can save individual tracks, albums, artists and genres.

1. Start playback of the desired track.
2. Tap ♡.
3. Tap ⊕.

   Or: tap an already assigned favourite location and hold for around 3 seconds.
4. Make a selection from the list (e.g. a music track).

   The selection options in the selection list depend on the data attached to the media file. If no genre is specified for music files, for example, the genre cannot be saved as a favourite.

   The selection is saved as a favourite at the selected favourite location. If the favourite location was already assigned, the previously stored favourite is replaced by the selection.

Selecting a media file from favourites

1. Tap ♡.
2. Tap the desired favourite.

   Depending on the selected favourite, all tracks that belong to it are added to the current playback content.

Entertainment playback

Music can be played on the Infotainment system.

Depending on country, it is also possible to play videos.

Video mode

In video mode, the Infotainment system display can play a video from a data medium or from the internal memory.

The video soundtrack is played on the vehicle loudspeakers.

The video image is displayed only when the vehicle is stationary. When the vehicle is in motion, the Infotainment system display is switched off. The video audio can continue to be heard.

In some countries, no video image is displayed even when the vehicle is stationary for traffic safety reasons.

Functions and symbols

Functions

The functions and possible media formats depend on the vehicle equipment and are not available in all countries.

— Media playback and media control via Bluetooth.

— Audio playback in the following formats:

  — AAC.

  — APE.

  — ALAC.

  — MP2.

  — MP3.

  — Vorbis.

  — OPUS.

  — WMA.

  — WAV.

— Video playback in the following formats:

  — MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 (.mpg, .mpeg, .mkv, .avi).

  — ISO MPEG-4 ASP; Xvid (.mp4, .m4v, .mov, .mkv, .avi).

  — ISO MPEG-4 AVC / H.264 (.mp4, .m4v, .mov, .mkv, .avi).

  — Windows Media Video 9 (.wmv, .asf, .mkv, .avi).

— Cross-device playlists.

— Cross-source media database: **My media**.

  — The data of all media sources connected to the Infotainment system is stored in a media database, **My media**.

  — If **My media** is selected, categories, e.g. music, and connected media sources are displayed first.

  — All media files of USB devices are filtered according to categories, e.g. albums. This category view is always displayed in **My media**. The classic folder structure of the individual USB data media is additionally located in the **My media** folder.

— Media search.

Symbols

The symbols depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries and may also differ in appearance depending on the Infotainment system.

General symbols

1. To open the main menu, open the app overview and tap ♫ ▶ ⓘ *(→ Infotainment system overview)*.

♫ Open the current playback content.

▷ Start playback.

❙❙ Pause playback.

 Go to previous track.

 Go to next track.

 Repeat current track.

 Repeat all tracks.

 Activate shuffle mode.

 Top right: select media source.

 Open search.

 Add media file as favourite.

 Open favourites list.

 Go back to higher-level folder of the media source.

 Open the settings.

Symbols for media sources

 **My media**: select the cross-source media database **My media** as the media source. Connected USB devices and their folder structure can be selected under **My media**.

 **Bluetooth**: select a device connected via Bluetooth as the media source. Devices that are not yet connected via Bluetooth can also be selected and connected using this function.

Symbols for categories and groups of media files

 Music tracks.

 Videos.

 Playlists.

 Albums.

 Artists.

 Genres.

 Podcasts.

 Audio books.

 Compilations.

Symbols for video playback

 Play video in full-screen mode.

Minimise playback.

Introduction to the topic

The current vehicle position is determined by means of a global satellite system. To enable optimal navigation to the destination, all readings and possible traffic information are compared with the available map material. Acoustic navigation announcements and visual guidance direct the driver to the destination.

Depending on the country, some Infotainment system functions can no longer be selected when the vehicle is travelling above a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but simply a legal requirement.

If you sell or loan the vehicle, Volkswagen recommends resetting the Infotainment system to the factory settings *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*. This is the only way of deleting all personal data, e.g. information used for navigation. For further information, refer to the section on mobile online services (section availability is country-dependent) .

WARNING

If settings, destination inputs and changes for the navigation system are made while the vehicle is in motion, this can distract the driver and cause accidents and injuries.

- Drive with your full attention and with responsibility.
- Configure the settings and enter destinations and changes for the navigation only when the vehicle is stationary.

The navigation may recalculate the route if the driver misses a turning.

The quality of the output navigation recommendations depends on the navigation data available and, depending on country, any reported traffic disruptions.

Depending on the vehicle and country, select “Online mode” and a mode with location data in the privacy settings before using the mobile online services of the navigation system *(→ Privacy settings)*.

The corresponding prerequisites must be met *(→ Traffic information)*, e.g. the corresponding mobile online service must be activated and, depending on country, the privacy settings adapted, in order to use the mobile online services, e.g. Online Traffic Information . Only then will Online Traffic Information be output in the navigation system, for example. If no Online Traffic Information is available, this is displayed in the Infotainment system *(→ Navigation)*.

Restrictions during navigation

When the Infotainment system cannot receive any data from GPS satellites, e.g. in a tunnel, navigation can still continue using the vehicle sensors.

In areas that are not or are not completely included in the Infotainment memory, the Infotainment system will also try to enable route guidance.

If navigation data is unavailable or incomplete, the navigation system may be unable to determine the exact vehicle position. As a result, the navigation may not be as exact as usual.

The course of the road is subject to constant changes, e.g. roadworks. In the case of obsolete navigation data, there may be errors or inaccuracies during navigation.

Function descriptions

Navigation announcements

Navigation announcements are acoustic driving instructions for the current route. The type and frequency of navigation announcements depends on the settings and the driving situation, e.g. start of route guidance, driving on a motorway or in a roundabout.

A navigation announcement informing you that you have reached the destination area is given if the exact destination cannot be reached, e.g. because it is located in a non-digitised area. In addition, information on the direction and distance to the destination are displayed on the screen.

Depending on equipment and in some countries, information on reported traffic disruptions on the route is provided during dynamic traffic avoidance. An additional navigation announcement is given if the route is recalculated due to a traffic disruption or changed driving style.

The volume of a navigation announcement can be adjusted or muted during output of the announcement. All other navigation announcements are given with this volume setting or are muted. Further settings for the navigation announcements can be found in the settings of the navigation system *(→ Navigation)*.

Repeating a navigation announcement

If you have missed a navigation announcement, you can have the navigation announcement repeated.

1. Tap the function button with the next route information on the map.

Navigation announcements are not given if the Infotainment system has been muted.

Adapting the navigation map

For optimal viewing, you can also adapt the navigation map and map view with advanced finger gestures.

Moving the navigation map

Recommendation: use your index finger.

1. Use your finger to move the navigation map.

Enlarging or reducing the map view

Recommendation: use your index finger.

1. Tap the map twice in succession and keep your finger on the screen.
2. Move your finger downwards to zoom in on the map view.

   Or: move your finger upwards to zoom out from the map view.

Enlarging or reducing the map view

Recommendation: use thumb and index finger.

1. Using two fingers at the same time, tap the map and keep your fingers on the screen.
2. Move your fingers apart to zoom in on the map view.

   Or: move your fingers together to zoom out from the map view.

Tilting the map view

Recommendation: use your index and middle finger.

1. Using two fingers that are horizontal to each other at the same time, tap the map and keep your fingers on the screen.
2. Move your fingers upwards to tilt the map view forwards.

   Or: move your fingers downwards to tilt the map view backwards.

Rotating the map view

Recommendation: use thumb and index finger.

1. Using two fingers at the same time, tap the map and keep your fingers on the screen.
2. Turn your fingers clockwise or anticlockwise to rotate the map view.

You can also zoom the map view in and out using the touch slider for volume adjustment *(→ Infotainment system overview)*.

Route plan

The route plan contains your route and possible stopovers. Destinations and stopovers can be defined in sequence, moved or deleted. The starting point is always the vehicle position determined by the Infotainment system. The route plan contains information on relevant events, such as stopovers and suggested destinations, if navigation data is available. When you tap an event, an additional window opens with further options. The options available depend on the event and the current settings.

Opening and closing the route plan

1. To open the route plan, tap the preview of the route plan on the right of the map.
2. To close the route plan, tap | on the right of the map.

Editing route guidance in the route plan

To edit route guidance, move the stopovers or the destination in the route plan.

1. Tap and hold the desired destination until it is visibly highlighted.
2. Move the destination to the desired position and release.

Stopping route guidance in the route plan

1. To stop route guidance to the destination, tap ⊗ on the right of the map in the route plan preview.

   Or: to stop route guidance to the destination or stopover, open the route plan, swipe to the left on the destination or stopover in the route plan and tap 🗑.

Additional window on the route plan

If you tap the entries of the route plan, an extra window with additional options can appear. The possible options depend on the entry tapped.

Functions in the additional window:

Display on map
Display the selection on the map.

Direct route
Start direct route guidance.

Add stopover
Add a stopover to the route guidance.

Delete
Delete stopover from route guidance.

Bypass
Avoid a traffic disruption. The route will be recalculated.

Stop route guidance
End the current route guidance.

Closing the additional window on the route plan

1. Tap a free area outside the additional window.

Setting preferred POI categories

The system offers various points of interest, e.g. filling stations, as quick selection symbols in the destination input, in the route plan and on the map. You can prioritise the display of these symbols.

1. Tap ⚙ ▸ **Basic functions** ▸ **Set preferred POI categories**.

Stored data

The Infotainment system stores certain data, e.g. frequently driven routes, so that you can enter destinations quickly and enjoy the most efficient route guidance.

Deleting stored data

1. Tap ⚙ ▸ **Basic functions** ▸ **Delete usage pattern**.
2. Tap confirmation to delete.

Learning usage patterns

While travelling, the navigation saves the routes travelled and destinations arrived at in order to create suggested destinations automatically. Destinations are learned depending on the time of day and the day of the week.

The navigation system can suggest learned routes. Route guidance begins when one of the suggested routes is selected.

The route guidance follows the selected route until the vehicle deviates from it. The route is recalculated and will guide you back to the selected route via a direct alternative.

Relevant traffic disruptions are taken into account in the route guidance. Relevant traffic disruptions will be avoided if an alternative route and the navigation data is available.

If you drive an already learned route when route guidance is inactive, the destination will be transferred to the route plan. It is not necessary to actively start route guidance to the learned destination. Warnings may be given about traffic disruptions and a forecast arrival time will be displayed.

You can activate or deactivate the function at any time and also delete the stored data for the function.

Activating or deactivating “Learn usage pattern”

1. Tap ⚙ ▸ **Basic functions** to open the settings for this function.
2. Tap and activate **Learn usage pattern**.

Displaying suggested routes

1. Tap 🔍 ▸ **Suggested**.

Deleting stored data for “Learn usage pattern” function

1. Tap ⚙ ▸ **Basic functions** to open the settings for this function.
2. Tap **Delete usage pattern**.

Functions and symbols

Functions

The navigation functions depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

— Destination input and route calculation.

— Personal POIs.

— 3D City Maps.

— Online Map Update.

— Online Traffic Information.

Symbols

The symbols depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

General symbols

1. To open the main menu, open the app overview and tap △ *(→ Infotainment system overview)*.

 Destination search: enter and search for destinations.

 Open navigation map.

 Open saved addresses or contact list of the connected mobile telephone.

 Open the settings.

You can find settings for the navigation announcements here, for example.

Map symbols

The function buttons and displays depend on the settings and the current driving situation.

The map displays symbols for traffic information, e.g. traffic disruptions, and POIs, e.g. filling stations, when navigation data is available *(→ Traffic information)*.

 Current position.

Tap to centre the map on the vehicle or to display details of the vehicle position.

 Map scale.

 Determine map orientation and tilt.

 Fully automatic map mode.

Alignment in direction of travel, position, zoom and tilt.

 If route guidance is active: display route overview and alternative routes for current route guidance.

Route plan symbols

 Display current position.

 Destination of the current route guidance.

 Close the route plan.

 Forecast distance to the destination.

Tap to switch to the display of the estimated time of arrival at the destination or remaining time to the destination.

 Estimated time of arrival at the destination.

Tap to switch to the display of the estimated remaining time to the destination.

 Estimated remaining time to the destination.

Tap to switch to the display of the estimated time of arrival at the destination.

Entering a destination and starting route guidance

Other symbols

In the route overview: open information on the route.

In the route overview: display route options with active route guidance.

In the additional window: show route overview. Does not start route guidance directly, but first shows details of the route and alternative routes.

In the additional window: save as favourite.

In the destination search: open detailed destination input for an address. In the contact list: open address.

Work (company).

Home (private).

Traffic disruptions

Traffic disruptions are displayed on the map when navigation data is available *(→ Traffic information)*. Example of a traffic disruption on the map: ⚠ for traffic jam. Depending on country, "Online Traffic Information" must be activated to display the mobile online service. Depending on the vehicle, the following symbol is displayed if no Online Traffic Information is available: .

Opening details of traffic disruptions

1. Tap .
2. Tap a traffic disruption to open an additional window showing details *(→ Navigation)*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, different functions are available for destination input. Certain functions are available only in some countries.

You can more precisely limit the search by indicating preferences in the results list, such as "nearby".

Further information about the symbols on the Infotainment system display can be found in this owner's manual *(→ Navigation)*.

Entering an address

Start route guidance by entering an address. The navigation system will suggest known destinations during input. You can also enter a new, as yet unknown address for route guidance.

When entering the address, enter the name of the destination rather than the postcode.

Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap .

   Or: tap .
2. Enter the address of the destination and select the desired destination.
3. Tap **Start**.

   Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap .
2. Enter the address of the destination and tap and hold the desired destination for a few seconds.

Enter the destination as accurately as possible. If you make a mistake when entering the destination, route guidance will not be possible or you may be navigated to the wrong destination.

Recommended destinations

The navigation system uses stored data such as the last and learned destinations, favourites, and home and work addresses so it can use this data for route guidance.

Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap ◯ ▸ **Suggested**.
2. Tap the desired destination.

   Route guidance starts automatically.

Last destinations

The navigation system stores up to 25 destinations that you have driven to last in order to make them available for route guidance. A new destination automatically overwrites the oldest destination.

Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap ◯ ▸ **Last destinations**.
2. Tap the desired destination.
3. Tap **Start**.

   Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap ◯ ▸ **Last destinations**.
2. Tap the desired destination and hold for a few seconds.

Favourite destinations

Save up to 50 destinations as favourites.

Saving a destination as a favourite

1. When entering a destination, tap ♡ in the additional window.

Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap ◯ ▸ **Favourites**.
2. Tap the desired destination.
3. Tap **Start**.

   Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap ◯ ▸ **Favourites**.
2. Tap the desired destination and hold for a few seconds.

Selecting on the map

The navigation map contains active areas at many locations which are suitable for destination input. To enter a destination, tap the desired position or location on the map. You can start route guidance if map data is available at this location.

Destination input via the navigation map depends on the data status and is not possible for all positions.

Using the address data of a contact

Start navigation using the stored address data of a contact. Stored contacts without address data cannot be used for route guidance.

Starting navigation

1. Tap .
2. Tap the desired contact with address data.
3. Tap **Start**.

   Or: tap .

If the address details of a contact are out-of-date, the stored address will be used for route guidance and may lead to the wrong destination.

— When starting route guidance, make sure that the stored address of a contact is up-to-date. For this, the update of the phone book in the Infotainment system must be fully completed *(→ Mobile phone interface)*.

— Wait until the update of the phone book in the Infotainment system is fully completed *(→ Mobile phone interface)*.

Navigation data

The Infotainment system has an internal navigation data memory. Depending on the country, the required navigation data is already pre-installed.

In order to carry out route guidance correctly and make full use of the functions offered, the Infotainment system always requires up-to-date navigation data.

NOTICE

If you use obsolete data, navigation may be impaired. Current routes cannot be determined or route guidance leads to the wrong destination.

- Always keep navigation data up-to-date.

Online navigation data – expansion

Regions in the navigation data that are not used by the user may be removed from the system under certain circumstances, for example if there is limited memory space in the navigation data memory. If these regions should be needed again at a later point in time, the navigation system will download them again on request. No contract for mobile online services is needed for this. The service depends on the vehicle equipment and is available only in some countries.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Establish an internet connection, if this does not already exist.
3. Depending on the country, also select “Online mode with location data” in the privacy settings *(→ Privacy settings)*.

Anyone who uses the vehicle as an anonymous guest must reset the privacy settings each time they start the vehicle *(→ Privacy settings)*.

Updating navigation data manually

Current navigation data for larger regions, e.g. Western Europe, can be downloaded from the internet at www.volkswagen.com and stored on a suitable USB data medium available commercially. If you switch off the Infotainment system, installation will be interrupted and will automatically continue once the unit is switched on again.

1. Download the navigation data and save on a USB data medium.
2. Switch on the vehicle ignition.
3. Connect a USB data storage device to the Infotainment system when the vehicle is stationary.

   The navigation data for regions that are currently frequently travelled is automatically updated in the background.

No message appears in the Infotainment system while the navigation data is being updated, or once the update is complete.

When you update navigation data manually, the USB data medium must remain continuously connected. No message appears to indicate that the update has been completed.

Leave the USB data storage device connected to the Infotainment system for a few days until the navigation data for travelled regions has been completely downloaded and installed. Installation takes place automatically in the background while driving. Failure to do so will cancel the update.

If you remove the USB data medium and travel through a new region in offline mode, the navigation data will not be updated as there is neither a USB data storage device nor an internet connection.

Displaying map data version

1. Open the app overview and tap ⚙ ▸ **Information** ▸ **System information**.

Traffic information

Reception of traffic information depends on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all countries. The Infotainment system automatically receives detailed traffic information when connected to the internet. This information is indicated by symbols and colouring of the road network on the map *(→ Navigation)* → *Traffic flow display*.

Reception of traffic information depends on the privacy settings in some countries. No traffic information is received in offline mode *(→ Privacy settings)*.

Prerequisites for using Online Traffic Information:

✓ The requirements for using the services have been fulfilled *(→ Online services)*.

✓ You have ordered the service and activated it in your vehicle.

✓ Depending on the country, "online mode" and a mode with location data are selected in the privacy settings *(→ Privacy settings)*.

Traffic disruptions

Traffic disruptions, e.g. traffic jams, are shown as symbols on the navigation map *(→ Navigation)*.

The route plan displays current traffic disruptions when navigation data is available.

When route guidance is active, traffic disruptions that are on the current route are displayed in the route plan. You can bypass these traffic disruptions by editing the route plan.

Bypassing a traffic disruption

1. Tap the traffic disruption.
2. Tap **Bypass**.

   The route will be recalculated.

Only one traffic disruption can be bypassed in this way for each route.

Local warnings, e.g. about severe weather, can be output as a pop-up message via the Infotainment system.

Traffic flow display

The traffic flow is shown on the navigation map for current traffic disruptions by colouring of the road network.

Orange

Slow-moving traffic.

Red

Traffic jam.

Introduction to the topic

You can connect your mobile telephone to the Infotainment system via the mobile phone interface and then use the Infotainment system to control the telephone functions. Sound is played back using the via the vehicle loudspeakers. Depending on equipment, you can connect up to three mobile telephones to the Infotainment system simultaneously *(→ Mobile phone interface)*.

Functions depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries – and depend on the mobile phone used and its operating system.

High speeds, poor weather and poor road conditions, loud noise levels, also outside the vehicle, and network quality may impair telephone calls in the vehicle.

The mobile phone interface may contain an aerial amplifier which improves the reception quality of the mobile telephone.

As a general rule, it is only necessary to pair a device, e.g. mobile telephone, once for each technology, Bluetooth or Wi-Fi®. The device connection to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth or Wi-Fi can be restored at any time without having to pair the device again.

When a telephone call is made using the hands-free system or at a loud volume, a conversation can also be heard by third parties outside the vehicle.

During a telephone call, the volume of the call can be adjusted using the volume control *(→ Infotainment system overview)*.

Areas where special regulations apply

Switch off the mobile telephone and mobile phone interface in areas where there is an explosion hazard. These areas are not always clearly signposted. This includes, for example:

— Areas immediately around chemical pipelines and tanks.

— Lower decks of ships and ferries.

— The area around vehicles which run on liquid gas, such as propane or butane.

— Places where there are chemicals or particles such as flour, dust and metal powder in the air.

— All other places where the engine or mobile telephone must be switched off.

⚠ WARNING

In places where there is a risk of explosion, e.g. near filling stations, and in places with special regulations, ignition sparks, e.g. caused by electrostatic discharges or mobile phones, can lead to an explosion or fire and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch off the mobile telephone and mobile phone interface in potentially explosive areas, e.g. near filling stations, and in locations where special guidelines apply.
- Do not operate the mobile telephone and mobile phone interface in potentially explosive areas, e.g. near filling stations, and in locations where special guidelines apply.

Types of mobile phone interface

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the following mobile phone interface types may be present in your vehicle:

— Basic equipment of the mobile phone interface.

The mobile phone interface uses the Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile (HFP) for transmission. This profile allows use of telephone functions via the Infotainment system and output via the vehicle speakers.

— Comfort mobile phone interface.

The Comfort mobile phone interface uses the HFP Bluetooth profile like the basic version of the mobile phone interface.

The Comfort mobile phone interface may be equipped with a wireless charging function *(→ Charging options for mobile devices)*. In order to use the wireless charging function, you must place a suitable mobile telephone correctly in the stowage compartment for the wireless charging function. If you place a suitable mobile phone in the stowage compartment, the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle aerial, depending on the equipment *→ Connection to the vehicle aerial*.

Connection to the vehicle aerial

Depending on model and equipment and in some countries, the mobile telephone is connected to the vehicle aerial when the stowage compartment for the wireless charging function is used *(→ Charging options for mobile devices)*. This improves reception and call quality and may reduce interference signals that affect mobile telephone reception.

If the reception or call quality does not improve or if interference signals can still be heard during mobile telephone reception, you can obtain a better connection by placing the mobile telephone in the stowage compartment the other way round with the screen facing up.

Depending on model and equipment and in some countries, the wireless charging function can charge several mobile telephones at the same time. If several mobile telephones are being charged at the same time, only one of the mobile telephones connects to the vehicle aerial.

Pairing, connecting and managing

Pair and connect a mobile telephone with the Infotainment system in order to use the functions of the mobile phone interface. You can connect up to three mobile telephones to the Infotainment system simultaneously. Only one device is active and can be used to make calls. You can use the second connected device to receive calls via the Infotainment system and a third can be used for media playback.

The functions listed below may not be available in all Infotainment systems depending on the equipment and country. The available functions depend on the mobile telephone used and its operating system.

Pairing a mobile telephone

The mobile telephone must be paired with the Infotainment system before the first connection is established. A user profile is automatically saved in the Infotainment system *(→ Mobile phone interface)*. The pairing process can take a few minutes. In order for pairing to be successful, the mobile telephone must support the current security standards for Bluetooth technology. Pairing will be rejected if this is not the case.

1. To activate Bluetooth in the Infotainment system if no mobile telephone is connected, press and hold on the multifunction steering wheel, observe messages on the Infotainment system and confirm if necessary.

   Or: to activate Bluetooth in the Infotainment system if a mobile telephone is already connected, tap ▶ **Select mobile phone** ▶ and tap and activate ▶ **Bluetooth** and **Visibility**.
2. Activate Bluetooth and Bluetooth visibility on the mobile telephone.
3. Open the list of available Bluetooth devices on the mobile telephone and select the device name of the Infotainment system.
4. Observe the messages on the mobile telephone and Infotainment system and confirm as necessary.

   If pairing was successful, the data of the mobile telephone will be stored in the user profile.
5. *Optional:* confirm message for data transfer on the mobile telephone.

⚠ WARNING

If you carry out pairing as the driver while the vehicle is in motion, this can cause accidents or injuries.
- Carry out pairing as the driver only when the vehicle is stationary.

Connecting a mobile telephone

1. Pair the mobile telephone with the Infotainment system.
2. Activate Bluetooth on the mobile telephone.
3. Observe the messages on the mobile telephone and Infotainment system and confirm as necessary.

If the connection is not set up automatically, tap ▶ **Select mobile phone** and tap the name of the desired mobile telephone.

Function descriptions

User profiles

An individual user profile is automatically created for every paired mobile telephone. Data from the mobile telephone is stored in the user profile, e.g. contact details. A maximum of ten user profiles can be stored in the Infotainment system simultaneously.

Deleting a user profile

1. Tap ▸ ⚙.

   The user profiles are located in the area **Select mobile telephone** or **Mobile devices**.

2. Tap the desired user profile and tap 🗑 to delete.

Active and passive connection

At least one mobile telephone must be connected to the Infotainment system in order to use the functions of the mobile phone interface. If several mobile telephones are connected to the Infotainment system, you can switch between active and passive connections. Establish an active connection to the Infotainment system in order to operate the mobile phone interface with the desired mobile telephone.

Paired mobile telephones are stored in the Infotainment system even if they are not currently connected.

Difference between the connection types

Active

Mobile telephone is paired and connected. The functions of the mobile phone interface are performed with the data of this mobile telephone.

Passive

Mobile telephone is paired and connected. Only incoming calls can be accepted via the mobile phone interface. No other functions are available.

Changing the connection type (passive to active)

Prerequisite:

✓ Several mobile telephones are connected to the Infotainment system simultaneously.

1. Tap ⌄.

   The mobile telephone with an active connection is highlighted.

2. Tap the name of the mobile telephone you require.

   Other mobile telephones then automatically have a passive connection.

Managing connections

Prerequisite:

✓ The mobile telephone is paired and connected.

1. Open the app overview and tap ⚙ ▸ **Mobile devices**.
2. Tap the technology desired for the connection.

Telephone book

The telephone book is stored in the Infotainment system when a mobile telephone is paired with the Infotainment system for the first time. It may be necessary to confirm transfer on the mobile telephone. Depending on equipment, up to 5,000 contact entries can be stored in the telephone book. The telephone book is updated each time the mobile telephone is connected to the Infotainment system. The still existing telephone book can be used during the update. A pop-up appears if changes have been detected in the telephone book and the update of the telephone book in the Infotainment system has been fully completed.

If conference calls are supported by the mobile service provider and the mobile telephone, the telephone book can be opened during a call and a further participant added to the call.

If an image is stored for a contact, this can also be displayed in the list next to the entry.

Using the telephone

Select a telephone number to start the call. Different functions are available for selecting a phone number.

Using contact data

If there are several phone numbers for each contact, you must select the phone number you require.

1. Tap .
2. Tap and enter the name of the contact to search for a contact.

   Or: tap **Favourites** to call a favourite.

   Or: tap **All**.
3. Tap the desired contact in the list to start the call.

When searching for a contact, enter the surname and first name separated by a space.

Using the call list

The mobile phone interface stores incoming and outgoing calls in the call list. Frequently used phone numbers are stored as favourites. Start calls via the call list.

1. Tap and filter entries in the call list, e.g. missed calls.
2. To start the call, tap a number or, where applicable, a contact in the list.

Entering a phone number manually

1. Tap and enter a phone number.
2. Tap to start the call.

While you are entering a phone number or a contact name, contacts that match the number will be shown on the Infotainment system display.

Favourites and favourites location

A contact from the telephone book can be saved as a favourite. If an image is stored in the entry, this will be displayed in the favourite location.

Favourite locations must be assigned manually and are assigned to a user profile *(→ Mobile phone interface)*.

Saving a contact as a favourite

1. Tap **Favourites** ▶ ⊕.
2. Tap a contact from the telephone book. If several telephone numbers are stored for a contact, tap the required number in the list.

Editing a favourite location

1. Tap **Favourites**.
2. Tap and hold the favourite location until the telephone book opens.
3. Tap a new contact from the telephone book. If several telephone numbers are stored for a contact, tap the required number in the list.

Calling a favourite

1. Tap **Favourites**.
2. Tap an assigned favourite location.

Favourites are not automatically updated. If the phone number of a contact changes, the favourite location must be assigned again.

Removing favourites

1. Tap **Favourites** ▶ ✎.
2. Tap 🗑 at the desired favourite location.

Sending text messages

Depending on the mobile telephone and the Infotainment system used, you can send and receive SMS text messages and emails via the mobile phone interface in some countries.

The ability to send and receive emails also depends on the app being used on the mobile telephone.

Sending text messages

1. Tap ✉ ▶ **Text message** ▶ **New message** and enter the message.
2. Enter and tap the desired contact in the search bar.
3. Tap **OK** to send the message.

Sending emails

1. Tap ⌄ ▶ **E-Mail** and enter the message.
2. Enter and tap the desired contact in the search bar. If necessary, you can search for a contact using **Search for contact**.
3. Tap **OK** to send the message.

Switching between text messages and email

Activate the corresponding option to send SMS or emails. The active option is displayed on the screen, e.g. **Text message**.

1. Tap ✉.
2. Tap the required option.

Functions and symbols

Functions

The functions are dependent on the equipment level and are not available in all countries. The available functions depend on the mobile telephone used and its operating system.

— Hands-free function.

— SMS functions via Bluetooth:

  — Read SMS.

  — Write an SMS, including templates.

  — Have SMS read out loud.

  — Message history.

— Email functions via Bluetooth:

  — Read emails.

  — Write emails.

Symbols

The symbols depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries and may also differ in appearance depending on the Infotainment system.

General symbols

1. To open the main menu, open the app overview and tap *(→ Infotainment system overview)*.

 Opens the contact list of the connected mobile telephone.

 Open call lists of incoming and outgoing calls and the list of frequently used numbers or contacts.

Open the favourites and list of frequently used numbers and contacts from the actively connected mobile telephone if this is supported by the mobile telephone.

 Dial phone number.

 Open text messages (SMS and email, depending on the country).

 Select the active device from two or more connected mobile telephones.

 Open the settings.

Symbols for phone calls

 Make or answer and display call.

 End or reject call.

 Mute hands-free system.

 Hold call.

 Reject call with SMS template.

 Add a participant to a conference or merge calls and start conference.

 Make emergency call (SOS).

 Obtain help in the event of breakdown.

 Voicemail.

 Obtain information about the Volkswagen brand and selected value-added services relating to traffic and travel.

Symbols in the contact list

1. Tap  to open the contact list.

 Input to search for contacts.

 Address.

 Edit favourites.

Add favourites.

Remove favourites.

Symbols for call lists

1. Tap to open the call lists.

Incoming call.

Outgoing call.

Missed call.

Frequent calls or favourites from the mobile telephone, if supported by the mobile telephone.

Phone number (work).

Phone number (private).

Mobile telephone number.

Fax.

Fax (business).

Fax (private).

Symbols for text messages

1. Tap to open the text messages.

Top left: select active input.

Received text message.

Sent text message.

Open template for text messages.

Compose text message by voice.

Open further options, e.g. display number.

Introduction to the voice assistant

You can use the voice assistant to operate certain functions and retrieve information by means of voice commands.

Is my vehicle equipped with the voice assistant?

If your vehicle is equipped with the voice assistant, you will find the corresponding app in the Infotainment system: **IDA** *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

Test the voice assistant before starting a journey in order to familiarise yourself with the function.

Features of the voice assistant

Depending on the set language and country, the voice assistant is available offline or online in the Infotainment system.

Depending on the set language in the Infotainment system, voice commands can be formulated freely and may use colloquial language. Depending on the system language, the statement “I’m cold” will lead to the temperature in the vehicle being increased, for example. Depending on the system language, voice commands that are evaluated online permit optimised searches for points of interest or requests relating to various categories, e.g. the weather.

In some system languages, the voice commands must be formulated according to a certain pattern in order to guarantee recognition, e.g. “Navigate to [*Town, Street name, House number*]”.

The number of languages available in your country depends on the country in question.

You can see whether the voice assistant is online on the welcome page of the IDA app. For this, tap **IDA** ▶ ⓘ.

Activation word and voice commands

Activation word

The spoken words are analysed continuously in the vehicle and overwritten after around 15 seconds. The voice assistant is started as soon as the Infotainment system recognises the activation word as part of this analysis. If the voice assistant is available online and activated, (voice) data is also transferred from the vehicle as from this time. Otherwise there is no transmission of data or words spoken in the vehicle.

Recognition of the activation word can be deactivated in the settings.

The voice assistant recognises “Hello Volkswagen” and also “Hello IDA” as activation words if they are activated in the settings. You can create your own activation word in the IDA app → *Activation word and voice commands*.

“Hello Volkswagen” is used as an example for the activation word in the following.

- **BG** Здравей Volkswagen.
- **CZ** Ahoj Volkswagen.
- **D** Hallo Volkswagen.
- **DK** Hej Volkswagen.
- **E** Hola Volkswagen.
- **F** Bonjour Volkswagen.
- **FIN** Hei Volkswagen.
- **GB** Hello Volkswagen.
- **GR** Γεια σου Volkswagen.
- **I** Ciao Volkswagen.
- **N** Hallo Volkswagen.
- **NL** Hallo Volkswagen.
- **P** Olá Volkswagen.
- **PL** Cześć Volkswagen.

RUS Привет Volkswagen.

S Hej Volkswagen.

TR Merhaba Volkswagen.

USA Hello Volkswagen.

Displaying the activation word

You can also find the activation word for your language in your IDA app.

1. Tap **IDA** ▶ **Activation**.

Activating or deactivating the activation word

If the activation word is deactivated, the voice assistant cannot be started by means of the activation word.

1. Tap **IDA** ▶ **Activation** ▶ **Activate IDA with voice control** and activate or deactivate.

Personalising the activation word

Observe the information under **IDA** ▶ **Activation** ▶ ⓘ.

1. Tap **IDA** ▶ **Activation**.
2. Tap **Set your own activation word**.

Voice commands

The voice assistant recognises only voice commands in the language set in the Infotainment system.

Opening suggested voice commands

The suggestions may vary depending on the set language or due to online mode.

1. Tap **IDA** ▶ **Tips**.

Starting and ending the voice assistant

Starting the voice assistant

1. Activate the **Activation word** in the IDA app *(→ Voice assistant)*.
2. Say the activation word *(→ Voice assistant)*.

   Or: press on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending the voice assistant

1. To open suggestions for a voice command to end the voice assistant, tap **IDA** ▶ **Tips** ▶ **Basic functions**.

   Or: press on the multifunction steering wheel.

The voice assistant is ended automatically in the following cases:

— When you use functions in the Infotainment system.

— When you activate the parking system.

— When phone calls are received.

— When voice outputs occur.

If the Voice Enhancer *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)* is activated, this affects recognition of the activation word for the voice assistant. In this case, start the voice assistant via the multifunction steering wheel *(→ Voice assistant)*.

Troubleshooting

Voice assistant does not react

— The voice assistant is not available in your language.

— Set the correct system language in the Infotainment system.

— Say the correct activation word for the system language set in the Infotainment system.

— Check the activation word in the settings and activate and adapt it if necessary.

— Restart the Infotainment system *(→ First steps in the Infotainment system)*.

Voice assistant gives inappropriate answers

— The voice assistant has interpreted the question incorrectly.

— Say the voice command again clearly.

— Formulate the voice command in another way.

Voice assistant does not perform function

— The function cannot be performed using the voice assistant.

— The function cannot be performed in all languages. Suggestions for voice commands in the set language can be found in the Infotainment system.

— Settings made within the respective function prevent it from being switched on or executed.

— Formulate the voice command in another way.

Stowing luggage and loads

Stowing luggage safely in the vehicle

— Always distribute any loads in the vehicle as evenly as possible. Do not cover any ventilation openings.

— Always stow luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment and place them as far forwards as possible →⚠.

— Observe gross axle weight ratings and the gross vehicle weight rating .

— Secure luggage in the luggage compartment to the fastening rings using suitable fixing and securing straps.

— Also stow small objects safely.

— If necessary, fold back the rear seat backrest and engage it securely.

— If necessary, adjust the headlight range. Vehicles with dynamic headlight range control adapt automatically to the load.

— Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load. Observe the tyre pressure sticker *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

— If necessary, adapt the tyre monitoring system to the new load level.

Depending on equipment, there is a sticker with a QR code on the right side of the luggage compartment. Explanatory videos of the luggage compartment functions and information on how to use them can be accessed by scanning the QR code.

⚠ WARNING

Objects or animals that are not secured or are secured incorrectly can cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck when the airbag is triggered and then flung through the vehicle interior.

- Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Observe legal requirements when doing this.
- Stow items in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never enter the airbag deployment zones while the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure animals in the vehicle using a system that is suitable for their weight and size.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp objects loose in any of the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the surface behind the rear seat backrest or on the dash panel.
- Remove any hard, heavy or sharp objects from items of clothing and bags inside the vehicle and stow them securely in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

If an incorrect sitting position is assumed due to stowed objects, serious or fatal injuries can occur in the event of sudden driving and braking manoeuvres and in accidents.

- Never stow objects on a seat if this is to be occupied and used by a person.

⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling due to the change in the centre of gravity and increases the braking distance. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured can change the vehicle handling, e.g. as a result of the load slipping. This can lead to loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never overload the vehicle. Both the load and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance of the vehicle.
- Always distribute the load evenly and as low down as possible in the vehicle.
- Always stow heavy items in the luggage compartment as far as possible in front of the rear axle.
- Secure loose objects to prevent them from slipping.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Accelerate particularly carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than usual if the vehicle is heavily loaded.

NOTICE

Rubbing objects on the rear windows can cause damage, e.g. to the heating conductors of the rear window heating.

- Load the luggage compartment only up to a height where no objects are in contact with the rear windows.

NOTICE

Carrier systems that are fixed on the rear spoiler can damage the vehicle.

- Do not secure any luggage carriers or other carrier systems such as bicycle carriers on the vehicle's rear spoiler.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment cover

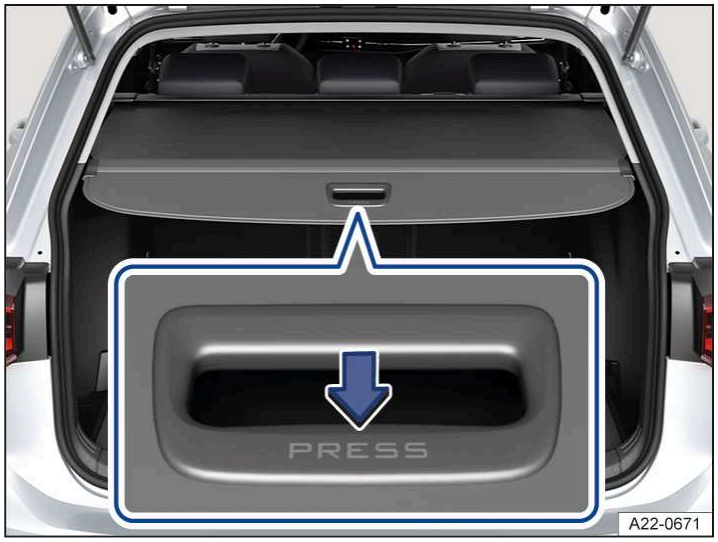


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: opening the luggage compartment cover (illustration).

Opening the luggage compartment cover

1. Press down rear area of luggage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*. The luggage compartment cover opens automatically.

Closing the luggage compartment cover

1. Pull the rolled-up luggage compartment cover evenly to the rear in the guides on the side trims and engage in the recesses at the end of the guides.

WARNING

Objects or animals on the luggage compartment cover can damage the luggage compartment cover and cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of sudden driving and braking manoeuvres or accidents.

- Never transport any objects on the luggage compartment cover.
- Never transport any animals on the luggage compartment cover.

Opening the luggage compartment cover (vehicles with boot lid with electric opening and closing)

Opening the luggage compartment cover

1. Open the boot lid. The luggage compartment cover opens automatically.

Closing the luggage compartment cover

1. Close the boot lid. The luggage compartment cover closes automatically.

Deactivating automatic opening and closing of the luggage compartment cover



Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: disengaging the roller cover of the luggage compartment cover.

1. Open the boot lid.
2. Disengage the luggage compartment cover from the side guides → *Fig. 1* (arrow) in forward direction.

To restore the function, insert the luggage compartment cover in the guides on both sides again and close the boot lid.

⚠ WARNING

Objects or animals on the luggage compartment cover can damage the luggage compartment cover and cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of sudden driving and braking manoeuvres or accidents.

- Never transport any objects on the luggage compartment cover.
- Never transport any animals on the luggage compartment cover.

Installing and removing the luggage compartment cover

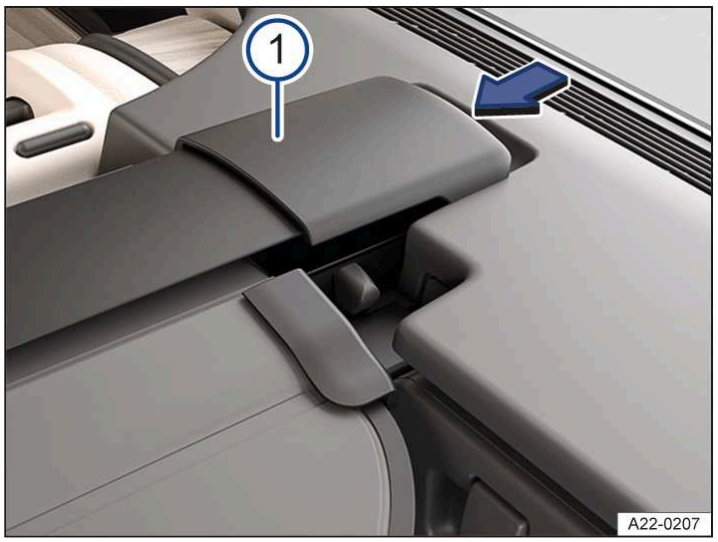


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: removing the luggage compartment cover (illustration).

(1) Side part of the luggage compartment cover.

Removing the luggage compartment cover

1. Open the luggage compartment cover, if necessary.
2. Press the roller cover fully forwards in the side guides if necessary.
3. Press and hold the side part of the luggage compartment cover → *Fig. 1* (1) in the direction of the arrow.
4. Remove the luggage compartment cover towards the top.
5. Release the side part of the luggage compartment cover.

Fitting the luggage compartment cover

1. Position the luggage compartment cover in the left mounting in the side trim.
2. Press the side part of the luggage compartment cover → *Fig. 1* (1) in the direction of the arrow and place the luggage compartment cover in the right mounting in the side trim.
3. Release the side part of the luggage compartment cover.
4. Press the roller cover into the guides in the side trim if necessary.
5. Check that the luggage compartment cover is securely engaged.

Stowing the luggage compartment cover

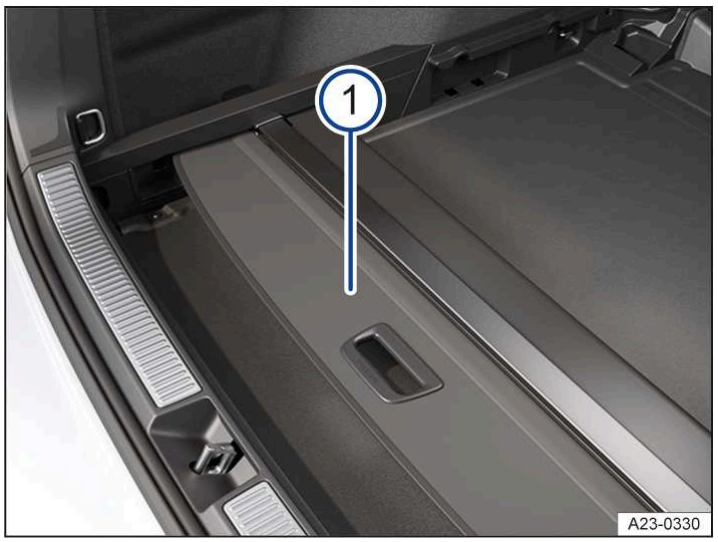


Fig. 1 Under the luggage compartment floor: stowing the luggage compartment cover (illustration).

Depending on the equipment level, the removed luggage compartment cover can be stowed under the luggage compartment floor.

(1) Luggage compartment cover.

Stowing the luggage compartment cover

1. Remove the luggage compartment cover *(→ Luggage compartment cover)*.
2. Raise the luggage compartment floor or fold it forwards .
3. If necessary, remove the covers of the side supports on the right and left.
4. Fit the removed luggage compartment cover → *Fig. 1* (1) in the rear recesses of the side supports, starting on the left.
5. If necessary, install the covers of the side supports on the right and left.
6. Close the luggage compartment floor.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment floor

The rear part of the luggage compartment floor can be folded forward. A stowage compartment, e.g. for the vehicle toolkit, can be found under the luggage compartment floor.

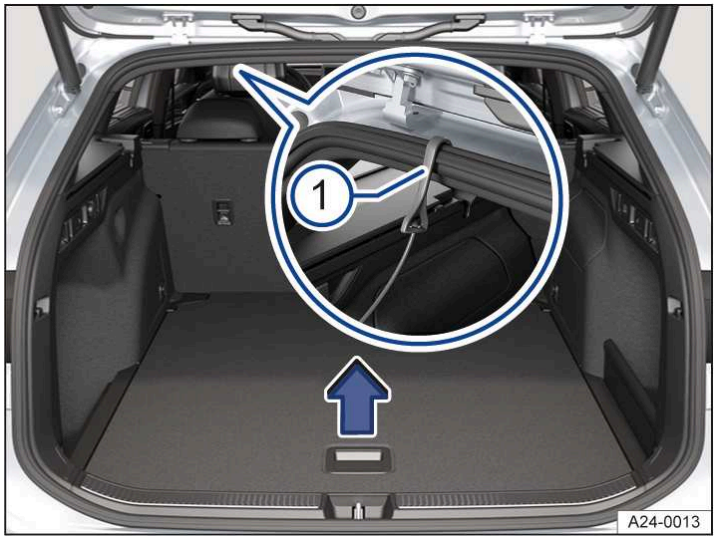


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: opening the luggage compartment floor.

(1) Hook for locking the luggage compartment floor in position.

Opening the luggage compartment floor

1. Grasp the handle recess in the luggage compartment floor and lift the rear part of the luggage compartment floor in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.
2. Lock the luggage compartment floor in the folded-up position using the hook on the edge of the roof → *Fig. 1* (1).

Closing the luggage compartment floor

1. If necessary, unhook the luggage compartment floor from the locking hook on the roof → *Fig. 1* (1).
2. Fold the luggage compartment floor down in the opposite direction to the arrow → *Fig. 1*, →(!).

NOTICE

Incorrect use can damage the luggage compartment floor or the trim of the luggage compartment.

- Do not allow the luggage compartment floor to fall when closing it, but always guide it downwards carefully.
- Always distribute loads over as wide an area as possible on the luggage compartment floor in order to avoid point loads.

Luggage compartment floor – Functions

Depending on equipment, the vehicle may have a height-adjustable luggage compartment floor.

Adjusting the height of the luggage compartment floor

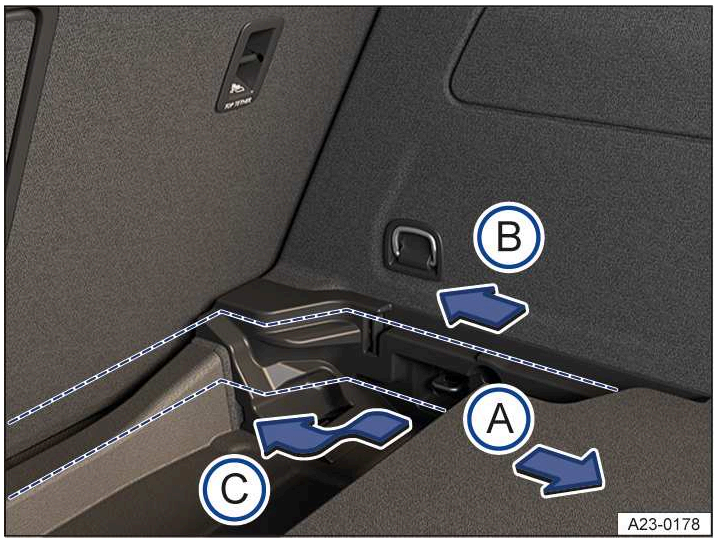


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: adjusting the height of the luggage compartment floor.

1. If necessary, remove the securing straps.
2. Lift the luggage compartment floor and pull it to the rear out of the guides on the sides of the luggage compartment → *Fig. 1* (*A*).
3. Insert the luggage compartment floor into the guides at the required height and push it forwards as far as it will go → *Fig. 1* (B) or (C).

NOTICE

Incorrect use can damage the luggage compartment floor or the trim of the luggage compartment.

- Do not allow the luggage compartment floor to fall when closing it, but always guide it downwards carefully.
- Always distribute loads (maximum 75 kg (165 lbs) in the upper position) over as wide an area as possible on the luggage compartment floor in order to avoid point loads.
- Transport heavy loads only when the luggage compartment floor is in the lower position.

Volkswagen recommends that you secure items to the fastening rings with the aid of fixing systems or securing straps.

Installing and removing the net partition

A fitted net partition can help to prevent objects from being flung from the luggage compartment into the passenger compartment, e.g. in the event of a braking manoeuvre.

The net partition can be fitted behind the rear bench seat → *Fig. 1* or also behind the front seats → *Fig. 2*.

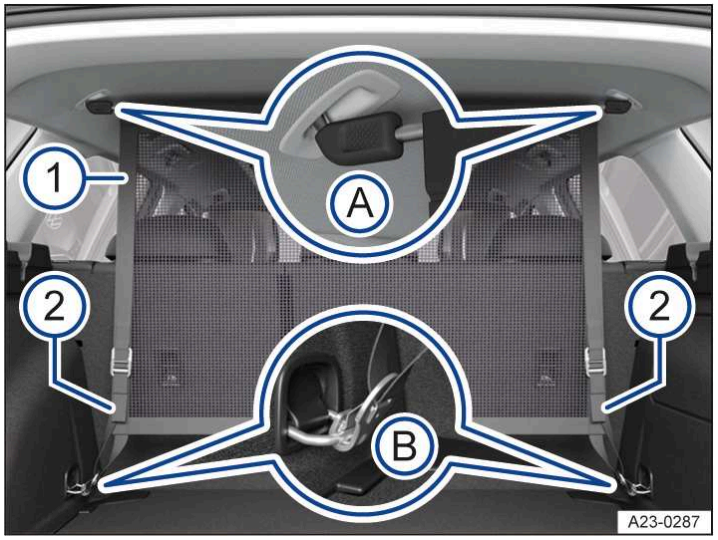


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: net partition behind the rear bench seat.

1. Net partition.
2. Securing straps.
A. Mountings in the roof.
B. Fastening rings for attaching the retaining hooks.

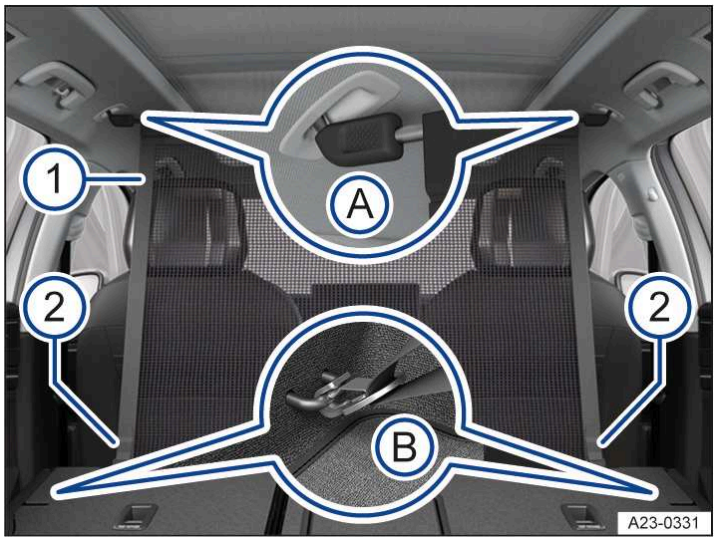


Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: net partition behind the front seats.

1. Net partition.
2. Securing straps.
A. Mountings in the roof.
B. Fastening rings in the footwell of the second seat row for attaching the retaining hooks.

Installing the net partition

1. Remove the luggage compartment cover, if necessary.
2. Unpack and unfold the net partition.
3. Position the net partition → *Fig. 1* (1) or → *Fig. 2* (1) in installation position.
4. Hook the net partition into the corresponding mountings in the roof → *Fig. 1* (A) or → *Fig. 2* (A).
5. Hook both retaining hooks of the net partition into the corresponding fastening rings in the luggage compartment → *Fig. 1* (B) or → *Fig. 2* (B) in the footwell.
6. Tension the net partition uniformly with the fastening straps → *Fig. 1* (2) or → *Fig. 2* (2) , →⚠.
7. If the position of the backrests in front of the net partition has been changed, check the tension of the net partition again and retension if necessary.

Removing the net partition

1. Remove the luggage compartment cover, if necessary.
2. Loosen the net partition fastening straps → *Fig. 1* (2) or → *Fig. 2* (2).
3. Unhook the lower retaining hooks of the net partition → *Fig. 1* (B) or → *Fig. 2* (B).
4. Unhook the net partition from the upper mountings in the roof → *Fig. 1* (A) or → *Fig. 2* (A).
5. Fold up the net partition and stow it away.
6. If necessary, fit the luggage compartment cover.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, objects could be flung through the interior of the vehicle and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Check that the net partition is not damaged.
- Never use a damaged net partition.
- Adjust all backrests in front of the net partition so that they are upright and engaged in position.
- Check that the upper mountings are securely engaged.
- Check to make sure that the net partition is tensioned at regular intervals.
- Additionally secure all objects in the luggage compartment even when the net partition is installed.
- Make sure that there are no persons behind the fitted net partition when the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

If the net partition is not secured at the mounting points provided for this purpose, this may result in damage.

- Always secure the net partition only to the designated mounting points.

Stowage areas in the luggage compartment

Stowage compartments in the side panels of the luggage compartment

There may be open or closed stowage compartments in the side of the luggage compartment.

Depending on equipment, the side panels of the stowage compartments can be removed in order to stow larger objects in the luggage compartment.

Installing and removing a side panel



Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: side stowage compartment with side panel.

Removing the side panel:

1. Lift out the side panel of the stowage compartment upwards in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.

Installing the side panel:

1. Insert the side panel of the stowage compartment in the opposite direction to the arrow → *Fig. 1*.

Opening and closing the stowage compartment

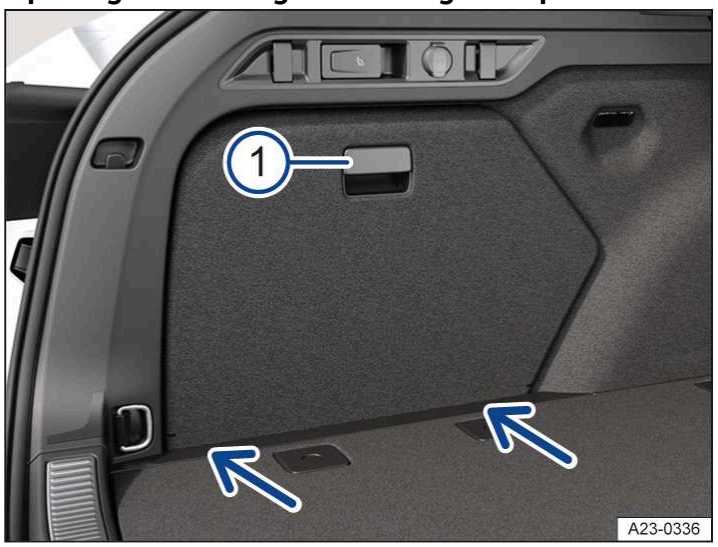


Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: side stowage compartment with cover.

Opening the stowage compartment:

— Pull the release lever → *Fig. 2* (1) and open the cover slightly.

— Pull the cover upwards out of the bottom mounts → *Fig. 2* (arrows).

Closing the stowage compartment:

— Insert the cover into the bottom mounts → *Fig. 2* (arrows).

— Close the cover until it locks in position.

Fastening rings

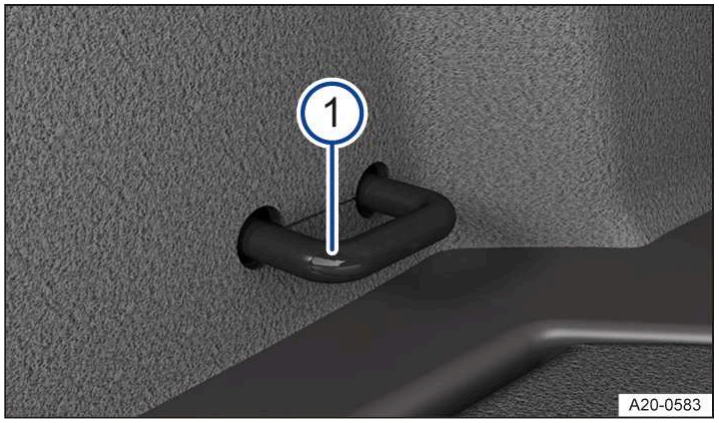


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: rigid fastening ring (illustration).

(1) Rigid fastening ring.

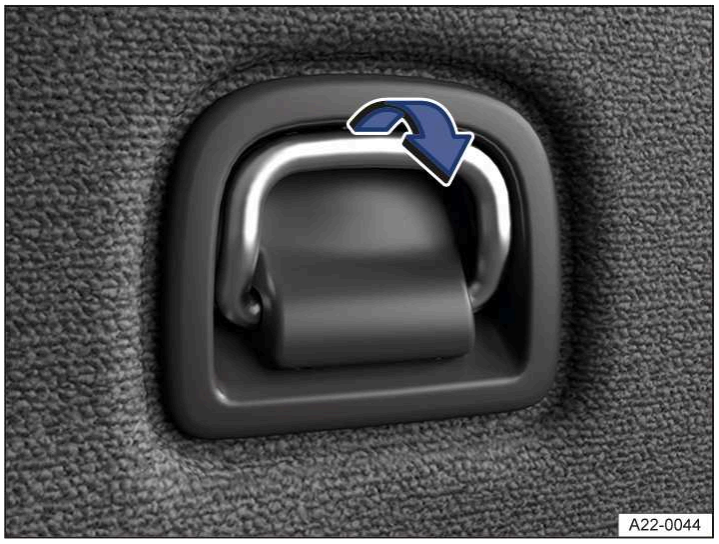


Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: folding fastening ring (illustration).

There are rigid fastening rings → *Fig. 1* (1) or fold-out fastening rings → *Fig. 2* (arrow) in the luggage compartment that can be used to secure loose items and luggage with the help of lashing, retaining or securing straps.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged lashing, retaining or securing straps could tear in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause objects to be flung through the vehicle interior and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps.
- Pull lashing, retaining and securing straps taut crosswise over the load on the luggage compartment floor and attach the lashing, retaining and securing straps securely to the fastening rings.
- Make sure that the upper edge of the load is higher than the fastening rings, particularly when stowing flat objects.
- Observe the signs on stowing loads that may be affixed in the luggage compartment depending on the vehicle equipment.
- Never secure a child seat using the fastening rings.

⚠ WARNING

Elastic tensioning straps must be stretched in order to secure them at the fastening rings and are therefore under tension. If elastic tensioning straps slip off and "snap" towards the body, the hooks attached to them can cause serious injuries.

- Protect your eyes and face when installing and removing the luggage net.
- Always hold the luggage net hooks tightly to prevent them from jumping out of the fastening ring during installation or removal.
- Always first secure the elastic tensioning straps to the fastening rings in the front area of the luggage compartment. Then pull the elastic tensioning straps towards the load sill. Secure the elastic tensioning straps to the fastening rings so that they "snap" away from the body if they slip.

Suitable lashing, retaining or securing straps and load securing systems are available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

Luggage net

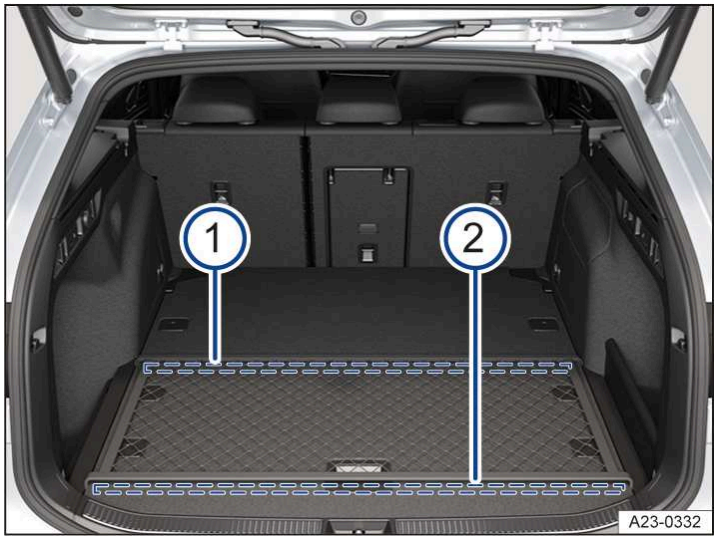


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: fitted luggage net.

(1) Front retaining loop.
(2) Rear retaining loop.

The luggage net can help to prevent light items of cargo from sliding around in the luggage compartment →⚠.

Installing the luggage net

1. Lift the luggage compartment floor slightly.
2. Push the front retaining loop →*Fig. 1* (1) onto the luggage compartment floor and align so that it is straight in the desired position.
3. Push the rear retaining loop →*Fig. 1* (2) onto the luggage compartment floor and align so that it is straight in the desired position.
4. Lower the luggage compartment floor.

Removing the luggage net

1. Lift the luggage compartment floor slightly.
2. Pull the retaining loops →*Fig. 1* (1) and (2) off the luggage compartment floor.
3. Lower the luggage compartment floor.
4. Stow the luggage net securely in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

If they are not used correctly, the retaining loops can tear off in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause objects to be flung through the vehicle interior and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Use the luggage net only to secure light items of cargo.

Side net

The side nets can help to prevent light items of cargo from sliding around in the luggage compartment. There is a pocket in each side net for stowing smaller objects.

Side nets can be secured on the right side of the luggage compartment and behind the rear bench seat. The correct installation position is marked with a pictogram on the each side net.

Attaching and removing the side nets

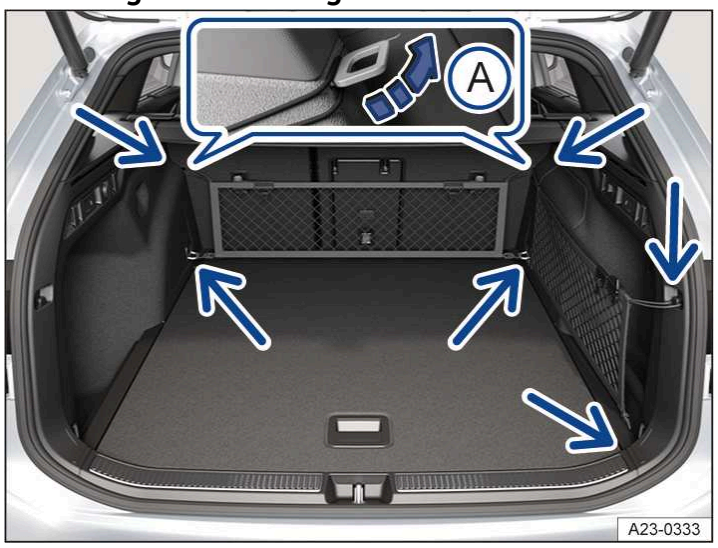


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: attached side nets.

It may be necessary to fold out fastening rings in order to use them.

Attaching side nets:

1. Fold the corresponding side or both sides of the rear seat backrest forwards.
2. Hook the lower hooks of the side net into the corresponding fastening ring (arrows) → *Fig. 1*, → ⚠.
3. Attach the upper loops of the side net at the corresponding rear hooks → *Fig. 1* (arrows) and at the backrest catch → *Fig. 1* (close-up, arrow Ⓐ).
4. Fold the rear seat backrest back until it locks in position.

Removing the side nets:

1. Fold the corresponding side or both sides of the rear seat backrest forwards.
2. Unhook the upper loops of the side net → *Fig. 1*, → ⚠.
3. Unhook the lower hooks of the side net.
4. Fold the rear seat backrest back until it locks in position.
5. Stow the side net.

Opening and closing side nets

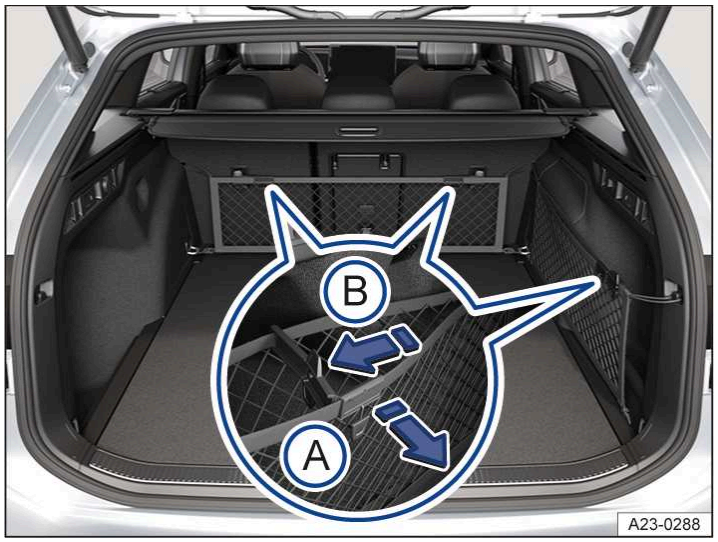


Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: opening and closing side nets.

Opening a side net:

1. Pull the clasp inwards until it is almost fully open → *Fig. 2* (arrow A).
2. Press the clasp in the middle in the direction of the arrow until it locks → *Fig. 2* (arrow B).

Closing a side net:

1. Press the clasp in the middle in the opposite direction to the arrow → *Fig. 2* (arrow B) until it unlocks.
2. Press the clasp together.

⚠ WARNING

An elastic side net must be stretched in order to secure it, which means that it is under tension. If an elastic side net slips off and "snaps" towards the body, the hooks attached to the net can cause serious injuries.

- Protect your eyes and face when installing and removing the luggage net.
- Always hold the luggage net hooks tightly to prevent them from jumping out of the fastening ring during installation or removal.
- Always attach the luggage net hooks in the described order so that the luggage net "snaps" away from the body if it slips.

⚠ WARNING

If they are not used correctly, the luggage net hooks can tear off in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause objects to be flung through the vehicle interior and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Use the rear side net hooks only for securing a side net.
- Never secure a child seat using the side net hooks.

Fixing set

The fixing set can be used to secure loose items in the luggage compartment. The fixing elements are suitable for securing objects up to a maximum weight of 10 kg (around 22 lbs) and are located in the side trim on the right side between the upper and lower luggage compartment floor positions. The fixing set can be mounted at three positions on the luggage compartment floor → *Fig. 1* (thin arrows).

Installing and removing the fixing set

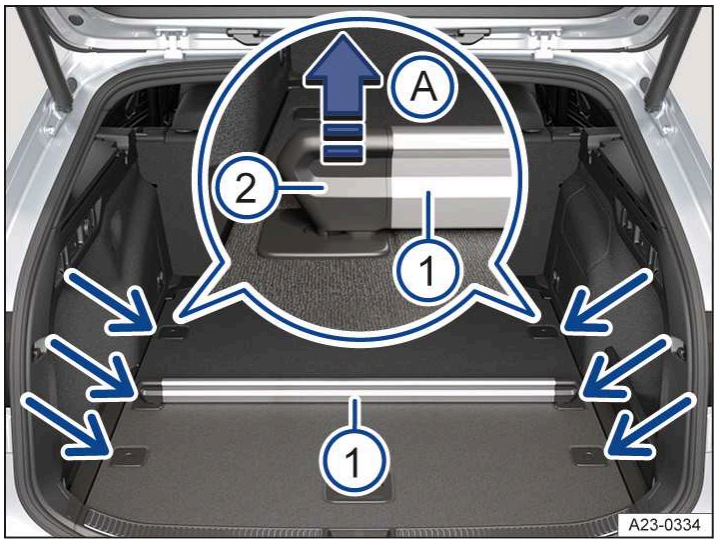


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: installing and removing the cross member of the fixing set.

(1) Cross member of the fixing set.

(2) End cap of the cross member.

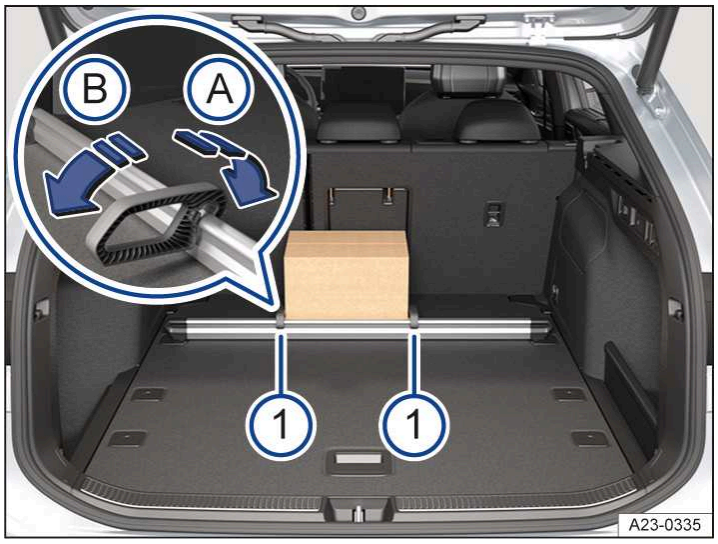


Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: installing and removing fixing elements.

(1) Fixing elements of the fixing set.

Installing the fixing set:

1. Remove the fixing elements from the right side trim.
2. Insert the cross member at the desired position in the luggage compartment → *Fig. 1* (1).
3. Position the luggage item in the luggage compartment.
4. Hook → *Fig. 2* (1) fixing elements into cross member at rear → *Fig. 2* (arrow (A)).
5. Press the fixing elements → *Fig. 2* (1) forward onto the cross member → *Fig. 2* (arrow (B)). For easier fastening, position the fixing elements at a slight angle to the side.
6. Lift the fixing elements → *Fig. 2* (1) at the front slightly → *Fig. 2* (opposite to the direction of arrow (B)) and push up to the object so that they are in contact with the object without any play.
7. Press the fixing elements → *Fig. 2* (1) down again → *Fig. 2* (arrow (B)).

Removing the fixing set:

1. Remove the fixing element → *Fig. 2* (1) from the cross member in the opposite direction to the arrow (B).
2. To release the cross member → *Fig. 1* (1), pull up the end cap → *Fig. 1* (1) on both sides → *Fig. 1* (arrow (A)).
3. Remove and stow the cross member → *Fig. 1* (1).

Stowing the fixing set

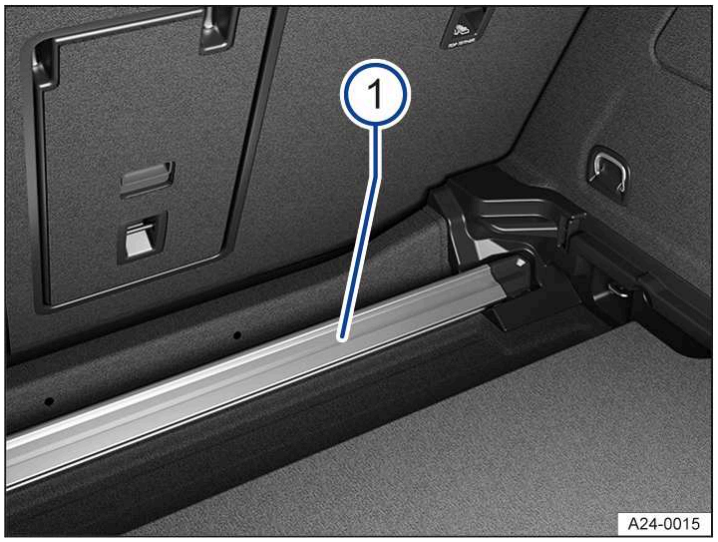


Fig. 3 Under the luggage compartment floor: stowing the cross member.

(1) Cross member of the fixing set.

The fixing elements can be inserted in the lower area of the right side trim. The cross member can be stowed in the area of the rear bench seat under the luggage compartment floor.

1. Lift the luggage compartment floor at the rear and pull it back slightly.
2. Insert the cross member → *Fig. 3* (1) as shown.
3. Close the luggage compartment floor again.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, objects could be flung through the interior of the vehicle and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Before starting your journey, make sure that the rear seat backrest *(→ Rear bench seat)* and the fixing set holders are securely engaged.
- Use suitable lashing or securing straps when securing heavy objects.

Multifunction pocket

The multifunction pocket can help to prevent light items of cargo from sliding around in the luggage compartment. Depending on the equipment, the removed multifunction pocket can be stowed under the luggage compartment floor.

Installing and removing the multifunction pocket

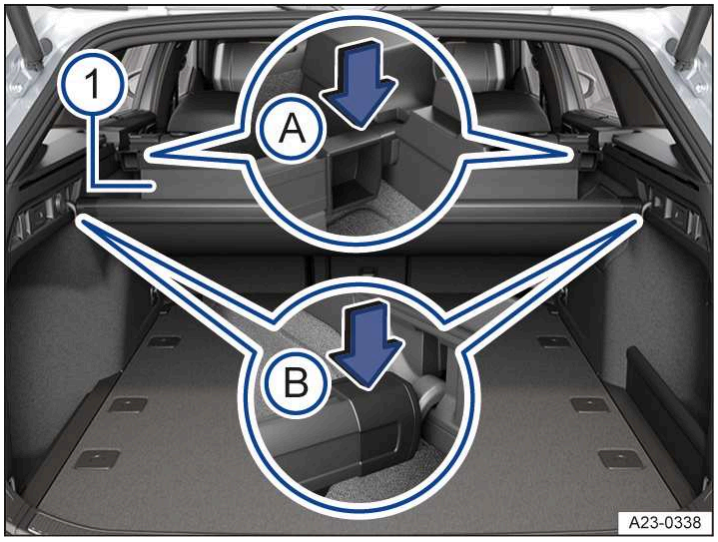


Fig. 1 In the luggage compartment: hooking in the multifunction pocket.

(1) Multifunction pocket.



Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: closing the multifunction pocket.

(1) Rear cross member of the multifunction pocket.

Installing the multifunction pocket:

1. Remove the luggage compartment cover, if necessary .
2. Insert the front cross member of the multifunction pocket in the front mounts as shown → *Fig. 1* (arrow (A)).
3. Fold out the front bag hooks.
4. Fit the rear cross member of the multifunction pocket on the bag hooks as shown → *Fig. 1* (arrow (B)).
5. Fill the multifunction pocket if applicable.
6. Unhook the rear cross member → *Fig. 2* (*1*) of the multifunction pocket and guide forwards in the direction of the arrow to the front cross member.
7. Press the rear and front cross members together until they lock on the right and left.
8. Fold in the bag hooks.
9. If necessary, fit the luggage compartment cover .

Removing the multifunction pocket:

1. Remove the luggage compartment cover, if necessary .

2. Remove the front cross member of the multifunction pocket upwards out of the mounts in the opposite direction of arrow → *Fig. 1* (A).
3. Empty the multifunction pocket if applicable and stow.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, objects could be flung through the interior of the vehicle and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that the multifunction pocket holders are securely engaged before starting your journey.

Stowing the multifunction pocket

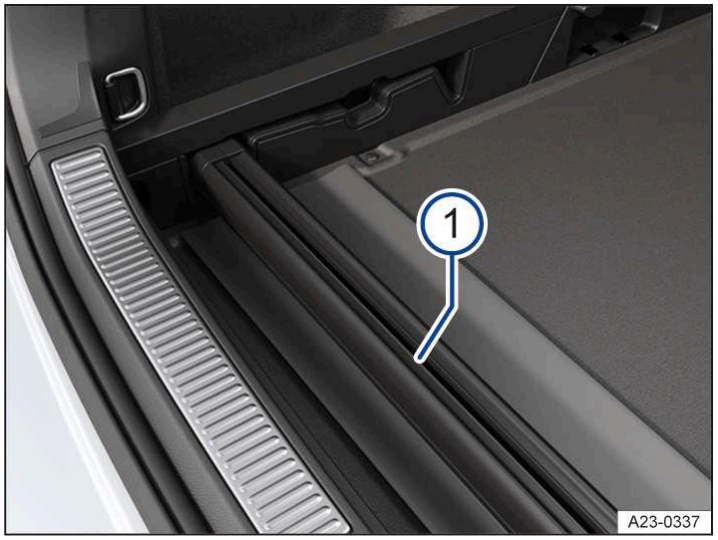


Fig. 1 Under the luggage compartment floor: multifunction pocket.

(1) Multifunction pocket.

Depending on equipment, the removed multifunction pocket and the removed luggage compartment cover can be stowed under the luggage compartment floor.

If both equipment items are stowed at the same time, first stow the multifunction pocket and then the luggage compartment cover.

1. Fold up the luggage compartment floor .
2. If necessary, remove the side walls of the side stowage compartments and stow them safely.
3. Insert the multifunction pocket → *Fig. 1* (1) in the side mounts.
4. Fold down the luggage compartment floor.

Bag hook

In the luggage compartment, there may be bag hooks for hanging light shopping bags.

Bag hooks in the luggage compartment



Fig. 1 On the left and right side trim: bag hooks.

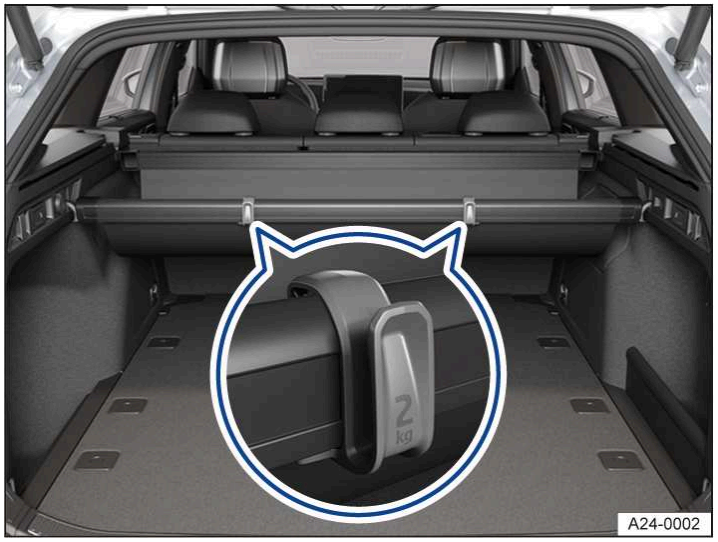


Fig. 2 On the multifunction pocket: additional bag hooks.

WARNING

Items of luggage and other objects that are secured at bag hooks can tear off and be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never use the bag hooks to lash down items of luggage or other objects.
- Only attach lightweight objects to the bag hooks in the vehicle:
  - On the side trim up to a maximum of 7.5 kg (approx. 16.5 lbs).
  - On the multifunction pocket up to a maximum of 2.0 kg (approx. 4.4 lbs).

Load-through hatch



Fig. 1 In the rear seat backrest: load-through hatch.

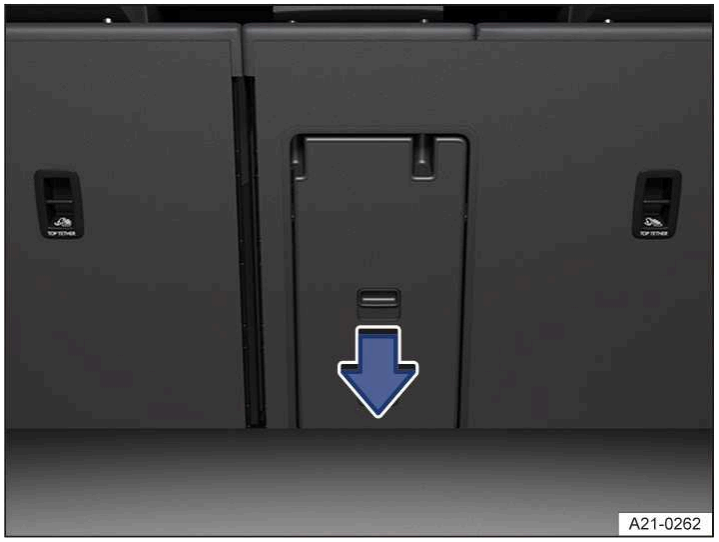


Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: rear side of the load-through hatch (illustration).

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a load-through hatch may be located behind the centre armrest on the rear seat backrest. This can be used to transport long objects in the vehicle interior, such as skis.

Opening the load-through hatch from the vehicle interior

1. Fold the centre armrest forwards *(→ Centre armrest)*.
2. Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1* and fold the flap for the load-through hatch all the way towards the front →⚠.
3. Open the boot lid.

Opening the load-through hatch from the luggage compartment

1. Push down the release lever in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 2* and fold the flap forwards.
2. Push long objects through the load-through hatch from the luggage compartment.
3. Secure the objects with the seat belt as required.
4. Close the boot lid.

Closing the load-through hatch

1. Fold back the flap of the load-through hatch until it engages in position.

   There may be a red marking on the luggage compartment side. This must not be visible →⚠.

2. Close the boot lid.
3. If necessary, fold back the centre armrest.

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the deployment zone of the centre airbag can prevent it from functioning properly and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never push objects forward into the deployment zones of the centre airbag *(→ Airbag system)*.

⚠ WARNING

Serious or fatal injuries could be caused if the load-through hatch is folded forwards or backwards carelessly or in an uncontrolled way.

- Never fold the load-through hatch forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the load-through hatch.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet or other body parts away from the swivel area when folding the load-through hatch forwards and backwards.
- Always make sure that the red mark on the locking indicator is never visible when the load-through hatch is in the upright position. The load-through hatch is not engaged properly if you can see a red marking.
- Never transport a person, particularly a child, on this seat if the load-through hatch is folded forward or not securely engaged.

Introduction to the topic

The vehicle can be used to tow a trailer if it has the required technical equipment for this.

Driving with a trailer not only places an extra load on the vehicle, but also requires increased concentration on the part of the driver.

The additional trailer load will affect the amount of wear, fuel consumption and performance of the vehicle and, in certain circumstances, could shorten the service intervals.

If the vehicle is driven under high loads, certain functions, e.g. the output of the air conditioning system, may be reduced or switched off to stop the vehicle from breaking down. Avoid long or steep uphill gradients. The engine torque may be reduced temporarily if the vehicle is driven under load for an extended time in order to avoid overheating of the engine or gearbox. Reduce your speed and observe the messages and illuminated warning and indicator lamps in the instrument cluster. The reduction in engine torque will be cancelled when the engine and gearbox are operating in the optimum temperature range again.

The load that a vehicle can actually pull decreases under the following conditions:

— Driving on uphill gradients.

— Driving at high altitudes.

— Driving at high outside temperatures.

— Driving with a fully loaded vehicle, e.g. with passengers and luggage.

— With increasing speed.

Vehicles with start/stop system

When using towing brackets that were not retrofitted by Volkswagen, the start/stop system must be deactivated manually before towing a trailer, and it must remain deactivated for as long as a trailer is being towed *(→ Start/stop system)*.

Trailer with function check for lighting

No trailer with tail lights and brake lights must be operated with this vehicle that requires a function check of the tail and brake lights in its approval. Ask the trailer manufacturer about the approval that is valid for your trailer.

Unused ball coupling

Swivel in the ball coupling or remove it if there is no trailer, bicycle carrier or similar attached to the ball coupling. This applies in particular if the unused ball coupling covers the number plate or the lighting at the rear of the vehicle. Observe the country-specific regulations on use of a towing bracket →⚠.

Points to note

Before driving with a trailer, pay attention to possible functional restrictions of the assist and parking systems.

⚠ DANGER

It is dangerous to transport people in a trailer and it may also be illegal.

- Never transport people in a trailer.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Attach and use the trailer in accordance with the instructions supplied by the respective manufacturer.
- Use the towing bracket only if it is undamaged and fitted correctly.
- Do not carry out any alterations or repairs to the towing bracket. If required by the trailer manufacturer's installation instructions, removal of the coating on the ball head is permitted.

⚠ WARNING

When the ball coupling is swivelled out, there is an increased risk of accidents and serious injuries for pedestrians and cyclists when vehicles are parked and also in the event of rear-end collisions.

- Swivel in the ball coupling or remove it when it is not in use.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle was not designed for "weight-distributing" or "load-compensating" towing brackets. The towing bracket can fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Never install a "weight-distributing" or "load-balancing" towing bracket on the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the vehicle handling, increase the braking distance and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps.
- Please note that a trailer with a high centre of gravity can tip over more easily than a trailer with a low centre of gravity.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Always pay attention to the road ahead and drive carefully.
- Accelerate particularly carefully and gently.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing a trailer, or also 100 km/h (60 mph) in exceptional cases. This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted.
- Reduce speed, particularly on uphill gradients and when driving downhill.
- Always observe the country-specific maximum permitted speed for vehicles with trailer.
- Take particular care when overtaking and reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Never try to stop a vehicle and trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.
- Due to the higher load for the towing vehicle, pay attention to possible messages and to any warning and indicator lamps that light up in the instrument cluster.

⚠ WARNING

The start/stop system must always be switched off manually when towing a trailer using towing brackets that have not been retrofitted by Volkswagen. Otherwise faults can occur in the brake system, possibly resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

- Always switch off the start/stop system manually if you have installed a towing bracket that was not retrofitted by an authorised dealer and are driving with a trailer.

Hitching a trailer

If the connection to a trailer connected to the anti-theft alarm system is interrupted, the anti-theft alarm system may be triggered *(→ Anti-theft alarm)*.

In vehicles with a new engine, do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km (600 miles) *(→ Running in the engine)*.

Some retrofitted towing brackets may cover the opening for fitting the towing eye. If so, the towing eye cannot be used for towing or tow-starting other vehicles. For this reason, the removed ball coupling of a retrofitted towing bracket should be stored in the vehicle at all times.

Trailer socket

The electrical connection between the towing vehicle and the trailer requires a 13-pin trailer socket. The pin assignment is in accordance with DIN ISO 11446.

If the trailer has a 7-pin plug you will need to use a suitable adapter.

1. Lift up the closure cap of the socket and insert the plug.
2. Turn the plug by quarter of a turn in clockwise direction until it completely engages in the socket.
3. Release the cap to lock the plug in position.
4. Check that the entire lighting system is working before starting your journey.

If you are uncertain whether the electrical connection of the trailer with the vehicle is correct, please contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Connection to the anti-theft alarm

The trailer is integrated in the anti-theft system if the following conditions are fulfilled:

✓ When the vehicle has a factory-fitted anti-theft alarm and a factory-fitted towing bracket.

✓ When the trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.

✓ When the vehicle and trailer electric systems are functional, fault-free and undamaged.

✓ When the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm is active.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

For technical reasons, trailers with LED tail light clusters cannot be integrated into the anti-theft alarm system.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is not triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer with LED tail light clusters is interrupted.

Safety cable

In some countries, unbraked and braked trailers must be secured by means of a safety or breakaway cable.

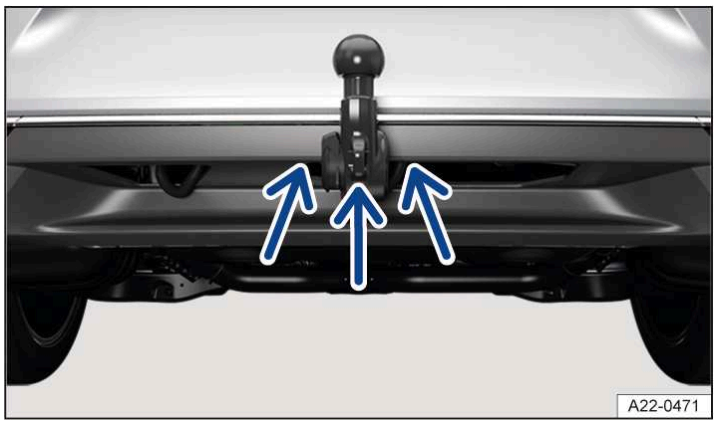


Fig. 1 On the towing bracket: eye for securing the safety or breakaway cable (illustration).

Depending on model, the eye for securing the safety or breakaway cable may be located on the neck of the ball head or next to the ball head directly on the ball coupling carrier → *Fig. 1* (arrows).

Observe the country-specific regulations on using a safety cable.

Secure the safety or breakaway cable at the eye provided for this purpose on the ball coupling → *Fig. 1*:

1. Guide the cable through the eye and hook into the snap hook →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Any electrical cables that are not connected properly or are connected incorrectly could cause a power surge to the trailer. This could lead to faults in the entire vehicle electronics system and could also cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have all work on the electrical system carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the towing vehicle's tail light clusters or to other power sources.

⚠ WARNING

Contact between the pins in the trailer socket can lead to short circuits, overloading of the electrical system and failure of the lighting system, thereby causing accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never connect the pins in the trailer socket to one another.
- Have bent pins repaired by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

If the trailer is not properly secured, this could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never place the trailer's safety or breakaway cable loosely over the ball coupling.

NOTICE

If a trailer hitched to the vehicle is parked using the support wheel or on the trailer supports, the vehicle height may be lowered or raised due to any changes in the load or tyre damage. Powerful forces then act on the towing bracket and the trailer. This can cause damage to the vehicle and trailer.

- Please note that a trailer that is parked using the support wheel or the trailer supports must not remain hitched to the vehicle.

If the engine is not running and electrical equipment is switched on in the trailer via the trailer socket, the 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge.

If the 12-volt vehicle battery charge level is low, the electrical connection to the trailer will be interrupted automatically.

Loading a trailer

Basic information

If the vehicle is approved for towing a trailer, observe any local regulations for driving with a trailer and using a towing bracket.

Always make sure that the vehicle and trailer are well-balanced. Do not load the trailer with more weight either at the front or rear. Always stow heavy items as close as possible to or over the axle. Always secure the load on the trailer properly →⚠.

Maximum trailer weight and drawbar load

The maximum trailer weight is the weight that the vehicle can pull.

The drawbar load is the weight that is exerted vertically from above on the ball coupling of the towing bracket.

Volkswagen recommends always making full use of the maximum permitted drawbar load . The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small. However, the maximum permitted load exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball coupling of the towing bracket must not be exceeded →⚠.

The actually present drawbar load increases the weight on the rear axle and reduces the maximum load of the vehicle as a result.

A higher drawbar load can be used in some countries subject to certain conditions. Observe the country-specific information and regulations.

Gross combination weight

The gross combination weight is made up of the actual weight of the loaded vehicle and loaded trailer.

In some countries, trailers are divided into different classes. Volkswagen recommends that you contact a suitably qualified workshop to find out about suitable trailers. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Tyre pressure

Follow the trailer manufacturer's recommendations concerning the tyre pressure for the trailer tyres.

When towing a trailer, inflate the tyres on the towing vehicle with the maximum permitted tyre pressure *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

⚠ WARNING

Moving loads can severely impair the stability and driving safety of the vehicle and trailer, which can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always load the trailer correctly.
- Always secure loads using suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious or fatal injuries can occur if you exceed the vehicle's maximum permitted gross axle weight rating, drawbar load, gross vehicle weight rating or gross combination weight rating.

- Never exceed the specified values .

Driving with a trailer

Headlight adjustment

Towing a trailer can raise the front end of the vehicle so that the dipped beam dazzles other road users. Use the headlight range control to lower the light cone as required. Vehicles with dynamic headlight range control are adjusted automatically.

Things to note when driving with a trailer

— If the trailer has an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.

— The combination weight causes the braking distance to increase.

— On downhill stretches, use the engine as an additional brake. The brake system could otherwise overheat and fail.

— Vehicles with an automatic gearbox: Select a lower gear in Tiptronic mode.

— The vehicle's centre of gravity and in turn the vehicle handling will change because of the trailer load and the increased gross weight of the vehicle and trailer.

— The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen towing vehicle is very unfavourable. When driving in this situation, drive particularly carefully and slowly.

Pulling off on uphill gradients when towing a trailer

A vehicle towing a trailer is liable to roll back a short distance when moving off on an uphill slope depending on the gradient and the gross weight of the trailer and vehicle.

When towing a trailer, pull off on uphill gradient as follows:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press the (P) button once to switch off the electronic parking brake.
3. Vehicles with an automatic gearbox: engage the gear selector position for forward driving.

4. Pull the (P) button and hold it in this position to hold the vehicle and trailer with the electronic parking brake.
5. Release the brake pedal.
6. Pull away slowly.
7. Release the (P) button only when the engine generates sufficient power to move off.

WARNING

Incorrect trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious or fatal injuries.

- Please note that the vehicle handling changes when towing a trailer and when transporting heavy or bulky objects.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Always pay attention to the road ahead and drive carefully.
- Take particular care when overtaking.
- Reduce your speed if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Accelerate particularly carefully and gently.
- Brake earlier than usual because the braking distance may be longer than normal.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Reduce speed particularly when driving downhill.
- Never try to stop a vehicle and trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.
- Keep to speed limits, which may be lower for vehicles with trailers than for vehicles without trailers.

WARNING

If there is insufficient visibility to the rear when towing a trailer, this can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that you have an adequate view to the rear.
- Fit suitable additional rear view mirrors so that there is sufficient visibility to the rear.

Trailer stabilisation

The trailer stabilisation function can detect if an attached trailer is starting to snake from side to side and can provide countersteer.

Trailer stabilisation is an extension of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

If trailer snaking is detected, the trailer stabilisation function automatically helps to reduce the trailer's motion by means of counter steering assistance.

Prerequisites for trailer stabilisation

— The vehicle has a factory-fitted towing bracket or a compatible towing bracket has been retrofitted.

— Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and the traction control system (TCS) are active. The indicator lamp or OFF in the instrument cluster is not lit up.

— The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.

— The vehicle speed is higher than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph).

— The maximum drawbar load is being used.

— The trailer must have a rigid drawbar.

— Trailers with brakes must have a mechanical overrun system.

System limits

The trailer stabilisation system cannot react or will react in a restricted way in the following driving situations.

— Trailer stabilisation is switched off when ESC is deactivated.

— Light trailers that are snaking will not be recognised by the trailer stabilisation function and stabilised accordingly in all cases.

— A trailer can still jack-knife on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.

— Trailers with a high centre of gravity might tip over before snaking starts.

— Sudden braking procedures could occur automatically in extreme driving situations if the trailer socket is being used without a trailer (e.g. for a bicycle carrier with lighting).

WARNING

The trailer stabilisation system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The trailer stabilisation system therefore cannot recognise all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits → *System limits*.
- Accelerate carefully on slippery surfaces.
- Take your foot off the accelerator if a system is performing a control intervention.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.

Swivelling out the ball coupling

The ball coupling of the towing bracket is located in the bumper. The electrically released ball coupling is swivelled out mechanically for use and cannot be removed.



Fig. 1 On the right of the luggage compartment: button for releasing the ball coupling.

Releasing and swivelling out the ball coupling

1. Park the vehicle .
2. Open the boot lid.
3. Briefly pull the button → *Fig. 1* (1) in the luggage compartment.

   The ball coupling is released electrically and swivels out automatically. The indicator lamp in the button flashes.
4. Continue swivelling the ball coupling manually until you hear and feel it engage in position and the indicator lamp in the button lights up continuously.
5. Close the boot lid.

Swivelling in the ball coupling

1. Park the vehicle .
2. Unhitch the trailer and disconnect the electrical connection between the vehicle and the trailer. If fitted, remove the adapters from the trailer socket.
3. Open the boot lid.
4. Briefly pull the button → *Fig. 1* (1) in the luggage compartment.

   The ball coupling is released electrically. The indicator lamp in the button flashes.
5. Swivel the ball coupling under the bumper manually until you hear and feel it engage in position and the indicator lamp in the button lights up continuously.
6. Close the boot lid.

Meaning of indicator lamp in the button

— Indicator lamp in the button → *Fig. 1* lights up continuously when the boot lid is open: the ball coupling has engaged correctly in swivelled out or swivelled in position.

— The indicator lamp in the button flashes: the ball coupling has not engaged properly or the ball coupling is damaged → ⚠.

— The indicator lamp in the button goes out approximately 1 minute after the boot lid is closed.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never use the towing bracket if the diameter of the ball at the smallest point is less than 49 mm (1.9 in).
- Use the ball coupling only if it is properly engaged in position and if there are no faults in the electrical system or on the towing bracket itself.
- Make sure that no people, animals or items are in the path of the ball coupling.
- Never interrupt the swivel movement of the ball coupling with items or tools.
- Never press the button if a trailer is attached or if a luggage carrier or other add-on parts are fitted to the ball coupling.
- Have the ball coupling checked by a suitably qualified workshop if it cannot be fitted or if there are faults in the electrical system or on the towing bracket itself. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning of the vehicle could damage seals or wash off the grease required for lubrication.

- Never aim the jet of a high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner directly at the swivelling ball coupling or the fitted trailer socket.

At extremely low outside temperatures, it may not be possible to swivel the ball coupling in or out. If this happens, it is sufficient to place the vehicle in a warmer room, e.g. a garage.

Dimensions and mounting points for retrofitting a towing bracket

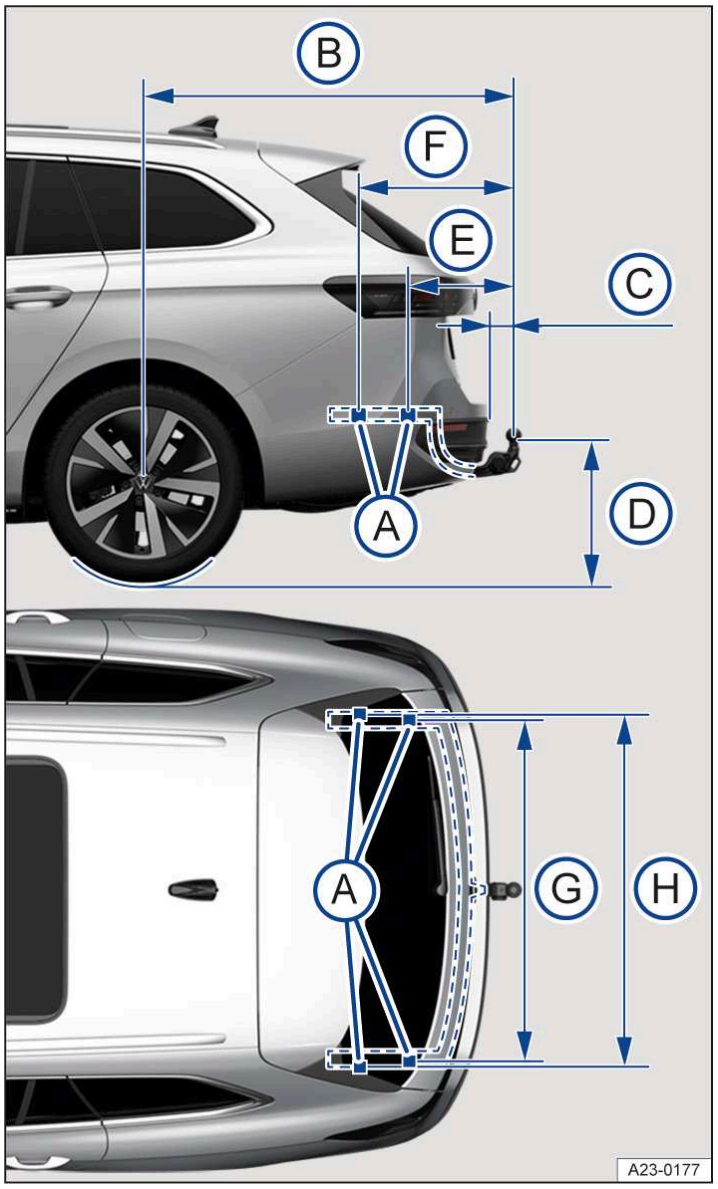


Fig. 1 Dimensions and mounting points for retrofitting a towing bracket.

The distance dimensions → *Fig. 1* must be observed in all cases when retrofitting a towing bracket. Always observe the minimum distance given from the middle of the ball coupling to the surface of the road (D). This also applies when the vehicle is fully laden, including maximum drawbar load.

(A) Attachment points.
(B) 1,196.5 mm (approx. 47.1 in)
(C) at least 65 mm (approx. 2.6 in)
(D) 350 to 420 mm (approx. 13.8 to 16.5 in)
(E) 344.5 mm (approx. 13.6 in)
(F) 564.5 mm (approx. 22.2 in)
(G) 1,042.9 mm (approx. 41 in)
(H) 1,047.9 mm (approx. 41.26 in)

Volkswagen recommends having the towing bracket retrofitted by a suitably qualified workshop. It may be necessary to perform conversion work on the cooling system or to fit heat shields, for example. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Mount the towing bracket in accordance with the supplied installation instructions.

A retrofitted, non-removable towing bracket must not cover either the number plate or the lighting system at the rear of the vehicle. Observe the country-specific regulations on use of a towing bracket.

Due to legal and technical requirements, the vehicle may not be approved for trailer towing in some countries.

In this case, it is also not allowed to retrofit a towing bracket.

Consult a suitably qualified workshop if you have any questions about retrofitting a towing bracket. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

Electrical cables that are not connected properly or are connected incorrectly can cause faults in the entire vehicle electronics system and also cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail light clusters or to other unsuitable power sources.
- Use only suitable connectors to connect the trailer.
- Have retrofitting of a towing bracket on the vehicle performed by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

If the towing bracket is incorrectly fitted or unsuitable, the trailer can become detached from the towing vehicle while driving, causing accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have work on the towing bracket or the retrofitting of a towing bracket carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Use only towing brackets that are intended by the manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle model, model year and vehicle version.

Volkswagen recommends using Volkswagen Genuine Parts or Volkswagen Genuine Accessories, which you can purchase from an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Troubleshooting

Ball coupling of the towing bracket is not locked

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Do not use towing bracket. Check the towing bracket locking mechanism *(→ Ball coupling, electric)*.
2. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fitting a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling

Rear carrier systems include equipment such as bicycle carriers or hunters' boxes, for example, which are installed on the ball coupling.

Use only rear carrier systems that are intended by the manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle model, model year and vehicle version →⚠.

Volkswagen recommends using Volkswagen Genuine Parts or Volkswagen Genuine Accessories, which you can purchase from an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Mount the rear carrier system in accordance with the manufacturer's assembly instructions.

Maximum load of the rear carrier system

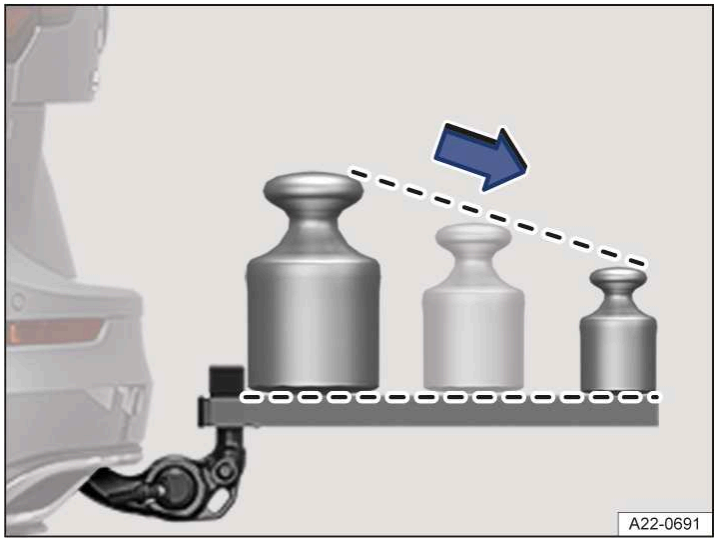


Fig. 1 Recommended weight distribution on the rear carrier system.

The load is made up of the rear carrier system and the items transported on it.

The maximum recommended load of the rear carrier system installed on the ball coupling can deviate from the vehicle-specific drawbar load of the vehicle.

However, the model-specific maximum drawbar load of the towing bracket must not be exceeded.

Due to the lever effect, the load capacity decreases the further the centre of gravity of the rear carrier system is away from the ball head.

Position heavy items as close as possible to the ball coupling → *Fig. 1*.

Vehicle-specific maximum load

In order to find out the recommended maximum load for your vehicle, check the drawbar load of your vehicle . The corresponding maximum load can then be read from the following table. Volkswagen recommends observing the specified number of bicycles on the rear carrier system in accordance with Regulation UN-R 55.

Vehicle-specific drawbar load	Maximum load	Number of bicycles
50 kg (110 lbs)	50 kg (110 lbs)	2
55 kg (121 lbs)	55 kg (121 lbs)	2
from 75 kg (165 lbs)	75 kg (165 lbs)	3

Maximum overhang of the rear carrier system

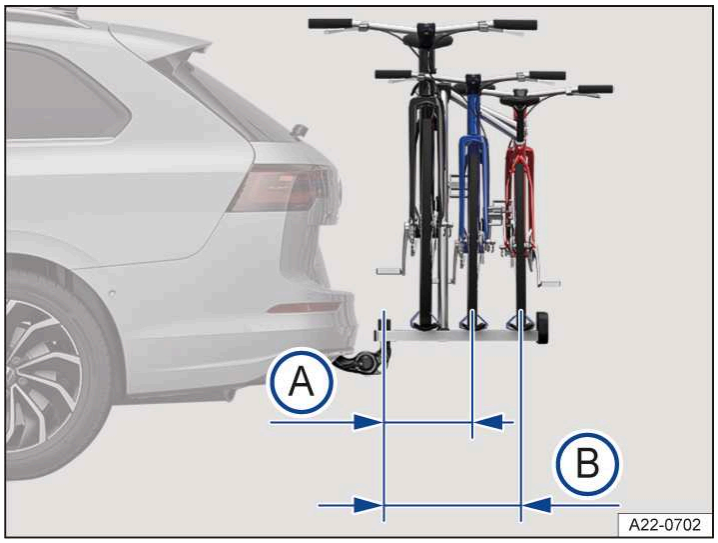


Fig. 2 Illustration of the maximum overhang on a bicycle carrier for two or three bicycles.

(A) With a load of up to 55 kg (121 lbs): 500 mm (approx. 19.7 in).

(B) With a load of 75 kg (165 lbs): 700 mm (approx. 27.6 in).

For bicycle carrier systems with two bicycles, the maximum overhang must not exceed 500 mm (approx. 19.7 in) → *Fig. 2* (A) from the middle of the ball head to the middle of the rail of the last bicycle carrier. The overhang must not exceed 700 mm (approx. 27.6 in) → *Fig. 2* (B) for bicycle carrier systems with three bicycles.

WARNING

Incorrect use of a rear carrier system mounted on the trailer coupling of the towing bracket can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that the rear carrier system is suitable for use on your vehicle.
- Always read and observe the fitting instructions of the rear carrier system's manufacturer.
- Never secure a rear carrier system on the ball neck below the ball head. The rear carrier system could slip due to the shape of the ball neck.

Volkswagen recommends that you remove all add-on parts of the load on the rear carrier system before setting off. This includes bicycle bags and baskets, child seats or batteries. This helps improve the rear carrier system's wind load and centre of gravity.

Introduction to the topic

Some vehicle models are designed for fitting a roof carrier.

Roof carriers can be used to transport bulky items on the roof of the vehicle.

If you are unsure whether a roof carrier can be fitted on your vehicle, please contact a correspondingly qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

Only use roof carriers that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type.

If the vehicle is not approved for use with a roof carrier, do not use or retrofit a roof carrier.

WARNING

When transporting large, heavy, long or flat loads on the roof carrier, the vehicle's handling and aerodynamics will change due to a shift in the centre of gravity and an increased susceptibility to crosswinds. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

WARNING

If the vehicle is not approved for use of a roof carrier or a roof carrier is fitted that is not approved for the vehicle, this can become detached while the vehicle is in motion and fall off the vehicle roof. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Use only roof carriers that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.
- Do not fit a roof carrier if the vehicle is not approved for this.

NOTICE

Securing a roof carrier of any kind to a vehicle that is not approved for use with a roof carrier can lead to severe damage.

- Do not fit a roof carrier if the vehicle is not approved for this.

Driving with a fitted roof carrier increases the air resistance of the vehicle and thus also the fuel consumption. The possible range of the vehicle is reduced as a result. This applies to all roof carriers and the objects transported on them, e.g. bicycles and skis.

Fitting a roof carrier

Special roof carriers must be used to transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surfboards or boats safely. The roof carriers for mounting on the roof railings are specifically called roof bars, while those for direct mounting on the vehicle roof are called base carriers.

Use only roof carriers that are intended by the manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle model, model year and vehicle version.

Volkswagen recommends using Volkswagen Genuine Parts or Volkswagen Genuine Accessories, which you can purchase from an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fitting the roof bars on the roof railings

Fit the roof bars in accordance with the supplied installation instructions.

Once you have fitted the roof bars, you can then secure the respective load carrier on this →⚠.

Remove the roof carrier in the following situations

— The roof carrier is no longer needed.

— Before entering a car wash.

— When the vehicle height exceeds the required clearance height, e.g. in a garage.

NOTICE

The height of the vehicle is changed by the installation of a roof carrier and the load secured to it. The vehicle can be severely damaged if the clearance height is insufficient, e.g. in the case of underpasses and garage doors.

- Check and compare the height of the vehicle with clearance heights.

NOTICE

The vehicle may be damaged if the roof carrier and the load interfere with equipment-dependent components on the vehicle roof, e.g. roof aerial, and the movement path of the boot lid.

- Make sure that the roof carrier is positioned correctly on the roof and that there is no interference with any components.

WARNING

The luggage and the entire structure can become detached from the vehicle roof if the roof carrier and carrier structure are not secured and used correctly. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always fit the roof carrier and carrier structure correctly and in accordance with the manufacturer's assembly instructions.
- Attach the roof carrier only at the specified mounting points.
- Always fit special carrier attachments for bicycles, skis, surfboards etc. correctly and in accordance with the manufacturer's assembly instructions.
- Use the roof carrier and load carrier only if they are undamaged and fitted correctly.
- Check that the roof carrier is secured before starting your journey and tighten as necessary after driving a short distance.
- During a long trip, check all bolts and fasteners at each stop.
- Do not carry out any modifications or repairs to the roof carrier or the load carrier.

Fitting a roof carrier increases air resistance and may reduce the vehicle's range.

Loading a roof carrier

Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is 100 kg (220 lbs).

The roof load limit refers to the combined weight of the roof carrier and the load carried on the roof →⚠.

Make sure you are aware of the weight of the roof carrier and the load to be transported. Weigh the load if necessary.

However, you will not be able to carry the maximum roof load if you are using a roof carrier with a lower weight rating. In this case, do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the roof carrier which is specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it correctly →⚠.

Checking mounting

After fitting the roof carrier, drive a short distance and then check all mounting elements. Check again at regular intervals.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents, vehicle damage and serious or fatal injuries can occur if the maximum permitted roof load is exceeded.

- Never exceed the specified roof load, the maximum permissible axle loads, and the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle.
- Do not exceed the load capacity of the roof carrier, even if the maximum roof load has not been reached.

⚠ WARNING

If loose or improperly secured loads fall off the roof carrier, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps.

NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged if the boot lid collides with the roof load.

- When opening the boot lid, make sure that it does not collide with the roof load.

Safety information on using fuel

WARNING

Incorrect handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- Switch off the engine, ignition, your mobile phone and other radio equipment before refuelling.
- Before refuelling, switch off the auxiliary heater.
- Avoid electrostatic discharges by not entering the vehicle during refuelling.
- Make sure that the tank cap is closed properly and no fuel can escape.
- Observe the applicable safety instructions and local regulations on handling fuel.

WARNING

Incorrect refuelling can lead to fire, serious or fatal injuries and vehicle damage.

- Use only fuels that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Do not use fuels that contain metals and use only Volkswagen-approved service additives in the approved quantity.
- Immediately remove any fuel that is spilled from all vehicle components.

CAUTION

Fuel may leak out of the fuel canister and ignite. This could cause fire and injuries.

- Do not carry a fuel canister in the vehicle.

Fuels can pollute the environment. Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them correctly.

The tank flap cannot be opened manually. Seek expert assistance in an emergency.

Introduction to the topic

The tank flap is located at the rear right-hand side of the vehicle.

Identification of fuels and fuel standards



Fig. 1 On the inside of the tank flap: fuel information label (illustration).

Fuel information label

Different engines require different fuels. There is a factory-fitted fuel information label in the tank flap that indicates the fuel that must be used for the vehicle → *Fig. 1*.

In accordance with European standard DIN EN 16942, the compatibility identifiers for ethanol content can be found in the following locations:

— On the vehicle on the fuel information label in the tank flap → *Fig. 1*.

— On the fuel pumps or fuel nozzles suitable for your vehicle.

The designation and frame indicate the fuels that are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle must not be refuelled with lower-quality fuels or other fuel types →ⓘ.

Fuel standards and compatibility

The fuel that is used for refuelling must comply with one of the following standards. The vehicle must not be refuelled with other fuels →ⓘ.

Where fuel complying with the specified standards is not available, a suitably qualified workshop will have information on which available fuels are suitable for the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Ethanol content of petrol fuels

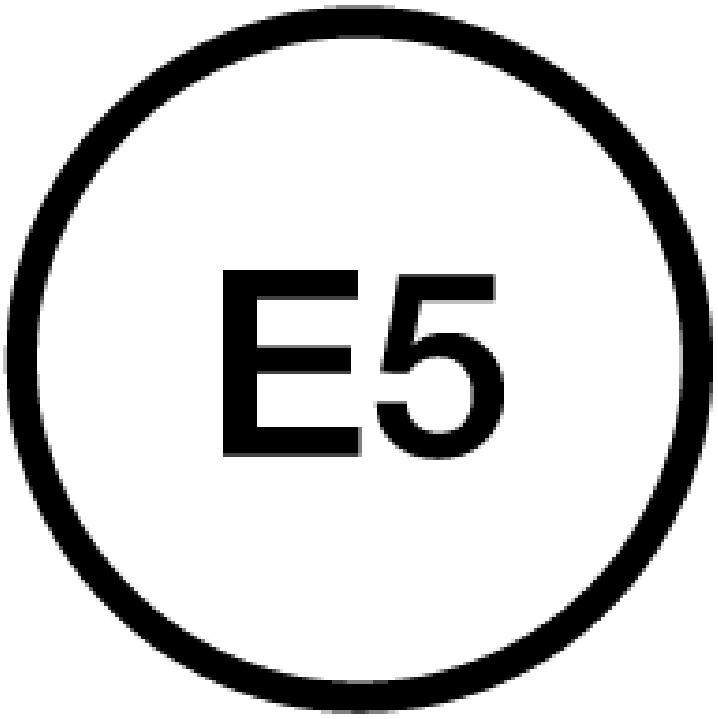


Fig. 2 Identification for petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 5%.

E5 stands for petrol fuel with a maximum ethanol content of 5%.

Petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 5% are available throughout the EU.



Fig. 3 Identification for petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 10 %.

E10 stands for petrol fuel with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %.

Petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 10 % are available throughout the EU.



Fig. 4 Identification for petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 20 %.

E20 stands for petrol fuel with a maximum ethanol content of 20 %.

Petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 20% will be available in the EU only in the future.

Fuel standard:

— EN 228 in the current version.

— DIN EN 228 in the current version.

— Resolucao ANP N° 40 (Brazil) in the current version.

— Resolucion 576/2019 (Argentina) in the current version.

— NOM-016-CRE-2016 (Mexico) in the current version.

— AZS 388-2011 (Azerbaijan) in the current version.

Fuels for diesel engines



Fig. 5 Identification for diesel fuels with a biodiesel content of 7%.

B7 stands for diesel fuel with a maximum biodiesel content of 7%.

Fuel standard:

— EN 590 in the current version.

— DIN EN 590 in the current version.

— AZS 380-2011 (Azerbaijan) in the current version.

— AZS 381-2011 (Azerbaijan) in the current version.

— AZS 443-2011 (Azerbaijan) in the current version.



Fig. 6 Identification for synthetic diesel fuels.

XTL stands for **X** - **T**o - **L**iquid and designates synthetic diesel fuels.

Fuel standard:

— EN 15940 in the current version.

— DIN EN 15940 in the current version.

NOTICE

Using fuel that does not comply with the applicable standards and are not approved may reduce performance and cause damage to the engine and fuel system.

- Only refuel with fuels of the specified grades that comply with the fuel information label in the tank flap.

Petrol

Petrol grades

The fuel information label in the fuel filler flap provides information on the fuel to be refuelled.

Petrol grades differ with respect to their Research Octane Number (RON). The vehicle may also be filled with petrol that has a higher RON than the engine requires. However, this does not provide any advantage in terms of fuel consumption or engine output.

The fuel information label may show several petrol grades (e.g. RON 95 min. 91). The highlighted octane number – RON 95 in the example – is the preferred petrol grade for which the vehicle has been designed and optimised The petrol grade listed as an alternative – RON 91 in the example – can be used for refuelling only if the preferred grade – RON 95 in the example – is not available.

Only refuel petrol engine vehicles with metal-free petrol (without lead, manganese or iron) that does not have a higher ethanol content than stated on the fuel information label →.

The fuel quality affects the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. Refuel with fuel that already contains suitable fuel additives →ⓘ.

In some regions, e.g. North America, Central America and South America, fuels are offered in special fuel grades. Volkswagen recommends using “TOP TIER detergent gasoline” for the specified countries. Information on “TOP TIER detergent gasoline” is available on the official website:

https://www.toptiergas.com

NOTICE

Incorrect refuelling or unsuitable fuel additives can cause damage to the vehicle.

- Only refuel with fuels of the grades that comply with the fuel information label in the tank flap.
- Refuel only with petrol that has the specified or a higher RON.
- Use only Volkswagen-approved service additives in the approved quantity if necessary.

NOTICE

If petrol fuel with too low an octane number is filled in an emergency, engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven with a high engine load.

- Only run the engine at medium speeds and with a low engine load.
- Refuel with petrol with the correct octane number as soon as possible.

Diesel

The fuel information label in the fuel filler flap provides information on the fuel to be refuelled.

Fill vehicles with a diesel engine only with diesel or diesel with a maximum RME fuel content of 7 % →⚠.

If you use diesel with a high sulphur content, the service intervals are shorter. Suitably qualified workshops can provide information on countries that use diesel with a high sulphur content. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The fuel quality affects the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. Refuel with fuel that already contains suitable service additives →⚠.

Winter-grade diesel fuel and filter preheater system

Diesel fuel with improved cold flow properties (winter-grade diesel fuel) must be used during the winter months. Refuelling with winter-grade diesel fuel can prevent malfunctions in vehicle operation. Winter-grade diesel fuel is available at filling stations during the winter months.

Different climate- and time-dependent cold classes may be defined in country-specific fuel standards → *Diesel*.

Diesel vehicles are equipped with a filter preheater system. The filter preheater system guarantees the cold flow properties of the diesel fuel when driving. Information on the cold properties of diesel is available from filling stations in the respective country.

In order to ensure that the vehicle can also be started at low outside temperatures, Volkswagen recommends parking the vehicle in a location that is protected from the whether, e.g. in a garage.

Misfuelling prevention device

The tank filler neck in diesel vehicles may be fitted with a misfuelling prevention device. This is intended to help ensure that the vehicle is refuelled only using diesel filler nozzles.

If the nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck, first check whether you are using a diesel filler nozzle. After you have checked that you are using the correct fuel nozzle, turn the diesel fuel nozzle back and forth slightly while exerting light pressure. This can open the misfuelling prevention device and make it possible to refuel the vehicle. If the misfuelling prevention device still remains closed, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If it is necessary to refuel the vehicle using a spare fuel canister in the event of an emergency, the misfuelling prevention device will not open.

In order to fill the fuel tank despite this, pour the diesel into the tank extremely slowly in very small quantities. Use a suitable adapter for the spare fuel canister in order to make refuelling easier. The relevant adapters are available from a suitably qualified workshop.

Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

Incorrect refuelling can lead to fire, serious or fatal injuries and vehicle damage.

- Before refuelling, check whether the fuel standard specified on the pump meets the vehicle's requirements.
- Do not refuel with pure RME fuel, petrol, fuel oil or other unsuitable fuels.
- Use only Volkswagen-approved service additives in the approved quantity.

At cold temperatures, louder noises may occur in the diesel engine and the exhaust gas may be tinged blue.

Refuelling



Fig. 1 Behind the tank flap: tank cap (illustration).

Refuelling process

1. To unlock the tank flap, unlock the vehicle with the button in the vehicle key *(→ Vehicle key)*.

   Or: to unlock the tank flap, unlock the vehicle with the button in the driver door *(→ Central locking button)*.

   In vehicles with Keyless Access, the tank flap is unlocked automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.
2. Open the tank flap.
3. Unscrew the tank cap and place it in the opening provided in the tank flap → *Fig. 1*.
4. Insert the nozzle in the tank filler neck and start refuelling.

   Hold the nozzle so that the handle is facing downwards in order to guarantee optimum refuelling.

   The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off for the first time →.
5. Screw the tank cap onto the tank filler neck.
6. Close the tank flap.

Do not continue filling the tank after it switches off. The expansion space in the fuel tank can fill with fuel, e.g. if it heats up. This could cause fuel to overflow or automatic venting may not function .

WARNING

Overfilling the fuel tank may cause the fuel to splash out and overflow. This could cause explosions, fires and serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not continue refuelling when the filler nozzle switches off for the first time.

NOTICE

If the fuel tank content is not consumed up to the reserve quantity at regular intervals, this may result in the fuel quality and system functions necessary for vehicle operation not being maintained.

- You should therefore refuel at least every six months, but only when the indicator lamp lights up.

Fuels can pollute the environment. Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them correctly.

Introduction to the topic

The components relevant to emission control reduce harmful emissions:

— AdBlue® *(→ AdBlue)*.

— Catalytic converter *(→ Catalytic converter)*.

— Particulate filter (depending on equipment) *(→ Particulate filter)*.

— Maintenance .

⚠ WARNING

Toxic gases can enter the vehicle interior if the engine runs in closed spaces. This can cause serious injuries and lead to death by suffocation.

- Do not allow the engine to run in enclosed spaces.
- Do not leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot and can ignite highly flammable materials, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass or spilt fuel. This can lead to a fire and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Always park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with highly flammable materials underneath the vehicle.
- Never apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, heat shields or particulate filter.

AdBlue®

The SCR catalytic converter uses AdBlue® urea solution to convert nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water. AdBlue® is a registered trademark and is also known as AUS32 or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Legal information

No technical modifications should be made to the emission control system that could influence emission control by AdBlue®.

Only operation with AdBlue® that complies with ISO-22241-1 is approved by Volkswagen and corresponds to the Certificate of Conformity issued for this vehicle type.

Operating the vehicle without AdBlue® that complies with ISO-22241-1 may be a criminal offence.

The emission values may be negatively affected if the emission control system is not operated as intended.

Information on AdBlue®

The AdBlue® consumption figures depend on the driving style, the operating temperature and the ambient temperature. The remaining range and refill quantity can be checked on the instrument cluster display .

As AdBlue® freezes at -11 °C (+12 °F), refuelling may be restricted at very low temperatures. During vehicle operation, the system is heated to ensure emission control even at very low temperatures.

During prolonged spells of cold weather with temperatures below -11°C (+12°F), and in extremely adverse conditions, it is possible that the AdBlue® cannot be defrosted and is not available for the emission control system *(→ AdBlue)*.

AdBlue® must be refilled independently of the service events. This may be necessary more frequently and between the service intervals.

The AdBlue® tank must never run empty .

Warning and driver inducement system for low tank level

Always add AdBlue® when a request to add it appears in the instrument cluster display.

When the white indicator light lights up, AdBlue® is still in the normal operating range. It is possible to refill AdBlue®, but it is not necessary.

Starting at a **remaining range of 2,000 km (around 1,200 miles)**, a request to refill AdBlue® will be shown on the instrument cluster display. The current remaining range is displayed along with this prompt *(→ AdBlue)*.

If this warning is ignored, the yellow indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display at a **remaining range of 1,000 km (around 600 miles)** . A message is displayed on the instrument cluster with the warning that it will no longer be possible to restart the engine in XXX km (XXX miles).

If the yellow indicator lamp is still ignored and the displayed **remaining range is 0 km (0 miles)**, it is not possible to restart the engine. The red warning lamp lights up.

Warning and driver inducement system in the event of faults

The white or yellow indicator lamps light up if the emission control system is faulty or is not filled with standard-compliant AdBlue® according to ISO-22241-1. There is a **remaining range of 1,000 km (around 600 miles)** from when the yellow indicator lamps light up.

If the yellow indicator lamps are still ignored, the red warning lamps light up. There is a **remaining range of 0 km (0 miles)** and it is not possible to restart the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

AdBlue® is an irritant and corrosive fluid that can damage the skin, eyes and breathing passages upon contact.

- Always observe the instructions for use when using AdBlue®.
- AdBlue® must be kept only in the closed original container.
- Never use empty food tins, bottles or other containers.
- Always store AdBlue® in a safe place out of reach of children.

- If AdBlue® gets into the eyes or comes into contact with the skin, immediately rinse the eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If AdBlue® is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.

NOTICE

If the AdBlue® level is too low, the vehicle cannot be restarted after the ignition has been switched off. Starting with jump leads is also not possible.

- Refill with AdBlue® in accordance with the quantity shown on the instrument cluster display at the latest when the remaining range is around 1,000 km (around 600 miles).
- Never allow the AdBlue® tank to run empty.

NOTICE

Improper use of AdBlue® may cause damage to the vehicle that is not covered by the warranty.

- Use only AdBlue® that complies with the standard ISO 22241-1.
- Never add water, fuel or additives to the AdBlue®.
- Never fill AdBlue® in the diesel fuel tank.

NOTICE

The bottle may develop a leak following changes in temperature and damage and the AdBlue® may damage the vehicle interior.

- Do not permanently carry the refill bottle in the vehicle.

Refilling AdBlue®



Fig. 1 Behind the tank flap: tank cap for AdBlue (illustration).



Fig. 2 Behind the tank flap: refilling AdBlue using the refill bottle (illustration).



Fig. 3 Behind the tank flap: refilling AdBlue using the nozzle (illustration).

Preparing for refilling

The AdBlue® filler neck is located behind the tank flap next to the tank filler neck for fuel → *Fig. 1*.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and switch off the ignition.
2. Open the tank flap.
3. Unscrew the tank cap from the AdBlue® filler neck.

Only use AdBlue® that complies with the standard ISO 22241-1.

Refilling with the refill bottle

Observe the manufacturer's use-by specifications, instructions and information on the refill bottle.

1. Remove the screw top of the refill bottle.
2. Place the refill bottle on the AdBlue® filler neck and tighten the refill bottle → *Fig. 2*.

   Do not squeeze the refill bottle to prevent it from being damaged.
3. Press the refill bottle towards the filler neck and hold it in this position.
4. Fill with at least the minimum and not more than the maximum refill quantity of AdBlue® shown in the instrument cluster display.

   To ensure that the AdBlue® tank is not overfilled, do not squeeze the refill bottle →ⓘ.
5. Unscrew the refill bottle.

Filling with a filler nozzle

The AdBlue® tank can be refilled at all AdBlue® pumps.

Do not fill fuel and AdBlue® at the same time.

The AdBlue® filler nozzle works in the same way as a filler nozzle for fuel.

1. In order to guarantee optimum refuelling, hold the AdBlue® nozzle so that the handle is facing downwards → *Fig. 3*.
2. Fill with at least the minimum and not more than the maximum refill quantity of AdBlue® shown in the instrument cluster display.

   To avoid overfilling the AdBlue® tank, do not continue filling after adding the maximum refill quantity of AdBlue® →ⓘ.

The AdBlue® tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off for the first time →ⓘ.

Filling with a canister

1. Remove the cap from the canister.

2. Use the integrated spout to refill the AdBlue® tank.
3. Fill with at least the minimum and not more than the maximum refill quantity of AdBlue® shown in the instrument cluster display.

   To avoid overfilling the AdBlue® tank, do not continue filling after adding the maximum refill quantity of AdBlue® →.

Preparing to continue your journey

1. Screw in the tank cap on the AdBlue® filler neck until it engages in position → *Fig. 1*.
2. Close the tank flap.
3. Switch on the ignition for at least 30 seconds so that AdBlue® refilling can be detected by the system.
4. Start the engine.

NOTICE

Overfilling AdBlue® may damage the tank system and the vehicle.
- Do not fill with more than the maximum refill quantity indicated on the instrument cluster display.
- Remove any spilled AdBlue® as quickly as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water.
- Remove any crystallised AdBlue® with warm water and a sponge.

The refill bottle must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.

Suitable AdBlue® refill bottles are available from an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Troubleshooting

Selective catalytic reduction system fault

The indicator lamp lights up white.

The SCR system is faulty or is not filled with standard-compliant AdBlue®.

1. Drive to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If the fault is not rectified in the next around 50 km (around 30 miles), the indicator lamps will light up yellow and the remaining range is around 1,000 km (around 600 miles).

Selective catalytic reduction system fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The instrument cluster display shows a text message **AdBlue® fault! No engine start in XXX km (XXX miles).**

There is a fault in the SCR system or the system is not filled with standard-compliant AdBlue®.

The remaining range is approximately 1,000 km (600 miles).

1. Drive immediately to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Or: during prolonged spells of cold weather with temperatures below -11°C (+12°F), and in extremely adverse conditions, it is possible that the AdBlue® cannot be defrosted and is not available for the emission control system.

1. Drive the vehicle to a warmer environment with an ambient temperature higher than -11°C (+12°F) within the stated range, such as a garage.

The error message disappears if there is sufficient AdBlue® and it has defrosted.

Selective catalytic reduction system fault

The warning lamp lights up red.

The instrument cluster display shows a text message **AdBlue® fault! Engine start disabled.**

There is a fault in the SCR system or the system is not filled with standard-compliant AdBlue®.

The yellow indicator lamps and the text message in the instrument cluster were ignored. It is no longer possible to restart the engine.

1. Drive immediately to a suitably qualified workshop without switching off the engine and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

AdBlue® level low

The indicator lamp lights up white.

AdBlue® is still in the normal operating range.

The remaining range is up to 2,000 km (around 1,200 mi).

It is possible to refill AdBlue®, but it is not necessary.

AdBlue® level low

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The instrument cluster display shows a text message **Refill AdBlue! No engine start in XXX km (XXX miles).**

The remaining range is approximately 1,000 km (600 miles).

1. Refill AdBlue® within the specified distance *(→ AdBlue)*.

AdBlue® level too low

The warning lamp lights up red.

The instrument cluster display shows a text message **Refill AdBlue! Engine start disabled.**

The AdBlue® level is too low.

The yellow indicator lamp and the message in the instrument cluster were ignored. It is no longer possible to restart the engine.

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Refill the minimum quantity of AdBlue® *(→ AdBlue)*.

Catalytic converter

Observe the following information to help ensure the long-term functionality of the exhaust system and the catalytic converter in the petrol engine:

— Only use fuel that has been approved for the vehicle.

— Do not run the fuel tank empty *(→ Fuel types and refuelling)*.

— Do not overfill engine oil *(→ Engine oil)*.

— Do not tow-start the vehicle. Use jump leads *(→ Jump starting)*.

If you notice misfiring, loss of power or uneven running when driving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle checked by a suitably qualified workshop . Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer. Otherwise unburned fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the environment. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

The emissions may have a sulphur-like smell even if the emission purification system is working properly.

Particulate filter

Function

The particulate filter is dependent on the vehicle equipment and filters out soot particles in the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

In normal vehicle operation, the filter cleans itself. If it is not possible for the filter to clean itself, for example, if the vehicle is only ever used for short trips, the filter will become saturated with soot. The diesel particulate filter requires cleaning (regeneration).

Noises, slight smells and increased engine speeds may occur during regeneration. The radiator fan may run on while the vehicle is moving or when the engine has been switched off.

To assist the regeneration of the particulate filter, Volkswagen recommends that you avoid making frequent short journeys.

The soot in the particulate filter is burnt off at high temperatures on a periodic basis. During the periodic regeneration process, the yellow indicator lamp does not light up.

Troubleshooting

Irregular engine running and faults

Irregular engine running or faults when driving may be a sign of poor fuel quality.

1. Reduce speed immediately.
2. Drive to the nearest suitably qualified workshop at medium engine speeds and low loads on the engine. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
3. If these symptoms occur immediately after refuelling, switch off the engine immediately to avoid any subsequent damage.
4. **Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance.

Particulate filter clogged with soot

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The particulate filter is saturated with soot and requires regeneration.

Prerequisite for regeneration trip: the engine is at operating temperature.

For petrol engines

1.0 l to 1.8 l

1. Drive at a speed between around 50 km/h and 120 km/h (around 30 mph and 75 mph).

   The achieved temperature increase can burn the soot off the filter.
2. End the regeneration drive only when the indicator lamp goes out.
3. Go to a suitably qualified workshop without delay if the indicator lamp continues to light up after driving for approximately 40 minutes. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

2.0 l and 3.0 l

1. Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h (around 50 mph).
2. To allow the vehicle to coast while a gear is engaged, take your foot off the accelerator completely for a few seconds.
3. Repeat this procedure (accelerate and coast) until the indicator lamp goes out.
4. If the indicator lamp does not go out after some time, go immediately to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

For diesel engines

1. Drive at a speed between around 50 km/h and 120 km/h (around 30 mph and 75 mph).

   The achieved temperature increase can burn the soot off the filter.
2. End the regeneration drive only when the indicator lamp goes out.
3. Go to a suitably qualified workshop without delay if the indicator lamp continues to light up after driving for approximately 40 minutes. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If a message requesting you to refuel appears additionally on the instrument cluster display during the regeneration drive, the regeneration process of the particulate filter could be interrupted.

1. Refuel if necessary and then continue the regeneration drive.

Emissions-relevant fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Fault in an emissions-relevant component that can damage the vehicle.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the engine and exhaust system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Misfiring

The indicator lamp flashes yellow.

Misfiring is occurring that can damage the vehicle.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the engine and exhaust system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

Sudden braking or driving manoeuvres, for example when an indicator lamp lights up or due to irregular engine running, can lead to accidents. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.
- Always observe the applicable country-specific traffic regulations.

There may be engine faults and fuel consumption may be higher if the indicator lamps are lit up or flashing.

Introduction to the topic

Observe any country-specific legislation when securing your vehicle in the event of a breakdown.

WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, a loose breakdown set, spare wheel, temporary spare wheel or loose vehicle toolkit could be flung though the vehicle interior. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always ensure that the vehicle toolkit, breakdown set and spare wheel or temporary spare wheel are always properly secured in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Working with unsuitable tools or damaged tools from the vehicle toolkit can lead to accidents. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Never work with unsuitable or damaged tools from the vehicle toolkit.
- Seek expert assistance if no suitable vehicle tools are available.

Stowage

The vehicle toolkit may be located in various places in the vehicle, such as under the luggage compartment floor or in a side stowage area of the luggage compartment.

Depending on the equipment level, the luggage compartment may contain a loose box with the vehicle toolkit. This enclosed vehicle toolkit is intended for a possible winter tyre change and does not need to be carried in the vehicle at all times .

Contents of the vehicle toolkit

The scope of the on-board tool kit depends on the country and equipment. The following describes the maximum content.

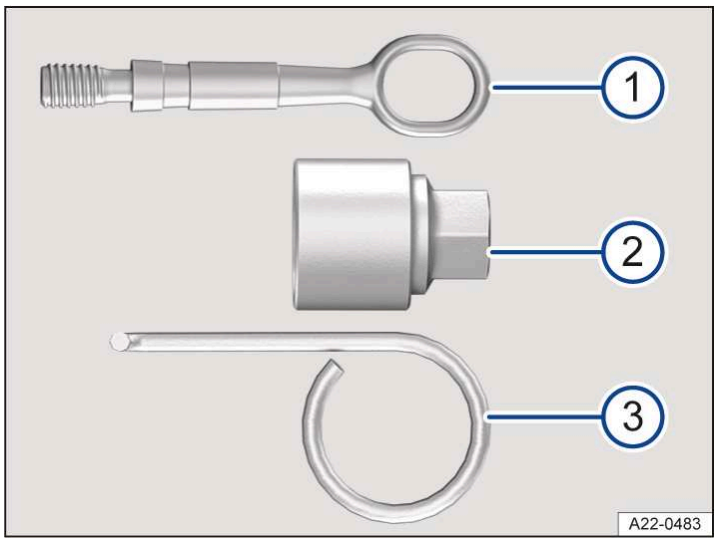


Fig. 1 Contents of the toolbox (illustration).

1. Screw-in towing eye.
2. Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt. Volkswagen recommends that you carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle toolkit at all times. The code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt is stamped on the front of the adapter. You will need this number to replace the adapter if it is lost. Make a note of the code number for the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – but not inside the vehicle.
3. Hook for pulling off the centre covers, wheel covers and the wheel bolt caps.

Additional vehicle tools

Depending on equipment, vehicles may have additional vehicle tools with a jack. It is not necessary to always carry the additional vehicle tools with jack in the vehicle.

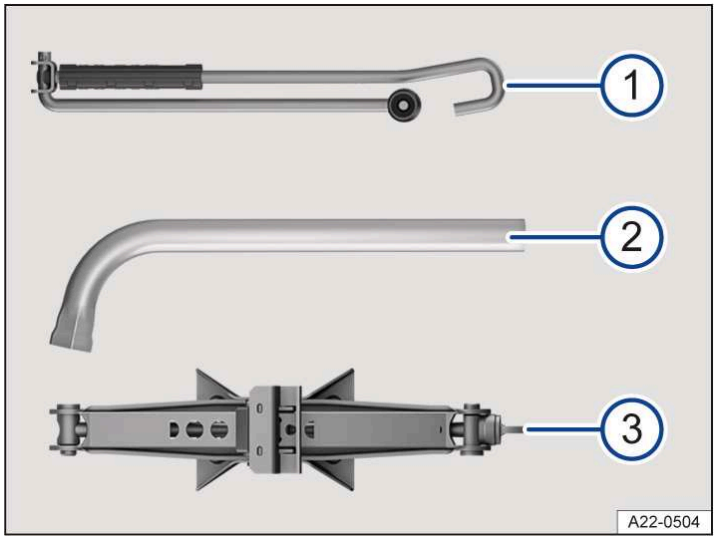


Fig. 2 Additional tools in the vehicle toolkit (illustration).

1. Crank.
2. Wheel wrench for loosening and tightening the wheel bolts.
3. Jack.

After using the jack, crank it back to its original position so that it can be stowed safely.

Servicing the jack

If a jack is included in the vehicle toolkit, it is not generally subject to any maintenance intervals.

1. Grease the jack with a universal lubricant when necessary.

Tyre pressure gauge

In some countries, there may also be a tyre pressure gauge in the vehicle.

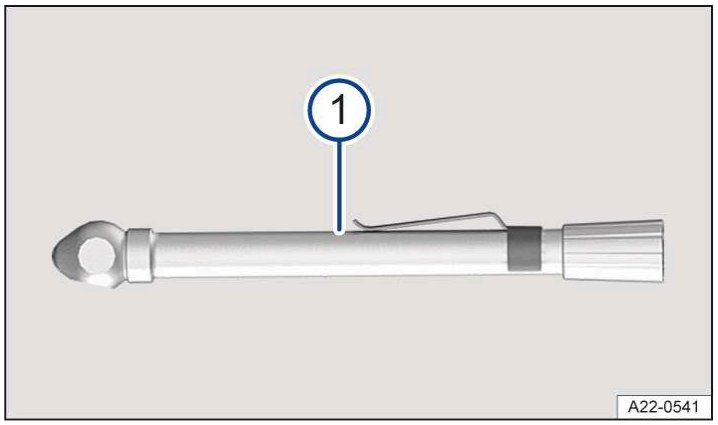


Fig. 3 Additional tool in the vehicle toolkit (illustration).

(1) Tyre pressure gauge (country-dependent).

Moving the windscreen wipers to service position

The wiper arms can be lifted off the windscreen when in the service position.



Fig. 1 Wipers in service position (illustration).

Activating the service position via the wiper lever

1. Close the bonnet and the driver and front passenger doors.
2. Switch the ignition on and then off again.
3. Operate the flick wipe function *(→ Wipers)*.

Activating the service position via the exit menu

The service position of the wiper blades can also be activated for a limited period in the exit menu. The ignition must be switched off for this.

Lifting the windscreen wiper arms

1. Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting →ⓘ.
2. Hold and lift the wiper arms only in the area of the wiper blade mounting.

Placing the wiper arms on the windscreen

1. Before starting your journey, take hold of the wiper arms carefully and only in the area of the wiper blade mounting and place them on the windscreen.
2. To move the wiper arms back to their starting position, operate the “flick wipe” function with the ignition switched on *(→ Wipers)*.

   The wiper arms move back to their initial position.

NOTICE

If due care is not taken when working on the wiper arms, this can result in damage to the bonnet, windscreen or wiper arms.

- Lift the wiper arms carefully and always only when in service position.
- Never open the bonnet when the wiper arms have been lifted.
- Always place the wiper arms carefully back on the windscreen before starting a journey.

Cleaning and changing wiper blades

The factory-fitted windscreen wiper blades are coated with graphite. The graphite coating ensures that the wiper blade moves quietly over the window. If the graphite coating is damaged, the wiper will become louder.

— Check the condition of the wiper blades on a regular basis.

— Wiper blades that judder should be changed if damaged or cleaned if dirty →⚠.

Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately. Wiper blades are available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Cleaning wiper blades

1. Move the wiper arms to the service position *(→ Wiper blades)*.
2. Lift the wiper arms, holding hold them only in the area of the wiper blade mounting.
3. Clean the wiper blades carefully using a damp sponge →ⓘ.
4. Place the wiper arms carefully back onto the windscreen.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

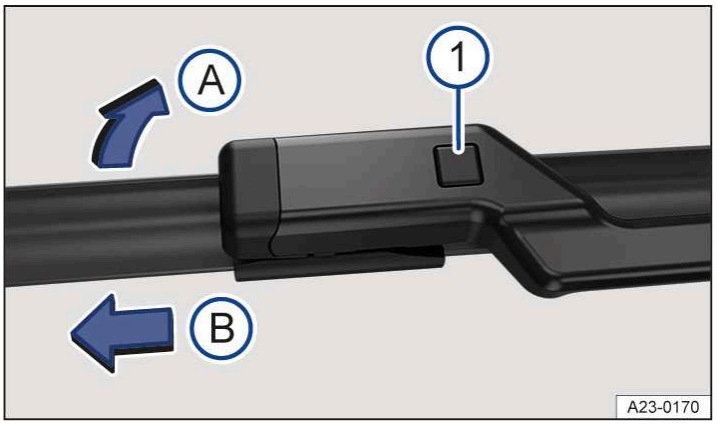


Fig. 1 Changing the windscreen wiper blades.

(1) Release button for the wiper blade.

1. Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting *(→ Wiper blades)*.
2. Lift the wiper arms, holding hold them only in the area of the wiper blade mounting.
3. Press and hold the release button → *Fig. 1* (1).
4. Tilt the wiper blade in the direction of the wiper arm → *Fig. 1* (A) and pull it off in the direction of the arrow (B) at the same time. You may need to use some force to do this.
5. Insert a new wiper blade with the same length and design onto the wiper arm against the direction of the arrow. Push it on until it engages → *Fig. 1* (B). The wiper blade must be in folded-down position to do this → *Fig. 1* (A).
6. Place the wiper arms carefully back onto the windscreen.

Exterior lighting in LED technology

Changing the wiper blade for the rear window

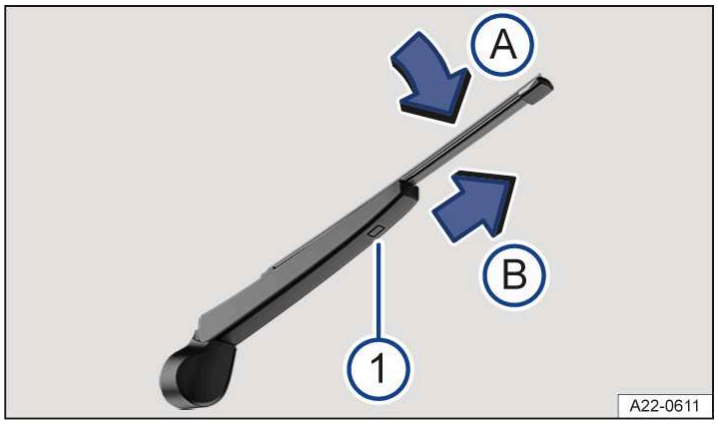


Fig. 2 Changing the wiper blade for the rear window.

(1) Release button for the wiper blade.

1. When lifting a wiper arm, hold it only in the area of the wiper blade mounting.
2. Lift and fold back the wiper arm.
3. Press and hold the release button → *Fig. 2* (1).
4. Tilt the wiper blade in the direction of the wiper arm → *Fig. 2* (A) and pull it off in the direction of the arrow (B) at the same time. You may need to use some force to do this.
5. Insert a new wiper blade with the same length and design onto the wiper arm against the direction of the arrow. Push it on until it engages → *Fig. 2* (B). The wiper blade must be in folded-down position to do this → *Fig. 2* (A).
6. Carefully place the wiper arm back onto the rear window.

WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.
- Always clean dirty wiper blades.
- Always change the wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreen properly.

NOTICE

Cleaning the wiper blades or windows with unsuitable cleaning agents can cause damage.
- Do not use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar liquids to clean the wiper blades and windows.
- Do not clean the wiper blades with hard sponges and other sharp objects.

If wax residue from car washes and other care products remains on the vehicle windows, this can cause the wipers to rub. Remove wax residue using a special cleaning product or cleaning cloths.

The exterior lighting uses LED technology. Owners cannot replace the LEDs themselves. If individual LEDs fail, this may be an indication that more LEDs are on the point of failure. In this case, have the light units checked and renewed if necessary by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

It may be illegal to drive with faulty exterior lights.

WARNING

If the vehicle lighting is not switched on as appropriate for the weather conditions, the road will not be illuminated sufficiently. Other road users may have difficulty seeing the vehicle or may not see it at all. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.
- Check the lighting system of the vehicle regularly.
- Have the lighting system repaired immediately if necessary.

Introduction to the topic

At the time of publication we are unable to provide an complete overview of the locations of the fuses for the electrical consumers. This is because the vehicle is under constant development, because fuses are assigned differently depending on the vehicle equipment level and because several electrical consumers may use a single fuse. You can obtain more information about the fuse assignment from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

Several electrical consumers can share a single fuse. Conversely, a single consumer could have more than one fuse.

Therefore fuses should only be replaced when the cause of the fault has been rectified.

1. If a new fuse blows again shortly after fitting, have the electrical system checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

WARNING

The high voltage in the electrical system can cause electric shocks and serious burns. Contact with the electrical wiring of the ignition system can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.

WARNING

Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses and bridging an electrical circuit without fuses can cause serious damage or a fire in the vehicle. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Replace fuses only with fuses with the same rating and size. Make sure that the colour and markings are identical to the defective fuse.
- Never repair fuses.
- Never use a metal strip, paper clip or similar objects to replace a fuse.

NOTICE

If a fuse is replaced when the ignition is switched on, the engine is running, lights are switched on or when other electrical consumers are switched on, this can damage the electrical system.

- Switch off the engine and switch off the lights and other electrical consumers.
- Make sure that the engine cannot be started when changing a fuse.

NOTICE

Damage can also be caused at other locations in the electrical system if a fuse is replaced with a fuse that has a higher rating.

- Never replace a fuse with a fuse that has a higher rating.

NOTICE

Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

- Protect open fuse boxes against the ingress of dirt and moisture.
- Avoid causing short circuits in the electrical system.
- Check that the covers of the fuse boxes are closed tight again and are not damaged.

There are also other fuses in the vehicle. These should be changed only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

Fuses in the bonnet space

Opening the fuse box in the bonnet space

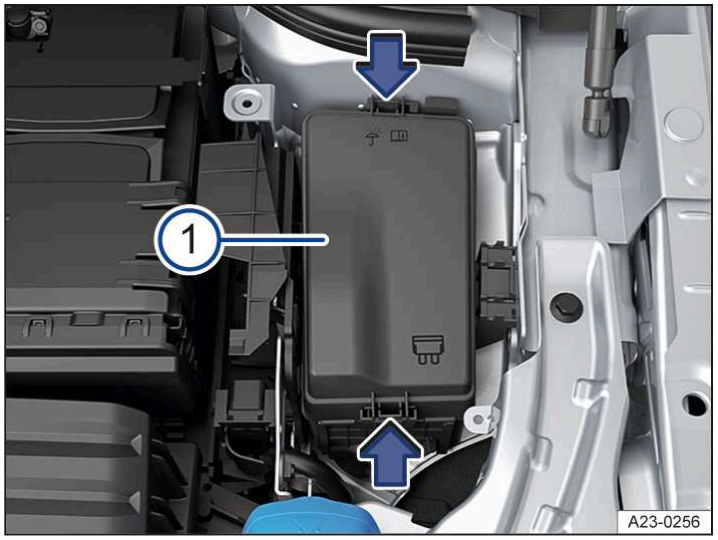


Fig. 1 In the bonnet space: fuse box (illustration).

(1) Fuse box cover.

In some vehicles, a pair of plastic grippers for removing fuses is located on the inside of the cover of the fuse box or on the fuse carrier.

Removing the cover

1. Open the bonnet.
2. To unlock the fuse box cover, push the catches in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1* (1).
3. Lift off the cover.

Installing the cover

1. Place the cover on the fuse box.
2. Press the cover down until the cover audibly engages into position on both sides.

Fuse overview of the fuses in the bonnet space

The overview shows the fuse locations of the electrical consumers relevant for the driver. The first column in the overview contains the location. The other columns contain the amp rating, the fuse type and the electrical consumer protected by the fuse.

Depending on country and on the equipment of your vehicle, the fuse numbers and positions may differ to those given in the overview. If necessary, ask a suitably qualified workshop for the exact fuse layout. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fuse assignment

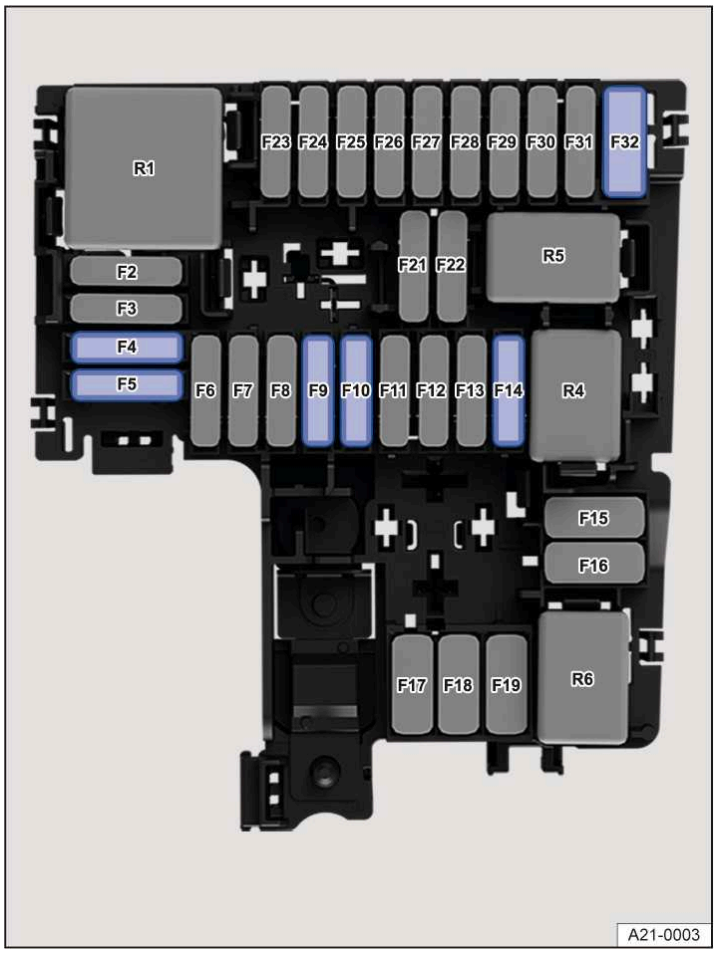


Fig. 1 In the bonnet space: fuse locations.

Fuse location → *Fig. 1*:

F4

30 amps, ATO®, left-hand headlight.

F5

30 amps, ATO®, right-hand headlight.

F9

15 amps, ATO®, horn.

F10

30 amps, ATO®, front wipers.

F14

20 amps, ATO®, auxiliary heater.

F32

40 amps, MAXI+®, windscreen heating.

Fuses in the dash panel

Opening the fuse box in the dash panel (left-hand drive vehicle)



Fig. 1 To the left of the steering wheel: fuse box cover in the dash panel (left-hand drive vehicle).

Removing the cover

1. Reach behind the cover and pull off in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.

Installing the cover

1. Align the cover on the opposite side and fold it closed in the opposite direction to the arrow until it audibly engages → *Fig. 1*.

Opening the fuse box in the dash panel (right-hand drive vehicle)

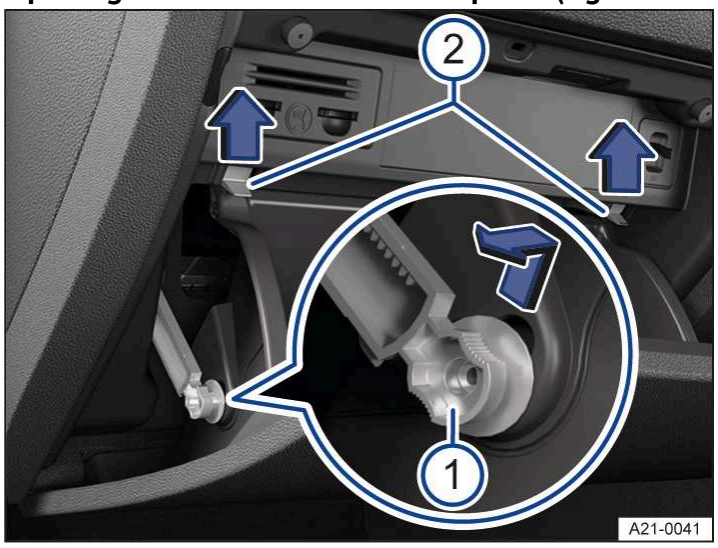


Fig. 2 In the dash panel on the front passenger side: fuse box cover in the dash panel (right-hand drive vehicle)

(1) Restrictor.
(2) Catches.

Removing the cover

1. Open the glove box and empty if necessary.
2. Push restrictor upwards into the opening of the holder and pull out to the side in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 2* (1).
3. Press the stop pin in the direction of the arrow and at the same time open the glove box further → *Fig. 2* (2).

Installing the cover

1. Move glove box into position.

2. Insert the restrictor into the opening in the holder and slide upwards in the opposite direction to the arrow until it engages → *Fig. 2* (1).
3. Carefully push the glove box forwards past the resistance of the catches → *Fig. 2* (2).

Fuse overview of the fuses in the dash panel

The overview shows the fuse locations of the electrical consumers relevant for the driver. The first column in the overview contains the location. The other columns contain the amp rating, the fuse type and the electrical consumer protected by the fuse.

Depending on country and on the equipment of your vehicle, the fuse numbers and positions may differ to those given in the overview. If necessary, ask a suitably qualified workshop for the exact fuse layout. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fuse assignment

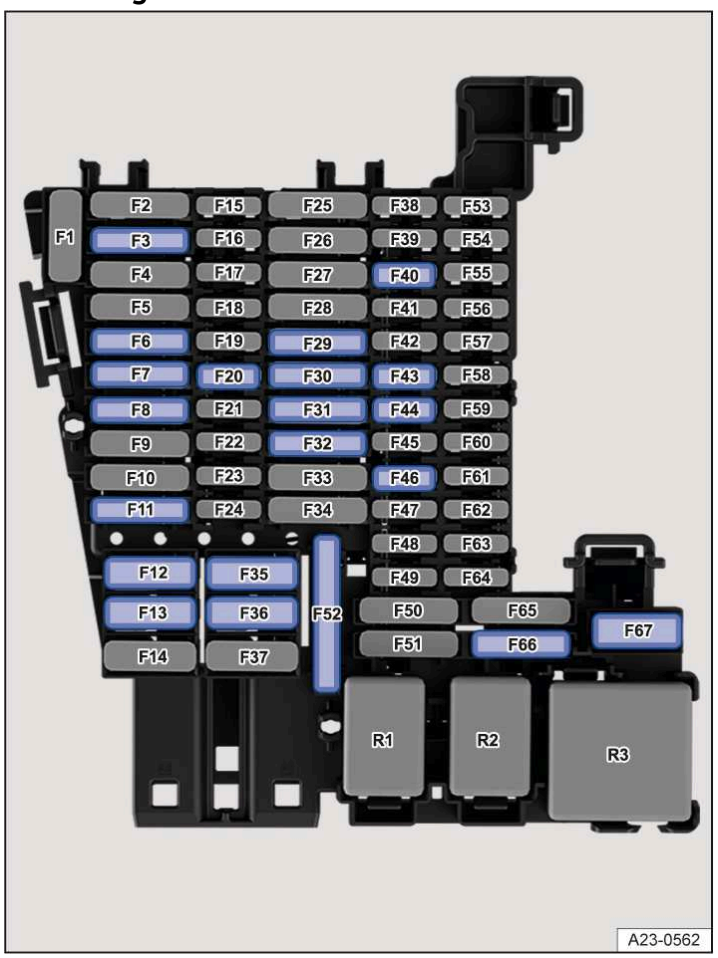


Fig. 1 In the dash panel: fuse assignment.

Fuse location → *Fig. 1*:

F6

30 amps, ATO®, interior lighting.

F7

30 amps, ATO®, front seat heating.

F8

20 amps, ATO®, electric glass roof.

F12

40 amps, MAXI+®, right exterior lighting.

F13

40 amps, MAXI+®, central locking.

F20

15 amps, MINI®, telephone.

F30

30 amps, ATO®, parts for the Infotainment system.

F32

25 amps, ATO®, rear seat heating.

F35

40 amps, MAXI+®, left exterior lighting.

F36

40 amps, MAXI+®, blower regulator.

F40

7.5 amps, MINI®, anti-theft alarm.

F43

10 amps, MINI®, air conditioning block, rear window heating relay.

F44

7.5 amps, MINI®, light switch (dipped beam), rain and light sensor, electronic parking brake.

F46

7.5 amps, MINI®, display, Infotainment system control panel.

F52

20 amps, ATO®, cigarette lighter, sockets. Please note installation position, factory-fitted fuse location as shown in the illustration.

F66

15 amps, ATO®, rear window wiper.

F67

30 amps, MAXI+®, rear window heating.

Fuse locations for vehicles with factory-fitted towing bracket → *Fig. 1*:

F3

25 amps, ATO®, left trailer control unit.

F11

15 amps, ATO®, trailer control unit.

F29

15 amps, ATO®, trailer charging cable.

F31

25 amps, ATO®, right trailer control unit.

Electric windows and electrically adjustable seats may be protected by circuit breakers or control units that switch on again automatically a few seconds after an overload, e.g. due to frozen windows, has been rectified.

Changing blown fuses

Preparations

1. Switch off the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers.

Detecting a blown fuse

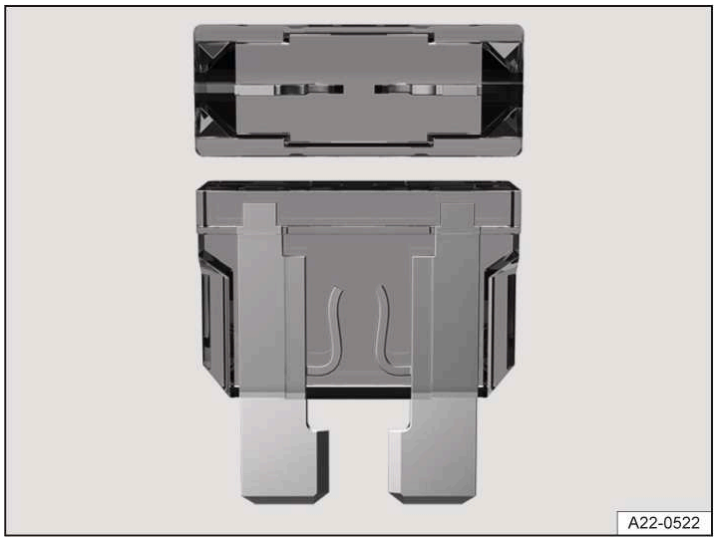


Fig. 1 Blown fuse (illustration).

1. Shine a torch onto the fuse box.

You can see if a fuse is blown from the top and side through the transparent housing due to the melted metal strip → *Fig. 1*.

Fuse types

— Standard flat blade fuse (ATO®).

— Small flat blade fuse (MINI®).

— Large flat blade fuse (MAXI® or MAXI+®).

Colour coding of fuses

Fuses (ATO® - MINI® - MAXI® and MAXI+®).

Colour

Amp rating

Black

1 amps

Purple

3 amps

light brown

5 amps

Brown

7.5 amps

Red

10 amps

Blue

15 amps

Yellow

20 amps

White or transparent

25 amps

Green

30 amps

Orange

40 amps

Red

50 amps

Changing fuses

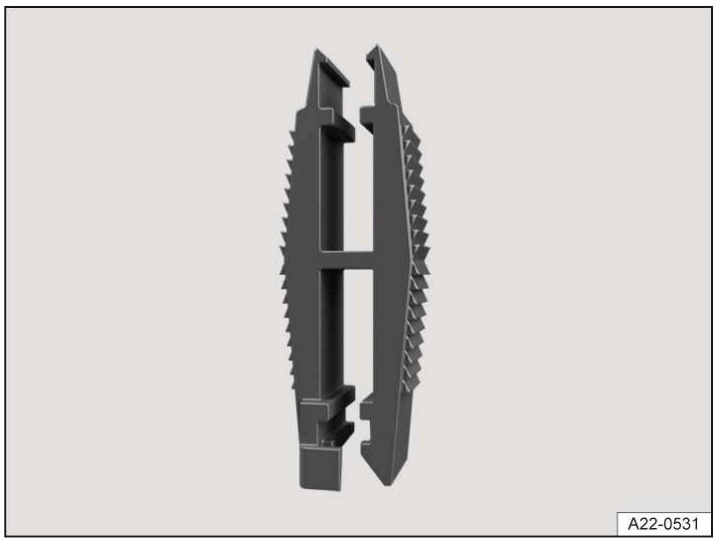


Fig. 2 Plastic grippers for pulling out and inserting a fuse (illustration).

1. If present, take the plastic grippers out of the fuse box or the cover of the fuse box →*Fig. 2*.
2. Push the plastic grippers clip suitable for the fuse type onto the fuse from the top or the side.
3. Remove the fuse.
4. If the fuse has blown, replace it with a new fuse with the same rating (same colour and same markings) and same size →ⓘ.
5. Once the new fuse has been inserted, put the plastic grippers back in the cover.
6. Insert the cover again or close the fuse box cover.

NOTICE

You can damage another location in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.

- Never replace a fuse with a fuse that has a higher rating.

Introduction to the topic

For technical reasons, your vehicle may not be push-started →ⓘ. If the engine cannot be started because the 12-volt vehicle battery is flat, the discharged battery can be connected to the 12-volt battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

In vehicles with a 12-volt vehicle battery in the vehicle interior or luggage compartment, the jump leads must always be connected to the jump-start connection points in the bonnet space.

WARNING

Using the jump leads incorrectly or performing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the 12-volt vehicle battery to explode. This can result in serious injuries.

- Always read and observe the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the 12-volt vehicle battery *(→ 12-volt vehicle battery)*.
- Never confuse the positive battery terminal with the negative battery terminal.
- Never perform jump starting on a vehicle with a frozen or thawed 12-volt vehicle battery.

WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the 12-volt vehicle battery is jump started. The explosive gas can ignite due to sparks when carrying out jump starting. This can result in serious injuries.

- Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the 12-volt vehicle battery.

NOTICE

Tow-starting the vehicle can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

- Carry out jump starting to start the engine.

Preparing for jump starting

If the engine cannot be started because the 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged, another vehicle can be used to jump start the vehicle.

NOTICE

A discharged 12-volt vehicle battery can already freeze at temperatures around 0°C (around +32°F) and can be damaged and fail.

- Always replace a 12-volt vehicle battery which is frozen or has been frozen.

Preparations

Observe the following when performing jump starting:

— Wear eye protection and protective gloves →⚠.

— Observe the jump lead manufacturer's operating instructions.

— Open the bonnet.

— When performing jump starting, always use jump leads with fully-insulated terminal clamps and defect-free insulation →⚠.

— Make sure that there is sufficient distance between the vehicle providing jump starting assistance and the vehicle receiving it. If the vehicles touch metallically, current can already flow when the positive terminals are connected →ⓘ.

— Ensure that the terminal clamps have good metal-to-metal contact with the terminals.

⚠ WARNING

Jump starting the vehicle incorrectly can cause the 12-volt vehicle battery to explode, which can lead to serious injuries.

- Always wear suitable eye protection and protective gloves.
- Never bend over the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Always first connect the positive lead and then the negative lead.
- Never connect the negative lead to parts of the fuel system or to the brake lines.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the uninsulated parts of the terminal clamps.
- Make sure that the insulation of the leads is in perfect condition.
- Do not allow the lead attached to the positive battery terminal on the 12-volt vehicle battery to touch electrically conductive parts of the vehicle.

Jump leads

A suitable jump lead is needed in order to jump start another vehicle or have your vehicle jump started.

The cable cross-section of the jump leads must be at least 25 mm2 (0,038 in2). For vehicles with a diesel engine, the cable cross-section of the jump leads must be at least 35 mm2 (0.054 in2).

Vehicle receiving jump starting assistance

1. Make sure that the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery is properly connected to the 12-volt vehicle electrical system.
2. If a 12-volt vehicle battery with a battery window is installed, check the colour of the window . If the battery window is light yellow or colourless, do not jump start the vehicle. Seek expert assistance.

Vehicle providing jump starting assistance

1. Observe the vehicle manufacturer's operating instructions.
2. Make sure that the vehicle battery providing assistance has the same voltage (12 volts) and approximately the same capacity as the flat 12-volt vehicle battery. Observe the information on the label of the vehicle battery in the vehicle providing jump starting assistance.

NOTICE

Please observe the following in order to avoid damage to the electrical system due to a short circuit:

- Always connect the jump leads as described.
- Avoid contact between the vehicles.

Connecting the jump leads for jump starting

Jump-start connection point (earth)

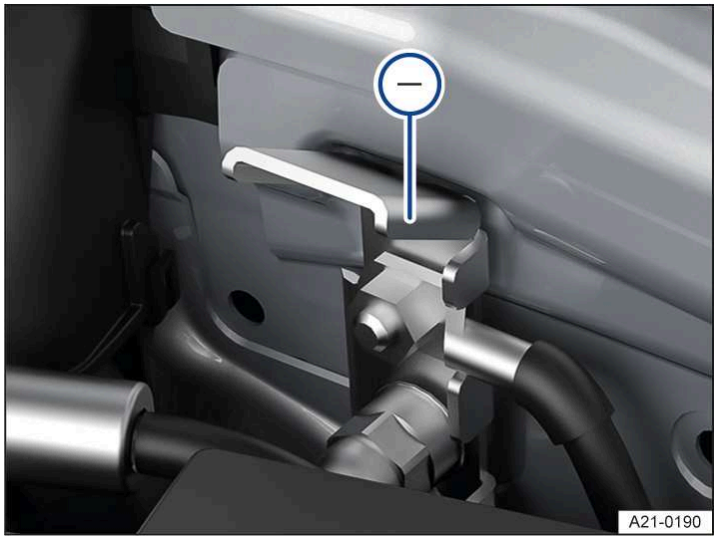


Fig. 1 In the bonnet space: jump-start connection point (earth).

– The earth jump-start connection point is used for connecting the black jump lead.

The vehicle can be jump-started or be used to jump-start another vehicle via the jump-start connection point (earth).

Attaching the jump leads

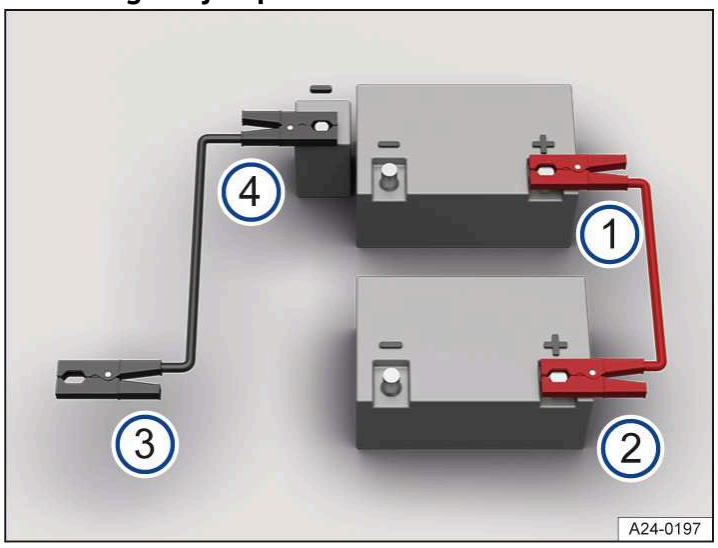


Fig. 2 Schematic diagram of how to connect the jump leads.

1 Positive battery terminal on the vehicle that is being jump started.

2 Positive battery terminal on the vehicle that is providing jump starting assistance.

3 Suitable earth connection in the vehicle that is providing jump starting assistance: preferably the jump-start connection point (earth), a solid metal part which is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or the cylinder block itself.

4 Jump-start connection point (earth) on the vehicle being jump-started .

Connect the jump leads only in the order 1 – 2 – 3 – 4 → *Fig. 2*.

1. Switch off the ignition in both vehicles.
2. If present, fold open the cover on the positive battery terminal + on the 12-volt vehicle battery in the bonnet space.
3. Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive battery terminal + of the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery → *Fig. 2* (1).
4. Connect the other end of the red jump lead to the positive battery terminal + of the vehicle providing assistance → *Fig. 2* (2).
5. Connect one end of the black jump lead to an earth jump-start connection point – of the donor vehicle → *Fig. 2* (3).

   Or: if there is no earth jump-start connection point – available, connect it to a solid metal part that is firmly bolted to the cylinder block or to the cylinder block itself → *Fig. 2* (3).
6. Connect the other end of the black jump lead to the earth jump-start connection point – of the vehicle receiving the jump start → *Fig. 2* (4) → *Fig. 1*.
7. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the bonnet space.

Starting the engine

1. Start the engine of the vehicle which is providing assistance and let it run at idle.
2. Wait a few minutes and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery. If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about 1 minute.

Please contact an expert if the vehicle's engine still will not start.

Removing the jump leads

1. Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights, if switched on.
2. Turn on the air conditioning blower and rear window heater in the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery. This helps minimise the voltage peaks generated when the leads are disconnected.
3. After jump starting, the jump leads should be removed only in the order 4 – 3 – 2 – 1 .
4. If present, close the cover of the positive terminal **+**.

After jump starting, have the 12-volt vehicle battery checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

If a vehicle can no longer be moved under its own power, the vehicle can be transported with a breakdown truck or towed by another vehicle.

Make sure that both drivers are familiar with how to tow a vehicle. This applies in particular if no tow-bar is used.

Observe any legal requirements when towing.

NOTICE

Tow-starting the vehicle can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

- Carry out jump starting to start the engine.

NOTICE

When towing off paved roads, there is always a risk of overloading the fastening parts and causing considerable damage to the vehicles.

- Make sure that no excessive pulling forces occur and take care to avoid jerking movements when towing.

Useful information for vehicle recovery

Transport is where a vehicle that cannot be driven is transported by a breakdown truck.

WARNING

Vehicle components can be severely damaged by incorrectly secured tow-ropes or tow-bars. The risk of accident is increased and serious or fatal injuries may be caused.

- Attach the vehicle only at the points provided for transport and towing.
- Never attach the tow-rope or tow-bar to axle or running gear components.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported standing on a breakdown truck if necessary.

NOTICE

Pushing the vehicle by hand can cause damage to the vehicle, e.g. deformation or detachment of add-on parts.

- When pushing the vehicle by hand, do not press on the tail light clusters, large panels and side or rear spoilers.

Transport with a breakdown truck

The vehicle can be transported with all four wheels standing on a breakdown truck or with the front axle raised.

Note that it may be necessary to transport the vehicle standing with all four wheels on a breakdown truck *(→ Towing)*.

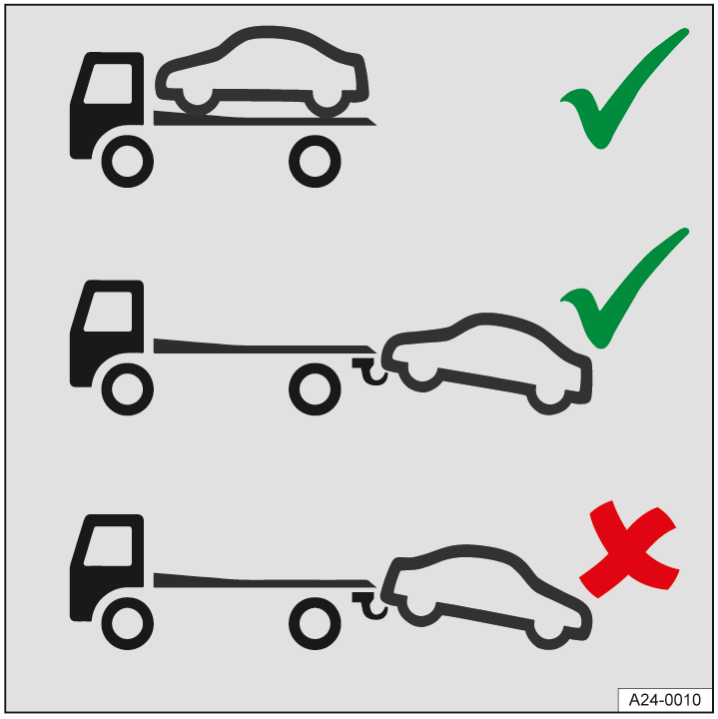


Fig. 1 Transport with a breakdown truck.

Information on the mounting points for transport at the front and rear *(→ Front towing eye)* *(→ Rear towing eye)*.

If the vehicle is to be transported with the front axle raised:

— The maximum permitted speed is 50 km/h (around 30 mph).

— The maximum permitted distance is 50 km (around 30 miles).

— Deactivate the roll-away protection on vehicles with automatic gearbox .

— Deactivate the Auto Hold function.

— Make sure that the vehicle key is always in the vehicle during towing *(→ Keyless Access)*.

— Deactivate Front Assist.

NOTICE

The wheels may lock if the electronic parking brake switches on during towing. This can result in serious damage to the vehicles.

- End towing immediately.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported standing on a breakdown truck if necessary.

Towing the vehicle with another vehicle

Towing is where a vehicle that cannot be driven is pulled with the aid of another vehicle. The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or a tow-rope:

— The maximum permitted speed is 50 km/h (around 30 mph).

— The maximum permitted distance is 50 km (around 30 miles).

In which situations may the vehicle not be towed?

In case of a fault or damage, the vehicle must be transported standing with all four wheels on a breakdown truck if one of the following situations applies.

— The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged.

— The instrument cluster display does not work properly.

— The distance to be towed is further than 50 km (around 30 miles).

— Neutral (position **N**) cannot be selected.

— It is not possible to deactivate the roll-away protection on vehicles with automatic gearbox .

— The steering lock cannot be released.

— If the steering function or the operating clearance of the wheels cannot be ensured after an accident.

If the conditions for towing are not met, the vehicle must be towed or pushed rolling on its own four wheels only in emergency situations. The towing operation to the breakdown truck must take place only at walking pace and for a maximum distance of 100 metres.

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow-bar. Use a tow-rope only if you do not have a tow-bar. The tow-rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the strain on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

⚠ WARNING

If a vehicle is being towed, the vehicle handling and braking efficiency will change significantly. This can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Please note that greater force is needed for steering and braking during towing.

Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the points provided:

— Towing eye.

— Ball coupling.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicle components can be severely damaged by incorrectly secured tow-ropes or tow-bars. The risk of accident is increased and serious or fatal injuries may be caused.

- Attach the vehicle only at the points provided for recovery and towing.
- Never attach the tow-rope or tow-bar to axle or running gear components.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported standing on a breakdown truck if necessary.

Preparations

— Ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted. Otherwise a towing eye can become unscrewed during towing.

— Switch on the ignition and hazard warning lights on both vehicles. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

— Observe the legal regulations and notes on towing in the owner's manual of the other vehicle.

Pulling vehicle (front)

1. The tow-rope must be taut before you drive off properly.
2. Press the accelerator with particular care.

3. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
4. Do not exceed the maximum permitted trailer weight.

Pulled vehicle (rear)

It is still possible to activate the turn signals in a vehicle that is being towed, even if the hazard warning lights are switched on. To do this, operate the turn signal and main beam lever in the required direction while the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights will not flash while the turn signal is being used. The hazard warning lights will start flashing again automatically as soon as the turn signal and main beam lever is moved back to the neutral position.

1. Make sure that the ignition is always switched on so that the steering wheel is not locked and you can operate the turn signals and wipers if necessary. The brake servo and power steering function only when the engine is running. Otherwise you must press the brake pedal with significantly more force and also use more effort for steering.
2. Make sure that the vehicle key is always in the vehicle during towing *(→ Keyless Access)*.
3. Deactivate Front Assist.
4. Deactivate the roll-away protection .

   Or: the driver sits on the driver seat with seat belt fastened during the entire towing operation and the driver door is closed
5. Ensure that the tow-rope is always taut.

NOTICE

The wheels may lock if the electronic parking brake switches on during towing. This can result in serious damage to the vehicles.
- End towing immediately.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported standing on a breakdown truck if necessary.

NOTICE

The electronic parking brake and steering lock cannot be released if the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is not sufficient. The vehicle can be damaged during towing.
- In the event of power failure or malfunctions, switch on the ignition or start the engine, if necessary by jump starting, in order to release the electronic parking brake and steering lock.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported standing on a breakdown truck if necessary.

Front mounting point

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the mounting for the towing eye is located behind the cover in the bumper.

1. Before towing, check that the mounting with screw thread is available for the towing eye.
2. If this is not the case, seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle →ⓘ.

NOTICE

Use of a towing eye that is not suitable for the vehicle can damage the vehicle.
- Always use the towing eye from the supplied vehicle toolkit or another suitable towing eye for towing.

Fitting the front towing eye, variant 1

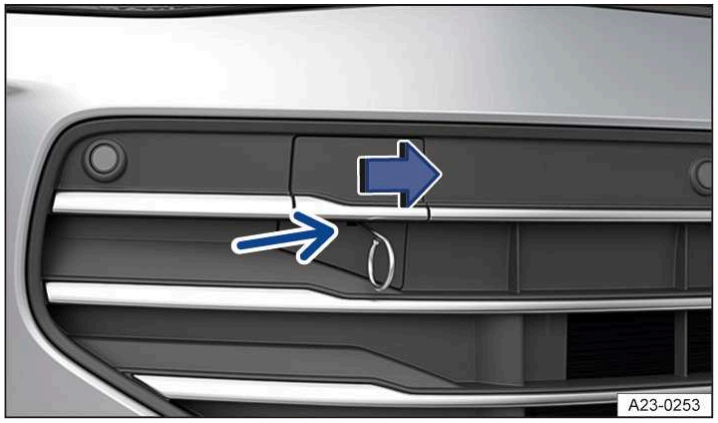


Fig. 1 In the front bumper on the right: removing the cover.



Fig. 2 In the front bumper on the right: screwing in the towing eye.

1. Take the towing eye and hook out of the vehicle toolkit in the luggage compartment.
2. Insert the hook in the recess of the cover from below and pull it out of the catches in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.
3. Remove the cover to the front, allow it to hang on the vehicle or place it in the vehicle if necessary →ⓘ.
4. Screw the towing eye into the mounting in the direction of the arrow and tighten as far as possible → *Fig. 2* , →⚠. Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
5. After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it in the opposite direction to the arrow using a suitable object.
6. Take the cover out of the vehicle and insert the upper lugs of the cover in the opening in the bumper. Push on the lower area of the cover until the lower locking lug engages in the bumper.
7. Clean the towing eye if necessary and place it back in the vehicle toolkit in the luggage compartment.

Fitting the front towing eye, variant 2

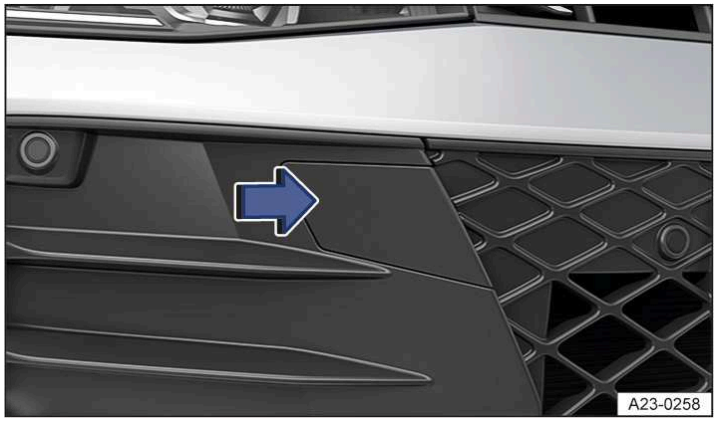


Fig. 3 In the front bumper on the right: removing the cover.



Fig. 4 In the front bumper on the right: screwing in the towing eye.

1. Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.
2. Press the marked area of the cover in the direction of the arrow to release the cover catch → *Fig. 3*.
3. Remove the cover, allow it to hang on the vehicle or place it in the vehicle if necessary →ⓘ.
4. Screw the towing eye into the mounting in the direction of the arrow and tighten as far as possible → *Fig. 4* , →⚠. Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
5. After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it in the opposite direction to the arrow using a suitable object.
6. Insert the cap in the respective recess and press in until it engages.
7. Clean the towing eye if necessary and place it back in the vehicle toolkit in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

If the towing eye is not screwed fully and securely into the mounting, it may be wrenched out of the mount. This can result in accidents and severe injuries when towing.

- Before starting towing, check that the towing eye is fully screwed in.

NOTICE

Improper removal and fitting of the cover and towing eye can cause damage the vehicle's paint and body.

- Always remove and fit the cover and the towing eye carefully.

Rear mounting point

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the mounting for the towing eye is located behind the cover in the bumper.

1. Before towing, check that the mounting with screw thread is available for the towing eye.
2. Observe the information on vehicle transport *(→ Breakdown truck)*.
3. If this is not the case, seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle →ⓘ.

NOTICE

Use of a towing eye that is not suitable for the vehicle can damage the vehicle.

- Always use the towing eye from the supplied vehicle toolkit or another suitable towing eye for towing.

Fitting the rear towing eye

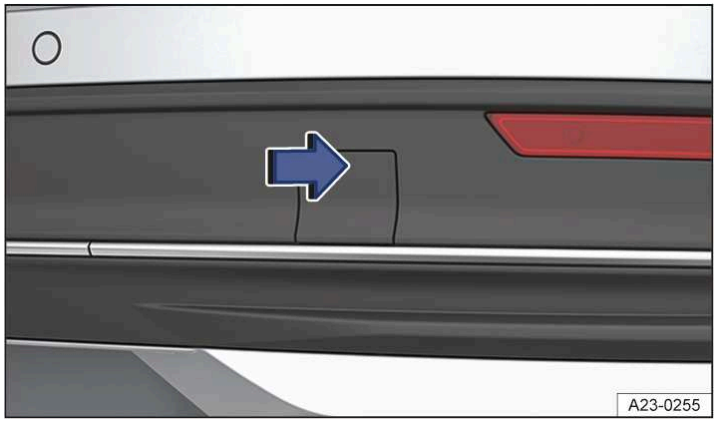


Fig. 1 In the rear bumper on the right: removing the cover, variant 1.

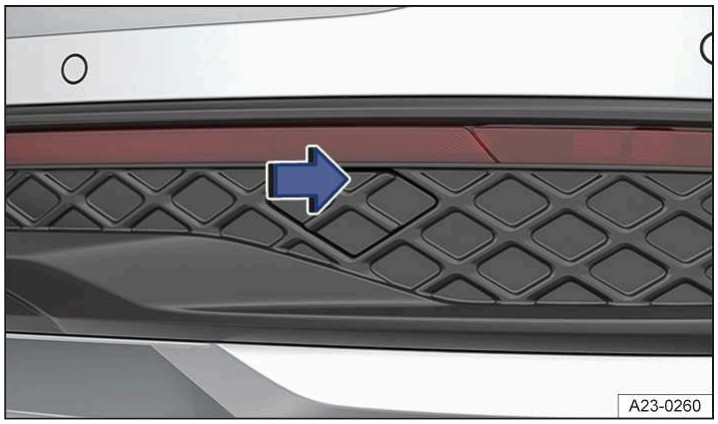


Fig. 2 In the rear bumper on the right: removing the cover, variant 2.

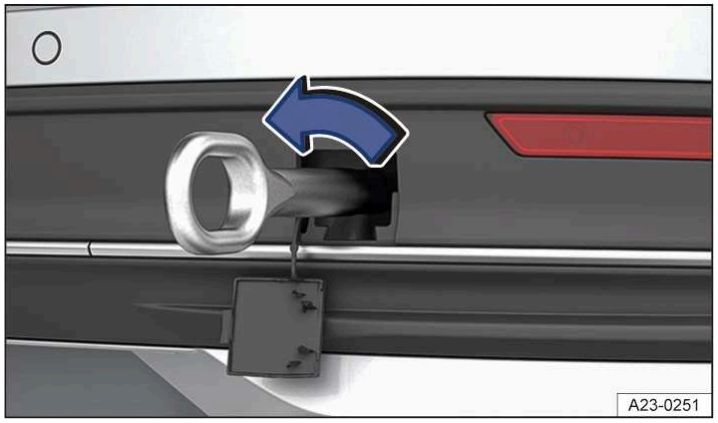


Fig. 3 In the rear bumper on the right: screwing in the towing eye, variant 1.

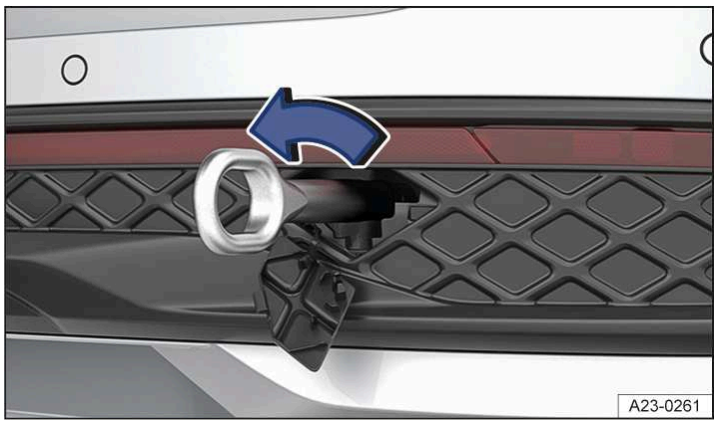


Fig. 4 In the rear bumper on the right: screwing in the towing eye, variant 2.

1. Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.
2. Press the marked area of the cover in the direction of the arrow to release the cover catch → *Fig. 1*.
3. Remove the cover, allow it to hang on the vehicle or place it in the vehicle if necessary →ⓘ.
4. Screw the towing eye into the mounting in the direction of the arrow and tighten as far as possible → *Fig. 3* , →⚠. Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
5. After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it in the opposite direction to the arrow using a suitable object.
6. Insert the cap in the respective recess and press in until it engages.
7. Clean the towing eye if necessary and place it back in the vehicle toolkit in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

If the towing eye is not screwed fully and securely into the mounting, it may be wrenched out of the mount. This can result in accidents and severe injuries when towing.

- Before starting towing, check that the towing eye is fully screwed in.

NOTICE

Improper removal and fitting of the cover and towing eye can cause damage the vehicle's paint and body.

- Always remove and fit the cover and the towing eye carefully.

Vehicles with towing bracket

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket there is no mounting for the screw-in towing eye behind the cover.

1. For towing, swivel out or fit and use the ball head.

NOTICE

If you use an unsuitable tow-bar, the ball head and the vehicle could be damaged.

- For towing, always use only a tow-bar that is specifically intended for fitting on a ball head.
- Use a tow-rope for towing if you do not have access to a suitable tow-bar.

Safety notes for working in the bonnet space

The bonnet space of a vehicle is a hazardous area. You should only carry out work in the bonnet space if you know exactly how to perform the required tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Failing to carry out work correctly can cause serious injuries →⚠. Have all work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop if necessary. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

The bonnet space is a hazardous area. Accidents and serious or fatal injuries can occur during all work in the bonnet space.

- Always be extremely careful and cautious during all work.
- Only perform any work in the bonnet space if you know exactly how to carry it out.
- Have the necessary work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop if you are unsure how to carry out work in the bonnet space. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Switch on the electronic parking brake before working in the bonnet space.
- Engage the gear selector position **P**.
- Switch off the ignition and keep the vehicle key in a safe place far enough away from the vehicle so that the engine cannot be started accidentally.
- Never touch hot components of the engine.
- Always ensure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the bonnet space.
- Always keep children away from the bonnet space and never leave children unsupervised.

⚠ WARNING

There are rotating parts in the bonnet space. When working in the bonnet space, particularly if the engine is started or running, contact with rotating parts, e.g. rotor blades of the radiator fan, can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never reach into the radiator fan or into the area of the radiator fan even if the engine or ignition are switched off. The fan is temperature-controlled and could start automatically.
- Before starting work, remove any jewellery and ties, tie up long hair and pull clothes in tightly.
- Always take due care and attention when depressing the accelerator. The vehicle could start moving even if the electronic parking brake is switched on.

⚠ WARNING

Escaping hot steam or hot coolant and hot vehicle parts can cause severe burns.

- Never open or close the bonnet if steam or coolant is escaping.
- Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant coming from the bonnet space.

⚠ WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. If the cap is opened carelessly, coolant can spray out and cause severe burns or fatal injuries.

- Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot.
- If you have to open the cap of the coolant expansion tank, always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- Turn the cap of the coolant expansion tank slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while exerting slight downwards pressure on the cap.

⚠ WARNING

Additional insulating materials, e.g. blankets in the bonnet space, or objects left in the bonnet space, e.g. cleaning cloths or tools, can cause malfunctions, damage to the combustion engine and fire. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Never cover the engine with blankets or other insulating materials.
- Never leave objects in the bonnet space.

Always park the vehicle on a horizontal and firm surface before carrying out any work in the bonnet space → ⚠ *(→ Parking)*.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is not secured against rolling away during maintenance work, unintended vehicle movement may occur. This can result in accidents and severe or fatal injuries.

- Deactivate the start/stop system manually.
- Never work underneath a vehicle if it is not adequately secured against rolling away.
- Make sure that the vehicle is on a horizontal and firm surface and that the wheels are blocked when working under the vehicle while the wheels are touching the ground.
- In addition, support the vehicle securely with suitable trestles when working under the vehicle. The jack is not sufficient for this task and can fail.

⚠ WARNING

High voltage of the electrical system can cause electric shocks and burns. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Never short circuit the electrical system. The 12-volt vehicle battery could explode.

Preparing the vehicle for working in the bonnet space

The following steps should always be carried out in the given order before working in the bonnet space:

1. Park the vehicle safely on a horizontal and firm surface *(→ Parking)*.
2. Secure the vehicle against rolling away.
3. Remove the vehicle key from the vehicle and keep in a location outside the vehicle so that the vehicle is not put into operation accidentally.
4. Allow the engine to cool sufficiently.
5. Always keep other persons away from the bonnet space.

Opening and closing the bonnet



Fig. 1 In the footwell on the driver side: bonnet release lever (illustration).

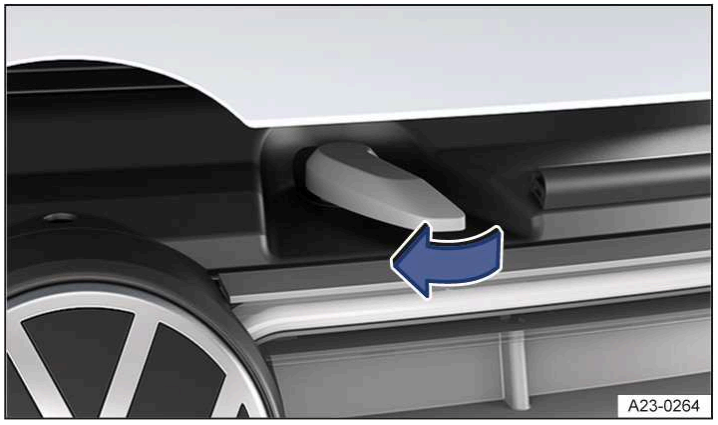


Fig. 2 Above the radiator grille: bonnet control lever.

Opening the bonnet

1. Open the driver door and pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.

   The bonnet jumps out of the lock on the lock carrier →ⓘ.

2. To open the bonnet fully, lift the bonnet slightly while simultaneously pressing the opening lever in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 2*.

   The bonnet is held by the gas strut in the fully open position.

Closing the bonnet

1. Pull the bonnet down until the force of the gas struts is overcome →⚠.
2. Let the bonnet drop into the catch of the lock carrier from a height of about 20 cm (about 8 inches) – do not press it down.

   The bonnet is flush with the body parts around it when it is closed properly →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the bonnet is not closed properly, it can open suddenly while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- After closing bonnet, always check that the catch is properly engaged in the lock carrier.
- If you notice while driving that the bonnet is not closed properly, park the vehicle safely and close the bonnet.

WARNING

Careless opening and closing of the bonnet can lead to serious injuries.

- Open or close the bonnet only when there is no-one in its movement path.

NOTICE

Opening and closing the bonnet incorrectly can damage the bonnet or the wiper arms.

- Open the bonnet only when the wiper arms are flush to the windscreen and when they are switched off.
- Always fold the wiper arms back onto the windscreen before driving away.

Display for open bonnet



Fig. 3 On the instrument cluster display: the bonnet is open or not closed properly (illustration).

A symbol on the instrument cluster display indicates if the bonnet is open or is not closed properly → ⚠.

Do not drive on!

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. If necessary, lift the bonnet and then close it again.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors are closed.

WARNING

Failure to observe displayed warnings can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic and can cause accidents, serious injuries and even death.

- Never ignore warnings.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
- Do not drive on and seek expert assistance if the warning lamp does not go out.

Service fluids and consumables

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. coolant, engine oils and batteries, are being constantly further developed.

1. Have service fluids and consumables replaced by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

When work is performed on the fuel system, electrical discharge and flying sparks can cause fires and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always disconnect the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Always have a fully functional and tested fire extinguisher to hand.

- Ensure that the vehicle is unlocked when the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected as otherwise the anti-theft alarm will be activated.

WARNING

Service fluids can be toxic. Improper use and storage can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Store service fluids only in the closed original container.
- Never store service fluids in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink them.
- Keep children away from all service fluids and consumables.
- Always observe and follow the information and warnings on the service fluid packaging.
- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

WARNING

Service fluids and some materials in the bonnet space are highly flammable and can ignite upon contact with hot surfaces, sparks and naked flames. This can lead to a fire and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never smoke in the vicinity of the bonnet space.
- Never work in the direct proximity of sparks or naked flames.
- Never work in the direct proximity of heating systems, water heaters or any other naked flames.
- Never spill service fluids onto the engine.
- Always have a fully functional and tested fire extinguisher to hand.

NOTICE

Use of service fluids that do not correspond to the specification can cause serious malfunctions and damage the engine.

- When refilling or replacing service fluids, ensure that the service fluids correspond to the respective specification.
- Fill service fluids only into the filler openings intended for them.

Any service fluids leaks from the vehicle are harmful to the environment.

- Regularly check the ground underneath the vehicle.
- If there are patches of oil or other fluids on the ground, the vehicle should be inspected by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Any spilt service fluids must be disposed of properly and with respect to environmental legislation.

Washer fluid

Basic information

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the bonnet space.



Fig. 1 In the bonnet space: washer fluid reservoir cap (illustration).

The washer fluid reservoir is identified by the symbol on the cap → *Fig. 1*.

1. The washer fluid level should be checked regularly and refilled as necessary.

Preparations

1. Prepare the vehicle for working in the bonnet space .
2. Open the bonnet.

Checking and refilling

1. Check whether there is enough washer fluid in the reservoir.
2. Use only clear water with a suitable alcohol-based windscreen washer fluid for refilling. Observe the mixture instructions on the packaging of the windscreen washer fluid →⚠, →ⓘ.
3. At low outside temperatures, add a special anti-freeze agent so that the fluid cannot freeze. Observe the mixture instructions on the packaging of the anti-freeze agent.

There is a strainer in the filler throat of the washer fluid reservoir. The strainer keeps large dirt particles away from the washer jets when refilling →ⓘ.

The filling quantity of the washer fluid reservoir is approx. 3.0 l to 6.0 l (approx. 3.1 to 6.3 qt) depending on the model and equipment.

Do not use distilled water to refill the washer fluid reservoir. This is a prerequisite for enabling monitoring of the washer fluid level.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable additives in the washer fluid can leave an oily film on the vehicle windows. This can reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never mix coolant additive or other unsuitable additives into the washer fluid.

ⓘ NOTICE

Use of an acidic cleaning agent can lead to damage and to failure of the washer jets.

- Never fill an acidic cleaning agent, e.g. a vinegar-based cleaner, into the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Mixing different windscreen washer fluids can lead to flocculation of ingredients in the fluid and cause clogging of the washer jets.

- Use only suitable alcohol-based windscreen washer fluids.
- Never mix different windscreen washer fluids with each other.

NOTICE

When refilling windscreen washer fluid, dirt particles can enter the washer fluid reservoir if the strainer is damaged or not present. The washer jets could become clogged.

- Remove the strainer only for cleaning.
- Replace the strainer if it is damaged or missing.

Introduction to the topic

Engine oils are matched to the requirements of the engines, exhaust purification systems and fuel quality. Due to the way in which a combustion engine works, engine oil always comes into contact with combustion residues and fuel, which has an effect on the ageing process of the oil. The correct engine oil is important for the function and service life of the engine. The engine has been filled with a special multigrade high-lubricity oil at the factory that can normally be used as an all-season oil.

The vehicle can consume engine oil. Engine oil consumption can vary and can change during the service life of the vehicle. Depending on driving style and operating conditions, engine oil consumption can be up to 1 l (1 qt) per 2,000 km (approx. 1,200 miles). In new vehicles, it is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km (approx. 3,100 miles). The engine oil level must therefore be checked at regular intervals, e.g. before long journeys.

WARNING

Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running. If engine oil is handled without due care, this can cause serious burns to the body. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always allow the engine to cool down before performing any work with engine oil.

WARNING

Engine oil is toxic. Contact with engine oil, and especially ingestion of engine oil, can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Seek medical attention immediately after swallowing engine oil.
- Seek medical attention if you have health problems after working with engine oil.
- Always keep engine oil out of the reach of children and only in the original sealed container. This also applies to used oil until it is disposed of.
- Never store engine oil in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the engine oil.
- To avoid damaging the skin, avoid regular contact with engine oil.
- Protect skin, face and especially eyes while working with engine oil.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with engine oil.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working with engine oil.

Leaking or spilt engine oil can pollute the environment.

- Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

Engine oil standards

Vehicles with an engine oil sticker

There is a sticker on the lock carrier at the front of the bonnet space that indicates which engine oil is to be used for filling → *Fig. 1*.



Fig. 1 Area for the engine oil sticker (illustration).

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that complies with the specified engine oil standard and engine oil viscosity → *Fig. 2*.

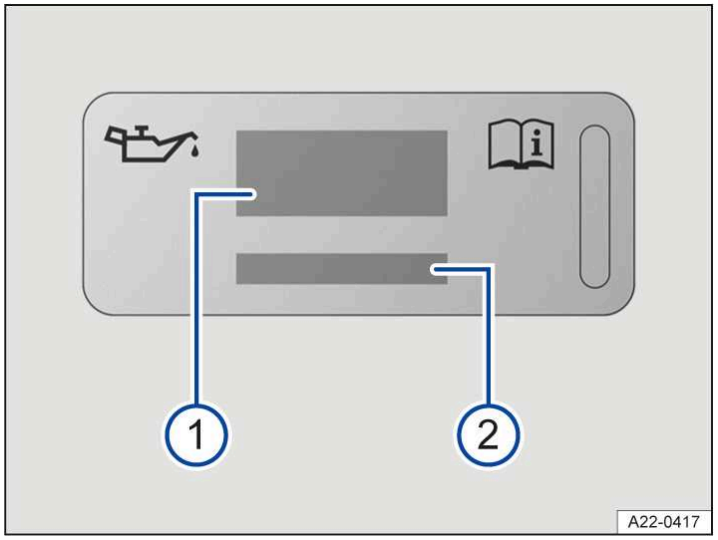


Fig. 2 Sticker with information on the engine oil standard and engine oil viscosity (illustration).

(1) Information about the engine oil standard.

(2) Information about the engine oil viscosity.

If the specified engine oil → *Fig. 2* is used, the engine oil level can be corrected as often as necessary *(→ Engine oil)*.

If you do not have access to engine oil that complies with the prescribed standard, in an emergency you may top up with a maximum of 0.5 l (0.5 qt) of the following oils once before the next regular oil change:

— Petrol engines: standards VW 504 00 and ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SP or ILSAC GF-6A. All viscosity classes of these standards are permitted.

— Diesel engines: standards VW 507 00 and ACEA C3, ACEA C4 or API CK-4. All viscosity classes of these standards are permitted.

It is recommended to have the oil change carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Vehicles without an engine oil sticker

You can obtain information about the specified engine oil standard and engine oil viscosity from a suitably qualified workshop. If it is necessary to add engine oil, use an oil with the specified engine oil standard and viscosity. If the specified engine oil is used, the level can be corrected as often as necessary *(→ Engine oil)*.

NOTICE

The use of engine oils that are not approved in accordance with the corresponding VW standard can cause engine damage.

- Use only engine oils that meet the quality requirements of the corresponding VW standard for refilling.
- Only in an emergency, add a maximum of 0.5 l (0.5 qt) engine oil of the differently specified engine oil standards.

Volkswagen recommends Volkswagen genuine oil.

Changing engine oil

The engine oil must be changed regularly and in accordance with the service interval *(→ Service)*.

Additives in the engine oil can cause new engine oil to discolour quickly. This is normal and does not mean that the engine oil should be changed more frequently.

WARNING

Engine oil can cause environmental damage, severe burns or a fire if the engine oil is changed carelessly. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always allow the engine to cool down completely before changing the engine oil.
- Always wear eye protection when changing engine oil.
- When you unscrew the oil drain plug with your fingers, keep your arms horizontal so that the escaping oil cannot run down your arm.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It must be at least large enough to hold the entire filling quantity of engine oil.

NOTICE

Oil and filter changes require special tools and expert knowledge. Vehicle damage can result if this work is not carried out correctly.

- You should always have engine oil and filter changes performed by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Engine oil can pollute the environment. Dispose of the engine oil in a proper and environmentally responsible manner and only at a collection point for used oil, e.g. a recycling centre or specialist company.

Checking the engine oil level and adding engine oil

Preparations



Fig. 1 In the bonnet space: cap of engine oil filler opening (illustration).

To avoid an incorrect reading of the engine oil level, observe the following steps:

1. Park the vehicle safely on a horizontal and firm surface with the engine at operating temperature *(→ Parking)*.
2. Wait for at least 5 minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the sump.
3. Open the bonnet.
4. Identify the engine oil filler opening and oil dipstick.

The engine oil filler opening can be recognised by the symbol on the cap → *Fig. 1* and the oil dipstick has a coloured handle.

Checking the engine oil level on the oil dipstick

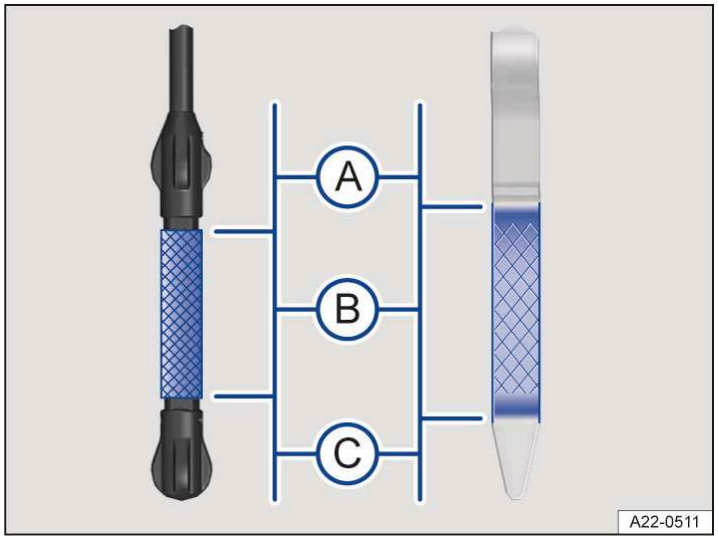


Fig. 2 Engine oil level markings on the oil dipstick (variants).

(A) Engine oil level is too high.

(B) Engine oil level in the normal range.

(C) Engine oil level too low.

The steps should be carried out in the given order only:

1. Pull the oil dipstick out of the guide tube and wipe it off with a clean cloth.
2. Insert the oil dipstick into the guide tube again as far as it will go. If there is a marking on the oil dipstick, this marking must fit in the corresponding groove at the top end of the guide tube when inserting.
3. Pull out the oil dipstick again and read the engine oil level on the dipstick as follows → *Fig. 2*:

   (A) Engine oil level is too high. Observe any messages on the instrument cluster display or seek expert assistance if necessary.

   (B) Engine oil level in the normal range. The engine oil can be filled to the upper limit of this range, e.g. if the engine is operated at high loads →⚠.

   (C) Engine oil level too low. It is essential to add engine oil. If necessary, observe the messages in the instrument cluster display →⚠.
4. After reading off the engine oil level, push the oil dipstick back into the guide tube as far as it will go.

When the vehicle is working particularly hard, the engine oil level should be kept within the upper permissible area, for instance during extended motorway trips in summer or when climbing mountain passes.

Checking the engine oil level with the digital display

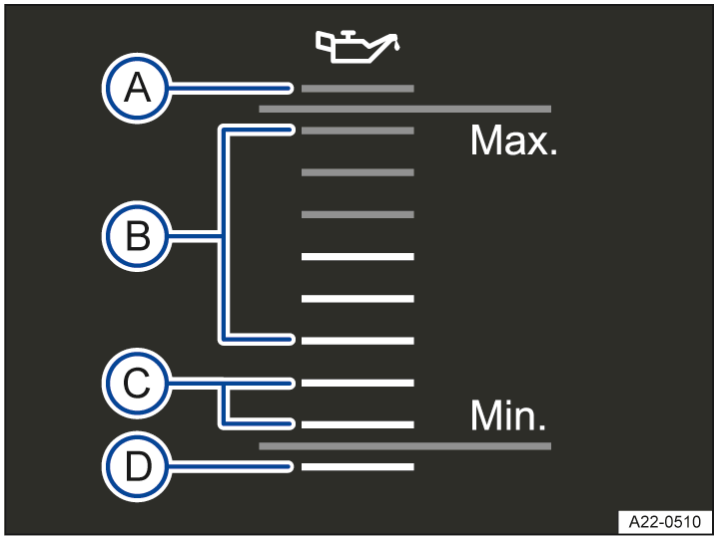


Fig. 3 On the Infotainment system: engine oil level indicator (illustration).

(A) Do not add engine oil.

(B) Engine oil level in the normal range.

(C) Engine oil level low – engine oil should be added.

(D) Engine oil level low – engine oil needs to be added.

To check the engine oil level on the Infotainment system, perform the following steps:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Tap the function button.
3. Tap the Vehicle function button.
4. Tap the Status function button.
5. Tap the Oil function button.

Possible measures after reading off the engine oil level on the Infotainment system:

— (A) Do not add engine oil, do not start the engine again and seek expert assistance.

— (B) Engine oil level in the normal range.

— (C) Engine oil level is low. Engine oil should be added →⚠.

— (D) Engine oil level below minimum. Engine oil must be added →⚠.

If the engine oil level is in the lower area (B) or in area (C), the engine oil can be added up to the middle of area (B), e.g. in case of high engine load.

Adding engine oil

⚠ WARNING

If engine oil leaks or overflows when adding oil and gets onto parts of the engine that are hot or can become hot, the engine oil may ignite. This can cause fires or burns. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always ensure that the engine oil filler opening cap is securely tightened after refilling, and that the dipstick is properly inserted back into the guide tube.
- Always use a suitable filling aid when adding engine oil.

These steps should be followed in the given order only →⚠ →ⓘ:

1. Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening →*Fig. 1*.
2. Fill engine oil gradually in small quantities, not more than 0.5 l (0.5 qt) in total, or observe the recommendation on the instrument cluster display. Volkswagen recommends the use of approved engine oils in accordance with the respectively relevant VW standard.
3. In order to avoid overfilling, you must wait at least one minute after each refill step so the engine oil can flow into the oil sump.
4. Read the engine oil level on the oil dipstick or digital oil level display again before refilling with a further small quantity of engine oil. After filling, the engine oil level should be in the middle of the area →*Fig. 2* or →*Fig. 3* (B).
5. Do not start the engine if you have added an excessive amount of engine oil by accident and the engine oil level is thus above area →*Fig. 2* or →*Fig. 3* (A) →ⓘ. Seek expert assistance.
6. After refilling, close the engine oil filler opening with the cap →*Fig. 1*.
7. Close the bonnet.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

If the engine oil level is too high after topping up and the engine is started, this can damage the engine.

- Do not start the engine and seek qualified professional assistance.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

- When refilling service fluids, ensure that you pour the correct service fluids into the correct openings.

Displaying service information on the Infotainment system

You can access the current scheduled service event here when the ignition is switched on, the engine is not running, and the vehicle is stationary *(→ Service interval display)*.

After a service event, the service message will be updated after around five days or after you have driven around 500 km (around 311 miles). Until then, the Infotainment system screen shows **Inspection in --- km / --- days Oil change: in --- km / --- days**.

Volkswagen recommends the use of approved engine oils in accordance with the respectively relevant VW standard.

If you are not sure where the cap and oil dipstick are located, please contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

The warning lamp flashes red. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not drive on! The engine could otherwise be damaged.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so *(→ Parking)*.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level *(→ Engine oil)*.
4. Do not drive on or leave the engine running if the warning lamp is flashing even when the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.

Engine oil level very low

The warning lamp flashes red. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not drive on! The engine could otherwise be damaged.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so *(→ Parking)*.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level *(→ Engine oil)*.
4. If necessary, fill engine oil gradually in small quantities, not more than 0.5 l (0.5 qt) in total, or observe the filling recommendation on the instrument cluster display.
5. Do not drive on or leave the engine running if the warning lamp is lit up even though the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.

Engine oil level too low

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so *(→ Parking)*.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level *(→ Engine oil)*.
4. If necessary, fill engine oil gradually in small quantities, not more than 0.5 l (0.5 qt) in total, or observe the filling recommendation on the instrument cluster display.
5. Do not drive on or leave the engine running if the indicator lamp is lit up, even though the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.

Engine oil level too high

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so *(→ Parking)*.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level *(→ Engine oil)*.
4. If the engine oil level is too high, do not drive on or leave the engine running. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.

Fault in engine oil system

The indicator lamp flashes yellow. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Introduction to the topic

You should only carry out work on the cooling system if you know exactly how to perform the required tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Failing to carry out work correctly can cause serious injuries →⚠. Have all work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop if necessary. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

Coolant is toxic. Contact with coolant, and especially ingestion of coolant, can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Seek medical attention immediately after swallowing coolant.
- Seek medical attention if you have health problems after working with coolant.
- Always keep coolant out of the reach of children and only in the original sealed container.
- Never store coolant in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the coolant.
- Avoid regular contact with coolant to avoid damaging the skin.
- Protect skin, face and especially eyes while working with coolant.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with coolant.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working with coolant.

⚠ WARNING

Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. This can lead to the heating no longer working in the vehicle. Vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing could freeze to death.

- Make sure that the quantity of coolant additive is adjusted to the lowest expected ambient temperature at which the vehicle will be operated.
- Use only coolant additives that have been approved by the manufacturer.

Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment.

- Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

Coolant specification

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40% coolant additive G12evo (TL 744-L).

The proportion of coolant additive must always be at least 40% to protect the cooling system. If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of anti-freeze additive can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additive should not exceed 55 %, as this would reduce the frost protection and the cooling effect.

The coolant additive is dyed a violet colour. The mixture of water and a coolant additive offers anti-freeze protection down to around -25°C (around -13°F), protects the alloy parts in the cooling system against corrosion, prevents limescale deposits and significantly increases the boiling point of the coolant.

When refilling the coolant, a mixture of distilled water and at least 40% of the coolant additive G12evo must be used in order to obtain the optimum corrosion protection →ⓘ.

NOTICE

The colour of the coolant results from mixing the violet coolant additive with distilled water. If the liquid in the coolant expansion tank is not violet but brown, for example, the suitable coolant has been mixed with another unsuitable coolant. This can result in serious malfunctions or damage to the drive and cooling system.

- Use only coolant additives that have been approved by the manufacturer.
- Have the coolant replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop if it has a brown colour. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- When adding coolant additives, never mix genuine coolant additives with other coolant additives that have not been approved by Volkswagen.

NOTICE

The coolant must always have the correct mixture ratio. If the mixing ratio is not correct, serious malfunctions or damage to the drive and cooling system may result.

- Have the correct mixing ratio checked by a suitably qualified workshop and restored if necessary if there is any doubt about the mixing ratio. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Checking coolant level and refilling coolant

Preparations

1. Park the vehicle safely on a horizontal and firm surface *(→ Parking)*.
2. Allow the engine to cool down →⚠.
3. Open the bonnet.

The coolant expansion tank can be recognised by the red symbol on the cap → *Fig. 1*.



Fig. 1 In the bonnet space: coolant expansion tank cap (illustration).

WARNING

Escaping hot steam or hot coolant and hot vehicle parts can cause severe burns.

- Never open the bonnet if steam or coolant is visibly or audibly emerging from the bonnet space.
- Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant coming from the bonnet space.

WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. If the cap is opened carelessly, coolant can spray out and cause severe burns or fatal injuries.

- Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot.
- If you have to open the cap of the coolant expansion tank, always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- Turn the cap of the coolant expansion tank slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while exerting slight downwards pressure on the cap.

Checking coolant level

The coolant may be above the marked area upon delivery of new vehicles or after repairs to the cooling system. This is normal. The coolant does not have to be sucked off.

The coolant level cannot be checked accurately in all models as visibility of the fluid level in the coolant expansion tank may be obstructed. If the coolant level cannot be read exactly, contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

1. Check the coolant level at the side markings of the coolant expansion tank when the coolant is cold . The coolant level must be between the marks.
2. Have coolant added if the fluid level in the coolant expansion tank is below the minimum marking “min”. If the coolant is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the upper mark.
3. Do not add coolant if there is no longer any coolant visible in the coolant expansion tank →ⓘ.

Topping up coolant

1. Unscrew the lid carefully →⚠.
2. Add only new coolant in accordance with the Volkswagen specification up to the upper level marking. *(→ Coolant)*. After adding the coolant, the coolant level must be between the markings on the coolant expansion tank .
3. Close the cap tightly.
4. Check the coolant level after one day. If the level of the coolant expansion tank drops below the “min” marking again, visit a suitably qualified workshop and have the cooling system checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If in an emergency you do not have access to coolant in the required specification, add only distilled water initially. Then have the correct mixture ratio with the coolant additive restored by a suitably qualified workshop as soon as possible. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer →ⓘ.

NOTICE

Coolant expands when it is heated. If coolant is added so that the level is above the marked area, excess coolant could escape and damage the vehicle.

- Do not fill coolant above the top edge of the marked area on the coolant expansion tank.

NOTICE

Air may have entered the cooling system if there is no longer any coolant in the coolant expansion tank. This could cause damage to the engine.

- Do not drive on.
- Do not add coolant.
- Seek expert assistance.

NOTICE

Use of water other than distilled water can cause considerable corrosion damage in the engine due to the chemical substances contained in the water. This can lead to failure of the engine.

- Refill only with distilled water!
- If you have not used distilled water for refilling, the fluid in the cooling system should be completely replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

NOTICE

Use of the wrong service fluids can cause serious malfunctions and damage the engine.

- When adding or replacing service fluids, ensure that you pour the correct service fluids into the corresponding openings.

Troubleshooting

Coolant

The warning lamp lights up red. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

STOP Do not drive on! The engine could otherwise be damaged.

The coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so *(→ Parking)*.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Allow the engine to cool down.

4. Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank *(→ Coolant)*.
5. Do not drive on or leave the engine running if the warning lamp does not go out even though the coolant level is correct.
6. Seek expert assistance.

Introduction to the topic

Brake fluid will gradually absorb water from the surrounding air over the course of time. The brake system will be damaged if there is too much water in the brake fluid. The boiling point of the brake fluid is also considerably reduced by the water content. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock in the brake system if the water content is too high. Vapour locks reduce the braking efficiency, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely. Your own safety and that of other road users depends on having a brake system that functions properly at all times.

WARNING

Brake fluid is toxic. Contact with brake fluid – particularly if swallowed – can lead to serious or fatal injuries.

- Consult a doctor immediately if you have swallowed brake fluid.
- Consult a doctor if you experience health problems after working with brake fluid.
- Always keep brake fluid out of the reach of children and only in the closed original container.
- Never store brake fluid in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink the brake fluid in them.
- Avoid regular contact with brake fluid in order to prevent damage to the skin.
- Protect your skin, face and particularly your eyes when working with brake fluid.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with brake fluid.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working with brake fluid.

NOTICE

Brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled will attack vehicle surfaces. The vehicle paintwork, plastic parts and tyres could be damaged as a result.

- Wipe off brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled immediately from all parts of the vehicle.
- Then rinse all components with sufficient amounts of water.

Brake fluid can pollute the environment.

- Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

Brake fluid specification

Volkswagen has developed a brake fluid that has been optimised for the brake system in the vehicle. To ensure the best possible operation of the brake system, Volkswagen expressly recommends the use of brake fluid compliant with VW standard 501 14.

Before using a particular brake fluid, check that the specifications printed on the container correspond to the vehicle requirements.

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 is available from authorised Volkswagen repairers.

If such a brake fluid is not available and another high-quality brake fluid must be used for this reason, a brake fluid can be used that meets the requirements of DIN ISO 4925 or the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 CLASS 6.

Not all brake fluids that are compliant with DIN ISO 4925 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 CLASS 6 have the same chemical composition. Some of these brake fluids may contain chemicals that can damage or destroy brake system components over time.

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 fulfils the requirements of DIN ISO 4925 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 CLASS 6.

Checking the brake fluid

Preparations

1. Park the vehicle safely on a horizontal and firm surface *(→ Parking)*.
2. Open the bonnet.

Checking the brake fluid level



Fig. 1 In the bonnet space: cap of the brake fluid reservoir.

The brake fluid reservoir can be recognised by its cap → *Fig. 1*.

The brake fluid level cannot be checked accurately in all models as a flap or engine components may partially conceal the brake fluid container.

— If the brake fluid level cannot be read exactly, please seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

— If the brake fluid is not between the min. and max. markings of the brake fluid reservoir, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop →⚠. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The brake fluid level drops slightly during vehicle operation as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

⚠ WARNING

An overly low brake fluid level or unsuitable brake fluid can cause brake failure or reduced braking efficiency. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have the brake system and brake fluid level checked regularly.
- Make sure that the correct brake fluid is used.
- Use only brake fluid that is explicitly compliant with VW standard 501 14.
- Use a high-quality brake fluid in accordance with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 6 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4, only in exceptional cases if a brake fluid according to VW standard 501 14 is not available.

Changing the brake fluid

Suitably qualified workshops can provide information on the intervals for changing the vehicle's brake fluid. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

— The brake fluid should be changed regularly.

— Only brake fluid that conforms with the required specification should be used.

⚠ WARNING

Old brake fluid can form vapour bubbles due to absorbed moisture when the brakes are subjected to heavy use and reduce the braking effect to the point of total failure. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have the brake fluid changed regularly.
- Have the brake system filled only with new brake fluid.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level

The warning lamp lights up red. The brake fluid level is too low.

Do not drive on! This can result in brake failure.

1. Stop the vehicle immediately as soon as it possible and safe to do so *(→ Parking)*.
2. Check the brake fluid level.
3. Seek expert assistance if the brake fluid level is too low.

Introduction to the topic

The 12-volt vehicle battery is a component of the electrical system and serves to supply power in the vehicle. In the scope of maintenance work, the 12-volt vehicle battery is checked and where required, replaced.

You should only carry out work on the electrical system if you know exactly how to perform the required tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Failing to carry out work correctly can cause serious injuries →⚠.

Information on warning and indicator lamps that light up can be found in the troubleshooting sections at the end of the chapter *(→ 12-volt vehicle battery)*.

Battery switch-off in an accident in which the airbag is triggered

In vehicles with a 12-volt vehicle battery in the vehicle interior or luggage compartment, the electrical connection to the 12-volt vehicle battery is automatically disconnected pyrotechnically in the event of an accident in which the airbags are triggered. This prevents a short circuit. You can find further information on the location of the vehicle battery in the section *(→ 12-volt vehicle battery)*.

Explanation of the warnings on the 12-volt vehicle battery

Always wear eye protection!

Electrolyte is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!

No fire, sparks, naked lights or smoking!

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the 12-volt vehicle battery is charging!

Always keep children away from electrolyte and the 12-volt vehicle battery!

Always observe the owner's manual!

⚠ WARNING

Any work on the 12-volt vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. This can cause severe injuries.

- Always read and observe the warnings on the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers before carrying out any work on the 12-volt vehicle battery and also disconnect the negative cable from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Children should always be kept away from electrolyte and the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- When working with the 12-volt vehicle battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillage.
- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Never short circuit battery terminals.
- All work should be carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when working on the 12-volt vehicle battery. The explosive gas emitted from the 12-volt vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic discharge.

NOTICE

Ultraviolet radiation can damage the battery housing.

- Do not expose the 12-volt vehicle battery to direct sunlight for an extended period.

NOTICE

The 12-volt vehicle battery can freeze and be destroyed as a result.

- Protect the 12-volt vehicle battery against frost if the vehicle is left standing for extended periods.

System settings after battery replacement

System settings may have been changed or deleted if the 12-volt vehicle battery has been replaced or after jump starting.

1. Check the date and time and adjust if necessary.
2. Check the personal convenience settings and adjust and save if necessary.

12-volt vehicle batteries may contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. Dispose of the 12-volt vehicle battery in a proper and environmentally responsible manner and only at a collection point for used batteries, e.g. a recycling centre or specialist company.

Electrolyte can pollute the environment. Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

Checking the electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery is maintenance-free.

The electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older 12-volt vehicle batteries.

Location of 12-volt vehicle battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery is located in the bonnet space.

Preparations

1. Prepare the vehicle for working in the bonnet space.
2. Wear eye protection and protective gloves.
3. Open the bonnet.

Checking the electrolyte level

WARNING

Battery acid is caustic. Contact with battery acid – especially if swallowed – can cause severe burns.

- Never open a 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Never tilt the 12-volt vehicle battery. Electrolyte may spill out of the gas vents.
- Protect the skin, face and especially the eyes while working with the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working on the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working on the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- In case of acid contact on skin and hair, remove all soiled or soaked clothing and wash skin and hair with water. Consult a doctor.
- If acid comes into contact with the eyes, rinse the affected area gently with water for a few minutes. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- If you have swallowed electrolyte, swallow activated charcoal and drink plenty of water immediately. Consult a doctor immediately.
- If you have inhaled electrolyte mist, leave the danger zone and breathe in fresh air. Consult a doctor immediately.

WARNING

A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when working on the 12-volt vehicle battery. The explosive gas emitted from the 12-volt vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic discharge.

Depending on equipment, an additional bracket must be removed to view the battery window. An additional tool that is not included in the vehicle toolkit is required for this purpose. Always have the electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

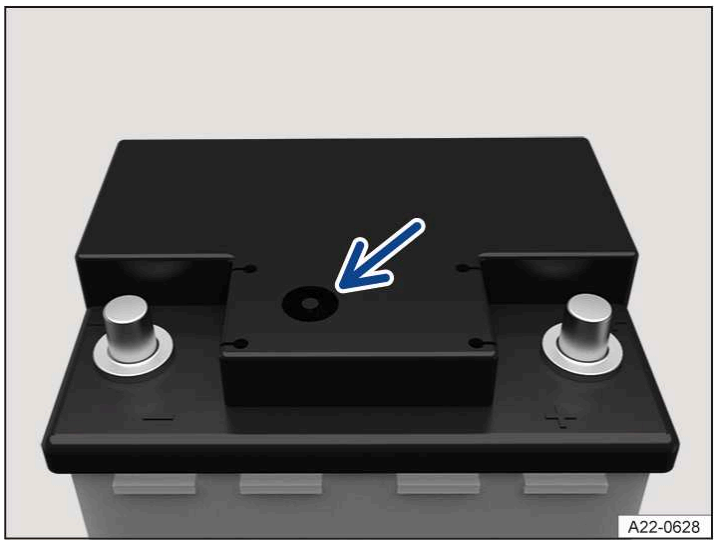


Fig. 1 On the top of the 12-volt vehicle battery: battery window (illustration).

Ensure that enough light is available for you to clearly see the colour indicator in the round window on the top of the 12-volt vehicle battery → *Fig. 1*.

Light yellow or *without colour*

— The electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low. Have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a correspondingly qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Black

— The electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is correct.

For technical reasons, it is not possible to check the electrolyte level of 12-volt vehicle batteries that are marked as AGM. The battery can be checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

If you suspect that the 12-volt vehicle battery is damaged or faulty, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the 12-volt vehicle battery checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery should be charged by a suitably qualified workshop, as the technology used in factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle batteries requires voltage-limited charging →⚠. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Replacing the 12-volt vehicle battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its installation location and has special safety features. If a 12-volt vehicle battery has to be replaced, the replacement part must be installed by a workshop qualified to do this. For component information on size and the required maintenance, capacity and safety features, please contact a suitably qualified workshop, which must have the necessary technical documentation and equipment. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer. The ventilation opening of the 12-volt vehicle battery must always be on the negative terminal side: the ventilation opening on the positive terminal side must always be sealed →⚠.

Only maintenance-free 12-volt vehicle batteries compliant with the standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 should be used. These standards must be dated October 2014 or later.

The 12-volt vehicle battery must always be replaced by a workshop qualified to do this, as the vehicle electronics must be adapted as part of the replacement process. In addition, the battery parameters for functional safety were determined only with the original equipment battery. Only suitably qualified workshops have the technology required to carry out this adjustment and also the correct

replacement batteries. If a battery is used that does not comply with the specifications of Volkswagen AG or has insufficient battery capacity, this will render the type approval and thus the registration of the vehicle invalid →⚠.

Disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

Please note the following if the 12-volt vehicle battery has to be disconnected from the electrical system in the vehicle:

1. Switch all electrical consumers off.
2. Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery in order to avoid triggering the anti-theft alarm.
3. First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable →⚠.

Connecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

Please observe the following if the 12-volt vehicle battery has to be connected to the electrical system in the vehicle:

1. Switch all electrical consumers off.
2. First reconnect the positive cable and then the negative cable →⚠.
3. Switch on ignition, fold in and fold out exterior mirrors.

Various indicator lamps may light up after the 12-volt vehicle battery has been connected and the ignition is switched on. They will go out if you drive a short distance at a speed of around 15 km/h to 20 km/h (around 10 mph to 12 mph). If the indicator lamps stay lit, the vehicle should be checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If the 12-volt vehicle battery was disconnected for an extended period, the system may not able to calculate or correctly display the time when the next service is due *(→ Service interval display)*. Observe the maximum permissible service intervals .

Perform the following actions if the ignition cannot be switched on after connecting the 12-volt vehicle battery:

1. Lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside.
2. Try to switch on the ignition again.
3. Please seek expert assistance if the ignition cannot be switched on.

Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers

If the exterior lighting is switched on for a long time when the vehicle is parked with the engine switched off, the intelligent onboard supply management system cannot always prevent discharge of the 12-volt vehicle battery.

If the 12-volt vehicle battery is subject to high loads, the intelligent onboard supply management system automatically performs various measures to prevent discharge of the 12-volt vehicle battery.

— The performance of large electrical consumers may be reduced or they may be switched off completely.

Discharge of 12-volt vehicle battery

It may not be possible to start the engine if the battery is discharged. The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged in the following situations:

— By long standing periods without starting the engine.

— Through use of electrical consumers when the engine is switched off.

— By operating the auxiliary heater or stationary air conditioning.

⚠ WARNING

Use of a 12-volt vehicle battery that does not have the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery can lead to short circuits or cause a fire. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always use a maintenance-free and leak-proof 12-volt vehicle battery that has the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery.

⚠

WARNING

Improper mounting of 12-volt vehicle batteries can lead to short circuits or cause a fire. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always secure the 12-volt vehicle battery at the mounting points provided in the vehicle.
- Fit all covers necessary for the vehicle on the battery again.

WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the 12-volt vehicle battery is being charged. Sparks or naked flames can ignite the explosive gas mixture. This can result in serious burns.

- 12-volt vehicle batteries should only be charged in well-ventilated spaces.
- Keep sparks and naked flames away from the 12-volt vehicle battery.

WARNING

If the hose for the central gas venting system is not correctly secured on the 12-volt vehicle battery, the highly explosive gas mixture that is produced during vehicle operation can enter the vehicle interior. The explosive gas can ignite and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- In vehicles with the 12-volt vehicle battery in the vehicle interior or luggage compartment, make sure that the hose for the central gas venting system is connected properly to the 12-volt vehicle battery. The vent line must always be attached on the negative terminal side of the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Always make sure that the opening on the positive terminal side of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sealed.

CAUTION

Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can already freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (around +32°F). Acid can leak from a 12-volt vehicle battery that has frozen and then thawed again. This can cause injuries and damage to the vehicle in the long term.

- Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery which is frozen or has been frozen.
- The 12-volt vehicle battery must be replaced if it has ever frozen.

CAUTION

Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short circuit. This can damage the vehicle electronics system and cause injuries.

- First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable.

NOTICE

If the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or connected when the ignition is switched on or when the engine has been started, this can result in damage to the electrical system and electronic components and electrical malfunction can occur.

- Never connect or disconnect the 12-volt vehicle battery if the ignition is switched on or the engine has been started.

NOTICE

If accessories that supply electric power are connected to the 12-volt socket to charge the 12-volt vehicle battery, this can damage the electrical system and the electronic components and lead to electrical malfunctions.

- Never connect equipment that supplies electric power, e.g. solar panels or a battery charger, to the 12-volt socket to charge the 12-volt vehicle battery.

Troubleshooting

12-volt power supply

The warning lamp lights up red.

Do not drive on! Possible failure of the electrical system.

A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place.
2. Switch off any electrical consumers that are not required.
3. Stop the engine and switch off the ignition.
4. Seek expert assistance.

When the red warning lamp is lit up, the start/stop system is switched off. The start/stop system will be switched on again automatically when the engine is restarted.

12-volt power supply

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

A message with information on the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Allow the engine to run so that the 12-volt vehicle battery can be recharged.
2. Seek expert assistance if the message about the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery does not disappear after a few minutes in spite of the measures performed.

A message with information on the 12-volt power supply is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Seek expert assistance.

When the yellow indicator lamp is lit up, the start/stop system cannot start the engine. When the yellow indicator lamp has gone out, the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient for an automatic engine restart.

Troubleshooting

48-volt power supply

During the journey, the warning lamp lights up red.

Do not drive on!

There is a fault in the 48-volt power supply.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Leave the vehicle.
4. Seek expert assistance.

48-volt power supply

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

There is a fault in the 48-volt power supply.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Wait for a few seconds.
4. Switch on the ignition again.

If the indicator lamp remains lit, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

48-volt vehicle battery

When the vehicle is stationary, the indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Messages with information on the charge level of the 48-volt vehicle battery are displayed.

1. Start the engine.
2. Let the engine run for a few minutes while the vehicle is stationary or drive off immediately.

If the indicator lamp still remains lit after several minutes, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Or:

If the engine cannot be started.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Jump start the vehicle *(→ Jump starting)*.

Please contact an expert if the vehicle's engine still will not start.

Introduction to the topic

Wheels are the most heavily loaded and most underestimated parts of a vehicle. Wheels are very important as the narrow tyre surfaces are the only contact between the vehicle and the road.

The wheels and tyres approved by Volkswagen have been carefully selected.

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style, handling and correct fitting.

Wheel rims, tyres and wheel bolts

Wheel rims, tyres and wheel bolts are matched to the vehicle type. If different wheel rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the correct length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that the brakes work properly and that the vehicle drives quietly and safely. For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheel rims from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheel rims of the same vehicle type. Always contact a suitably qualified workshop if you wish to change to other tyre and wheel rim combinations. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The correct wheel bolts must be used for all vehicle types; these bolts must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque *(→ Wheel bolts)*.

Declaration of conformity for wheels and tyres

Applies only in India: Tyres fitted in the vehicle meet the requirement of BIS and comply with the requirements under the Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR), 1989.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling of wheels can reduce vehicle safety and cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always maintain the specified pressure *(→ Tyre pressure)*. If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent when driving that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage and wear.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.
- All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- If you notice unusual vibrations, or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop immediately and check the tyres and wheel rims for damage.
- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rim rings.
- Only carry out work on wheels yourself if you have the necessary knowledge and tools.

⚠ WARNING

New tyres or tyres which are old, worn down or damaged cannot provide full levels of vehicle control and braking efficiency.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Run in new tyres as they will initially have reduced grip and braking efficiency. Therefore, drive with appropriate caution during the first 600 km (370 mi).
- Never drive with worn tyres or tyres that shows signs of damage such as holes, cuts, cracks or blisters. If you are unsure whether it is possible to continue driving safely, seek expert assistance.
- If you notice unusual vibrations, or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop immediately and check the tyres and wheel rims for damage.
- Do not use tyres or wheel rims if you do not know their history. Used tyres and wheel rims could be damaged, even if the damage is not visible.
- Use tyres that are more than six years old only if you have no alternative. In this case, drive slowly and with extra care at all times, even if the tyres have never been used.

- Have worn or damaged tyres replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and thus the wheel can become loose while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and the threads could be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

Incorrectly tightened or missing wheel bolts can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always tighten the wheel bolts with the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench available, tighten the wheel bolts with the wheel wrench and have the torque checked immediately by the nearest suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Never drive if wheel bolts are missing or loose.
- Always use wheel bolts that match the wheel rims and the vehicle type.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolt and the threads in the wheel hubs. This could cause the wheel bolts to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs are clean, smooth running and free of oil and grease.
- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rim rings.

⚠ WARNING

Improper mounting of the tyre on the rim can cause the rim to be damaged and the tyre to suddenly lose air or burst while driving. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Have tyres fitted on the wheel rims only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Handling tyres

Avoiding damage to tyres

— Drive over kerbs and other low obstacles slowly and at right angles so that the two front wheels come into contact with the obstacle at the same time.

— There is an increased risk of damage to the tyres and wheel rims on poor and unsurfaced roads and when driving offroad, particularly if the vehicle is fitted with low-profile tyres.

— Check the tyre pressure regularly.

— Check the tyres for damage such as cuts at regular intervals.

— Never exceed the maximum speed and load permitted for the tyres that are fitted *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.

— Damaged or worn tyres must be replaced immediately .

— Protect the tyres from contact with aggressive substances, including grease, oil, petrol and brake fluid →⚠.

— Replace missing dust caps on the valves immediately.

— Remove foreign bodies that have not yet penetrated to the inside of the tyre .

— Observe all warnings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)* *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

⚠ WARNING

Corrosive liquids and other substances can cause visible and invisible damage to the tyres, which can cause the tyre to burst. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, lubricants, fuel, brake fluid and other corrosive substances away from the tyres.

Storing tyres

— Always store tyres in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

— Do not store tyres mounted on the rim vertically.

— Any tyres not fitted on rims should be kept in suitable sleeves to protect against dirt and should be stored vertically (standing on the tread).

Tyres that are more than six years old

Tyres age through physical and chemical processes that can impair their function. Tyres that have been stored unused for an extended period of time age more quickly than tyres that are used all the time.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tyres that are more than six years old with new tyres. This also applies to tyres which appear to still be in good condition and whose tread depth has not yet reached the minimum value stipulated by legislation →⚠.

Winter and all-season tyres also largely lose their effectiveness through ageing – regardless of the remaining tread depth.

The age of each tyre can be determined on the basis of the manufacturing date *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.

⚠ WARNING

Old tyres can suddenly lose air or burst, especially at high speeds.
This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.
- Use tyres that are more than six years old only if you have no alternative. In this case, drive slowly and with extra care at all times, even if the tyres have never been used.

New tyres

— Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km (370 mi) with new tyres as the tyres have to be run in. Tyres that have not been run in have reduced grip and braking efficiency →⚠.

— All wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread.

— The tread depth of new tyres may vary between tyre models and manufacturers due to different design features and tread designs.

⚠ WARNING

New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect.
This can lead to loss of vehicle control, serious accidents and fatal injuries.
- Run in new tyres. Drive with appropriate caution during the first 600 km (370 mi).

New tyre sizes may differ significantly from the actual dimensions and tyre dimensions for different tyre brands.

Replacing tyres

— The vehicle may be fitted with optimised rolling resistance tyres at the factory. Only with these tyres can the indicated fuel consumption values be achieved. Make sure that any new tyres purchased have optimised rolling resistance *(→ Driving economically)*.

— Seek advice from a suitably qualified workshop before purchasing new reduced rolling resistance tyres. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

— Always replace tyres at least on an axle-by-axle basis.

— Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type.

— Never use tyres with an effective size that is larger than Volkswagen-approved tyres →⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Wheels must have the necessary clearance. If there is no clearance, the tyres may come into frictional contact with parts of the running gear, bodywork and brake lines.
This can lead to failure of the braking system, detachment of the tread surface, tyre bursting and thus serious accidents and fatal injuries.
- Only use tyres whose dimensions are not larger than the dimensions of the tyre brands approved by Volkswagen and which do not rub against parts of the vehicle.

Volkswagen Genuine tyres

The vehicle may be fitted with Volkswagen Genuine tyres at the factory. These tyres are marked with the ⊕ symbol and have been especially matched to this vehicle. When used correctly Volkswagen Genuine tyres meet the highest standards with respect to safety and vehicle handling.

Re-synchronising the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator must be re-synchronised each time one or more wheels is changed. This also applies if the wheels have been swapped, e.g. from the front to the rear *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.

Vehicles fitted with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

— If you replace factory-fitted wheels, make sure that the new wheels are equipped with sensors that are compatible with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

— Drive the vehicle at a speed of over around 25 km/h (around 15 mph) for an extended period so that the new wheels can be detected.

Volkswagen recommends that a new valve set and set of seals is used every time the sensors are replaced or modified.

Further information on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

WARNING

Incorrect replacement or conversion of the sensors of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System can cause the valves to leak, with the result that the tyre loses air.

If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre will heat up to such an extent when driving that this can result in tread separation and the tyre bursting, which can cause serious accidents and serious injuries.

- When replacing and converting sensors, always use a new valve and seal set.

WARNING

Dirt can damage the valves and cause them to leak so that the tyre loses air.

If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre will heat up to such an extent when driving that this can result in tread separation and the tyre bursting, which can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never drive without valve caps.

NOTICE

Driving over potholes and kerb edges can deform the tyres.

This can cause damage to the tyres and wheel rims.

- Avoid strong impacts and drive around obstacles if possible.

NOTICE

When swapping to other wheels, the valves can be damaged.

- Do not drop dismounted wheels on the rim.

Old tyres should be disposed of properly and as required by legislation.

A new valve set and set of seals must always be used every time the sensors of the tyre pressure monitoring system are replaced or modified. Otherwise, the tyre pressure monitoring system may indicate a malfunction *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

If the spare tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the car - for example in the case of winter tyres or a temporary spare wheel - only use the spare tyre in the event of a breakdown for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Replace the temporary spare wheel with a normal wheel as soon as possible.

Volkswagen-approved tyres are guaranteed to have the dimensions that are suitable for the vehicle. In the case of other tyres, the tyre seller must provide a certificate from the tyre manufacturer stating that the tyre is also suitable for the vehicle. Store the certificate in a safe place and keep it in the vehicle.

Handling wheel rims

Avoid damaging wheel rims

— Missing hubcaps can lead to damage to the wheel rims and wheel bolts.

Fit missing hubcaps before every journey.

— Drive over kerbs and other low obstacles slowly and at right angles so that the two front wheels come into contact with the obstacle at the same time.

— Replace missing dust caps on the valves immediately.

— Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Wheel rims with bolted rim rings or trim elements

Rims with bolted-on rim rings or trim elements consist of several components. These components are joined together using special bolts. Damaged wheel rims must be replaced and may be repaired only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Wheel rim identification

In some countries, new wheel rims must contain information on certain properties. The following information may be provided on the wheel rim:

— Seal of conformity.

— Rim size.

— Name of manufacturer or brand name.

— Date manufactured (month/year).

— Country of origin.

— Production number.

— Raw materials batch number.

— Product code.

⚠ WARNING

The use of unsuitable or damaged wheel rims can impair vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injury.

- Use only wheel rims that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Check the wheel rims regularly for damage and replace them if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect loosening and tightening of the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rim rings can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rim rings.
- Have all work on wheel rims with bolted-on rings carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Checking the tyre pressure

The wrong tyre pressure will have a negative effect on the vehicle's response and lead to high levels of wear or even a burst tyre →⚠. The correct tyre pressure is particularly important at high speeds.

— Check the tyre pressure at least once a month.

— Check the tyre pressure of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel at least once a month.

— Always check the tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. The specified tyre pressure applies to cold tyres. Tyre pressure is always higher in warm tyres than it is in cold tyres. For this reason, never reduce the pressure in warm tyres to adjust the tyre pressure.

— Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load level → *Fig. 2*.

— After adjusting the tyre pressures, always screw the caps onto the valves and observe the information on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

— Always use the tyre pressure specified on the sticker. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure which is given on the sidewall of the tyre

— If the tyre size of the mounted tyres differs from the specifications on the type plate or tyre pressure sticker, the correct tyre pressure must be determined.

Location of the tyre pressure sticker

The sticker provides the correct tyre pressure for approved tyres and is located either on the driver door pillar → *Fig. 1* or inside the tank flap.



Fig. 1 On the driver door pillar: tyre pressure sticker (alternatively on the inside of the tank flap).

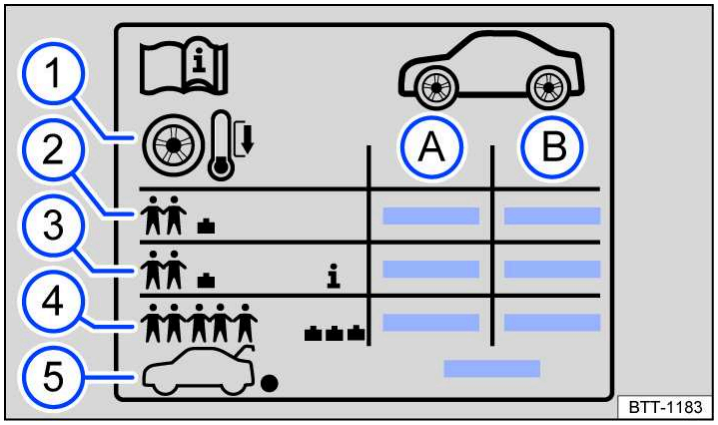


Fig. 2 Symbols on the tyre pressure sticker.

- (A) Tyre pressure for the tyres on the front axle.
- (B) Tyre pressure for the tyres on the rear axle.
- (1) Note: check the tyre pressure when the tyres are cold.
- (2) Tyre pressure for partial load.
- (3) *Vehicle-dependent:* comfort tyre pressure for partial load.
- (4) Tyre pressure for full load.
- (5) Tyre pressure level for the spare wheel, collapsible spare wheel or temporary spare wheel.

The appearance of the sticker may differ between vehicles. It may contain additional tyre sizes that are not approved for your specific vehicle. For information on the tyre sizes approved for your vehicle, refer to the vehicle registration certificate or the EC Certificate of Conformity, or ask an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Comfort tyre pressure

Depending on the vehicle, the tyre pressure sticker may show details of a comfort tyre pressure → *Fig. 2*. The comfort tyre pressure allows increased driving comfort. Fuel consumption may increase when driving with comfort tyre pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Underinflation can cause the tyre to suddenly lose pressure while the vehicle is motion, the tread to peel off or the tyre to burst. If the tyre pressure is too low, the tyres will wear prematurely and the car will not handle well.

Incorrect tyre pressure can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Check tyre pressures regularly, at least once a month, and before every long journey.
- Always adjust the tyre pressure to the corresponding load condition.
- Never reduce the increased tyre pressure of warm tyres.

⚠ WARNING

Excessive speeds and overloading of the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and detachment of the tread.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum load capacity of the fitted tyres *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.
- Never exceed the permitted maximum speed of the fitted tyres *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.

NOTICE

Careless handling of the tyre pressure gauge can damage the valve.

- When attaching the tyre pressure gauge, ensure that you do not position it at an angle to the valve stem.

Underinflated tyres will result in increased fuel consumption.

Tyre pressure for the spare or temporary spare wheel

Depending on equipment, the vehicle may be delivered from the factory with different variants of a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel:

Full spare wheel

The full spare wheel is a wheel whose size and tread correspond to that of the normal tyres. The tyre pressure for the full spare wheel correspond to the tyre pressure of the normal tyres and is specified on the tyre pressure sticker *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

Temporary spare wheel



Fig. 1 Temporary spare wheel.

The temporary spare wheel consists of a special wheel rim that has a significantly narrower tyre than the normal tyres.

The temporary spare wheel can be recognised by a sticker and the inscription “80 km/h” or “50 mph” *→ Fig. 1*. This is the maximum speed at which you are permitted to drive with this tyre. Do not cover the sticker during use of the wheel.

The tyre pressure for the temporary spare wheel is 4.2 bar (61 psi/420 kPa).

Checking the tightening torque

The correct wheel bolts must be used for all vehicle types; these bolts must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque. The tightening torque of the wheel bolts must be checked regularly with a properly functioning torque wrench. In addition, the tightening torque must be checked immediately after every wheel change with a properly functioning torque wrench. If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and thus the wheel can become loose while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and the threads could be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

If the wheel bolts are corroded and stiff, they must be renewed and the wheel hub threads cleaned before the tightening torque is checked. Never grease or oil the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hubs.

Tightening torque for wheel bolts

The tightening torque for wheel bolts is specified in the chapter Changing a wheel *(→ Wheels and tyres)*.

⚠ WARNING

If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and thus the wheel can become loose while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and the threads could be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

Incorrectly tightened or missing wheel bolts can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always tighten the wheel bolts with the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench available, tighten the wheel bolts with the wheel wrench and have the torque checked immediately by the nearest suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.
- Never drive if wheel bolts are missing or loose.
- Always use wheel bolts that match the wheel rims and the vehicle type.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolt and the threads in the wheel hubs. This could cause the wheel bolts to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs are clean, smooth running and free of oil and grease.
- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rim rings.

Rotating wheels

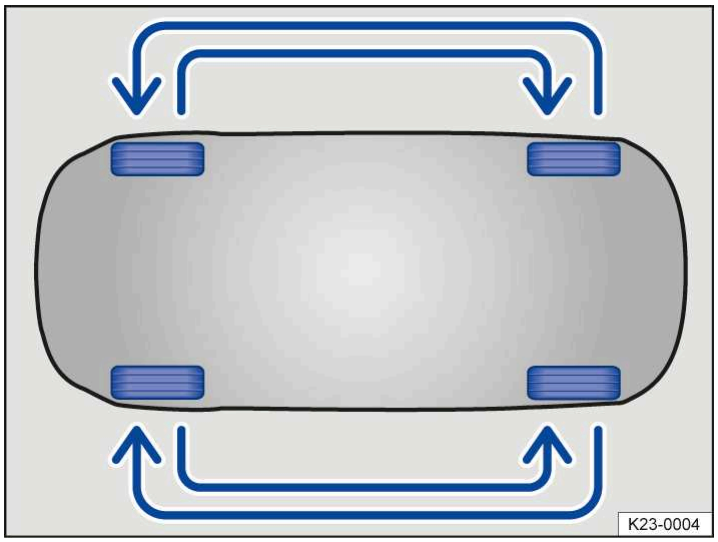


Fig. 1 Diagram showing how to swap wheels (illustration).

Regularly rotating the wheels as shown in the illustration → *Fig. 1* is recommended to help ensure that tyres wear evenly. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

Volkswagen recommends having a wheel change carried out by a correspondingly qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

Checking the tread depth

Tread depth

Most driving situations require the highest possible tread depth. The tyres should have the same tread depth, at the minimum on each axle →⚠. This is especially true in wet or wintry road conditions.

In most countries, the minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (1/16 in), measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators. Observe any deviating country-specific legal regulations.

Observe any country-specific legal requirements relating to the permissible minimum tread depths for winter and all-year tyres.

Tyre wear

The tyre wear is affected by several factors:

— Style of driving.

— How well the tyres are balanced.

— Adjustments made to the running gear.

Wheel imbalance may develop when the vehicle is driven; you will notice this by the nervous steering response. Unbalanced wheels will affect the level of tyre wear. In this case the wheels should be balanced again.

Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. The wheel alignment should be checked by a suitably qualified workshop if tyres show excessive wear. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

Tyre wear due to sporty driving

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

If you drive with a sporty driving style, check the tread depth every 5,000 to 10,000 km (around 3,107 to 6,214 mi).

Tread wear indicators in tyres



Fig. 1 In the tread grooves: tread wear indicator.

There are 1.6 mm (1/16 in) high wear indicators →*Fig. 1* in the tread base of the tyres. Markings on the tyre sidewall indicate the position of the tread wear indicators →*Fig. 1*.

The tread wear indicators show if a tyre is worn down. The tyre must be replaced at the latest when the tread depth is just down to the tread wear indicator.

The tread wear indicators of all tread grooves must be checked when the tread depth is checked.

⚠ WARNING

Worn tyres are a safety risk and make it difficult to control the vehicle well. They also increase the braking distance and the risk of skidding.

Worn tyres have significantly reduced grip. On wet roads in particular, the vehicle will be more at risk of aquaplaning.

Worn tyres can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Replace the tyres with new tyres at the latest when the tyres are worn down to the tread wear indicators.

Winter tyres

Summer tyres have less grip on icy or snow-covered roads. Winter or all-season tyres improve the handling and braking characteristics in winter road conditions. Volkswagen recommends that winter tyres be fitted to the vehicle at temperatures below +7°C (+45°F) or in winter road conditions. This also applies to models with all-wheel drive.

Winter and all-season tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm (around 5/32 in).

The following applies when using winter tyres:

— Observe any country-specific legal requirements.

— Use winter tyres on all four wheels at the same time.

— Only use in winter road conditions.

— Only use the sizes of tyre that have been approved for the vehicle.

— Only use winter tyres that have the same belt type, size and the same tread pattern .

— Observe the maximum speed permitted by the speed rating.

Speed limitation

Winter tyres have a speed limit depending on the speed rating *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.

The type of tyre fitted to the vehicle can be selected and a speed warning set in the Infotainment system.

If you use V-rated winter tyres, the speed limits and required tyre pressure are determined by the engine size. You must ask a suitably qualified workshop about the maximum permitted speed and required tyre pressure. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Selecting the tyre type

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap Vehicle.
4. Tap Vehicle (left).
5. Tap Tyres.
6. Select the **Tyre type** menu option.
7. Select tyre type.

Setting the speed warning

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap Vehicle.
4. Tap Vehicle (left).
5. Tap Tyres.
6. In the **Warning at** menu option, use the slider to adjust the speed warning according to the speed rating of the fitted tyres.
7. In the **Speed warning** menu option, activate the speed warning using the slider.

⚠ WARNING

The improved vehicle handling as a result of winter tyres on wintry roads does not constitute a reason to take safety risks, as this may result in loss of vehicle control and serious injuries.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.

The vehicle handling is better if summer tyres are fitted at temperatures above +7°C (+45°F). The rolling noise is quieter, the tyre wear lower and the energy efficiency higher in this case.

In vehicles with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, the system has to re-synchronise after changing to winter tyres *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.

On vehicles with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System, winter tyres must be fitted with compatible sensors for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System to ensure the system works properly *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*. If the dimensions of the winter tyres are different from those of the summer tyres and require a different tyre pressure, the tyre pressure values for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System must be adjusted *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

The speed limit and load capacity of winter tyres may differ from those of summer tyres.

Ask a suitably qualified workshop about the permitted winter tyre sizes. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Snow chains

Please observe legislation and also the maximum permitted speed when driving your vehicle with snow chains.

On icy or snow-covered roads, snow chains will improve traction and braking response.

Snow chains may be fitted only to the front wheels. They may be fitted only to the following tyre and wheel rim combinations:

Tyre size	Wheel rim
215/55 R 17	7 1/2 J x 17 ET 41

Use only snow chains with fine-pitch links that do not protrude by more than around 9 mm (around 23/64 in), including the tensioner.

Volkswagen recommends that you ask a suitably qualified workshop for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain sizes. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Snow chains may only be used on tyre and wheel rim combinations that are approved for driving with snow chains.

Remove hubcaps and trim rings before fitting snow chains. For safety reasons, cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. Caps are available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Using snow chains with fitted temporary spare wheel or collapsible spare wheel

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the temporary spare wheel or collapsible spare wheel.

1. In event of a flat tyre on one of the front wheels, fit the temporary spare wheel or collapsible spare wheel on the rear axle.
2. Replace the damaged front wheel with the removed rear wheel. Observe the direction of rotation.

Volkswagen recommends fitting the snow chains before fitting the wheel.

WARNING

The use of snow chains that are unsuitable for your vehicle or the incorrect installation of snow chains can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always use the correct snow chains.
- Use snow chains only on the tyre and wheel rim combinations approved by Volkswagen.
- Observe the fitting instructions of the snow chain manufacturer.
- When snow chains are fitted, never exceed the maximum speed specified by the snow chain manufacturer or the legally permitted maximum speed.

NOTICE

If snow chains are used on road sections where there is no snow, they will adversely affect the vehicle handling and damage the tyres and will also be quickly destroyed.

- Always remove the snow chains on road sections where there is no snow.

Snow chains that are in direct contact with the wheel rim can scratch or damage it.

- To avoid damage, use snow chains with integrated wheel rim protection.

In vehicles with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, the system must be re-synchronised when snow chains are fitted *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.

Troubleshooting

Damage to tyres and wheel rims is often hidden →⚠.

If you suspect that a wheel is damaged, slow down immediately and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Pulling to one side or unusual vibrations

The vehicle pulls to the left or right when driving or there are unusual vibrations. This can be a sign of tyre damage or inadequate tyre pressure.

STOP Check the tyres.

Slow down immediately and stop as soon as the traffic situation permits and it is safe to do so.

1. Check the tyres and wheel rims for damage.
2. Do not drive on if a tyre is damaged.
3. Changing a damaged wheel *(→ Changing a wheel)*. Seek expert assistance if necessary.

   Or: seal damaged wheel with the breakdown set and inflate *(→ Breakdown set)*.
4. If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next suitably qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Foreign body embedded in the tyre

A foreign body is embedded in the tyre or between the tread blocks.

Vehicles with mobility tyres: leave the foreign body in the tyre and go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer. A sealant applied to the inside of the tyre tread encloses the foreign body and seals the tyre temporarily.

1. Leave the foreign body in the tyre if it has entered the inner tyre. Foreign bodies that are stuck between the tyre tread blocks can be removed.
2. Changing a damaged wheel *(→ Changing a wheel)*. Seek expert assistance if necessary.

   Or: seal damaged wheel with the breakdown set and inflate *(→ Breakdown set)*.
3. Check and adjust the tyre pressure.
4. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Tyres lose grip

The vehicle suffers from loss of grip when cornering and breaks away. The braking distance is longer and the traction control system (TCS) and anti-lock brake system (ABS) intervene earlier.

The tyres may be worn so much that they can no longer guarantee sufficient grip *(→ Tread depth and tread wear indicators)*.

1. Drive slowly and cautiously to the next suitably qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Wheel bolts are difficult to undo

The wheel bolts can corrode over the course of time. This makes it difficult to undo the wheel bolts.

1. Seek expert assistance or drive slowly and cautiously to the next suitably qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

If you notice unusual vibration or the car pulling to one side while the vehicle is in motion, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged.
Tyre damage can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Slow down immediately and stop as soon as the traffic situation permits and it is safe to do so.
- Check the tyres and wheel rims for damage, e.g. holes, cuts, cracks and bulges.
- Never drive on if tyres or wheel rims are damaged. Seek expert assistance instead.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the nearest suitably qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Function of the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator warns the driver when the tyre pressures are too low.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator is a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System and uses data from the ABS sensors and other functions to check the speed of rotation and the rolling circumference of the individual wheels when the vehicle is in motion.

If a tyre loses air or the tyre pressure is too low, the rolling circumference decreases and the speed of rotation increases.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator shows a change in rolling circumference of the tyres with the (!) indicator lamp in the instrument cluster.

The following situations can also lead to a change in the speed of rotation:

— If the tyre pressure has been changed.

— If the tyre has structural damage.

— If the vehicle is loaded more heavily on one side.

— If snow chains have been fitted.

— If one wheel per axle has been changed.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (!) may react with a delay or not display anything at all in the event of a sporty driving style, when driving on snow-covered or icy roads or unpaved roads or when driving with snow chains.

The recommended tyre pressure for the tyre sizes approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type can be found on the tyre pressure sticker on the driver's door pillar *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator does not work if there is a fault in the ESC or ABS *(→ Brake support systems)*.

Reference pressure

The reference pressure for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is the recommended tyre pressure for cold factory-fitted tyres. The reference pressure corresponds to the information on the tyre pressure sticker *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

If the tyre pressure of all four tyres has been adjusted correctly, the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator must be re-synchronised *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*. This adjusts the reference pressure to the current tyre pressure.

The tyre pressure of all tyres including the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel must be checked monthly on a cold tyre and correspond to the vehicle manufacturer's specifications on the tyre pressure sticker. If the tyre size of the mounted tyres differs from the specifications on the type plate or tyre pressure sticker, the correct tyre pressure must be determined.

As an additional safety feature, the vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) where an indicator lamp for low tyre pressure lights up if the pressure in one or more of the tyres is much too low. If the indicator lamp for low tyre pressure lights up, you should therefore stop the vehicle as quickly as possible, check the tyres, and inflate them to the correct pressure. Driving with a tyre pressure that is much too low will lead to the tyre overheating and can damage the tyre. A tyre pressure that is too low also

reduces the fuel efficiency and service life of the tyre tread and can negatively affect the driving behaviour and braking capability of the vehicle.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not remove the need for regular maintenance and inspection of tyres. The driver is responsible for ensuring the correct tyre pressure is maintained at all times, even if the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not give any warning that the tyre pressure is too low.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System additionally has a fault indicator that issues a warning if the system is not functioning properly. This fault indicator is coupled with the indicator lamp for low tyre pressure. If the system detects a fault, the indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute when the vehicle is started and then lights up continuously. This sequence is then repeated each time the vehicle is started as long as the fault is present.

If the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System indicates a malfunction, the tyre pressure cannot be monitored correctly. A malfunction of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System can have various causes, e.g. due to replacement of a wheel or tyre. When a wheel or tyre has been replaced, check whether the (!) indicator lamp is indicating a system malfunction to ensure that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is functioning properly *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)* *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

WARNING

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System cannot detect all driving situations and may not react at all or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention, and do not rely exclusively on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the tyre pressure is correct.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.
- Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always maintain the specified pressure corresponding to the tyre pressure sticker for the tyres fitted on the vehicle *(→ Tyre pressure)*.
- Check the tyres regularly for signs of wear or damage and replace worn or damaged tyres immediately.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.

WARNING

If the vehicle is driven with a tyre pressure that is too low, the tyre could heat up to such an extent that the tread becomes detached and the tyre bursts. This could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.

Different tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can increase tyre wear, reduce vehicle stability, extend the braking distance and lead to tyre damage, tyre failure and loss of control over the vehicle.

This can result in serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always observe the warnings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. If the (!) indicator lamp lights up, stop immediately in a place that is safe from traffic and check all tyres *(→ Tyre pressure)*.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure. Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always maintain the specified pressure corresponding to the tyre pressure sticker for the tyres fitted on the vehicle *(→ Tyre pressure)*. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System cannot function correctly unless all cold tyres have the correct tyre pressure.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest suitably qualified workshop and have the tyre pressure checked and corrected *(→ Tyre pressure)*. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Always adapt the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator correctly *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.

WARNING

Excessive speeds and overloading of the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and detachment of the tread.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum load capacity of the fitted tyres *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.
- Never exceed the permitted maximum speed of the fitted tyres *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.

If the tyre pressure is too low, this will increase fuel consumption and tyre wear.

When new tyres are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off tyre pressure warning.

Old tyres should be replaced only by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type.

Do not rely only on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. Check your tyres regularly to ensure that they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tyre tread but have not penetrated into the body of the tyre itself.

Limits of the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Regular maintenance

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator does not remove the need for regular maintenance and inspection of tyres. The driver is responsible for ensuring the correct tyre pressure is maintained at all times, even if the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator does not give any warning that the tyre pressure is too low.

The tyre pressure of all tyres must be checked monthly on the cold tyres and correspond to the vehicle manufacturer's specifications on the tyre pressure sticker.

This also applies to the tyre pressure of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel.

The recommended tyre pressure for the tyre sizes approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type can be found on the tyre pressure sticker *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

Malfunction not remedied

If the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator shows a malfunction, tyre pressure cannot be monitored correctly. A malfunction of the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator can have various causes, e.g. due to replacement of a wheel or tyre. When a wheel or tyre has been replaced, check whether the (!) indicator lamp is indicating a system malfunction to ensure that the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator is functioning properly *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.

Delayed display or no display

In the following situations, the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator may not display anything or may react with a delay:

— Driving with snow chains.

— Driving on snow-covered or icy roads or unsurfaced roads.

— With sporty driving.

Adapting the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator must be adapted again under the following conditions:

— If the tyre pressures have been changed.

— If one or more wheels have been changed.

— If the wheels have been swapped round, e.g. from front to rear *(→ Wheels and tyres)*.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator may only be adapted again if all the tyres have been filled at the correct tyre pressure when measured on a cold tyre. Before measuring the tyre pressure on a cold tyre, park the vehicle for 1 hour out of direct sunlight.

In the event of a low tyre pressure warning, you cannot calibrate the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator until you have met one of the following two conditions:

— Switch the ignition off and then back on again.

— Wait for 60 seconds with the engine running and the vehicle stationary.

1. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap Vehicle.
3. Tap Status.
4. Tap Tyres.
5. Tap SET.
6. When all four tyre pressures correspond to the required values, tap OK.

   The (!) indicator lamp flashes for around 6 seconds. An acoustic signal also sounds and a text message is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

   After an extended driving time of at least 20 minutes and driving at different speeds, the system will automatically learn the new values and monitor them.

If the (!) indicator lamp flashes for around 6 seconds without the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator having been newly adapted beforehand, go immediately to the nearest suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

If the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator is adapted when the tyre pressure is too high or too low, the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator may issue incorrect warnings or not issue a warning even though the tyre pressure is dangerously low.
This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Make sure that the tyre pressure of all tyres is correct before adapting the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator.

Troubleshooting for Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Low tyre pressure

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

There is a loss of pressure in one or more tyres or the tyre is structurally damaged.

1. Stop the vehicle immediately in a place that is safe from traffic.
2. Check the tyres for visible damage.
3. If the tyres are not visibly damaged, drive slowly to the nearest filling station and check the tyre pressures. Adjust the tyre pressures if necessary.
4. If a tyre is damaged, replace the damaged wheel . Seek expert assistance if necessary.

   Or: seal damaged wheel with the breakdown set and inflate .
5. Re-synchronise the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.
6. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Fault in the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The indicator lamp flashes for about 1 minute and then remains lit continuously yellow.

There is a system fault.

1. Stop the vehicle immediately in a place that is safe from traffic.
2. Switch the ignition off and then back on again.
3. Re-synchronise the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.
4. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Driving on unpaved roads for long periods or a sporty driving style can temporarily deactivate the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator. In the event of a malfunction, the indicator lamp will flash for about 1 minute and then light up continuously. However, the indicator lamp will go out when the road conditions or driving style change.

Function of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System warns the driver if the tyre pressures are too low.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is a tyre monitoring system and monitors the tyre pressure of the four wheels while the vehicle is in motion using pressure sensors on the tyres.

The tyre pressure of all tyres including the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel must be checked monthly on a cold tyre and correspond to the vehicle manufacturer's specifications on the tyre pressure sticker. If the tyre size of the mounted tyres differs from the specifications on the type plate or tyre pressure sticker, the correct tyre pressure must be determined.

As an additional safety feature, the vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) where an indicator lamp for low tyre pressure lights up if the pressure in one or more of the tyres is much too low. If the indicator lamp for low tyre pressure lights up, you should therefore stop the vehicle as quickly as possible, check the tyres, and inflate them to the correct pressure. Driving with a tyre pressure that is much too low will lead to the tyre overheating and can damage the tyre. A tyre pressure that is too low also reduces the fuel efficiency and service life of the tyre tread and can negatively affect the driving behaviour and braking capability of the vehicle.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not remove the need for regular maintenance and inspection of tyres. The driver is responsible for ensuring the correct tyre pressure is maintained at all times, even if the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not give any warning that the tyre pressure is too low.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System additionally has a fault indicator that issues a warning if the system is not functioning properly. This fault indicator is coupled with the indicator lamp for low tyre pressure. If the system detects a fault, the indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute when the vehicle is started and then lights up continuously. This sequence is then repeated each time the vehicle is started as long as the fault is present.

If the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System indicates a malfunction, the tyre pressure cannot be monitored correctly. A malfunction of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System can have various causes, e.g. due to replacement of a wheel or tyre. When a wheel or tyre has been replaced, check whether the (!) indicator lamp is indicating a system malfunction to ensure that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is functioning properly *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)* *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

Display of tyre pressures on the instrument cluster display

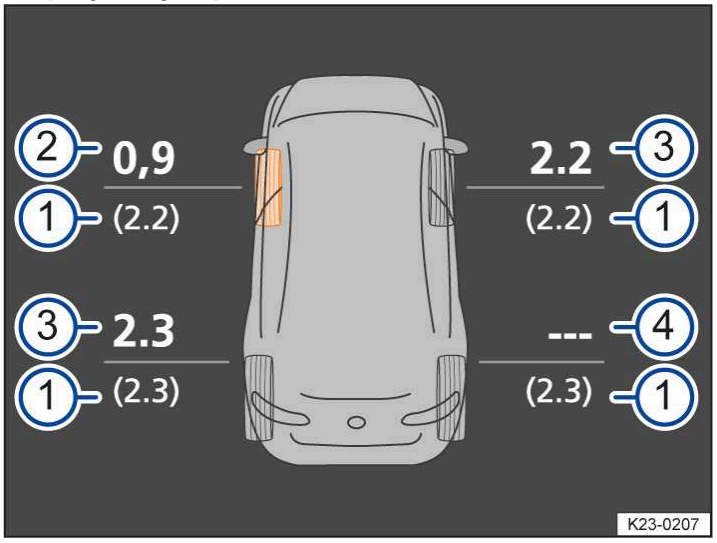


Fig. 1 Display on the instrument cluster display or Infotainment system: current tyre pressures (illustration).

1. Target pressure in bar.
2. Loss in pressure at front left.
3. Actual pressure in bar.
4. System fault at rear right.

1. Open the **Vehicle settings** menu *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*.

Or: open the **Vehicle status** menu in the instrument cluster display.

The vehicle is displayed with the target and actual pressures of all the wheels → *Fig. 1*.

When the ignition is switched on, the last tyre pressures received at the end of a journey will be displayed first. These values will be updated when the journey is started.

If the tyre pressure is too low or in the event of a brief reduction in pressure, the respective actual values and the affected tyres will be highlighted → *Fig. 1*.

A message is additionally shown on the instrument cluster display in the event of pressure loss or a flat tyre *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

If the tyres are in rest state, the sensors will not transmit any tyre pressures. This stops the sensor batteries discharging.

If no tyre pressures are transmitted, the last received tyre pressures are shown in grey.

If a set of tyres is fitted to the vehicle where the tyres either do not have tyre pressure sensors or have tyre pressure sensors that are not compatible with the vehicle, the (!) indicator lamp will flash for approximately 1 minute and will then remain lit continuously. The tyre pressures will not be monitored. The system cannot be switched off.

Observe any country-specific legal requirements for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

WARNING

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System cannot detect all driving situations and may not react at all or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention, and do not rely exclusively on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the tyre pressure is correct.
- Observe the system limits *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.
- Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always maintain the specified pressure corresponding to the tyre pressure sticker for the tyres fitted on the vehicle *(→ Tyre pressure)*.
- Check the tyres regularly for signs of wear or damage and replace worn or damaged tyres immediately.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.

WARNING

If the vehicle is driven with a tyre pressure that is too low, the tyre could heat up to such an extent that the tread becomes detached and the tyre bursts. This could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.

Different tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can increase tyre wear, reduce vehicle stability, extend the braking distance and lead to tyre damage, tyre failure and loss of control over the vehicle.

This can result in serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always observe the warnings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. If the (!) indicator lamp lights up, stop immediately in a place that is safe from traffic and check all tyres *(→ Tyre pressure)*.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure. Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always maintain the specified pressure corresponding to the tyre pressure sticker for the tyres fitted on the vehicle *(→ Tyre pressure)*. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System cannot function correctly unless all cold tyres have the correct tyre pressure.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest suitably qualified workshop and have the tyre pressure checked and corrected *(→ Tyre pressure)*. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

Excessive speeds and overloading of the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and detachment of the tread.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum load capacity of the fitted tyres *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.
- Never exceed the permitted maximum speed of the fitted tyres *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.

If the tyre pressure is too low, this will increase fuel consumption and tyre wear.

When new tyres are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off tyre pressure warning.

Old tyres should be replaced only by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type.

Do not rely only on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. Check your tyres regularly to ensure that they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tyre tread but have not penetrated into the body of the tyre itself.

Limits of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Regular maintenance

The tyre monitoring system does not remove the need for regular maintenance and inspection of tyres. The driver is responsible for ensuring the correct tyre pressure is maintained at all times, even if the tyre monitoring system does not give any warning that the tyre pressure is too low.

The tyre pressure of all tyres must be checked monthly on the cold tyres and correspond to the vehicle manufacturer's specifications on the tyre pressure sticker.

This also applies to the tyre pressure of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel.

The recommended tyre pressure for the tyre sizes approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type can be found on the tyre pressure sticker *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

Fault in radio transmission

The function of the system may be temporarily impaired by radio transmitters that operate in the same frequency range as the tyre pressure sensors *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel in the luggage compartment is not monitored. The wheels in the luggage compartment are in sleep mode.

NOTICE

Incorrect handling of the tyre valves can damage the pressure sensors and impair functioning of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

- The pressure sensors are secured to special aluminium valves that are screwed rigidly in place. When inflating the tyres and checking the pressure, do not bend the valves into position.
- Missing valve caps could lead to damage to the valve and the sensors. Therefore always make sure that all valve caps are fully screwed on while driving.
- Do not use metal valve caps.
- Do not use "convenience valve caps" as they do not form a proper seal. This can cause damage to the sensors. "Convenience valve caps" are valve caps that do not need to be unscrewed in order to inflate the tyre.

Adjusting the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Selecting target pressures for partial or full vehicle load level

Following any relevant change in the load level, the tyre pressure must be altered as necessary. The tyre pressures recommended for the vehicle and load level are stated on the tyre pressure sticker *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

If the tyre pressure has been altered corresponding to the load level, the current load level of the vehicle must be adjusted for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. This updates the target pressures to the pressures valid for the current load level.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap Vehicle.
4. Tap Vehicle (left).
5. Tap Tyres.
6. Select the **Load** menu option.
7. Select the load level.

There may be differences between readings on the pressure gauge when filling the tyres and the values determined by the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System provides more accurate results.

Selecting the tyre size (depending on vehicle)

If the tyre size is changed, it may be necessary to adjust the target pressure in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System to the new tyres. If no adjustment is necessary, the selection menu will not be available.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap Vehicle.
4. Tap Vehicle (left).
5. Tap Tyres.
6. Select the **Tyre designation** menu option.
7. Select the appropriate tyre size.

If the tyre sizes are fitted that do not correspond to the factory-specified sizes, the corresponding target tyre pressures can be entered by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Troubleshooting for Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Tyre pressure warning

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The text message **Flat tyre!** is shown in the instrument cluster.

The tyre pressure of one or more tyres is below 1.4 bar (20 psi/140 kPa) or there is a critical loss of tyre pressure.

1. Stop the vehicle immediately in a place that is safe from traffic. Slowly turn the steering wheel only slightly and brake carefully.
2. Check the tyres for visible damage .
3. If the tyres are not visibly damaged, drive slowly to the nearest filling station and check the tyre pressures. Adjust the tyre pressures if necessary.
4. If a tyre is damaged, replace the damaged wheel *(→ Changing a wheel)*. Seek expert assistance if necessary.

   Or: seal the damaged tyre with the breakdown set and inflate *(→ Breakdown set)*.

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The text message **Tyres pressure too low!** is shown in the instrument cluster.

The warning indicates at least one tyre with a critical tyre pressure.

1. Drive on carefully and go immediately to a filling station. Slowly turn the steering wheel only slightly and brake carefully.
2. Check the tyre pressure of all tyres and adjust if necessary *(→ Tyre pressure)*.
3. If a tyre cannot hold the tyre pressure, have the tyre replaced.

   Or: replace the damaged wheel by a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel and go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer .

   Or: seal the damaged tyre with the breakdown set and go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer .

The text message **Please check tyre pressures** is shown in the instrument cluster.

The warning indicates at least one tyre with a reduced tyre pressure.

1. Avoid long journeys and high speeds as long as the warning is displayed.
2. Check the tyre pressure of all tyres and adjust if necessary *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

Fault in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

The indicator lamp flashes for about 1 minute and then remains lit continuously yellow.

The text message **Temporary system fault** is shown in the instrument cluster.

One or more wheels with a tyre pressure sensor have been fitted but have not yet been detected by the system.

1. Drive for a few minutes until the indicator lamp goes out.

There is a transmission fault between the sensor and the system. The function of the system may be temporarily impaired if there is interference from signals in the same frequency range as these transmitters.

1. Switch off or avoid any interference sources, e.g. two-way radios, remote controls or children's toys.

The indicator lamp flashes for about 1 minute and then remains lit continuously yellow.

The text message **Static system fault** is displayed.

No tyre pressure sensors were detected or the system is damaged.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

One or more wheels have been fitted without a tyre pressure sensor or with incompatible tyre pressure sensors or a tyre pressure sensor is faulty.

1. Fit wheels with compatible and functioning tyre pressure sensors.

Introduction to the topic

You should carry out a wheel change yourself only when the vehicle is parked safely, you are familiar with the safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment. Some models are delivered from the factory without a jack or box spanner. If this is the case, have the wheel change carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If the vehicle is delivered from the factory with a jack, this must be used only if one wheel on the vehicle is damaged and has to be replaced. If both tyres on one side of the vehicle, both tyres on one axle, or all tyres are damaged, the factory-supplied jack must not be used. Instead, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The following steps must be carried out in order to change a wheel.

1. Prepare vehicle for the wheel change *(→ Changing a wheel)*.
2. Vehicle- and equipment-dependent: remove subwoofer *(→ Subwoofer)*.
3. Remove spare wheel *(→ Spare wheel and temporary spare wheel)*.
4. Remove wheel cover or wheel bolt caps *(→ Wheel cover)* *(→ Wheel bolt caps)*.
5. Loosen the wheel bolts *(→ Wheel bolts)*.
6. Jack up the vehicle *(→ Jack)*.
7. Remove the damaged wheel and fit the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel *(→ Wheels and tyres)*.

⚠ WARNING

Changing a wheel at the side of the road can be dangerous.
If the vehicle and work area are not adequately secured, this can result in serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Change the wheel yourself only if you are familiar with the necessary actions. Otherwise, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
- To reduce the risk of unintentional vehicle movement, park the vehicle properly at a safe distance from moving traffic *(→ Parking)*.
- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Move all vehicle occupants and particularly children so that they are at a safe distance from the work area and away from moving traffic.
- To warn other road users, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle.
- Jack up the vehicle only on a flat and firm surface. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary, use a large, strong board or similar support for the jack.
- Use an anti-slip surface covering, such as a rubber mat, to prevent the jack from slipping on a slippery surface (e.g. a tiled floor).
- Always use suitable and undamaged tools to change the wheel.
- The wheel bolt tightening torque should be checked with a correctly functioning torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, you must immediately adapt the system again after a wheel change *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)*.

Preparing the vehicle

Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for changing the wheel →⚠:

1. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic. Observe all the important information on parking *(→ Parking)*. The ground must be firm and level. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary, use a large, strong board or similar support for the jack.
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights *(→ Centre console)*.
3. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Observe country-specific regulations on high-visibility waistcoats.
4. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
5. Adjust the steering wheel so that the wheels point straight forwards.
6. Chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being worked on with a stone, collapsible chocks or another suitable object.
7. When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly .
8. Remove any items of luggage from the luggage compartment.
9. Depending on vehicle and equipment: remove subwoofer: remove subwoofer *(→ Subwoofer)*.
10. Remove the collapsible spare wheel, spare wheel or temporary spare wheel and the vehicle toolkit from the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always observe the items on the checklist.
- Observe the generally valid safety precautions.

Removing and installing the subwoofer



Fig. 1 Under the luggage compartment floor: removing the subwoofer.



Fig. 2 In the luggage compartment: leaning the subwoofer against the side.

The subwoofer must be removed and leant against the side of the luggage compartment before the spare wheel can be taken out.

Removing the subwoofer

1. Open the tailgate and hook the floor covering onto the top edge of the luggage compartment.
2. Unscrew the handwheel in anticlockwise direction.
3. Lift out the subwoofer carefully.
4. Position the subwoofer vertically and lean against the side wall of the luggage compartment so that it cannot tip or fall over *→ Fig. 2*.

Installing the subwoofer

1. Place the subwoofer carefully in the rim base. The tip of the arrow symbol “FRONT” on the subwoofer must face forwards.
2. Turn the handwheel clockwise until the subwoofer is secured properly.
3. Unhook the floor covering and place it back on the luggage compartment floor.
4. Close the boot lid.

NOTICE

The subwoofer could be damaged if any liquids get into the luggage compartment.

- Remove any liquids that have leaked out immediately, e.g. with a dry cloth.

Removing the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel



Fig. 1 Under the luggage compartment floor: handwheel for securing the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel.

Removing the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

1. Open the boot lid.
2. Fold up or remove the luggage compartment floor.
3. Lift up the floor covering, if present, and remove.
4. Remove the vehicle toolkit with the container.
5. Fully unscrew the handwheel in the middle of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel → *Fig. 1* anticlockwise.
6. Remove the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel.

Stowing the removed wheel

1. If the removed wheel fits into the spare wheel well: place the removed wheel into the spare wheel well with the front side of the wheel rim facing downwards so that the centre hole in the rim is positioned exactly above the hole or threaded pin.

   If the replaced wheel does not fit into the spare wheel well, stow the wheel securely on the luggage compartment floor in the luggage compartment.
2. Screw the handwheel clockwise onto the threaded pin until the replaced wheel is firmly secured.
3. Return the vehicle toolkit to the container and stow the container in the luggage compartment.
4. If present, place the floor covering in the luggage compartment.
5. Replace the luggage compartment floor.

6. Close the boot lid.

If the spare wheel tyre is not the same as the tyres on the vehicle

If the spare wheel tyre differs from the other tyres on the vehicle, the spare wheel must be used only in the event of a tyre failure and for a short time→⚠.

Observe these driving guidelines:

— Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).

— Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.

— Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel *(→ Snow chains)*.

— The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel must be checked each time the tyre pressure of the tyres in use is checked, at least once a month. The tyre pressure of the cold tyre on the spare wheel and temporary spare wheel must correspond to the information on the tyre pressure sticker *(→ Tyre pressure)*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and cause fatal injuries.

- Do not use the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel under any circumstances if it is damaged or worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- If the spare wheel tyre is not the same as the tyres on the vehicle or you are using a temporary spare wheel, never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Some vehicles may be equipped with a temporary spare wheel instead of a spare wheel. The temporary spare wheel can be recognised by a sticker and the text “80 km/h” or “50 mph”. This is the maximum speed at which you are permitted to drive with this tyre. Do not cover the sticker during use of the wheel.
- Never drive further than 200 km (125 miles) with a temporary spare wheel if it is fitted to the drive axle.
- Do not accelerate quickly, brake suddenly or drive at high speed through bends.
- Replace the temporary spare wheel with a normal wheel as soon as possible. The temporary spare wheel is designed for a short period of use only.
- Always secure the temporary spare wheel with the wheel bolts supplied from the factory.
- Never use more than one temporary spare wheel at a time.
- Never drive using more than one spare wheel that differs from the normal tyres.
- After fitting the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel, check the tyre pressure as quickly as possible *(→ Tyre pressure)*.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.
- Do not fit a temporary spare wheel to the rear axle when towing a trailer .

Removing and fitting wheel covers

Removing wheel covers

The wheel cover protects the wheel bolts and must be fitted again after changing the wheel.

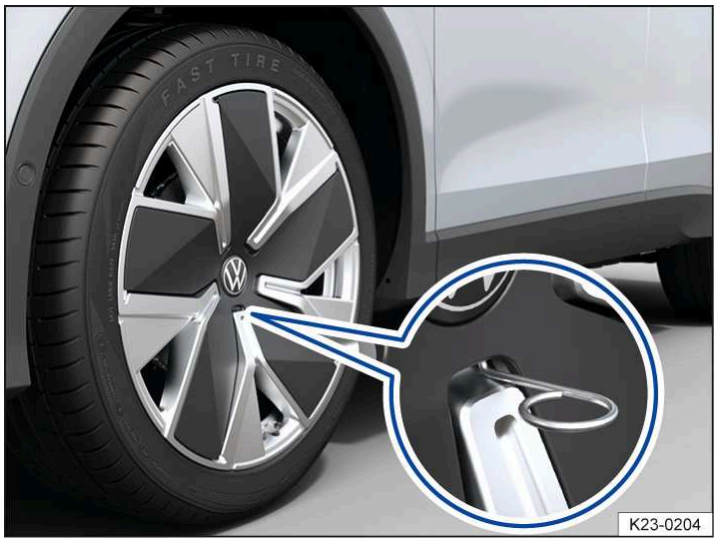


Fig. 1 Releasing the wheel cover centre.

Releasing the wheel cover centre

1. Take the hook from the vehicle toolkit *(→ Vehicle toolkit)*.
2. Insert the hook at the edge of the wheel cover centre → *Fig. 1*.
3. Pull off the wheel cover with the hook.

NOTICE

When the hook is inserted, this can damage the wheel rim coating.
- Insert the hook only at the wheel cover.
- Do not touch the wheel rim with the hook.

Fitting wheel covers

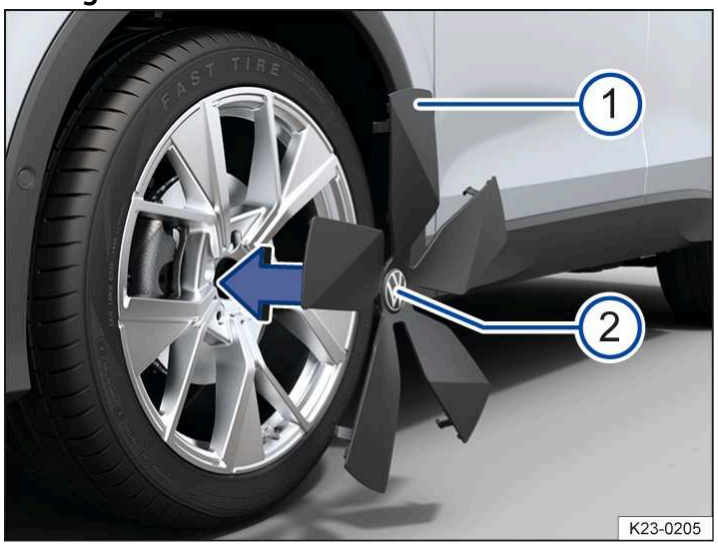


Fig. 2 Fitting the wheel cover.

1. Align the wheel cover so that the vanes are positioned over the corresponding wheel rim recesses.
2. Press all vanes against the wheel rim so that they engage securely on the wheel rim → *Fig. 2* (1).
3. Press the wheel cover centre against the wheel rim so that it engages securely on the wheel rim → *Fig. 2* (2).

WARNING

Using unsuitable hubcaps, or fitting them incorrectly, can cause accidents and serious injuries.
Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can become loose while the vehicle is in motion and endanger other road users.
- Do not use damaged hubcaps.

- Check that the wheel cover has engaged securely around the entire circumference.

WARNING

Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can interrupt or reduce the air supply for cooling the brakes. This also applies if hubcaps are retrofitted. If the airflow is not sufficient, the braking distance could increase significantly.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Check that the wheel cover has engaged securely around the entire circumference.

NOTICE

The wheel cover may be bolted on and can be damaged if it is pulled off.

- Do not use force to pull off wheel covers that are bolted on.

Removing and fitting the wheel bolt caps

Removing the caps



Fig. 1 Removing the wheel bolt caps.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and should be fitted fully back in position after changing the wheel.

1. Take the hook from the vehicle toolkit *(→ Vehicle toolkit)*.
2. Insert the hook through the opening in the cap.
3. Use the hook to pull off the cap in the direction of the arrow → *Fig. 1*.

Fitting the caps

1. Press the caps onto the bolts as far as they will go.

The anti-theft wheel bolt has a separate cap. This cap only fits onto the anti-theft wheel bolt and not onto the conventional wheel bolts.

Loosening wheel bolts



Fig. 1 Loosening wheel bolts.

Use a suitable box spanner to loosen the wheel bolts.

Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.

1. Fit the box spanner over the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
2. Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt one turn anticlockwise →⚠.

If one of the wheel bolts is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the box spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and ensure that you have a secure footing.

Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt

1. Take the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt out of the vehicle toolkit.
2. Push the adapter onto the anti-theft wheel bolt as far as it will go.
3. Push the box spanner onto the adapter as far as it will go.
4. Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt one turn anticlockwise →⚠.

If one of the wheel bolts is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the box spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and ensure that you have a secure footing.

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel bolts are removed or undone by more than one turn before the vehicle is raised with the jack, the wheel can fall off and the vehicle could tip as a result.

This can cause serious injuries.

- Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.
- Never place any part of your body, e.g. your arm, underneath the vehicle while you are loosening the wheel bolts.

Lifting the vehicle with the jack

Jacking points



Fig. 1 On the sill: markings for the jacking points.

The jack may be positioned only at the reinforcements on the underbody, which are located behind the markings on the body → *Fig. 1*. Always use the jacking point closest to the wheel that is being changed →⚠.

Applying the jack

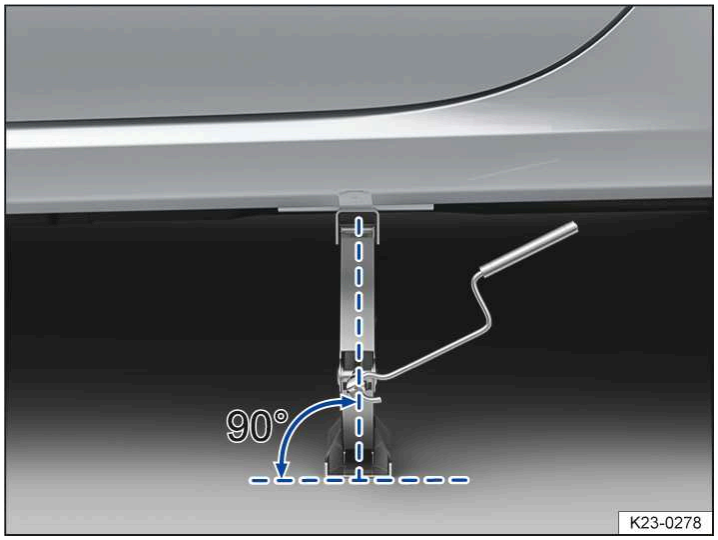


Fig. 2 Correct alignment of the jack.

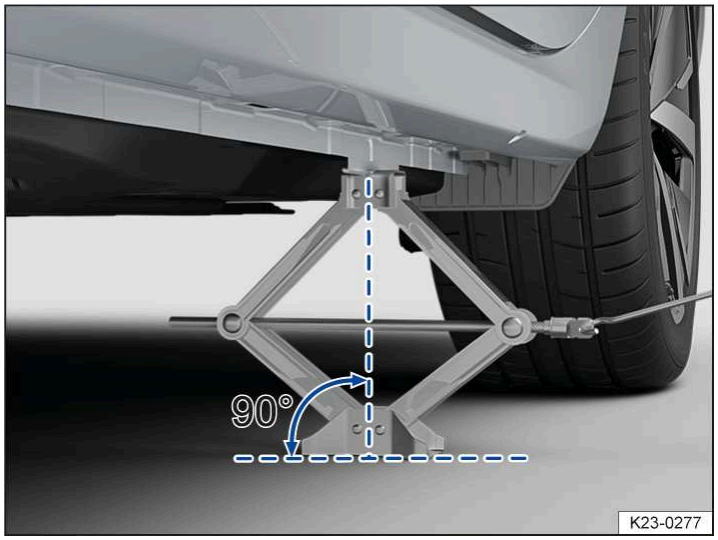


Fig. 3 At the rear left-hand side of the vehicle: jack applied.

Checklist

Always carry out the following actions in the given order →⚠:

1. Insert the hand crank into the opening on the jack.
2. Find the jacking point under the vehicle → *Fig. 1* which is closest to the wheel that is being changed.
3. Crank up the jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.
4. Make sure that the entire surface of the foot of the jack is resting securely on the ground and that the foot of the jack is positioned vertically directly beneath the jacking point → *Fig. 2* and → *Fig. 3*.
5. Position the jack and simultaneously continue to crank the claw up until it is in position around the jacking point underneath the vehicle → *Fig. 3*.
6. Crank the jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always observe the items on the checklist.
- Observe the generally valid safety precautions.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack, which can lead to serious or fatal injury.

- Never jack up the vehicle if more than one wheel is damaged.
- Never jack up the vehicle when the engine is running.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is jacked up. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack.
- Fit the jack only at the described jacking points. The jack claw must grip the vertical rib under the side member securely → *Fig. 3*.
- Use only vehicle jacks that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle. Other vehicle jacks could slip out of position – this includes vehicle jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.
- Jack up the vehicle only on a flat and firm surface. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary, use a large, strong board or similar support for the jack.
- Use a non-slip base such as a rubber mat to prevent the jack from slipping on a smooth surface, such as a tiled floor.
- Never place any part of your body, e.g. your arm, underneath the vehicle if the latter is only supported by the jack. If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle.

Changing a wheel

Removing the wheel



Fig. 1 Unscrew the wheel bolts with the wheel wrench.

1. Observe the checklist *(→ Changing a wheel)*.
2. Loosen the wheel bolts *(→ Wheel bolts)*.
3. Jack up the vehicle *(→ Jack)*.
4. Using the wheel wrench → *Fig. 1*, completely unscrew loosened wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface.
5. Remove the wheel.

Fitting the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

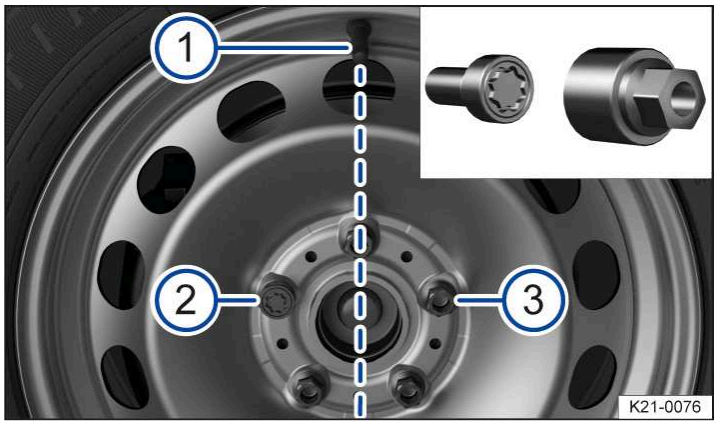


Fig. 2 Correct position of the anti-theft wheel bolt.

1. Note the tyre direction of rotation *(→ Tyre lettering and tyre type)*.
2. Put the wheel in place.
3. Use the adapter to screw the anti-theft wheel bolt clockwise to the correct position and tighten it slightly.

   On wheels with a wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt must be screwed in at position → *Fig. 2* (2) or (3) according to the position of the tyre valve (1). The wheel cover can otherwise not be fitted.
4. Screw in wheel bolts in a clockwise direction, and tighten them slightly.
5. Lower the vehicle with the jack.
6. Use the box spanner to tighten every wheel bolt securely in a clockwise direction →⚠. Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or anticlockwise sequence. Tighten them in diagonal sequence.
7. Fit caps or hubcaps *(→ Wheel cover)* *(→ Wheel bolt caps)*.

Introduction to the topic

After changing a wheel

1. Clean the tools and place them back in the foam rubber holder in the luggage compartment.
2. Stow the changed wheel securely in the luggage compartment.
3. Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible at the nearest qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
4. The damaged tyre should be replaced as soon as possible.

Tightening torque for wheel bolts

Specified tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel or alloy wheel rims:

— 140 Nm (103 ft-lbs).

If the wheel bolts are corroded and stiff, they must be renewed and the wheel hub threads cleaned before the tightening torque is checked.

Never grease or oil the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hubs.

The tightening torque should be checked with a properly functioning torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

WARNING

If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and thus the wheel can become loose while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and the threads could be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

Incorrectly tightened or missing wheel bolts can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always tighten the wheel bolts with the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench available, tighten the wheel bolts with the wheel wrench and have the torque checked immediately by the nearest suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Never drive if wheel bolts are missing or loose.
- Always use wheel bolts that match the wheel rims and the vehicle type.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolt and the threads in the wheel hubs. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs are clean, smooth running and free of oil and grease.
- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rim rings.

WARNING

If the wrong wheel bolts are used, the wheel bolts can come loose while driving and lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always use wheel bolts that match the wheel rims and the vehicle type.
- Never use different wheel bolts.

After changing a wheel, the indicator lamp for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System may indicate a fault in the system *(→ Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator)* *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

If the dimensions of the new tyres are different from those of the tyres removed and require a different tyre pressure, the tyre pressure values for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System must be adjusted *(→ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)*.

You can use the breakdown set to temporarily seal a tyre securely if the tread has been damaged by a foreign body or a puncture up to around 6 mm (around 15/64 in) in diameter. Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws) from the tyre!

Once the sealant has been added to the tyre, the tyre pressure must be checked and adjusted again after approximately 10 minutes of driving.

Seek expert assistance if more than one of the vehicle's tyres is damaged. The breakdown set is designed to fill only one tyre.

Use the breakdown set only when the vehicle has been safely parked and you know the work and safety precautions needed. Otherwise seek expert assistance.

The tyre sealant must not be used:

— If the wheel rim is damaged.

— If the outside temperature is below -30 °C (-22 °F).

— If there are cuts or punctures in the tyre that are larger than 6 mm (around 15/64 in).

— If the vehicle was driven with very low tyre pressure or a flat tyre.

— If the use-by date on the tyre filler bottle has expired.

— If a foreign object has been removed from the tyre.

— In connection with mobility tyres. The word “Seal” is visible on the outer wall of the tyre if your vehicle is fitted with mobility tyres.

⚠ WARNING

The use of breakdown sets at the edge of the road can be dangerous.
If the vehicle and work area are not adequately secured, this can result in serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Only use the breakdown set if you are familiar with what is required. Otherwise, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic *(→ In an emergency)* *(→ Parking)*.
- Make sure that the surface the vehicle is parked on is level and firm.
- All passengers, and children in particular, must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work.
- To warn other road users, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle.
- When using the breakdown set, never lift the vehicle with a jack, even if the jack is approved for the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Tyres that have been filled with sealant will not handle in the same way as an undamaged tyre.
Excessive loads on the sealed tyre can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not accelerate quickly, brake suddenly or drive at high speed through bends.
- Drive at a maximum of 80 km/h (50 mph) for no longer than 10 minutes before stopping to check the tyre.
- Tyres that have been sealed using the breakdown set should be replaced immediately. Tyres repaired with the breakdown set are intended for temporary, emergency use only. They should be used only until you can reach the nearest qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ CAUTION

The sealant can be harmful if it comes into contact with the skin.

- It the sealant comes into contact with your skin, remove it from your skin immediately with a cloth or other suitable object.
- Keep the breakdown set out of the reach of children.

Dispose of used or out-of-date sealant in accordance with legal requirements.

You can purchase a new tyre filler bottle from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Observe the separate operating instructions provided by the manufacturer of the breakdown set.

Preparing the vehicle

Checklist

Always carry out the following actions in the given order →⚠:

1. Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a flat and firm surface. Observe all the important information on parking *(→ Parking)*.
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights *(→ Centre console)*.
3. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Observe country-specific regulations on high-visibility waistcoats.
4. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
5. Check whether the puncture can be repaired with the breakdown set *(→ Breakdown set)*.

6. When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly .
7. Remove any items of luggage from the luggage compartment.
8. Take the breakdown set out of the luggage compartment.
9. Do not remove the foreign object, e.g. a screw, from the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always observe the items on the checklist.
- Observe the generally valid safety precautions.

Sealing and inflating tyres

The breakdown set is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Sealing the tyre (variant 1)

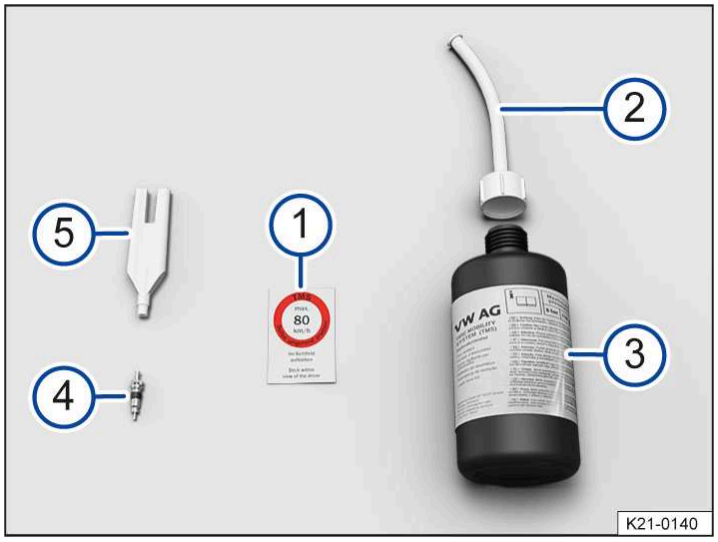


Fig. 1 Contents of the breakdown set (illustration).

(1) Sticker with the maximum permitted speed “max. 80 km/h” or “max. 50 mph”.
(2) Tyre sealant tube with plug.
(3) Tyre filler bottle.
(4) Spare valve core.
(5) Valve core extractor.

There is a slot for the valve core on the lower end of the valve core extractor → *Fig. 1* (5). This is required for extracting the valve core from the tyre valve and then screwing it back into the valve again. This also applies to the spare valve core (4).

1. Take the sticker from the breakdown set → *Fig. 1* (1) and stick it on the dash panel within the driver’s field of vision.
2. Unscrew the cap from the tyre valve.
3. Use the valve core extractor → *Fig. 1* (5) to unscrew the valve core from the tyre valve. Place the core on a clean surface.
4. Shake the tyre filler bottle → *Fig. 1* (3) vigorously to and fro several times.
5. Screw the tyre sealant tube → *Fig. 1* (2) tightly onto the tyre filler bottle in a clockwise direction. The seal on the top of the bottle is pierced when doing so.
6. Remove the plug from the filler hose → *Fig. 1* (2) and place the open end fully on the tyre valve.
7. Hold the bottle upside down and fill the entire contents of the tyre filler bottle into the tyre.
8. Remove the empty tyre filler bottle from the valve.

9. Use the valve core extractor → *Fig. 1* (5) to screw the valve core back into the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyre (variant 1)

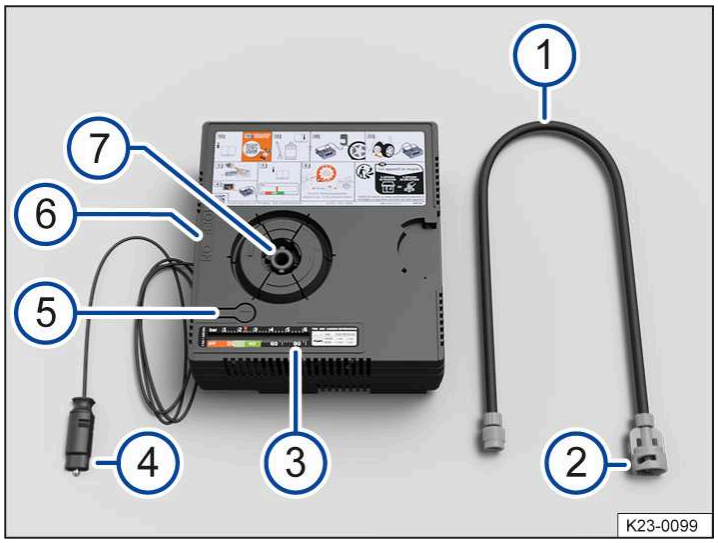


Fig. 2 Compressor in the breakdown set (illustration).

(1) Tyre filler hose.
(2) Wing nut.
(3) Tyre pressure display.
(4) 12-volt plug.
(5) Air bleed button.
(6) ON/OFF switch.
(7) Mount for tyre filler hose.

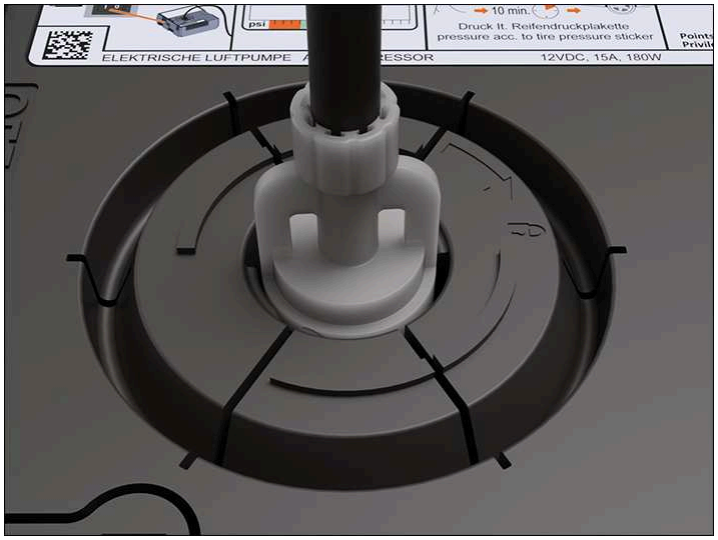


Fig. 3 Connecting the tyre filler hose.

The compressor from the breakdown set may be operated from the 12-volt socket, even if the power stated on the type plate of the compressor exceeds the maximum power rating of the socket.

1. Remove the tyre filler hose → *Fig. 2* (1) from the rear of the compressor.
2. Insert the tyre filler hose → *Fig. 2* (1) with the wing nut (2) into the mount for the tyre filler hose (7) so that the wing nut is pointing to → *Fig. 3*.
3. Turn the wing nut → *Fig. 2* (2) in clockwise direction until the wing nut is pointing to → *Fig. 3*.

4. Screw the tyre filler hose → *Fig. 2* (1) of the compressor tightly onto the tyre valve.
5. Start the engine and let it run.
6. Insert the 12-volt plug → *Fig. 2* (4) into one of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets *(→ Sockets)*.
7. Switch on the compressor with the ON/OFF switch → *Fig. 2* (6).
8. Run the compressor until the tyre pressure has reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa). **Maximum running time: 10 minutes**
9. Switch off the compressor.

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) cannot be achieved:

1. Unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
2. Drive (or reverse) the vehicle approximately 10 metres (approximately 33 ft) so that the sealing compound is evenly distributed in the tyre.
3. Screw the compressor's tyre filler hose firmly back onto the tyre valve and inflate the tyre again.
4. If the required pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be sealed with the breakdown set. Do not drive on → ⚠. Seek expert assistance.

Sealing and inflating tyres (variant 2)



Fig. 4 Tyre filler bottle.

(1) Valve of the tyre filler bottle.
(2) Tyre filler hose of the tyre filler bottle.

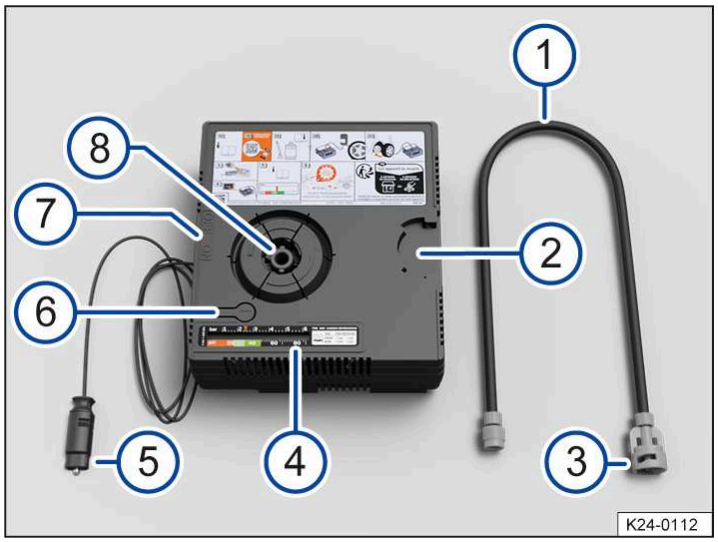


Fig. 5 Compressor in the breakdown set (illustration).

1. Tyre filler hose.
2. Notch for tyre filler bottle.
3. Wing nut.
4. Tyre pressure display.
5. 12-volt plug.
6. Air bleed button.
7. ON/OFF switch.
8. Mount for tyre filler hose.

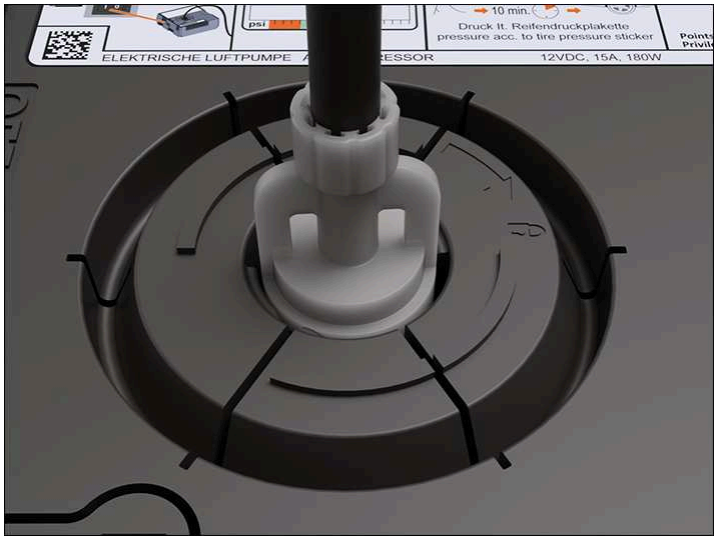


Fig. 6 Connecting the tyre filler hose.

The compressor from the breakdown set may be operated from the 12-volt socket, even if the power stated on the type plate of the compressor exceeds the maximum power rating of the socket.

1. Remove the sticker with the maximum permitted speed “max. 80 km/h” or “max. 50 mph” from the underside of the tyre filler bottle → *Fig. 4* and affix it to the dash panel in the driver’s field of vision.
2. Unscrew the cap from the tyre valve.
3. Shake the tyre filler bottle → *Fig. 4* vigorously to and fro several times.
4. Remove the tyre filler hose → *Fig. 5* (1) from the rear of the compressor.
5. Insert the tyre filler hose → *Fig. 5* (1) with the wing nut → *Fig. 5* (3) into the mount for the tyre filler hose → *Fig. 5* (8) so that the wing nut is pointing to → *Fig. 6*.

6. Turn the wing nut → *Fig. 5* (3) in clockwise direction until the wing nut is pointing to → *Fig. 6*.
7. Screw the tyre filler hose → *Fig. 5* (1) of the compressor tightly onto the valve of the tyre filler bottle → *Fig. 4* (1).
8. Screw the tyre filler hose of the tyre filler bottle → *Fig. 4* (2) tightly onto the tyre valve.
9. Hold the bottle upside down and press the top of the tyre filler bottle into the notch in the compressor → *Fig. 5* (2).
10. Place the compressor → *Fig. 5* together with the tyre filler bottle → *Fig. 4* on a level surface.
11. Start the engine and let it run.
12. Insert the 12-volt plug → *Fig. 5* (5) into one of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets *(→ Sockets)*.
13. Switch on the compressor with the ON/OFF switch → *Fig. 5* (7).
14. Run the compressor until the tyre pressure has reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa). **Maximum running time: 10 minutes.**
15. Switch off the compressor.

If a tyre pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar (29– 36 psi / 200–250 kPa) cannot be achieved

1. Unscrew the tyre filler hose of the tyre filler bottle from the tyre valve.
2. Drive (or reverse) the vehicle around 10 m (around 33 ft) so that the sealing compound is evenly distributed in the tyre.
3. Screw the compressor's tyre filler hose directly onto the tyre valve and inflate the tyre again.
4. If the required pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be sealed with the breakdown set. Do not drive on → ⚠. Seek expert assistance.

Continuing your journey

1. Disconnect the compressor and unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
2. Immediately drive on at a speed of no more than 80 km/h (50 mph) once a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa) has been reached.
3. Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.

Check after driving for 10 minutes

1. Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface at the next safe opportunity, e.g. a car park.
2. Reconnect the tyre filler hose → *Fig. 2* (1) or → *Fig. 5* (1) and read off the tyre pressure on the tyre pressure display → *Fig. 2* (3) or → *Fig. 5* (4).

1.3 bar (19 psi/130 kPa) and lower:

1. **Do not drive on!** The tyre cannot be sealed adequately with the breakdown set → ⚠. Seek expert assistance.

1.4 bar (20 psi/140 kPa) and higher:

1. Adjust the tyre pressure back to the correct value.
2. Drive carefully to the nearest suitably qualified workshop. Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
3. Have the damaged tyres replaced by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

The tyre filler hose and compressor can become hot when inflating the tyre and cause burns if touched.
- Protect your hands and skin from hot components.
- Do not place the hot tyre filler hose or the hot compressor on any inflammable materials.
- Allow the tyre filler hose and compressor to cool down before you stow them.

⚠ WARNING

If the defective tyre cannot be sealed adequately with the breakdown set, the tyre will lose air when driving.

This can lead to tyre failure, loss of control of the vehicle, accidents, serious injuries and death.

- If the tyre will not inflate to at least 2.0 bar (29 psi/200 kPa), the tyre is too damaged. The sealant is unable to seal the tyre. Do not drive on and seek expert assistance instead.
- Do not carry on driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi/130 kPa) or less after driving for 10 minutes. Seek expert assistance instead.

Tyre labelling and tyre type

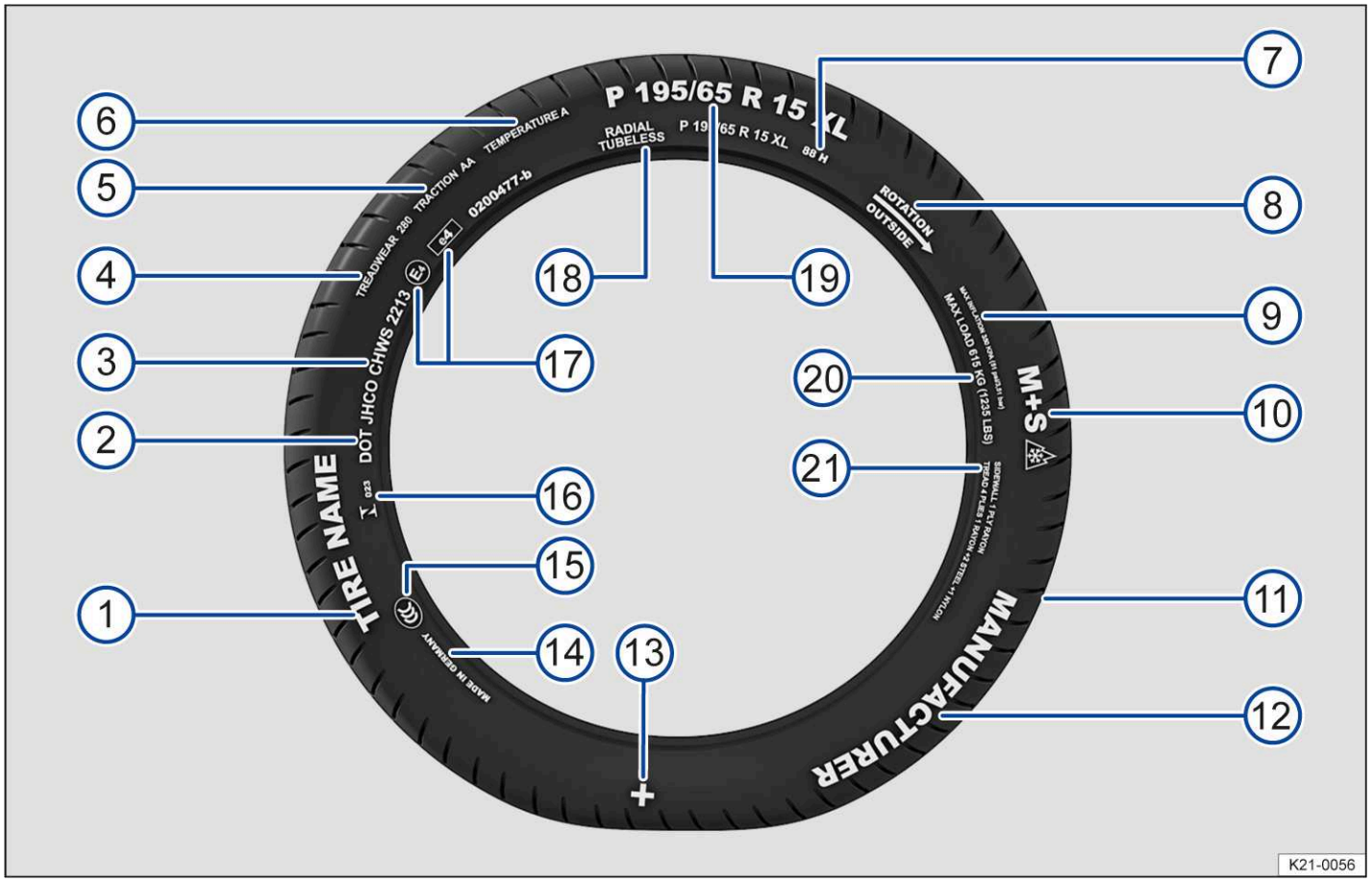


Fig. 1 International tyre labelling.

→ *Fig. 1* Tyre labelling (example), meaning			
1	*Product name*	Individual tyre designation of the manufacturer.	
2	DOT	The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the USA Department of Transportation, responsible for tyre safety standards.	
3	JHCO CHWS 2213	Tyre identification number (TIN – may be only on the inner side of the wheel) and date of manufacture:	
		JHCO CHWS	Identifier of producing plant and specifications of the tyre manufacturer on size and characteristics.
		2,213	Date of manufacture: 22nd week in 2013.
Information for the end user concerning comparative values for specified basic tyres (standardised test procedure) :			
4	TREADWEAR 280	Relative life expectancy for the tyre, with reference to a US-specific standard test. Tyres with the specification *280* wear at a rate of 2.8 times more slowly than standard tyres that have a treadwear value of 100. The performance of tyres is determined by how they are used and can significantly deviate from standard values due to driving style, maintenance, road surface and climatic conditions.	

→ *Fig. 1* Tyre labelling (example), meaning			
5	TRACTION AA	Wet braking performance of the tyre (*AA*, *A*, *B* or *C*). The wet braking performance is tested under controlled conditions on certified test tracks. Tyres marked *C* have a low traction performance. The traction value assigned to the tyres is based on linear traction tests and does not include acceleration and lateral stability or aquaplaning and traction under maximum load.	
6	TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tyre at high speeds on a test bed (*A*, *B* or *C*). *A* and *B* tyres exceed legal requirements. The temperature evaluation is based on tyres with correct pressure and does not allow for excess pressure. Excessive speed, incorrect pressure or excess pressure can cause heat build-up or tyre damage. This applies to one or a combination of these factors.	
7	88 H	Load index → *Tyre load* and speed rating → *Speed rating*.	
8	Rotation and arrow	Denotes direction of rotation of the tyres → *Tyres with directional tread pattern*.	
	Or: Outside	Denotes outside of tyres → *Asymmetrical tyres*.	
9	MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 psi/3.51 bar)	US limitation for the maximum air pressure.	
10	M+S *or* M/S *or* ⛷	Denotes winter tyres (mud and snow tyres) *(→ Winter tyres)*. Studded snow tyres are labelled with an *E* after the *S*.	
11	TWI	Indicates the position of the tread wear indicator *(→ Tread depth and tread wear indicators)*.	
12	*Brand name*, *logo*	Manufacturer.	
13	⊕	Marking for Volkswagen Genuine tyres .	
14	Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.	
15	ⓒⓒ	Country-specific identification for China (China Compulsory Certification).	
16	023	Country-specific identification for Brazil.	
17	E4 e4 0200477-b	Indicates conformity with international regulations with the number of the country that granted approval. Approved tyres which comply with ECE regulations are identified with *E*, tyres which comply with EC regulations are identified with *e*. This is followed by the multiple-digit approval number.	
18	RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tyre.	
19	P 195 / 65 R 15 XL	Size designation:	
		P	Identification for passenger vehicle.
		195	Tyre width from wall to wall in mm.
		65	Aspect ratio in %.
		R	Tyre construction: radial.
		15	Rim diameter in inches.
		XL	Heavy-duty tyres (extra load tyres).
20	MAX LOAD 615 KG (1,235 LBS)	US load data for the maximum load per wheel.	
21	SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Details of the tyre carcass components: 1 ply of rayon (artificial silk).	

→ *Fig. 1* Tyre labelling (example), meaning	
TREAD 4 PLIES	Details of the tread components:
1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	In the example there are 4 plies under the tread surface: 1 ply of rayon (artificial silk), 2 steel belt plies and 1 nylon ply.

The tyre labelling is located on both sides. Certain labels may only be found on one side of the tyre, e.g. tyre identification number and manufacturing date.

Any further numbers and letters are internal codes used by the tyre manufacturer or country-specific codes.

Low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a wider tread surface, larger rim diameter and lower side walls than conventional wheel/tyre combinations. Low-profile tyres can improve the vehicle's handling and precision. They may however result in a less comfortable ride on uneven road surfaces and tracks.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. The direction of rotation must be observed in all cases. This guarantees the best possible running characteristics.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. The tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.

Asymmetrical tyres

Asymmetrical tyres take into account the differing behaviour of the inner and outer areas of the tread pattern. The sidewalls of asymmetrical tyres are marked to indicate "inside" or "outside". Always observe the correct tyre position on the wheel rim.

Tyre load

The load index indicates the maximum load capacity of an individual tyre in kilograms (tyre load).

Examples:

78

425 kg (936 lbs)

81

462 kg (1,018 lbs)

83

487 kg (1,073 lbs)

85

515 kg (1,135 lbs)

87

545 kg (1,201 lbs)

88

560 kg (1,234 lbs)

91

615 kg (1,355 lbs)

92

630 kg (1,388 lbs)

93

650 kg (1,433 lbs)

95

690 kg (1,521 lbs)

97

730 kg (1,609 lbs)

99

775 kg (1,708 lbs)

100

800 kg (1,763 lbs)

101

825 kg (1,818 lbs)

102

850 kg (1,873 lbs)

103

875 kg (1,929 lbs)

104

900 kg (1,984 lbs)

Speed rating

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed that may be driven with the tyre.

P

max. 150 km/h (93 mph)

Q

max. 160 km/h (99 mph)

R

max. 170 km/h (106 mph)

S

max. 180 km/h (112 mph)

T

max. 190 km/h (118 mph)

U

max. 200 km/h (125 mph)

H

max. 210 km/h (130 mph)

V

max. 240 km/h (149 mph)

W

max. 270 km/h (168 mph)

Y

max. 300 km/h (186 mph)

Z

above 240 km/h (149 mph), also **ZR** depending on manufacturer

Maximum load and speed range for tyres

Vehicles in the EU and the EU user states are issued an EC Certificate of Conformity. The EC Certificate of Conformity details the size, diameter, tyre load and speed range of all tyres approved by Volkswagen for the relevant vehicle type.

The type plate shows whether there is an EC Certificate of Conformity for this particular vehicle .

— If the type plate has a row marked “Permit” then the vehicle has an EC Certificate of Conformity.

— If there is no type plate, or no row marked “Permit” the vehicle does not have an EC Certificate of Conformity.

Service work and digital service schedule

Recording the service work performed (“digital service schedule”)

The service records are stored in a central system by your suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer. This transparent documentation of the service history allows the service operations performed to be reproduced at any time. Each time you have your vehicle serviced, Volkswagen recommends asking for a printed service record, which contains all service work stored in the system.

Regular servicing of your vehicle not only maintains its value, it also ensures that your vehicle remains roadworthy and in working order. You should therefore have your vehicle serviced according to the Volkswagen guidelines.

With every service, the printout of the previous service record is replaced by a current printout.

The digital service schedule is not available in some countries. In this case, your suitably qualified workshop will inform you about the documentation process for service work. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

Service work

The following information is documented in the digital service schedule by your suitably qualified workshop or Volkswagen dealership:

— When which service was carried out.

— Whether any repairs are recommended, such as replacement of the brake pads in the near future.

— Whether you had any special requests before or during the maintenance work. Your service advisor will note these on the order.

— Which components and service fluids were changed.

— When your next service is scheduled for.

The LongLife mobility guarantee is valid until the next inspection is due. Documentation takes place at every due inspection.

The type and scope of service work may differ from vehicle to vehicle. Information on specific work for your vehicle can be requested from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

WARNING

Inadequate servicing and failure to adhere to service intervals can result in breakdowns, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Service work should be carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by inadequate service work or the lack of availability of parts.

Fixed service interval or flexible service interval

The service events differ according to oil change service and inspection. The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster serves as a reminder for the due date of the next service event.

Either the fixed service interval or flexible service interval will be used for the oil change service, depending on the vehicle equipment, the engine type and the operating conditions.

The engine code can be accessed via the Service menu *(→ Driving data display (multifunction display))*.

How do I know which type of service applies to my vehicle?

Information on the type of service that the vehicle requires can be obtained from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Point to note for the flexible service interval

With the flexible service interval, you need to have an oil change service carried out only if your vehicle requires one. To determine this point in time, individual operating conditions and personal driving style are taken into account. An important part of the flexible service interval is the use of LongLife engine oil instead of the conventional engine oil.

Observe and follow the information on the motor oil specification according to the VW standard .

If you do not wish to have the flexible service interval, you can opt for the fixed service interval instead. However, a fixed service interval can affect your service costs. Your service advisor will be pleased to advise you.

Service interval display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, scheduled services for your vehicle may be displayed in the service interval display in the instrument cluster display *(→ Service interval display)* and in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system *(→ Vehicle settings menu)*. This service interval display provides information on services that include an oil change or inspection. When the respective service is due, additional work that is due can also be carried out, e.g. changing brake fluid and spark plugs.

Information on operating conditions

The specified service intervals and scope of service always apply to vehicles used under normal operating conditions.

If the vehicle is operated under heavy-duty conditions, some work will have to be performed before the next service is due or at shorter intervals than those specified.

Extreme conditions include:

— Fuels containing sulphur.

— Regular short trips.

— Long periods of engine idling, e.g. taxis.

— Use in areas with high levels of dust.

— Regular trailer towing.

— Mainly stop-and-go operation, e.g. in the city.

— Driving mainly in winter conditions

This applies particularly to the following components (depending on the vehicle equipment):

— Enhanced air filter with activated carbon

— Air Care enhanced air filter with activated carbon.

— Air filter.

— Toothed belt.

— Diesel particulate filter.

— Engine oil.

The service advisor at your qualified workshop will be pleased to advise you whether your vehicle requires more frequent work due to the conditions under which it is used.

⚠ WARNING

Inadequate servicing and failure to adhere to service intervals can result in breakdowns, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Service work should be carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by inadequate service work or the lack of availability of parts.

Scope of service

The scope of service includes all inspection work and servicing work that is necessary in order to keep your vehicle roadworthy. This work depends on the operating conditions and vehicle equipment, e.g. engine, gearbox, brakes or service fluids. A suitably qualified workshop can provide information on the work that is required for your vehicle and on the wear limits that apply to components. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer. Alternatively, you can find this out using the electronic repair and workshop information system erWin *(→ Repairs and technical modifications)*.

Inspection work

For example, the components and scope of work listed below can be checked.

Electrics

— 12-volt vehicle battery.

— Lighting.

— Horn.

— Headlight setting.

— Reset service interval display.

Engine and gearbox

— Exhaust system.

— Gearbox and final drive.

— Poly V-belt.

— Cooling system.

— Engine and components in bonnet space.

— Engine oil level.

Running gear

— Swivel joints and track rods.

— Tyres.

— Brake system.

— Drive shaft boots.

— Coupling rod and stabiliser mountings.

— Breakdown set.

— Shock absorbers and coil springs.

Body

— Roof systems.

— Windscreen.

— Body for corrosion.

— Window wipe/wash system.

— Underbody.

— Water drains.

Servicing work

Depending on the operating conditions and vehicle equipment such as engine type, gearbox or fluid used, some maintenance work must be performed on your vehicle in addition to the inspection work. This work is dependent on *time* and *mileage* or only *time* or *mileage*.

For example, the following service fluids and components can be changed.

— Exhaust purification system.

— Interior filter.

— Brake fluid.

— Diesel filter.

— Gear oil and gearbox oil filter.

— Air filter.

— Engine oil and engine oil filter.

— Oils in the final drive and differential.

— Diesel particulate filter.

— Toothed belt and tensioning roller.

— Spark plugs.

A test drive is then carried out.

It is also possible to have servicing work carried out in between the displayed scheduled service events.

The scope of service is subject to change for technical reasons, e.g. continuous further development of components. Your suitably qualified workshop always has the latest information about any changes. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Notes on vehicle care

Regular and expert care helps to maintain your vehicle's condition.

The longer contamination or dirt is left on the surface of vehicle components, the more difficult it can become to clean and treat them. Extended exposure may mean that it is no longer possible to remove contamination or dirt.

Consult a suitably qualified workshop if you have any questions about care products or if components are not listed. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Appropriate accessories are available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using Volkswagen Genuine Accessories, which you can purchase from an authorised Volkswagen repairer. Follow the application instructions on the packaging.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, impregnation and cleaning of components can irreparably damage the safety features of the vehicle, e.g. the airbag units, and prevent them from functioning properly. This can lead to serious injuries in the event of an accident.

- Always use suitable cleaning agents. More detailed information is available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Do not use cleaning agents that contain solvents.
- Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ WARNING

Improper cleaning of the vehicle can cause serious injuries.

- Protect your hands and arms against parts with sharp edges, e.g. when cleaning the insides of the wheel housings.
- Use cleaning agents only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ WARNING

Dirty, misted-up or iced-up windows reduce visibility and can prevent the safety features of the vehicle from functioning properly. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Drive only when you have a clear view through all windows.
- Do not treat the windscreen with water-repellent window coating agents. In unfavourable conditions, they can cause increased dazzle.

⚠ WARNING

Care products may be toxic, highly flammable and caustic. Improper use of care products or the use of unsuitable care products can cause burns and poisoning and can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Observe the instructions supplied with the product.
- Store care products only in the closed original container.
- Keep children away from all care products.
- Use care products only outside or in well-ventilated rooms so that you do not breathe in any toxic vapours.

- Never use turpentine, engine oil, fuel, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care.

NOTICE

Contamination with aggressive and solvent-based ingredients can cause irreparable damage to the vehicle equipment, e.g. even if left for only a short time on seat covers or trim parts.

- Do not let contamination or dirt dry.
- Have stubborn stains removed by a suitably qualified workshop.

Washing the vehicle

Washing the vehicle regularly prevents effects of soiling that can damage the paint.

Vehicles with a matt paint finish require special care due to the special paint characteristics.

To wash your vehicle correctly and properly, please observe the following information →, →.

WARNING

After a car wash, the braking action may be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or iced up in winter. The braking distance will increase as a result. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Carry out a few careful braking operations to dry the brakes and remove any coating of ice when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

NOTICE

Improper vehicle cleaning can cause severe damage to the vehicle.

- Always observe the described tasks for vehicle care and cleaning.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.

NOTICE

Wet components can freeze in cold weather and this may prevent them from functioning properly.

- Never aim a water jet directly at doors or the boot lid in cold weather.

Removing stubborn dirt on matt paint

— Soften adhering insects or bird droppings immediately with water if possible and spray with a special cleaner for matt paints.

— Remove tar stains on the paint surface with standard commercially available tar removers. Residue must not be removed by intensive rubbing.

— Remove tree resin and flash rust particles with a special cleaner for matt paints and cleaning clay. Move over the affected locations with the cleaning clay without exerting pressure.

— Spray grease and fingerprints with a special cleaner for matt paint and rub off with a soft microfibre cloth.

— Rinse off petrol residue immediately with plenty of water.

Automatic car washes

NOTICE

Washing the vehicle incorrectly can damage the matt paint surface and destroy the matt paint effect.

- Never use wash programs with wax preservation.
- For cleaning, use only cleaning agents that do not contain solid matter or abrasives, e.g. cleaning shampoos or insect remover.
- Do not use insect sponges or coarse sponges.

— For vehicles with matt paint, never select a wash program with wax or use a drying agent.

— For vehicles with matt paint, use only textile car washes and never car washes that use brushes.

— Do not select cleaning programmes with hot wax for vehicles with decorative and protective films.

— Preferably use car washes without brushes.

— To remove residues, also have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly on a regular basis.

— Please observe information of the car wash operator, especially where add-on parts such as spoilers are concerned →.

✓ The windows must be closed and the exterior mirrors must be folded away.

✓ The Auto Hold function is switched off.

✓ Vehicles with steering lock: If the vehicle is mechanically pulled through the car wash, the steering must not lock *(→ Steering)*.

✓ Vehicles with an automatic gearbox: If the vehicle is pulled mechanically through the car wash (tunnel wash), the gearbox must be in neutral position **N**.

The roll-away protection is deactivated .

✓ The windscreen wipers and the rain and light sensor *(→ Rain and light sensor)* are switched off.

✓ If present: the roof aerial was unscrewed and removed.

NOTICE

Car washes that scan the contours mechanically can damage the vehicle and add-on parts, e.g spoilers.

- Observe the information of the car wash operator, particularly if there are add-on parts on the vehicle.

Wash the vehicle in dedicated cleaning areas only. This prevents any waste water contaminated by oil from entering the sewage system.

High-pressure cleaner



Fig. 1 In the bonnet space: do not use a high-pressure cleaner.

— Never use rotary nozzles. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.

— Only use water up to a maximum temperature of +60°C (around +140°F).

— Move the jet of water uniformly so that the washer jet is at least 50 cm (around 20 inches) away from all components.

— Do not point the water jet at the same location for too long.

— Aim the water jet indirectly at sensitive vehicle components if possible, e.g. rubber seals, side windows, gloss strips, tyres, sensors, camera lenses, decorative and protective film.

— Never use a high-pressure cleaner to clean windows that are iced up or covered in snow.

NOTICE

Please note that the sensors in the handles could be activated by a powerful jet of water or steam if a valid remote control key is within the operating range. The windows could open as a result and moisture could enter the vehicle interior. This could lead to the vehicle interior being damaged.

- Never direct the jet of a high-pressure or steam cleaner directly at the sensors in the door handles.

The vehicle may be unlocked if the jet of a high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner is pointed directly at the sensors in the door handles.

Hand wash

1. Clean the vehicle with plenty of water to remove dust and coarse soiling.
2. In the case of matt paint, remove insects, grease stains and fingerprints with a special cleaner for matt paints. Apply the product with a microfibre cloth with gentle pressure.

3. Clean with a soft sponge, a wash mitt or a brush applying only light pressure. Start with the roof and work from the top to the bottom. Use a cleaning shampoo only for very stubborn dirt.

   In the case of matt paint, clean from top to bottom with a neutral cleaning shampoo and a microfibre cloth. Thoroughly wash out the microfibre cloth at short intervals.

4. Clean wheels and side members with a clean sponge.
5. Rinse off with plenty of water.
6. Allow the vehicle to dry in the air.
7. Remove water residue with a chamois leather.

If the dirt on the paintwork could not be removed by hand washing, isolated dirt can be removed with cleaning clay.

Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior

NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning and care may cause vehicle damage.

- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use excessively hard or abrasive cleaning tools.

Windows, glass surfaces

— Remove wax residue, e.g. from care products, using a suitable glass cleaner or with the Volkswagen Genuine cleaning cloth.

— Remove snow with a hand brush.

— Remove ice with a plastic scraper. Move the scraper in one direction only.

— Thaw ice with a suitable de-icer or with Volkswagen Genuine de-icer.

— Clean the wiper blades or replace them as required.

Paint

Always treat surfaces with care so as not to remove the paint.

— Use a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water or cleaning clay to remove any light dirt immediately, e.g. deposits, insect residue, or cosmetics.

— Remove overflowing fuel or service fluids immediately.

— Moisten flash rust deposits with a soap solution. Then remove any deposits with cleaning clay.

— Have corrosion removed by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

— In the event of paint damage, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the paint damage repaired. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Waxing protects the paintwork. The vehicle should be protected again using a preservative wax at the latest when water no longer clearly forms small drops and runs off the paintwork when the vehicle is clean.

— In the case of matt paint, use a soft sponge to apply a special wax for matt paints to the cleaned vehicle. Remove excess wax with a microfibre cloth.

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

NOTICE

The surface of matt paintwork will be irreparably damaged by polishing the paint.

- Never polish matt-painted surfaces.

Even if a preservative wax is used regularly in the car wash, Volkswagen recommends protecting the paint with suitable hard wax or with Volkswagen Genuine hard wax at least twice a year.

Plenum chamber, bonnet space

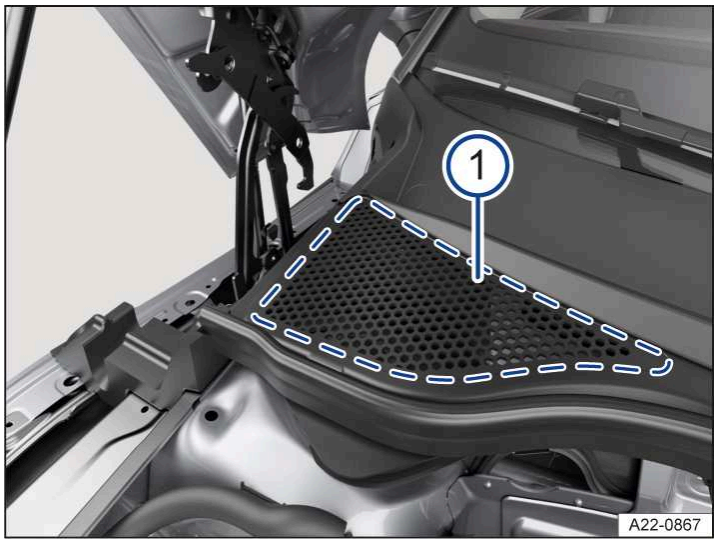


Fig. 1 Between the bonnet space and the windscreen: plenum chamber (illustration).

(1) Perforated cover on plenum chamber.

WARNING

There is a risk of accident and fire when working in the bonnet space. Serious injuries may occur.

- Note the operations required and the necessary safety precautions before performing any work in the bonnet space *(→ In the bonnet space)*.
- If you are not familiar with the work, have the work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

NOTICE

The drainage channels for the plenum chamber may become blocked by leaves and dirt. Water that does not drain off can get into the vehicle interior and cause damage.

- Have the area under the perforated cover cleaned regularly by a suitably qualified workshop → *Fig. 1* (1). Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

NOTICE

Water that has entered the plenum chamber via a manual process (e.g. from a high-pressure cleaner) can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

- Remove leaves and other loose objects on the perforated cover with a vacuum cleaner or by hand → *Fig. 1* (1).
- Make sure that large quantities of water do not enter the plenum chamber, e.g. due to use of a high-pressure cleaner.
- Always have the bonnet space checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Sensors, camera lenses



Fig. 2 At the rear of the vehicle: rear view camera system on the handle button (illustration).

— Clean the area in front of the sensors or camera with a soft cloth and solvent-free cleaning agent.
— Use the same method to clean sensitive surfaces on the rain and light sensor and the camera window on the windscreen as used for glass surfaces (depending on vehicle equipment).
— Remove snow with a hand brush.
— Never use warm or hot water.
— Thaw ice with a suitable de-icer or with Volkswagen Genuine de-icer.

Decorative films, protective films

— Remove soiling in the same way as for paint. Use a suitable plastic cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine plastic cleaner for matt decorative films.
— Treat the vehicle with liquid hard wax every three months after washing and removing dust. Only use clean, soft microfibre cloths to apply the wax. Do not use hot wax – also not in car washes!
— Remove stubborn impurities carefully using white spirits, and then rinse using warm water.

The durability and colour of decorative and protective films may be affected by environmental influences such as sunlight. Decorative films may show signs of wear and ageing after around one to three years, and protective films after two to three years. In very hot climates, decorative films may become faded within one year and protective films within two years.

Trim parts made of chrome-plated plastic, aluminium or stainless steel

— Clean the surface with a suitable chrome and aluminium care product or with the Volkswagen Genuine chrome and aluminium care product.
— Chrome-plated trim parts can be preserved with a suitable hard wax or Volkswagen Genuine hard wax.

Headlights, tail light clusters

— Remove soiling using a soft sponge soaked with a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water. Do not use any cleaning agents that contain alcohol or solvents.
— Remove stubborn dirt with a suitable chrome and aluminium care product or with the Volkswagen Genuine chrome and aluminium care product.

Wheels

— Remove dirt and gritting salt deposits with plenty of water.
— Clean dirty alloy wheels with a suitable wheel rim cleaner or with Volkswagen Genuine wheel rim cleaner. Volkswagen recommends treating the wheel rims with a suitable hard wax or with Volkswagen Genuine hard wax every three months.

— Repair any damage to the protective paint coating immediately with a touch-up pen. Go to a suitably qualified workshop if necessary. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

— Remove brake dust with a suitable wheel rim cleaner or with Volkswagen Genuine wheel rim cleaner.

Door lock cylinders

1. Thaw door lock cylinders with a suitable door lock de-icer or with the Volkswagen Genuine de-icer.

   Do not use door lock de-icer containing degreasing substances.

Cleaning and care of the vehicle interior

The following overview contains recommendations for cleaning and care of individual vehicle components.

NOTICE

Improper cleaning and care may damage the vehicle.

- Always observe the described tasks for vehicle care and cleaning.
- Do not use a steam cleaner, brushes or hard sponges etc.
- Have stubborn stains removed by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Windows

— Clean windows with a glass cleaner.

— Wipe the windows dry with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth.

Textiles, microfibre cloth and leatherette

— Regularly remove dirt particles adhering to surfaces with a vacuum cleaner so that the material is not permanently damaged by abrasion.

— Remove dirt with a suitable interior cleaner or with Volkswagen Genuine interior cleaner.

— In the case of grease-based soiling such as oil, use a suitable interior cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine interior cleaner. Dab off dissolved grease and colour particles with an absorbent cloth. Then treat with water if necessary.

— In the case of soiling caused by ballpoint pens or nail vanish, for example, use a suitable interior cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine interior cleaner. If necessary, treat subsequently with a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water.

— Never use leather care agents, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers or similar.

— Never use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners and coolant spray.

Natural leather

— Remove fresh contamination using a cotton cloth with a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water. Do not allow fluids to seep into the seams.

— In the case of soiling caused by ballpoint pens or nail vanish, for example, use a suitable leather cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine leather cleaner.

— Treat dried-in stains with a suitable leather cleaner or Volkswagen Genuine leather cleaner.

— For grease-based soiling such as oil, remove fresh stains with an absorbent cloth.

— Apply leather care agent for seating furniture regularly and each time after the leather is cleaned. If the vehicle is parked outdoors for long periods, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Never treat leather with solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers or similar.

Plastic parts

— Clean with a soft, moist cloth.

— If stubborn soiling cannot be removed with mild soap solution (consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water), use a solvent-free plastic cleaning agent or Volkswagen Genuine plastic cleaner if necessary.

Trim parts, trim strips made of chrome, aluminium or stainless steel

— Clean with a clean, soft cloth and mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water in a dust-free environment.

— Treat anodised surfaces with a suitable chrome and aluminium care product or with the Volkswagen Genuine chrome and aluminium care product.

Control elements

1. Remove coarse dirt and other dirt that is difficult to reach using a soft brush.
2. Use a clean, soft cloth with some mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water. Do not allow liquids to enter the controls.

Displays and screens

Do not clean the instrument cluster display and Infotainment system screen with a dry cloth.

1. Switch off the Infotainment system before cleaning.
2. Use a suitable clean, soft cleaning cloth or a Volkswagen Genuine cleaning cloth with some water, a suitable glass cleaner or LCD cleaner →.

In the case of stubborn dirt:

1. Moisten dirt with only a little water and allow to soak in →.
2. Carefully remove dirt with a clean, soft cloth.

NOTICE

The screen can become cloudy, be damaged or scratched if it is cleaned with the wrong cleaning agents or when dry.

- Use only gentle pressure.
- Do not use aggressive or solvent-based cleaning products.

NOTICE

If the screen is cleaned with too much moisture, it may no longer be possible to operate the screen or the screen may switch off.

- Dry the screen then leave the vehicle locked from the outside for at least 2 minutes.

Rubber seals

— Clean with a soft and lint-free cloth as well as plenty of water.

— Regularly treat with a suitable rubber care product or the Volkswagen Genuine rubber care product.

Seat belts

1. Carefully pull the seat belt right out and leave it out.
2. Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.
3. If necessary, clean the seat belt with a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water.
4. Leave the belt fabric to dry completely and then allow it to roll up.

WARNING

Improper cleaning of the seat belts, their anchorages and the belt retractors can cause damage and prevent them from functioning properly. This can result in serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Never carry out any modifications on the seat belts for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts and their components with chemical agents.
- Do not use any caustic liquids, solvents or sharp objects.
- Protect the belt buckles against the ingress of liquids and foreign bodies.
- Let the cleaned seat belt to dry completely before allowing it to retract.

Wooden trims

Clean with a soft cloth and some mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water.

Cleaning seat covers

If clothing, such as denim, leaves stains on the seat covers, this is not a defect of the cover fabric. If you want to clean the seat covers yourself, please always note that parts of the airbag system and electrical connectors are installed in the seat covers. Improper cleaning, impregnation or soaking can damage these components or interfere with correct functioning of the components. This can in turn then also lead to damage to other parts of the vehicle's electrical system →⚠.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, seat cushions with seat heating have electrical components and connectors that may be damaged in the event of incorrect cleaning or treatment. This can also result in damage to other parts of the vehicle electrics.

— Never use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners and coolant spray.

— Never soak seat covers.

— Never switch on the seat heating to dry the seats.

— Never use impregnation agents.

— Do not use washing paste or fine detergent solutions.

— If in doubt, go to a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, impregnation and cleaning of components can irreparably damage the safety features of the vehicle, e.g. the airbag units, and prevent them from functioning properly. This can lead to serious injuries in the event of an accident.

- Always use suitable cleaning agents. More detailed information is available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Do not use cleaning agents that contain solvents.
- Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.

The signs of wear and soiling visible due to normal use are naturally more easily visible in the case of light-coloured materials in the vehicle interior. These signs of use cannot be prevented and also represent unavoidable ageing due to normal use. Please observe the corresponding care instructions.

Accessories and replacement parts

Seek advice from a suitably qualified workshop before purchasing accessories, replacement parts or service fluids, for example if the vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories or if parts have to be renewed. Qualified workshops can provide information on legal requirements and also recommend accessories, replacement parts and service fluids. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Volkswagen recommends using Volkswagen Genuine Parts or Volkswagen Genuine Accessories, which you can purchase from an authorised Volkswagen repairer. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety. A suitably qualified workshop also has the specialist skills for correct installation. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Although the market is constantly scrutinised, Volkswagen cannot assume responsibility for the reliability, safety and suitability of products Volkswagen has not approved. Volkswagen can therefore assume no responsibility for these parts, even if they have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Always contact a suitably qualified workshop if you wish to change to different tyre and rim combinations. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Any retrofitted equipment which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must be approved by Volkswagen for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (approval symbol of the European Union). These devices include cruise control systems or electronically controlled damping systems, for example.

Any additional electrical components fitted that do not serve to control the vehicle itself must bear the CE mark (manufacturer declaration of conformity in the European Union). Such devices include refrigerator boxes, computers and ventilator fans.

WARNING

Use of unsuitable replacement parts and accessories can lead to vehicle malfunctions. This also applies to work, modifications and repairs that are not performed correctly. This can lead to vehicle damage and accidents with serious or fatal injuries.

- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Never fit parts to your vehicle that differ in their design or characteristics from the factory-fitted parts.
- Use only wheel rim and tyre combinations that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. More detailed information is available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

Objects in the deployment zone of the airbags can be flung through the vehicle interior if the airbags are triggered. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Never secure or position objects in the deployment zones of the airbags.

NOTICE

With some engines, retrofitting an engine preheating system can lead to malfunctions and vehicle damage.

- Consult a suitably qualified workshop about retrofitting an engine preheating system. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Sensors and cameras

Incorrectly performed repairs, structural changes to the vehicle, e.g. lowering the suspension, retrofitted add-on parts or changes to the trim can lead to sensors and cameras being displaced or damaged. This can interfere with important functions of driver assist systems →⚠.

— Observe the positions of sensors and cameras in the vehicle overview when performing repairs or modifications.

Add-on parts or modifications in the area of sensors and cameras

WARNING

If the area in front of and around sensors and cameras is covered, e.g. due to incorrect installation of number plates, number plate holders with trim frames, additionally applied films or paintwork on the sensors and similar, this may prevent correct functioning of the driver assist systems. Failure of the driver assist systems can lead to accidents and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Always ask a suitably qualified workshop whether installation of a number plate or number plate holder with trim frame is possible for your vehicle. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- When installing, ensure that there is a sufficient distance from sensors and cameras.
- Make sure that the number plate or the number plate holder with trim frame is installed only in the specified position.
- Do not apply any additional films in front of or around sensors.

NOTICE

Incorrect installation of number plate holders with trim frames or number plates can damage components, e.g. cables or sensors.

- Always ask a suitably qualified workshop whether installation of a number plate or number plate holder with trim frame is possible for your vehicle. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

The number plate holder with trim frame is used for mounting the official number plate.

The radar sensor can be installed either below the number plate or behind the Volkswagen badge. The number plate or the Volkswagen badge can impair the view of the radar sensor in the front area. Therefore, mount the number plate at a sufficient distance from the radar sensor or only operate the vehicle with the original Volkswagen badge or a badge approved by Volkswagen.

Damage in the area of sensors and cameras

⚠ WARNING

If the area around sensor and cameras is damaged, e.g. by stone chips or impacts when parking, this can prevent the driver assist systems from functioning correctly. Failure of the driver assist systems can lead to accidents and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Have the component replaced by a suitably qualified workshop in the event of damage in the area of the sensors and cameras. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

After replacement of components, the sensors and cameras may have to be adjusted and calibrated by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

If the windscreen has been damaged in the viewing field of the sensors and camera, e.g. by stone chips, the windscreen must be replaced. Repair of the stone chip damage can lead to malfunctions or functional faults in the driver assist systems. After replacing the windscreen, the cameras and sensors must be adjusted and calibrated by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Repairs and technical modifications

Repairs and technical modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications →⚠.

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause faults. As the electronic components are linked together in networks, these faults may indirectly affect the working of other systems. This can seriously impair vehicle safety, lead to excessive wear of components and also invalidate the type approval for the vehicle.

The authorised Volkswagen repairer cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

The authorised Volkswagen repairer is not responsible for damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly. Such damage is not covered by the Volkswagen guarantee.

Have all repairs and technical modifications carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer that supplies Volkswagen Genuine Parts®.

Volkswagen repair information

Volkswagen Service information and official Volkswagen repair information can be obtained for a fee.

Customers in Europe, Asia, Australia, Africa, Central and South America:

Please contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer. Alternatively, you can register on the internet portal **erWin** (electronic repair and workshop information):

https://erwin.volkswagen.de

Customers in North America and Canada:

To order printed service information please contact:

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

literature.vw.com

You can also register online in the **erWin** internet portal:

https://erwin.vw.com

Diagnostic interface (OBD)

There is a diagnostic interface in the vehicle interior for reading the event memories (OBD). Event memories document any errors that have occurred and any deviations from the nominal values in the electronic control units →⚠.

The diagnostic interface (OBD) is located in the footwell on the driver side underneath the dash panel, or behind a cover next to the bonnet release lever.

The event memory should only be read and reset by a suitably qualified workshop. Additional information on the stored data is available from suitably qualified workshops. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

After a fault has been rectified, the information in the event memory relating to the fault is deleted. Other memory content is overwritten on an ongoing basis.

Vehicles with special auxiliary equipment or body parts

Auxiliary equipment and second stage manufacturers must ensure that the equipment and bodies (conversions) adhere to the stipulated environmental laws and regulations, particularly the EU directive 2000/53/EC concerning end-of-life vehicles and EU directive 2003/11/EC concerning the restriction on the marketing and use of certain dangerous substances and preparations.

The vehicle owner must keep all assembly documentation for these conversions and pass it on to the scrapping company upon vehicle handover if the vehicle is scrapped. This is intended to facilitate environmentally responsible disposal for all vehicles, including refitted vehicles.

Engine and transmission guard

An engine and transmission guard can reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle's underbody and sump, for example when driving over kerbs, drive entrances or unsurfaced roads.

Have retrofitting carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

An engine and transmission guard may not be available in all countries.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications to the vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the driver assistance systems and the airbags when they trigger. This can cause malfunctions and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly performed repairs and modifications on the vehicle, e.g. through use of unsuitable parts, can damage the vehicle and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never fit parts to your vehicle that differ in their design or characteristics from the factory-fitted parts.
- Use only wheel rim/tyre combinations that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. More detailed information is available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Volkswagen recommends the use of Volkswagen Genuine Parts or Volkswagen Genuine Accessories. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety.

⚠ WARNING

Use of the diagnostic connection for other than its intended purpose can cause malfunctions and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never read the event memory yourself using the diagnostic interface.
- Never upload data to the vehicle yourself using the diagnostic connection.
- The event memory should be read only by a suitably qualified workshop using the diagnostic connection. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Repairs and faults in the airbag system

Repairs and technical modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications →⚠.

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, the doors, the front seats, the roof or the bodywork should only be carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer. System components and airbag system sensors might be fitted on these vehicle components.

If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the airbags is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. These requirements are known to suitably qualified workshops. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Any modifications to the vehicle's suspension could prevent the airbag system from working properly during a collision. For example, using wheel rim/tyre combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle or making modifications to the suspension rate including work on the springs, struts and shock absorbers etc., could change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some changes to the suspension could cause the forces measured by the sensors to increase, for example. This can lead to the airbag system being triggered in collision scenarios where it normally would not be triggered if modifications to the suspension had not been made. Other modifications can cause the forces measured by the sensors to decrease, therefore preventing the airbag system from being triggered when it should have been.

⚠ WARNING

Use of unsuitable replacement parts and accessories can cause malfunctions and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the airbag system. This also applies to work, modifications and repairs that are not performed correctly. This can lead to vehicle damage and accidents with serious or fatal injuries.

- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.
- Please note that the airbag unit cannot be repaired, but must be replaced.
- Never install recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never fit parts to your vehicle that differ in their design or characteristics from the factory-fitted parts.

⚠ WARNING

Modification of the vehicle suspension, including the use of non-approved wheel rim and tyre combinations, can change how the airbag functions. This can result in serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Never install components in the suspension system which do not have the same characteristics as the original factory-fitted components.
- Use only wheel rim and tyre combinations that have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. More detailed information is available from a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Mobile communication in the vehicle

Electromagnetic radiation

If a mobile telephone or radio device is used without being connected to the external aerial, the electromagnetic radiation will not be optimally directed to the outside of the vehicle. Increased levels of radiation in the vehicle interior may occur in areas with poor signal in particular, for instance in rural areas. This could constitute a health hazard →⚠.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, a suitable mobile phone interface can be used to connect the mobile telephone to the external aerial. The connection quality is improved and the range is increased.

Using the telephone

Many countries require a hands-free system to be used when using a telephone inside the vehicle, e.g. via a Bluetooth ® connection. Before use, secure the mobile telephone to a suitable bracket →⚠ or stow it in a storage compartment so that it cannot slip around, e.g. in the centre console.

Two-way radios

Observe legal requirements and the manufacturer's operating instructions for operating two-way radios. The retrofitting of two-way radios requires authorisation.

Ask a qualified workshop for further information on installation of a two-way radio. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised repairer.

⚠ WARNING

Mobile telephones that are not secured or not properly secured could be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident and cause serious injuries.

- Secure or stow a mobile telephone and accessories safely and outside the deployment zone of the airbags.

⚠ WARNING

If a mobile telephone or two-way radio that is not connected to an external aerial is used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed. This can endanger the health of the driver and the vehicle occupants.

- Keep a distance of around 20 cm (around 8 inches) between a device's aerial and an active medical implant, e.g. a pacemaker.
- Do not carry device which is operationally ready close to or directly above an active medical implant, e.g. in a breast pocket.
- Switch off the device immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with an active medical implant or any other medical device.

Volkswagen dealership warranty

Volkswagen dealerships guarantee that the vehicles they sell are free from defects. The dealerships are also responsible for handling warranty claims.

Please refer to your sales contract or contact your Volkswagen dealership for details of the warranty and guarantee conditions.

Guarantee for paint and body

In addition to the guarantees and warranties in the purchase agreement for new vehicles, authorised Volkswagen repairers also fulfil the guarantee that exists in many countries that no paint defects or corrosion perforation will occur on the body for a certain period of time.

Depending on country, the following periods apply:

— A three-year guarantee against paint defects.

— A twelve-year guarantee against corrosion perforation. Here, corrosion perforation refers to rust forming on the inside (cavity) of the body and causing holes in the sheet metal.

If such damage occurs nevertheless, it will be repaired free of charge for parts and labour by any authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Guarantee exclusion

Details of the guarantee cover can be found in the guarantee conditions applicable to your vehicle in your country.

The guarantee does not cover the following:

— Damage caused by external influence or insufficient care.

— Imperfections on the body or paintwork which are not repaired promptly according to manufacturer specifications.

— Corrosion perforation that is directly related to body repairs not being carried out according to manufacturer specifications.

If the body is repaired or painted, your authorised Volkswagen repairer will confirm your warranty against corrosion perforation for the repaired area.

LongLife mobility guarantee

In many European countries, Volkswagen dealerships offer a comprehensive LongLife mobility guarantee for new vehicles. It applies from vehicle delivery until the first scheduled inspection.

If you purchase your new vehicle directly from Volkswagen, Volkswagen will issue the LongLife mobility guarantee from the time of delivery until the first due inspection.

Your Volkswagen service partner will extend the LongLife mobility guarantee until the following inspection if the due inspection is carried out at that workshop. The service costs include the entire guarantee package.

Please ask your Volkswagen dealership for details of services, conditions and time limits relating to the LongLife mobility guarantee.

Data storage and data protection information

Data processing in the vehicle

Your vehicle is fitted with electronic control units. Control units process data that they receive from vehicle sensors, generate themselves or exchange with each other, for example. Some control units are required for the safe functioning of your vehicle. Other control units support you when driving (driver assist systems), while others enable convenience features or additional functions of the Infotainment system.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for a specific purpose for vehicle operation.

These include, for example:

— Vehicle status information, e.g. deceleration, deactivation times of the speed warning function and display of fastened seat belts.

— Ambient conditions, e.g. temperature, data from sensors for Adaptive Cruise Control.

— Image recordings, e.g. data from camera-assisted driver assist systems.

Recordings and other data for a specific purpose are normally fleeting and are normally processed directly in the vehicle itself and not stored.

However, control units may also have data memories to document information regarding the vehicle status, component load levels, maintenance requirements, technical events and faults on a temporary or permanent basis.

Depending on the technical equipment, the following data is stored:

— Operating states of system components, e.g. filling levels, tyre pressure, status of the vehicle battery.

— Faults or malfunctions in important system components, e.g. lights, brakes.

— System reactions to specific driving situations, e.g. triggering of an airbag, intervention of driver assist systems.

— Information on events which damaged the vehicle.

In special cases, e.g. when the vehicle has detected a malfunction, it may be necessary to store data that would normally only be volatile.

If you make use of services, e.g. repairs or maintenance work, the stored operating data can, if necessary, be read and used together with the vehicle identification number . The data can be read from the vehicle by employees of the service network (e.g. qualified workshops) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services). The same applies to warranty cases and quality assurance measures.

The data is read via the legally prescribed OBD connection (on-board diagnosis) in the vehicle. The operating data that is read documents the technical status of the vehicle or individual components thereof and provides support with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement. This data, in particular information on component load levels, technical events, operating errors and other faults, is transmitted to Volkswagen together with the vehicle identification number in cases where this is expedient. In addition, Volkswagen may use the data for reasons related to product liability and product safety, e.g. for recall campaigns. This data can also be used to check the customer's warranty and guarantee claims.

Event memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service workshop as part of repair or service work or if you request this.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is given a unique vehicle identification number . Depending on country, this vehicle identification number can be traced back to the current and former owners of the vehicle using information provided by the relevant authorities. There are also other ways of tracing the vehicle to the owner or driver, via data collected for the vehicle e.g. the registration number.

The data generated or processed by control units may therefore be personal data or under certain conditions is personal data. Depending on the vehicle data available, it may be possible to draw conclusions, e.g. about your driving behaviour, your location or your route or your usage behaviour.

Your rights regarding data protection

In accordance with the valid data protection legislation in your country, you may have certain rights vis-à-vis Volkswagen when your personal data is processed.

Accordingly, you may be entitled to receive comprehensive information free of charge from Volkswagen and third parties, e.g. commissioned qualified workshops, if they have stored your personal data. You are entitled to request information concerning what personal data and for what purpose it is stored as well as where the data originates from. Your right to information may also include the transfer of data to other bodies.

Data that is only stored locally in the vehicle can be read out with expert assistance, for example at a suitably qualified workshop. This service may be subject to a fee. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Further information on your legal rights, e.g. your right to deletion or correction of the data, can be found in the applicable data protection information on the website of Volkswagen, including contact details and information about the Data Protection Officer.

You can find detailed information on data processing in the Privacy Policy in your Infotainment system under **Menu ▶ Legal information** or **Home ▶ Legal information**.

Legal requirements for the disclosure of data

Depending on country, Volkswagen AG as the vehicle manufacturer is legally obliged to transmit the following information relating to the use of driver assist systems, e.g. ACC, to the responsible authority:

— Relationships of the times or distances covered with driver assist systems switched on and off.

— Relationships of the times and distances covered in compliance with and in violation of the detected speed limits.

— Where appropriate, average time between the driver switching the driver assist system on and off.

When vehicles visit a qualified workshop, the qualified workshop reads the specified data out of the vehicles and transmits this data to Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG processes this data so that there is no longer any direct link to you, your vehicle or the VIN of your vehicle. Volkswagen AG forwards the information processed in the way to the responsible authority, which processes the data in order to fulfil legal tasks.

If legal requirements exist, Volkswagen is obliged to disclose data stored at Volkswagen to the extent required to government agencies in individual cases, e.g. as part of a police investigation of a criminal offence.

Within the framework of applicable law, government agencies are also authorised to read data from vehicles themselves in individual cases. In the event of an accident, information can be read from the airbag control unit to help clarify the situation.

Reprogramming control units

All data for the control of components is stored in the control units. Some convenience functions can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If the convenience functions are reprogrammed, the specifications and descriptions in this owner's manual will no longer match the original functions. Depending on country, the reprogramming can be entered into the digital service schedule by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

A suitably qualified workshop can provide information about any potential reprogramming. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Convenience features

You can personalise convenience settings, save them in the vehicle, change them, retrieve data from the vehicle when using online services, or reset or delete settings.

Depending on the equipment in the vehicle, this includes, for example:

— Settings of the seat and steering wheel positions.

— Running gear and air conditioning settings.

— Personalised settings such as mirror adjustment or background lighting.

Infotainment system

Depending on the equipment installed, you may be able to store your own data in the vehicle's Infotainment system.

Depending on the equipment in the vehicle, this includes, for example:

— Media files for playback of music, films or photos in an Infotainment system.

— Address book data for use with a hands-free system or navigation system.

— Navigation destinations entered.

— Depending on equipment and country, data on the use of online services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or located on a device that you have connected to the vehicle, e.g. mobile telephone. If this data is stored in the vehicle, you can delete it at any time.

Integration of mobile telephones

If your vehicle contains the necessary equipment, you can connect your mobile telephone or any other mobile end device to your vehicle so that you can control this device via the controls integrated in the vehicle when the corresponding functions are available. For example, images and sounds from the mobile telephone can be output through the Infotainment system. At the same time, certain information is sent to your mobile telephone. This includes location data and further general vehicle information, depending on the type of integration.

This enables you to use selected mobile telephone apps in the vehicle, e.g. for navigation. The mobile telephone and vehicle do not interact in any other ways than those described here; in particular the device does not actively access vehicle data. The type of further data processing depends on the app provider. The settings that you can adjust here depend on the app you are using and the operating system on your mobile telephone.

Online services

If your vehicle is equipped with a connection to a mobile network, your vehicle will be able to exchange data with other systems. This mobile network connection enables you to use online functions. This includes online services and apps provided by Volkswagen or other third-party providers.

Manufacturer services

In the case of Volkswagen online services, Volkswagen describes the respective functions in a suitable place, e.g. in a separate service description or on an Internet page, and the associated privacy information is provided. Personal data may be required in order to provide online services. For this, data is exchanged over a secure connection, e.g. using the designated IT systems of the manufacturer. Any collection, processing and use of personal data that goes beyond the provision of the service takes place exclusively according to legal regulations, contractual agreements or the necessary permission.

You can activate and deactivate the services and functions, some of which are subject to a fee and in some cases also disable the vehicle's entire data connection. This does not apply to any functions and services required by law, e.g. emergency call systems.

Third-party services

If you are able to use online services provided by a party other than the manufacturer, these services are the sole responsibility of the provider in question and are subject to this provider's data protection policy and terms and conditions of use. Volkswagen has no influence on the data processing that takes place here and the content exchanged as part of these services.

Please refer to the provider in question for information about the type, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data related to third-party services.

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

— How various systems in your vehicle were operating;

— Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;

— How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,

— How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Data from driver assist systems is also recorded. In addition to information about whether the systems were switched on or off, available only to a restricted extent or inactive, it is also possible to determine whether these functions steered, accelerated or braked the vehicle in the above-described situations. Depending on the vehicle equipment, these systems include the following:

— Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

— Lane keeping system (Lane Assist).

— Park Assist.

— Emergency braking functions (Front Assist).

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Volkswagen will not access, read or process data from the event data recorder unless the vehicle keeper grants their permission. Exceptions to this are contractual or legal provisions.

Due to its legal product monitoring obligations, Volkswagen is entitled to use the data for field monitoring and also for research purposes and quality improvements. For research purposes, Volkswagen makes the data available to third parties in anonymous form, in other words without any reference to the individual vehicle or vehicle keeper.

Infotainment system and antennas

The aerials for the Infotainment system are installed at different points in the vehicle:

— On the inside of the rear window.

— Depending on vehicle, on the inside of the rear side windows.

— On the inside of the windscreen.

— On the roof of the vehicle.

Aerials on the interior of the windows can be identified as thin conductors.

NOTICE

Aerials located on the inside of the windows could be damaged by corrosive or acidic substances or if hard objects rub against the window.

- Do not affix any stickers over metal conductors, e.g. in the area of the rear window.
- Never clean the aerials with corrosive or acidic agents.

NOTICE

A retrofitted Infotainment system that is not compatible with the aerial amplifier fitted as standard can damage the aerial amplifier.

- Consult a suitably qualified workshop before retrofitting an Infotainment system. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Component protection

Some electronic components and control units are fitted with component protection as standard, e.g. the Infotainment system.

The component protection permits a correspondingly qualified workshop to legitimately install or replace components and control units. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

The component protection prevents the full operation of factory-supplied components outside the vehicle in the following situations:

— Installation in other vehicles, e.g. after theft.

— Operation of components outside the vehicle.

If a text message about component protection appears in the display of the instrument cluster or the screen of the Infotainment system, go to a correspondingly qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

Third-party copyright information

Open source

Some of the products installed in the vehicle contain software components for which Open Source licences are required.

A list of the open source software components used including information on copyright as well as the respective open source licence conditions and the corresponding licence text is available via the website specified below. The source code of certain Open Source software components can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle. The manufacturer will make the source code available to you in accordance with the relevant licence conditions. You will be charged only for the actual costs of provision, e.g. shipping costs. You can find the necessary information on the website

https://www.volkswagen.com/softwareinfo

Information stickers and plates

Stickers and plates showing important information for vehicle operation are factory-fitted in the bonnet space and on certain vehicle parts.

— Never remove stickers and plates or render them illegible.

— If vehicle parts bearing stickers or plates are removed from the vehicle, replacement stickers or plates with the same information must be applied properly to the new parts by a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Safety certificate

There is a safety certificate on the door pillar of the driver door which states that all necessary safety standards and specifications from the transport safety authorities of the particular country were met at the time of production. The month and year of production and the vehicle identification number may also be listed. Observe notes in the owner's manual.

High-voltage warning sticker

There are stickers on the high-voltage components of the 48-volt system which contain warning information relating to the high voltage of the vehicle electrical system →ⓘ.

⚠ WARNING

Removal of stickers and signs reduces the amount of information about sources of danger and can result in less attention being paid when working on the vehicle. This can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never remove stickers or signs or make them illegible.
- Observe legal requirements.
- Observe the owner's manual.

NOTICE

Removal of stickers and signs increases the risk of incorrect operation and can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Never remove stickers or signs or make them illegible.
- Observe legal requirements.
- Carry out servicing work in accordance with the specifications.

NOTICE

If the ventilation openings on the covers of the high-voltage components of the 48-volt vehicle electrical system are covered, this can lead to vehicle damage.

- Make sure that the ventilation openings on the covers of the high-voltage components of the 48-volt vehicle electrical system are not covered.

Fluids in the air conditioning system

Refrigerant in the air conditioning system

The sticker in the bonnet space contains information regarding the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. The sticker is located at the front of the bonnet space, close to the refrigerant filler neck →⚠.

Details of the refrigerant used

The air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gases.

Valid for vehicles with refrigerant R1234yf:

Refrigerant weight	CO_2 equivalent	Global warming potential
460 g	0.0002 t	0.501

Refrigerant oil in the air conditioning system

The air conditioning system is filled with a refrigerant oil. Consult a suitably qualified workshop for information about the type and quantity of the refrigerant oil used. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Warning: maintenance of the air conditioning system requires qualified personnel.

Type of refrigerant.

Type of refrigerant oil.

See workshop information (available only for authorised Volkswagen repairers).

Maintenance of the air conditioning system requires qualified personnel.

Flammable refrigerant.

Make sure you dispose of all components correctly and never install components taken from older vehicles or recycling facilities into the vehicle.

⚠ DANGER

Maintenance of the air conditioning system by unqualified personnel may cause serious and fatal injuries.

- To service the air conditioning system, contact qualified personnel who are trained according to the nationally required standards, e.g. SAE standard J2845.
- Observe the service intervals specified by Volkswagen. Please contact a suitably qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using an authorised Volkswagen repairer.

⚠ DANGER

The refrigerant is flammable and can lead to serious and fatal injuries if maintenance is not performed correctly.

- Have the air conditioning system serviced by suitably qualified personnel.
- Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other sources of ignition.

⚠ DANGER

The refrigerant is pressurised and can explode if heated. This can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Have the air conditioning system serviced by suitably qualified personnel.
- Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other sources of ignition.

DANGER

The refrigerant can form toxic vapours if it comes into contact with hot surfaces. If these are breathed in, this can result in poisoning or even death.

- Have the air conditioning system serviced by suitably qualified personnel.

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing the evaporator with spare parts from end-of-life vehicles or recycling may damage the air conditioning system.

- Never have repairs on the evaporator carried out with replacement parts from end-of-life vehicles or from recycling.

Information in accordance with the EU Chemicals Regulation REACH

In keeping with the European regulation on chemicals REACH Volkswagen would like to inform you about substances that may be contained in your vehicle.

You can access this information online using your vehicle identification number :

https://reachinfo.volkswagen.com

Product recycling

Disposal of used batteries

Used batteries must be collected separately and recycled by the end user. This is indicated by the symbol with the crossed-through waste bin. As the end user, you are required by law to return used batteries →.

— In EU member states and other states, device batteries and vehicle batteries can be returned to your authorised Volkswagen repairer or approved return systems.

— Further information on return and recycling can be obtained from your authorised Volkswagen repairer or at:

https://www.volkswagen.com

Disposal of old electrical and electronic devices

Your vehicle contains electrical and electronic devices, e.g. remote controls. These devices are marked with a symbol showing a crossed-through waste bin.

The corresponding legal regulations stipulate that old devices with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. You can hand in these devices at local collection points or any nationally authorised return systems.

In Germany, retailers with a sales area of at least 400 m2 for electrical devices and food retailers with a total sales area of at least 800 m2 who offer new electrical devices are obliged to take back these devices free of charge. When purchasing a new device, the end user is entitled to return an equivalent old device. The same also applies for delivery to private households and sale via the internet. Small old devices can be returned to retailers even if no new device is purchased. Your authorised Volkswagen repairer is also obliged to take back up to three old devices with an edge length of less than 25 cm free of charge.

— Batteries, rechargeable batteries or lamps that are not a fixed part of the device must be removed first and disposed of accordingly.

— You must delete all stored personal data before disposing of the old devices.

Further information on return and recycling can be obtained from your authorised Volkswagen repairer.

WARNING

If batteries containing lithium are damaged, gaseous or liquid substances may escape, posing a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit of the terminals can also cause a fire or explosion. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Handle batteries containing lithium with special care.
- Never heat batteries containing lithium.
- Never damage batteries containing lithium.
- Never short circuit the battery terminals.

Batteries that contain heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can damage the health of human beings and animals and can accumulate in the environment.

- To avoid this, please ensure that your used batteries are collected separately and returned properly.

Recycling information for France



Fig. 1 Recycling information for France.

Observe the recycling information → *Fig. 1*, which includes the following items:

— Vehicle key.

— Remote control for the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation.



Fig. 2 Recycling information for France.

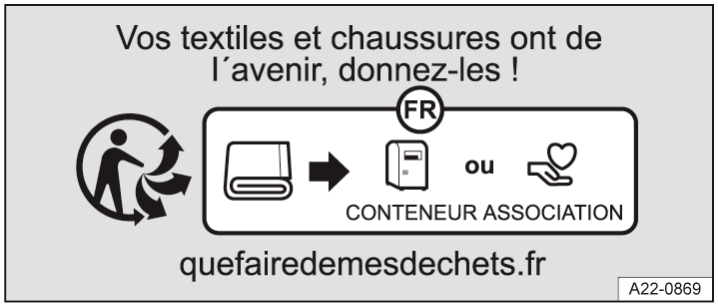


Fig. 3 Recycling information for France.

Observe the recycling information → *Fig. 2*, → *Fig. 3* for accompanying documentation and packaging or bags. This recycling information includes the following items:

— Vehicle wallet.

The Triman logo and Info-tri symbol contain important sorting information for the end user.

Returning and scrapping end-of-life vehicles

Returning end-of-life vehicles

At the end of its life, your vehicle must be recycled and disposed of in an environmentally appropriate way. For this reason, the last vehicle keepers in the EU and many other countries are required by law to take their vehicle to an approved collection point, vehicle return centre or authorised dismantling facility.

Volkswagen has already made the corresponding preparations for this: a comprehensive network of vehicle return centres is available in all EU countries and many other countries, where you can hand over your vehicle. If you satisfy the national legal requirements, you can return your end-of-life vehicle free of charge within the EU.

The vehicle return centre issues a recycling certificate which serves as proof that the end-of-life vehicle has been recycled properly.

You can obtain information about vehicle return centres from your authorised Volkswagen repairer.

Scrapping

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when scrapping the vehicle or its individual components, e.g. the airbag system and belt tensioners. These requirements are known to suitably qualified workshops.

Declaration of conformity

Placing of manufactured goods on the GB market (England, Wales and Scotland):

UK
CA

The UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) marking is a new UK product marking that is used for goods being placed on the market in Great Britain (England, Wales and Scotland).

UK Product Safety and Metrology Regulations

This vehicle has various devices installed that are subject to UKCA product regulations. The following acts as the importer of these devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of the Product Safety and Metrology Regulations:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeomans Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Simplified EU Declaration of Conformity

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. The manufacturers of these radio systems declare that this equipment complies with Directive 2014/53/EU where required by law.

The complete text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

www.volkswagen.com/generalinfo CE

The corresponding legal regulations stipulate that radio equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. You can hand in these devices at local disposal centres or any nationally authorised return systems *(→ Product recycling)*.

Marking for the restricted use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment in accordance with the RoHS Directive.

Declaration of Conformity for radio systems in EU user states and outside the European Union



Fig. 1 Overview of a selection of approval symbols for radio systems.

1. Argentina.
2. Zambia.
3. Brunei.
4. Philippines.
5. Paraguay.
6. South Africa.

CE Approval symbol for radio systems in countries outside the EU where radio systems are approved and permitted according to European Directives.

UKCA Approval symbol for radio systems in England, Wales and Scotland.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Ukraine.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Brazil.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Argentina.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Malaysia.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Australia or in Australia and New Zealand.

R-NZ Approval symbol for radio systems in New Zealand.

EAC Approval symbol for radio systems in Russia and in countries where radio systems are approved and permitted according to EAC Directives.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Vietnam.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Belarus.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Serbia.

Approval symbol for radio systems in the USA and countries where radio systems are approved and permitted according to the US FCC Directive.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Mexico.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Mexico.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Armenia.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Mongolia.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Sierra Leone.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Sierra Leone.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Thailand.

Approval symbol for radio systems in the United Arab Emirates.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Ghana.

Approval symbol for radio systems in Pakistan.

The manufacturer hereby declares that the following radio systems are in compliance with the basic requirements and other relevant regulations and laws at the time of production of the vehicle:

The following radio systems are not available in every market and are not present in every vehicle.

— Connection to the external aerial.
— Aerial.
— Aerial amplifier.
— Bluetooth.
— Remote control (auxiliary heater).
— Vehicle key.
— Digital instrument cluster
— Infotainment system.
— Wireless charging function
— Keyless Access.
— Instrument cluster, electronic immobiliser.
— Radar sensors for assist systems.
— Tyre pressure sensors.
— Auxiliary heater (transmitter/receiver unit).
— Control units with embedded eSIM card.
— Mobile phone interface.
— Wi-Fi hotspot.
— Central control unit.
— NFC valet keycard.
— USB charging connector.

Further information at: www.volkswagen.com/generalinfo.

EU-related documents, e.g. for Ghana, can be found on the website under the EU English button.

The corresponding legal regulations stipulate that radio equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. You can hand in these devices at local disposal centres or any nationally authorised return systems *(→ Product recycling)*.

Marking for the restricted use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment in accordance with the RoHS Directive.

The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017

This vehicle has various radio equipment devices installed. The following acts as importer of the radio equipment devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of The Radio Equipment Regulations 2017:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeomans Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Manufacturers' addresses

For components that, due to their size or nature, cannot be provided with the manufacturer's address, the respective manufacturers' addresses as required by law are listed here:

Door handle with NFC radio technology

HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA

Rixbecker Straße 75

59552 Lippstadt

GERMANY

WITTE VELBERT GmbH & Co. KG

Höferstraße 3-15

42551 Velbert

GERMANY

Remote control (auxiliary heater), auxiliary heater (transmitter and receiver unit)

Digades GmbH

Äußere Weberstraße 20

02763 Zittau

GERMANY

Webasto Thermo & Comfort SE

Friedrichshafener Straße 9

82205 Gilching

GERMANY

Bury GmbH & Co. KG

Robert-Kochstraße 1-7

32584 Löhne

GERMANY

Tyre pressure sensors

HUF Baolong Electronics Bretten GmbH

Gewerbestraße 40

75015 Bretten

GERMANY

Wireless charging function

Molex Technologies GmbH

Mizarstrasse 3

12529 Schönefeld

GERMANY

Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH

Märkische Straße 72

15806 Zossen

GERMANY

Bury Sp. Z o.o.

Wojska Polskiego 4

39-300 Mielec

POLAND

BCS Automotive Interface Solutions (Suzhou) Co., Ltd.

No. 2052 Taidong Road Xiangcheng Economic Development District

215413 Suzhou

CHINA

Mapping tables

What the two letters in the tables mean (e.g. AF) *(→ Radio Equipment Directive (RED))*.

Safety

This section contains the certificate numbers of the following components:

— Garage door opener, Keyless Access, vehicle key, digital instrument cluster, electronic immobiliser.

Garage door opener:

	Frequency band, maximum transmission power
ADHL5D, **EHL2**, **CB2JCIBUSHL4**	AG
ADHL5D, **EHL2**, **CB2JCIBUSHL4**	AK

Keyless Access:

RSB19	AO
Kessy MQB37W	AF
Kessy MQB-A, **5ZA 010 176**, **MQB-B B**, **MQB-B H**,	AC
013854	AD
VWTOUA PKETOUA	AJ
UWBBLE22, **UWBtrx22**	BO

Remote control key (vehicle):

VK2, **FS19**, **FS19S**, **FS191S**, **FS197**, **FS19R**, **FS1903R**	AF
FS09, **FS12A**, **FS12P**, **FS12PM**, **FS125C**, **FS14**, **FS14K**, **FS14T**, **FS14TK**, **FS1744**, **FS1744M**, **FS173JR**, **FS94**	AI
VWTOUA RKETOUA	AJ
I22U	BQ

Instrument cluster, electronic immobiliser:

COLOUR5C, **MEDIUM 5C**, **MEDIUM 5C_21**	AB
eNSF, **LCW05-VWE1**, **LCW05-VWE5**, **LCW05-SEE5**, **EZS-VW-Touareg**, **Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster**, **17101001**, **17101002**, **17101010**, **17101021**, **17101022**, **17101023**, **17101031**, **17101032**, **17101033**, **17101034**, **17101041**, **17101042**, **17101043**, **17101051**, **17101052**, **17101053**, **17101054**, **17101055**, **17101056**, **17101057**, **17101071**, **17101072**, **18020501**, **18020531**, **18020532**, **18020533**, **18020534**, **18031410**, **18100931**	AC
FPK8 IMMO5D, **Instrument cluster 1**, **Instrument cluster 2**, **Instrument cluster 3**, **BNF_HL**, **BNF_LL**, **NSF_HL**, **NSF_LL1**, **NSF_LL3**, **FPK8I5DTR2**, **FPK GEN1**, **FPK GEN2**	AD
MQB_A0 Clusters, **MQBG01**, **MQBM01**, **MQBS01**	BE

Approval numbers

DTCO 1381	AT
EFAS-4.10	

Air conditioning

This section contains the certificate numbers of the following components:

— Remote control (auxiliary heater), auxiliary heater (transmitter and receiver unit).

Remote control (auxiliary heater):

EasyStart R, **Funkfernbedienung**, **STH VW-50000884**, **STH VW D-50001194**, **Telestart**	AK

Auxiliary heater (transmitter and receiver unit):

Funkempfänger STH, **50000864 D208L VW**, **50001219 D208L VW**	AK

Tyres

This section contains the certificate numbers of the following components:

— Tyre pressure sensors.

Tyre pressure sensors:

AG2FW4, **TSSRE4Dg**, **TSSRE4Uf**, **TSSSG4G5**, **TSSSG4G5b**, **TSSTsc**, **TMSE6A4**, **A55BT**, **TSSDA4Pb**	AG

Control unit

This section contains the certificate numbers of the following components:

— Central control unit, door control unit, key card for the Digital Key, wireless charging function, wireless seat belt warning system.

Central control unit:

5WK50254	AH
BCM MQB37W,**BCM MQB37WBL**, **BR21**, **BR22**, **MQB37W**	AF
KFG: Max, **KFG2 Max**	BG
BCM2, **BCM2R**, **BCMevo**, **BCMevoC**, **BCMevo5**	BH
BCM MQB27, **BCM PQ25**, **BCM PQ26 ROW (502N1xFOx)**, **BCM PQ35**, **BCM PQ37H**, **BR11**, **5WK50248**, **5WK50254 MIB2H**	XX
BC-Module, **5WK50474**	

Door control unit:

HUF71110, **HUF71254**, **DHA20**, **DHSEQ5NFCNFCTGS**, **Mobile Key 4K0.959.754.xx**, **3G0.837.205**, **3G0.837.206**	AD
DHSEQ5NFC, **NFCTGSAU336**, **NFCTGS**, **4K0.959.754.XX**, **FLUSHNFC**, **BUEGELNFC**	AE
CDIS 2.0	BD

Wireless charging function:

WCH-183, **WCH-185**, **WCH-186**, **WCH-304**, **WPC003-1**, **WPC003-5**, **3G0.980.611**, **Koppelantenne Gen.3**, **SCB**, **DCB**, **SCB-Lite**	AA
3G0.980.611, **SCB**, **DCB**	BK

Wireless seat belt warning system:

wSBR F-SG, **wSBR S-SG**	AL

Driver assist systems

This section contains the certificate numbers of the following components:

— *Radar sensors for assist systems*.

Radar sensors for assist systems:

LCA 2.0A, **BSD 3.0**	AP
RS4	AQ
ARS4-B, **ARS5-B**, **FR5CPEC**, **LRR3**, **MRR1Plus**, **LRR4**, **MRR1Rear**, **LRR4R**, **MRRe14FCR**, **MRRevo14F**, **R3TR**, **F5CP42**, **RS5.3**, **RS5.5**	AR
CPD001	BN
HFA30	BP

Infotainment system and online communication

This section contains the certificate numbers of the following components:

— *Infotainment system, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi hotspot, mobile phone interface, OCU, Volkswagen Car-Net "Security & Service", Volkswagen Car-Net "e-Remote".*

Infotainment system:

New Radio Ultra Low SBB, **New Radio Ultra Low SBB DAB**, **New Radio Ultra Low SBT**, **7CO.035.153**, **7LA.035.153.A**, **Radio Ultra Low Touch**, **Radio Ultra Low Touch DAB**	AL
A473/A476/A750, **A475/A754**, **L40VW2**, **L41VW2**, **L42VW2**, **L53VW2**, **L56VW2**, **L62VW2**, **L69VW2**, **L73VW2**, **L77VW2**, **MIB Global Entry/Standard**, **MIB2**, **MIB2 PQ MIN**, **MIB2STD**, **MIB Standard 2 – PQ +/NAV with BT**, **MIB Standard 2 – ZR with BT**, **MIB Standard 2 – ZR +/Nav with BT**, **MIB3E_MQB_BT**, **MIB3E_MQB37w_BT**, **OE-PP 87BT**	AL
MIB3TOP, **MIB3TOP2**, **TKCMOD11000**, , **TKCMOD12C000**, **TKCMOD11000W**, **TKCMOD12E00W**	AV
MEB ICAS3, **MEB ICAS3GP**, **MEB ICAS3CHNGP**	AW
MIB3 OI (LGE)	AX
MIB3 OI, **MIB3 OI nf**, **MIB3 VR-E**, **MIB3GP**, **MIB3 EI GP MQBevo**, **MIB3 EI GP MQBc**	AY
MIB Standard 2 – ZR +/Nav mit BT and WLAN, **MIB Standard 2 – PQ +/NAV with BT and WLAN**, **MIB2STD Nav**, **MIB2STD Radio**	AZ
MIB3E_MQB_BTWIFI, **MIB3E_MQB37w_BTWIFI**	BA
A580/A270	BB

MIB HS, **MIB2H**	BC
MMI3G	BF
CONBOX-High, **CB20CHN08**, **CONBOX-Low**	BM
MMI3G RU	XX
RRVW402B, **RRVW401***, **RRVW402***	XX

Bluetooth:

HT-5	BI

Wi-Fi hotspot:

HT-5	BI
CCU4	BJ

Mobile phone interface:

HT-5	BI

Online connectivity unit (OCU):

DataPlug	AL
HT-6d, **HT-6e**, **TUVM01IU-G**, **TUVM02IU-C**, **TUVM02IU-E**, **TUVM03IU-C**, **TUVM03IU-E**	AS
TLAHW3IU-E, **TLAHW3IU-R**, **TLVHM3IU-E**, **TLVHM3IU-R**, **TLVHW3IU-E**, **TLVHW3IU-R**, **TLVLM3IU-E**, **TLVLM3IU-R**, **TLVUM3IU-W**, **TLVUW3IU-W**, **TLVHE4IU-E**, **TLVHE4IU-R**, **TLVHM3IU-W**, **TLVHW3IU-W**, **TLVHE4IU-W**, **TLVUM3IU-E**, **TLVUM3IU-R**, **TLVUW3IU-E**, **TLVUE4IU-E**, **TLVUE4IU-W**, **TLVLM3IU-N**, **TLVHE4IU-N**, **TLVUM3IU-N**, **TLVUW3IU-N**, **TLVHM3IU-N**, **TLVLP3IU-N**, **TLAHW3IU-N**, **TXVLP3IN-N**, **TLVLM3IU-CR**, **TLVLM3IU-CM**, **TLVLM3IU-C**, **TLAHW3IU-CM**, **TLAHW3IU-W**, **TLVHW3IU-N**, **TLVUW3IU-R**, **TLVHE4IU-C**, **TLVUE4IU-N**	AU
TLVHM3IU-C, **TLVHM3IU-CM**, **TLVHW3IU-CM**, **TLAHW3IU-CM**	AU (China)

Aerials

This section contains the certificate numbers of the following components:

— Aerials, aerial amplifier, connection to the external aerial.

Connection to the external aerial:

LTE-MBC-EU, **LTE-MBC-EU2**	BC
CM01TN-VWW, **CM01XN-VWE**, **CM02XN-VWE**, **CM02TN-VWW**	AN
UMTS/GSM-MMC, **UMTS/GSM-MMC-AG2**, **UMTS/GSM-MMC-AG3**	AS

Aerial amplifier:

CSA-1	AN
DDAECE01, **4N0.035.503.E**, **4N0.035.503.F**, **4N0.035.503.J**, **4N0.035.503.L**, **4N0.035.503.M**, **4N0.035.503.Q**, **4N0.035.503.AB**, **4N0.035.503.AC**, **4N0.035.503.AF**, **4N0.035.503.AG**, **4N0.035.503.BP**, **4N0.035.503.DC**, **4N0.035.503.DG**	AL
FAM027, **FAM028**	BL
0-07-26-1912-00, **756xxxx**, **AM/FM1/DAB2/TV ECE (Impedance Converter)**, **AM/FM Antenna Base**	XX
, **1S0.035.577.A**, **2G0.035.577.A**, **2GM.035.577.A**, **2S0.035.577.A**, **1V50933V2C1**, **1V50933V1C1**, **1V50933V3C1**	XX
3G5.035.577, **3G5.035.577.A**, **3G5.035.577.B**, **3G5.035.577.G**, **3G5.035.577.H**, **3G5.035.577.J**, **3G5.035.577.K**, , **3G8.035.577**, **3G8.035.577.A**, **3G8.035.577.B**, **3G8.035.577.E**, **3G8.035.577.F**, **3G8.035.577.G**, **3G8.035.577.H**, **3G8.035.577.J**, **3G8.035.577.K**, **3G9.035.577**, **3G9.035.577.A**, **3G9.035.577.B**, **3G9.035.577.G**, **3G9.035.577.H**, **3G9.035.577.J**, **3G9.035.577.K**, **3V5.035.577.A**, **3V5.035.577.B**, **3V5.035.577.F**, **4S0.035.225.A**, **4S0.035.225.D**, **2G7.035.577.A**, **4K0.035.456**, **4K0.035.456.B**	XX
510.035.577, **510.035.577.A**, **510.035.577.B**, **565.035.577**, **565.035.577.A**, **565.035.577.C**, **575.035.225**, **575.035.225.A**, **575.035.225.B**, **5C3.035.552**, **5C3.035.552.A**, **5C3.035.552.B**, **5C5.035.552**, **5C5.035.552.A**, **5C5.035.552.B**, **5E6.035.577**, **5E6.035.577.A**, **5E6.035.577.B**, **5E7.035.577**, **5E7.035.577.A**, **5E7.035.577.B**, **5G9.035.577**, **5G9.035.577.A**, **5G9.035.577.B**, **5G9.035.577.G**, **5G9.035.577.H**, **5G9.035.577.J**, **5G9.035.577.K**, **5L0.035.501.A**, **5L7.035.577.A**, **5L7.035.577**, **5L7.035.577.B**, **5L7.035.577.T**, **5N7.035.577.A**, **5N7.035.577.E**, **5N7.035.577.F**, **5N7.035.577**, **57L.035.577.S**	XX
6C0.035.501, **6C0.035.501.A**, **6C0.035.501.C**, **6C0.035.501.D**, **6C0.035.501.G**, **6C0.035.501.J**, **6C0.035.501.N**, **6C0.035.501.P**, **6C0.035.501.Q**, **6R0.035.501**, **6R0.035.501.A**, **6R0.035.501.C**, **6R0.035.501.D**, **6R0.035.501.F**, **6R0.035.501.L**, **760.035.577**, **760.035.577.A**, **760.035.577.S**, **760.035.577.T**, **7C0.035.501**, **7C0.035.501.C**, **7C0.035.501.D**, **7C0.035.501.F**, **7C0.035.501.G**, **7H0.035.507.E**, **7P6.035.552**, **7P6.035.552.A**, **7P6.035.552.M**, **8S7.035.503.B**	XX
920446A, **920554A**, **920611A**, **920639A**, **920627A**, **920627B**, **SAA-101**, **SAA-102**, **SAA-103**, **SAA-104**, **SAA-105**, **SAA-106**, **SAA-107**, **SAA-108**, **SAA-109**, **SAA-110**, **SAA-111**, **SAA-112**, **5G-NRC-EU**, **5G-NRC-CN**,**5G Compenser**,	XX

Aerials:

DSRC CAN Module / EFAS-4 DU (200046-8), **DSRC CAN Module / EFAS-4 DU (200046-9)**	AM
RAN-102, **RAN-103**, **RAN-104**, **RAN-105**, **RAN-106**, **RAN-107**, **RAN-108**, **RAN-109**, **RAN-110**, **RAN-111**, **RAN-112**	XX
, **3789.01**, **754xxxx**, **76xxxxx**, **77xxxxx**, **790xxxx**, **7540xxx**, **7542xxx**	XX
1K8.035.552.C, **1K8.035.552.F**, **2GC.035.577**, **2GC.035.577.A**, **2GC.035.577.S**	XX
5Q0.035.507.A, **5Q0.035.507.B**, **5Q0.035.507.C**	XX
6R0.035.501.F	XX

If not otherwise stated, the specifications apply to all Volkswagen models or to vehicles that are equipped with the respective radio system.

In certain countries, the activation of, or permission to use, radio technology may be restricted, not possible, or only possible when additional requirements have been fulfilled.

Referenced radio systems (e.g. AA) *(→ Radio Equipment Directive (RED))*.

Frequency band.

Maximum transmission power.

µW = Microwatt, mW = Milliwatt, W = Watt.

AA	110 kHz – 205 kHz	15 W

AB	116 kHz – 134 kHz	148,70 dBµV/m
AC	125 kHz +/- 10 kHz	5,4 dBµA/m
AD	125 kHz	40 dBµA/m
AE	13,56 MHz	500 mW 65.81 dBV/m (PK)
AF	LF 125 kHz	
	UHF 433,05 MHz – 434,79 MHz 433,92 MHz 315 MHz 433,05 MHz – 434,79 MHz	0,1(ERP) mW / -10dBm (ERP) 0,15 mW (EIRP) 0,05(EIRP) mW / -13 dBm (EIRP) 80,8 dBµA/m @ 3m (Ave.)
	UWB 6520 MHz 6988,8 MHz 7040 MHz 7488,0 MHz 7560 MHz	1 mW (EIRP) / 0dBm (EIRP) Mean Power Spec. Dens: -41,3 dBm / MHz (EIRP)
AG	433,92 MHz	10 mW
AH	433,92 MHz, 434,42 MHz	5 dBm EIRP
AI	434,79 MHz	25 mW
AJ	433,47 MHz – 434,37 MHz	-17 dBm
	868,00 MHz – 868,60 MHz	-17 dBm
AK	868,0 MHz – 869,2 MHz	25 mW
AL	2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz	10 mW
AM	5795 MHz – 5815 MHz (DSRC)	0,04 mW
AN	5855 MHz – 5925 MHz	2 W EIRP
AO	6,0 GHz – 8,5 GHz (6,52 GHz, 7,04 GHz, 7,56 GHz) BLE: 2402-2480 MHz UWB: Ch5: 6489.6 MHz CH6: 6988.8 MHz Ch8: 7488.0 MHz Ch9: 7987.2 MHz	9.9 dBm EIRP -0.75 dBM EIRP
AP	24,05 GHz – 24,25 GHz	0,05 W
AQ	24,075 GHz – 24,250 GHz	15,1 dBm EIRP
AR	76,0 GHz – 77,0 GHz	25 dBm EIRP 0,35 W
AS	GSM 900 (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz / downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz)	2 W
	GSM 1800 (uplink: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 MHz – 1880 MHz)	1 W

	WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920 MHz – 1990 MHz / downlink: 2110 MHz – 2170 MHz)	0,25 W
	WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz / downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz)	0,25 W
AT	5,795 GHz – 5,815 GHz (DSRC) 1599 MHz – 1610 MHz (GNSS)	-19,9 dBm EIRP
AU	WCDMA Band 1: 1922,4 MHz – 1977,6 MHz, WCDMA Band 3: 1712,4 MHz – 1782,6 MHz, WCDMA Band 8: 882,4 MHz – 912,6 MHz	23.5dBm +2.2 / -2.7dB
AU	LTE Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz, LTE Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz, LTE Band 7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz, LTE Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz, LTE Band 20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz, LTE Band 28: 703 MHz – 718 MHz, LTE Band 32: 1452 MHz –1496 MHz	23 dBm ± 2dB
AU	GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz DCS 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz GNSS: 1559 MHz –1610 MHz Offline	33 dBm ± 2dB 30 dBm ± 2dB -- --
AU (China)	889-915MHz 1710-1750MHz / 1880-1900MHz 2010-2025MHz/1940-1965MHz 909-915MHz/1880-1915MHz 2300-2370MHz 2575-2635MHz/1920-1965MHz 1710-1780MHz 909-915MHz 824-835MHz	33/30dBm ± 2dB 24dBm +1.7 / -3.7dB 23dBm ± 2.7dB
AV	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	13 dBm
	WLAN 2.4 GHz: 2412 MHz – 2480 MHz	20 dBm
	WLAN 5 GHz: 5725 MHz – 5850 MHz	14dBm
AW	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	6,9 dBm
	WLAN 2.4 GHz: 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz, WLAN 5 GHz: 5150 MHz – 5250 MHz, WLAN 5 GHz: 5725 MHz – 5850 MHz	18,52 dBm
AX	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	2,30 dBm EIRP
	GNSS: 1559 MHz – 1610 MHz	--
	WLAN 2.4 GHz: 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz, WLAN 5 GHz: 5150 MHz – 5250 MHz, WLAN 5 GHz: 5725 MHz – 5850 MHz	16,80 dBm EIRP
AY	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	8,94 dBm EIRP
	WLAN 2.4 GHz: 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz, WLAN 5 GHz: 5745 MHz – 5825 MHz	16,63 dBm EIRP
AZ	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	4,63 dBm EIRP
	WLAN 2.4 GHz: 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz	17,70 dBm EIRP
BA	Bluetooth: 2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz	4,9 dBm EIRP
	WLAN 2.4 GHz: 2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz, WLAN 5 GHz: 5150 MHz – 5250 MHz, WLAN 5 GHz: 5725 MHz – 5850 MHz	13,8 dBm EIRP
BB	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	0,9 dBm EIRP

	WLAN: 2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz	8 dBm EIRP
	GSM: 900/1800 MHz	27 dBm EIRP
	UMTS FDDI/III	24 dBm EIRP
	LTE FDD 3, 7, 8, 20	23 dBm EIRP
BC	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	10 dBm EIRP
	WLAN: 2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz	20 dBm EIRP
BC	GSM 900 (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz / downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz)	33 dBm EIRP
	GSM 1800 (uplink: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 MHz – 1880 MHz)	30 dBm EIRP
BC	WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 MHz – 2170 MHz)	24 dBm EIRP
	WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz / downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz)	24 dBm EIRP
BC	LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 MHz – 2170 MHz)	23 dBm EIRP
	LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710 MHz –1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 MHz – 1880 MHz)	23 dBm EIRP
	LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz / downlink: 2620 MHz – 2690 MHz)	23 dBm EIRP
	LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz / downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz)	23 dBm EIRP
	LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832 MHz – 862 MHz / downlink: 791 MHz – 821 MHz)	23 dBm EIRP
BD	LTE Band 1: 2100 MHz, LTE Band 3: 1800 MHz, LTE Band 5: 850 MHz, LTE Band 7: 2600 MHz, LTE Band 8: 900 MHz, LTE Band 20: 800 MHz	23 dBm
BD	UMTS Band 1: 2100 MHz , UMTS Band 2: 1900 MHz, UMTS Band 5: 850 MHz, UMTS Band 8: 900 MHz	24 dBm
BD	GSM: 850 MHz, E-GSM: 900 MHz	33 dBm
	DCS: 1800 MHz, PCS: 1900 MHz	30 dBm
	BLE: 2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz	3,5 dBm
	WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 MHz – 2170 MHz)	30 dBm
BE	125 kHz	0,56 W
BF	Bluetooth: 2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz	20 dBm
	GSM/GPRS: 880,2 MHz –914,8 MHz	33 dBm
	GSM/GPRS: 1710,2 MHz –1784,8 MHz	30 dBm
	WCDMA Band 1: 1922,4 MHz – 1977,6 MHz, WCDMA Band 8: 882,4 MHz – 912,6 MHz	24 dBm
BG	Bluetooth: 2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz	4 dBm EIRP
	WLAN: 2400 MHz – 2483,5 MHz	19 dBm EIRP
BH	21,13 kHz – 22,75 kHz	42 dBµA/m
BI	GSM 850 (uplink: 824 MHz – 849 MHz / downlink: 869 MHz – 894 MHz)	2 W
	GSM 900 (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz / downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz)	2 W
	GSM 1800 (uplink: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 MHz – 1880 MHz)	1 W
	GSM 1900 (uplink: 1850 MHz – 1910 MHz / downlink: 1930 MHz – 1990 MHz)	1 W
	WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 MHz – 2170 MHz)	0,25 W
	WCDMA FDDV (uplink: 824 MHz – 849 MHz / downlink: 869 MHz – 894 MHz)	0,25 W
	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	0,001 W

	WLAN: 2412 MHz – 2462 MHz	0,1 W
BJ	WiFi IEEE 802.11 b/g/n: 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz	18,4 dBm EIRP
	GSM/GPRS/eGPRS 900: 880,2 MHz – 914,8 MHz	37,64 dBm EIRP
	GSM/GPRS/eGPRS 1800: 1710,2 MHz – 1784,8 MHz	34,64 dBm EIRP
	UMTS FDDI: 1922,4 MHz – 1977,6 MHz, UMTS FDDVIII: 882,4 MHz – 912,6 MHz, LTE FDD1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz, LTE FDD3: 1710 MHz – 1784,9 MHz, LTE FDD7: 2500 MHz – 2569,9 MHz, LTE FDD8: 880 MHz – 914,9 MHz, LTE FDD20: 832 MHz – 861,9 MHz	27,84 dBm EIRP
BK	13,56 MHz	500 mW
BL	5855 MHz – 5925 MHz	24 dBm EIRP
BM	Bluetooth: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	9,7 dBm EIRP
	Bluetooth LE: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	-1,5 dBm EIRP
	WLAN: 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz	13,3 dBm EIRP 12,7 dBm EIRP 33 dBm rated 30 dBm rated 23 dBm rated 24 dBm rated
	WLAN: 5745 MHz – 5825 MHz	12,7 dBm EIRP
	GSM 900: 880 MHz – 960 MHz	33 dBm rated
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz – 1880 MHz	30 dBm rated
	LTE FDD Band 1, 3, 7, 8, 20, 28, 34, 38, 40	23 dBm rated
	WCDMA Band I: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz, 2110 MHz – 2170 MHz, WCDMA Band III: 1710 MHz – 1880 MHz, WCDMA Band VIII: 880 MHz – 960 MHz	24 dBm rated
BN	60 - 63,2 GHz	6 dBm (3.98 mW)
BO	6,0 GHz – 8,0 GHz)	-30 dBm
	2402 - 2483.5 MHz	-30 dBm
BP	24.2 GHz	20 dBm EIRP (Peak)
BQ	6.000 - 8.500 MHz	-57,73dBm
	433,47 - 434,37 MHz	5248 - 7328 µV/m
XX	No transmission, only reception.	

Argentina

C-8752, **C-13277**, **C-13393**, **C-13823**, **C-14175**, **C-14176**, **C-14387**, **C-14451**, **C-14520**, **C-14569**, **C-14733**, **C-15807**, **C-16345**, **C-16741**, **C-17001**, **C-17582**, **C-17583**, **C-17604**, **C-17629**, **C-17985**, **C-18005**, **C-18053**, **C-20030**, **C-20288**, **C-20323**, **C-21672**, **C-21673**, **C-21797**, **C-21798**, **C-22036**, **C-22394**, **C-23301**, **C-23466**, **C-23776**, **C-24233**, **C-24447**,

H-12657, **H-12663**, **H-12664**, **H-12665**, **H-12689**, **H-12804**, **H-15700**, **H-16681**, **H-17001**, **H-17562**, **H-17563**, **H-17567**, **H-17568**, **H-17708**, **H-20369**, **H-20370**, **H-20497**, **H-20718**, **H-20731**, **H-20732**, **H-20733**, **H-21049**, **H-21050**, **H-21796**, **H-21961**, **H-21962**, **H-22190**, **H-22191**, **H-22192**, **H-22240**, **H-22301**, **H-22302**, **H-22362**, **H-22363**,

CNC **H-22364**, CNC **H-22377**, CNC **H-22378**, CNC **H-22379**, CNC **H-22380**, CNC **H-22381**, CNC **H-22382**, CNC **H-22383**, CNC **H-22390**, CNC **H-22391**, CNC **H-22383**, CNC **H-22524**, CNC **H-22757**, CNC **H-22793**, CNC **H-22794**, CNC **H-22855**, CNC **H-22856**, CNC **H-22961**, CNC **H-23129**, CNC **H-23480**, CNC **H-23481**, CNC **H-23844**, CNC **H-24102**, CNC **H-24153**, CNC **H-24224**, CNC **H-24258**, CNC **H-24260**, CNC **H-24261**, CNC **H-24361**, CNC **H-24442**, CNC **H-24469**, CNC **H-24470**, CNC **H-24559**, CNC **H-24598**, CNC **H-24623**, CNC **H-24820**, CNC **H-24892**, CNC **H-24931**, CNC **H-14349**.

R! **C-17908**, R! **H-21901**, R! **H-21902**, R! **C-22292**, R! **H-26251**,R! **H-27278**,R! **C-26978**,R! **C-22036**,R! **H-27598**,R! **H-27726**,R! **H-22390**,R! **H-22391**,R! **H-22794**,R! **H-22793**,R! **C-15806**,R! **C-15807**,R! **H-22757**,R! **H-27976**,R! **C-23301**,R! **C-23466**, R! **H-23129**, R! **H-27923**, R! **H-15700**, R! **H-22961**, R! **C-23301**, R! **C-23466**, R! **H-24102**, R! **H-16681**, R! **H-24262**, R! **H-24260**, R! **H-24258**, R! **H-24470**, R! **H-24469**, R! **H-24442**, R! **H-28829**, R! **H-28830**, R! **H-24261**, R! **H-25893**, R! **H-27977**, R! **H-29401**, R!**H-17568**, R!**H-24892**, R!**H-17563**, R!**H-17567**, R!**H-17562**, R! **C-25101**, R! **C-25102**, R! **H-12804**, R! **H-21050**, R! **H-24931**, R! **H-20030**, R! **H-28774**, R! **H-28773**, R! **H-21050**, R! **C-21673**, R! **C-21672**, R! **H-28773**, R! **C-25803**, R! **H-25531**, R! **C-17604**, R! **C-30067**, R! **H-30374**, R! **H-28912**, R! **H-27594**, R! **H-29168**, R! **H-29314**, R! **H-29107**, R! **H-26251**, R! **H-21901**R! **H-30781**, R! **H-21902**, R! **H-21797**, R! **H-21798**

Benin

AGREE PAR L'ARCEP BENIN

Numéro d'agrément_Date d'agrément:

016/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DR/GU/2021, **018/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, , **069/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **073/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **074/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **075/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DJPC/GU/2020**, **114/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2017**, **115/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2017**, **115/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **121/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **123/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **124/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **124/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **133/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **137/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **138/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **143/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **165/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **166/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **167/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **171/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/GU/2020**, **173/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **175/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **176/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **177/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **179/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **209/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **211/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2019**, **213/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **216/ARCEP/SE/DR/DAJRC/GU/2018**, **316/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/GU/2020**,**065/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/GU/2021**,**016/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/GU/2021**

2018-149/ARCEP/PT/DAJRC/GU, **2018-150/ARCEP/PT/DAJRC/GU**, **2020-274/ARCEP/PT/SE/DAF/DJPC/DAR/GU**, **2021-069/ARCEP/PT/SE/DAF/DJPC/DAR/GU**, **2021-097/ARCEP/PT/SE/DJPC/DAR/GU**, **2022-019/ARCEP/PT/DAJRC/GU**, **2022-286/ARCEP/PT/DAJRC/GU**, **2022-287/ARCEP/PT/DAJRC/GU**, **2023-034/ARCEP/PT/DJPC/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-075/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-072/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-088/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-118/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-137/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-176/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-180/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-183/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-181/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-182/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-184/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-345/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DCT/GU**, **2023-250/ARCEP/SE/DAR/DAR/GU**, **2023-072/ARCEP/SE/DJPC/DAR/GU**, **2023-283/ARCEP/SE/DAR/GU**, **2023-281/ARCEP/SE/DAR/GU**, **2023-284/ARCEP/SE/DAR/GU**, **2023-271/ARCEP/SE/DAR/GU**, **2024-231**, **2024-40**, **2023-317**

General information on the data

Brazil

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL - www.anatel.gov.br.

00716-15-03745, **00850-13-03745**, , **0939-14-2856**, **0940-14-2856**, **00231-20-09215**, **00716-15-03745**, **00720-19-05364**, **00939-19-06673**, **01094-17-03226**, **01095-17-03226**, **01138-12-02856**, **01140-12-02856**, **01202-15-06815**, **01618-20-02149**, **01760-20-02149**, **01812-19-05364**, **01813-19-05364**, **01814-19-05364**, **01834-18-02856**, **02018-18-04557**, **02144-17-03430**, **02294-15-03616**, **02318-12-02856**, **02393-19-05364**, **02450-17-02010**, **02452-17-02010**, **02992-14-06673**, **03002-09-03745**, **03080-14-06828**, **03184-18-05364**, **03323-18-02930**, **03563-17-05364**, **03604-16-05364**,

Vehicle identification number

03764-17-05386, 03833-18-06353, 03834-18-06353,
03993-19-10188, 04057-14-06068, 04282-19-01925,
04383-18-06673, 04708-15-05364, 04998-19-02405,
04999-19-02405, 05273-18-02496, 05292-18-06353,
05293-18-06353, 05296-18-06353, 05297-18-06353,
05310-19-10188, 05505-18-06353, 05506-18-06353,
05507-18-06353, 05508-18-06353, 05509-18-06353,
05511-18-06353, 05512-18-06353, 05531-16-02149,
05674-16-06830, 05676-19-01925, 05803-21-03745,
06029-18-05364, 06215-16-03430, 06763-18-06353,
06950-18-10457, 06962-18-06353, 07084-18-03745,
07137-19-08137, 07183-18-06353, 07184-18-06353,
07185-18-06353, 07186-18-06353, 07188-18-06353,
07189-18-06353, 07191-18-06353, 07830-17-08001,
08057-19-05179, 09036-19-01925, 09087-19-07978,
09275-19-06353, 10313-20-06353, 12001-20-10944,
13806-20-09215, 00533-22-03745, 05310-19-10188,
11718-22-05364, 11502-22-05364, 05507-18-06353,
11718-22-05364, 11502-22-05364, 01812-19-05364,
MT-6270/2022_20/12/2024, MT-6272/2022_20/12/2024,
21404-22-05364_28/12/2024, 04721-22-10743_04/04/2024,
04721-22-10743_04/04/2024 00082026_04/01/2022,
00085600_01/07/2021, 00086092_23/10/2020,
00089079_01/07/2021, 00092837_16/03/2021,
00098955_27/08/2018, 00116286_03/12/2021,
00124518_10/07/2020, 00124917_25/07/2018,
00125904_21/07/2020, 00126531_21/01/2021,
00128334_12/05/2021, 00129984_22/06/2021,
00130938_09/04/2021, 00133577_02/08/2021,
00082026_30/03/2024, 00109958_25/02/2024,
00125904_13/08/2024, 00131951_15/07/2024,
00132029_15/07/2024, 00133688_13/10/2023,
00134339_21/12/2023, 00082026_20/03/2024,
00137672_05/06/2024, 00137375_16/04/2024,
00137362_16/04/2024, 00138092_29/05/2024,
00124518_31/07/2024, 00124971_25/07/2024 ,
00109958_25/02/2024, 00131951_15/07/2024,
00132029_15/07/2024 Versys2293_25/06/2021,
Versys2331_25/02/2021, Versys2433_28/11/2019,
Versys2504_06/12/2019, Versys3054_13/12/2023,
Versys3083_19/01/2024, Versys3086_13/02/2024,
Versys3085_10/02/2024, Versys2293_17/07/2025,
Versys2331_23/05/2024, Versys2181_05/10/2024,
Versys3167_07/07/2024, Versys2259_21/03/2023,
Versys2227_19/03/2023, Versys2574_06/09/2024,
Versys3257_09/10/2024, Versys3258_09/10/2024,
Versys3259_09/10/2024, Versys3262_09/10/2024,
Versys3261_17/10/2024, Versys3260_09/10/2024,
Versys3266_09/10/2024, Versys3269_09/10/2024,
Versys3268_09/10/2024, Versys3264_09/10/2024,
Versys3263_09/10/2024, Versys3270_09/10/2024,
Versys3275_10/10/2024, Versys3272_10/10/2024,
Versys3278_17/10/2024, Versys3271_09/10/2024,
Versys3273_09/10/2024, Versys3274_09/10/2024,
Versys3276_09/10/2024, Versys3241_09/11/2024,
Versys3241_24/11/2024, Versys3277_09/10/2024,

Versys3267_09/10/2024, Versys3265_09/10/2024, Versys2434_19/07/2023, Versys3889_13/08/2024, Versys2259_21/03/2025, Versys2442_22/02/2025, Versys2890_15/12/2024, Versys2989_01/08/2025, Versys4241_27/12/2024, Versys3022_14/10/2025, Versys3889_13/08/2026, Versys4627_17/06/2026, Versys2181_05/10/2026, Versys4570_01/07/2026, Versys4016_11/05/2025

0148-15-7978, 0263-16-9946, 0278-15-7978, 0456-15-9946, 0646-13-5452, 0716-15-3745, 0850-13-3745, 0918-14-5364, 1140-14-2856, 1202-14-6815, 1497-14-9946, 1498-14-9946, 1546-10-2886, 1690-15-5364, 1711-12-5364, 2115-15-6815, 2220-14-3745, 2230-14-3745, 2294-15-3616, 2483-14-6324, 3002-09-3745, 3080-14-6828, 3557-15-5364, 4057-14-6068, 02128-16-05364, 02530-16-09946, 03323-18-02930, 05531-16-02149, 05674-15-06830, 05674-16-06830, 07084-18-03745, 17186-20-10539, 00278-15-07978, 05676-19-01925, 14707-21-01925, 08795-23-01925, 08004-23-09215, 11743-23-07978 UL-BR 17.0958, MT-4903/2020_29/04/2024, MT-6015/2022_06/08/2024, MT-6112/2022_26/10/2024, MT-6109/2022_04/02/2025, MT-5040/2020_17/09/2024, MT-6123/2022_09/10/2024, MT-6294/2022_17/01/2025, MT-6412/2023_12/04/2025, MT-6452/2023_14/06/2025, MT-6401/2023_12/04/2025, NCC10909/14, NCC10809/14, DEKRA-00025-22, DKTEL-00198-23_05/02/2025, UL-BR 23.0140_03/07/2025, UL-BR 23.1314_08/09/2025, UL-BR 23.1378_27/11/2025 UL-BR23.1707_04/12/2025, BRC-24.2893_14/10/2026, MT-3003/2014_22/08/2026, BRC-23.1869_22/06/2025, 20117-23-10187_07/02/2026, UL-BR 24.0099_07/02/2026, CPQD11808_19/04/2026, 05213-24-03798_10/05/2026, MT-6842/2024_31/07/2026, MT-6870/2024_15/07/2026, 07084-18-03745_05/10/2026, MT-6869/2024_15/07/2026, 05602-24-10457_02/07/2026, MT-6828/2024_05/06/2026, 01711-12-05364_23/07/2026 .

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL- www.anatel.gov.br

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL- www.anatel.gov.br

10530-23-04457, 10531-23-04457, 10532-23-04457, 10537-23-04457, 10538-23-04457, 03131-24-04457, 00526-24-12217, 01898-24-12217, 01901-24-12217, 15772-23-12217, 15786-23-12217, 20316-23-15296

Position of the vehicle identification number

England, Wales and Scotland

Further information on radio systems and EU declarations of conformity can be found at www.volkswagen.com/generalinfo.

Countries that certify radio systems based on EU directives:

Further information on radio systems and EU declarations of conformity can be found at www.volkswagen.com/generalinfo.

Gabon

D'HOMOLOGATION D'EQUIPEMENTS DE TELECOMMUNICATIONS

CERTIFICAT No:

033/ARCEP/2021, **045/ARCEP/2020**, **070/ARCEP/2021**, **100/ARCEP/2019**, **112/ARCEP/2020**, **337/ARCEP/2020**, **369/ARCEP/2020**, **371/ARCEP/2020**, **419/ARCEP/2021**, **421/ARCEP/2021**, **433/ARCEP/2020**, **440/ARCEP/2019**, **441/ARCEP/2019**, **443/ARCEP/2019**, **444/ARCEP/2019**, **445/ARCEP/2019**, **446/ARCEP/2019**, **450/ARCEP/2019**, **452/ARCEP/2020**, **513/ARCEP/2019**, **554/ARCEP/2020**, **608/ARCEP/2019**, **609/ARCEP/2019**, **644/ARCEP/2021**, **645/ARCEP/2021**, **675/ARCEP/2021**, **697/ARCEP/2021**, **698/ARCEP/2021**, **865/ARCEP/2020**, **869/ARCEP/2020**, **885/ARCEP/2020**, **970/ARCEP/2020**, **1012/ARCEP/2020**, **1013/ARCEP/2020**, **1016/ARCEP/2021**, **1017/ARCEP/2020**, **1365/ARCEP/2021**, **699/ARCEP/2021**, **203/ARCEP/2022**, **044/ARCEP/2022**, **112/ARCEP/2022**, **096/ARCEP/2022**, **264/ARCEP/2022**, **263/ARCEP/2022**,
320/ARCEP/2022,**319/ARCEP/2022**,**531/ARCEP/2022**,**542/ARCEP/2022**,**535/ARCEP/2023**,**540/ARCEP/2022**, **95/ARCEP/2022**, **604/ARCEP/2022**, **602/ARCEP/2022**, **601/ARCEP/2022**, **600/ARCEP/2022**, **618/ARCEP/2022**, **642/ARCEP/2022**, **641/ARCEP/2022**, **640/ARCEP/2022**, **790/ARCEP/2022**, **890/ARCEP/2022**, **892/ARCEP/2022**, **891/ARCEP/2022**, **1031/ARCEP/2022**, **95/ARCEP/2023**, **103/ARCEP/2023**, **239/ARCEP/2023**, **446/ARCEP/2023**, **581/ARCEP/2023**, **105/ARCEP/2023**, **104/ARCEP/2023**, **966/ARCEP/2023**, **1005/ARCEP/2023**, **1002/ARCEP/2023**, **65/ARCEP/2024**, **74/ARCEP/2024**, **76/ARCEP/2024**, **145/ARCEP/2024**, **143/ARCEP/2024**, **144/ARCEP/2024**, **290/ARCEP/2024**, **625/ARCEP/2024**, **632/ARCEP/2024**, **631/ARCEP/2024**, **629/ARCEP/2024**, **628/ARCEP/2024**, **633/ARCEP/2024**, **866/ARCEP/2024**

Ghana

NCA Appoved: XXX-XX-XXX-XXX

BRE-1M-GE2-15A, **BR3-1M-GE2-X72**, **BR3-1M-GE2-X69**, **BR3-1M-GE2-080**, **BR3-1M-GE2-087**, **BR3-1M-GE2-088**, **BR3-1M-GE2-089**, **BR3-1M-GE2-09E**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0AF**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0BA**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0BB**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0BC**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0B0**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0B3**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0B4**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0B7**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0B8**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0D2**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0BA**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0BC**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0EC**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0ED**, **BR3-1M-GE2-0EE**, **BR3-1M-GE2-10A**, **BR3-1M-GE2-10B**, **BR3-1M-GE2-15A**, **BR3-1M-GE2-130**, **EX6-6M-GE2-17B**, **ORG-4H-7E3-X98**, **SRO-1M-7E4-2A9**, **SRO-1M-7EA-24B**, **SRO-1M-7E4-25D**, **SRO-1M-7E4-243**, **SRO-1M-7E4-244**, **SRO-1M-7E4-246**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-11B**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-19A**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-19C**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-X26**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-X43**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-X73**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-X75**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-X90**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-X92**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-X96**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-11B**, **ZR0-M8-7E3-20B**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-209**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-229**, **ZRO-M8-7E3-27B**, **ZRO-1H-7E3-14E**, **ZRO-1H-7E3-150**, **1R3-1M-7E1-0B7**, **1R3-1M-7E1-09B**, **1R3-1M-7E1-09C**, **1R3-1M-7E1-160**, **2R9-1H-7E0-xAC**, **2R9-1H-7E0-X71**, **2R9-1H-7E0-X75**, **2R9-1H-7EO-X90**, **2R9-1H-7E0-0DA**, **3R2-1M-7DF-287**, **3R2-1M-7DF-288**, **3R8-8M-7DF-2AA**, **6X6-4H-7EO-OF3**, **7E5-7M-X0B-RDR**, **7E5-7M-X24-RDR**, **7E5-7M-X43-RDR**, **7E5-7M-X47-RDR**, **7E5-7M-X74-RDR**, **7T6-5H-7DF-17F**, **7T6-5H-7DF-182**,**7E5-7M-101-RDR**,**7E5-7M-156-RDR**,**7E6-M1-X36-SRD**,**7E6-M1-XDC-SRD**,**7E6-M1-X0F-SRD**, **7E6-M1-X92-SRD**, **7E6-M1-XDC-SRD**, **7E6-M1-X0F-SRD**, **7E6-M1-216-SRD**, **7E6-SH-215-SRD**, **7E6-M1-12D-SRD**, **7M-7E7-X93-DSR**, **7M-7E7-X48-DSR**, **7E6-M1-12E-SRD**, **7E6-M1-12C-SRD**, **7M-7E7-XE7-DSR**, **7M-7E7-XA8-DSR**, **7E5-7M-151-RDR**, **7§6-M1-155-SRD**, **HS-7E7-X2B-DSR**, **7E5-7M-101-RDR**, **HS-7E7-X2B-DSR**, **IH-7E8-X65-TIH**, **HS-7E7-173-DSR**, **7M-7E7-XF0-DSR**, **7M-7E7-109-DSR**, **7M-7E7-XE3-DSR**, **7M-7E7-XR1-DSR**.

Type plate

Indonesia

⚠ Dilarang melakukan perubahan spesifikasi yang dapat menimbulkan gangguan fisik dan/atau elektromagnetik terhadap lingkungan sekitarnya.

- 57027/SDPPI/2018, PLG ID: 7696
- 57059/SDPPI/2018, PLG ID: 7696
- 60924/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334
- 61642/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334
- 61855/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334
- 61981/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334
- 62361/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 8837
- 62404/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334
- 64520/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334
- 67149/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 4334
- 67359/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 4334
- 67495/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 4334
- 67512/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 4334
- 69516/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 4334
- 72556/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 72557/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 72770/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 72586/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 72663/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 72823/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 73094/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 73489/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 73588/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 73580/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 74117/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334

- 74303/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 74436/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 74699/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 74700/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 75294/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 76052/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 77146/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 77225/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334
- 77384/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 77920/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 78452/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 80130/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 80858/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 82116/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 82926/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 82886/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 81094/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 81032/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 80846/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 84481/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 83130/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 83196/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 83332/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 84482/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85458/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 84957/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85672/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334

- 85926/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85731/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 86720/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85361/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85477/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85694/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 86721/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85688/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 86719/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85691/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85499/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85243/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85240/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85365/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85245/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85198/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85197/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85201/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85373/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85687/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 86618/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85689/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 86619/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 85693/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 86620/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334
- 88081/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334

82953/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334

86178/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334

88081/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

82006/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334

88081/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

82007/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334

89688/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

89689/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

89700/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

87909/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

92017/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

92503/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

92503/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

92503/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

95274/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

95470/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334

96584/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

96726/SDPPI&2024, PLG ID: 4334

97530/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

97855/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

97856/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

97857/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

97858/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 98493/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 101210/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 99621/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 99622/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 99623/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 98574/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 99025/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 99387/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

 101934/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334

, **67688/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 3813**, **67930/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 3813**, **67931/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 3813**, **74369/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 3813**, **74998/SDPPI/2021, PLD ID: 10325**.

PLG ID: 4334: **39689/SDPPI/2015**, **58849/SDPPI/2018**, **60544/SDPPI/2019**, **62443/SDPPI/2019**, **62637/SDPPI/2019**, **62638/SDPPI/2019**, **62825/SDPPI/2019**, **62826/SDPPI/2019**, **62827/SDPPI/2019**, **62828/SDPPI/2019**, **62957/SDPPI/2019**, **62958/SDPPI/2019**, **63076/SDPPI/2019**, **63077/SDPPI/2019**, **63078/SDPPI/2019**, **63079/SDPPI/2019**, **63080/SDPPI/2019**, **63081/SDPPI/2019**, **63082/SDPPI/2019**, **63128/SDPPI/2019**, **63129/SDPPI/2019**, **63130/SDPPI/2019**, **63131/SDPPI/2019**, **63132/SDPPI/2019**, **63133/SDPPI/2019**, **63134/SDPPI/2019**, **63135/SDPPI/2019**, **63136/SDPPI/2019**, **63137/SDPPI/2019**, **63138/SDPPI/2019**, **63139/SDPPI/2019**, **63140/SDPPI/2019**, **63147/SDPPI/2019**, **63160/SDPPI/2019**, **63161/SDPPI/2019**, **63162/SDPPI/2019**, **63286/SDPPI/2019**, **63577/SDPPI/2019**, **63578/SDPPI/2019**, **63579/SDPPI/2019**, **63580/SDPPI/2019**, **63581/SDPPI/2019**, **63582/SDPPI/2019**, **63583/SDPPI/2019**, **64515/SDPPI/2019**, **64516/SDPPI/2019**, **64639/SDPPI/2019**, **64640/SDPPI/2019**, **66006/SDPPI/2020**, **66074/SDPPI/2020**, **66603/SDPPI/2020**, **67154/SDPPI/2020**, **68316/SDPPI/2020**, **71563/SDPPI/2020**, **71835/SDPPI/2020**, **72274/SDPPI/2020**, **73488/SDPPI/2021**, **73816/SDPPI/2021**, **73954/SDPPI/2021**, **74360/SDPPI/2021**, **74525/SDPPI/2021**, **74928/SDPPI/2021**, **75296/SDPPI/2021**, **76862/SDPPI/2021**, **76974/SDPPI/2021**, **77920/SDPPI/2021**, **78452/SDPPI/2021**, **80130/SDPPI/2022**, **80858/SDPPI/2022**, **82116/SDPPI/2022**,**80846/SDPPI/2022**,**81032/SDPPI/2022**,**81094/SDPPI/2022**,**82886/SDPPI/2022**,**82926/SDPPI/2022**, **74998/SDPPI/2022**.

Israel

MoC:

11-12320, **51-07681**, **51-10011**, **51-10360**, **51-10361**, **51-37428**, **51-41889**, **51-42830**, **51-42841**, **51-43949**, **51-46980**, **51-47851**, **51-54730**, **51-55347**, **51-57375**, **51-63653**, **51-64296**, **51-65008**, **51-65009**, **51-65839**, **51-65860**, **51-65909**, **51-65953**, **51-66171**, **51-66172**, **51-66173**, **51-66259**, **51-66383**, **51-66390**, **51-66415**, **51-66601**, **51-66602**, **51-69416**, **51-69417**, **51-70460**, **51-70461**,

51-71498, **51-71601**, **51-73078**, **51-73720**, **51-74243**, **51-74291**, **51-74339**, **51-74361**, **51-74441**, **51-74442**, **51-74443**, **51-74356**, **51-74537**, **51-74636**, **51-74989**, **51-75000**, **51-75054**, **51-74632**, **51-74633**, **51-74634**, **51-74635**, **51-74636**, **51-74896**, **51-74989**, **51-75000**, **51-75054**, **51-75515**, **51-76029**, **51-76422**, **51-76971**, **51-77001**, **51-77882**, **51-80024**, **51-81786**, **51-81807**, **51-82314**, **55-02626**, **55-06864**, **55-06893**, **55-06894**, **55-07102**, **55-07460**, **55-07477**, **55-07480**, **55-07680**, **55-07681**, **55-07789**, **55-08250**, **55-08456**, **55-08739**, **55-08803**, **55-09135**, **55-09396**, **55-09600**, **55-09601**, **55-09617**, **55-09618**, **55-09683**, **55-10011**, **55-10360**, **55-10361**, **55-10614**, **55-11599**, **63-63304**, **63-66687**, **63-67691**, **63-67736**,**63-67180**,**63-73362**,**63-67180**,**63-73361**,**63-71587**,**11-12330**,**63-70375**, **51-90346**, **55-13788**, **55-13787**, **55-13785**, **55-13789**, **55-13786**, **55-13903**, **55-13946**, **55-13947**, **55-13949**, **55-13947**, **55-13951**, **55-14175**, **55-14172**, **55-14187**, **55-14188**, **51-87213**, **55-14395**, **55-14410**, **55-14409**, **51-888032**, **55-14866**, **55-14888**, **51-88306**, **51-88548**, **51-88870**, **51-89881**, **11-11252**, **51-89766**, **51-89882**, **51-89883**, **55-15760**, **55-15761**, **51-91118**, **51-91119**, **51-91460**, **51-88548**, **55-12193**, **55-12326**, **55-10408**, **51-91756**, **51-92318**, **51-92728**, **55-16701**, **51-93926**, **51-93201**, **51-93487**, **51-95837**, **51-95140**, **51-96151**, **51-96511**, **51-96450**, **51-96575**, **51-96572**, **51-96573**, **51-96570**, **51-96571**, **51-96574**, **51-97056**, **55-17931**, **51-97313**, **51-97311**, **51-97312**, **51-97316**, **51-97641**, **51-97647**, **51-97644**, **51-88746**, **51-88751**, **51-96151**, **51-91527**; **11-11252**, **51-99873**, **51-99874**, **51-99051**, **51-97822**, **51-97824**, **56-02588**, **56-02269** , **HCTIMP_SI62368.42656**, **HCTIMP_SI62368.42673**, **LT-0083880B**, **LT-0066086**, **51-95205**, **51-95207**, **56-03326**, **56-03771**, **56-04442**, **56-04676**, **56-04677**, **56-05232**, **56-05342**, **56-05341**, **56-05340**, **56-05458**, **56-05909**, **56-05984**, **56-06240**, **56-06239**, **56-06691**, **56-02588**, **56-02972**

הוראות בטיחות

1. להתקנה על ידי אנשי שירות מוסמכים בלבד.

2. אין לבצע שינויים כלשהם במוצר זה. לשינויים אלו יכולה להיות השפעה שלילית על ביצועי המוצר, בטיחותו ועמידותו ובנוסף, יש בהם כדי לחרוג מתנאי האחריות.

חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר , ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה , החלפת אנטנה מקורי ת או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית , בלא קבל ת אישור משרד התקשורת , בש ל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות .

אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Jamaica

This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica:

SMA Equipment Identifier:

FR5CUEC, **RS5.3**, **MQBS01**, **TSSRE4Uf**, **TSSSG4G5b**, **WPC003-1**, **Medium 5C_21**, **TSSRE4Td**, **FPK8 IMMO5D**, **CB2JCIBUSHL4**, **LTE-MBC-NAR2**, **TLVHM3IU-W**, **LTE-MBC-NAR2**, **LTE-MBC-NARTSSSG4G4**, **TSSTSc**, **TLAHW3IU-W**, **FS14T and FS14TK**, **WCH-186**, **WCH-185**, **WCH-183**, **17101031**, **CONBOX-HIGH**, **MQB3 OI**, **MEDIUM 5C & COLOUR 5C**, **17101023**, **17101022**, **17101032**, **17101043**, **17101041**, **18020534**, **ARS5-B**, **18020534**, **TSSRE4A**, **VK2**, **VW MIB2 Entry**, **MIB GLOBAL STANDARD PLUS**, **RS4**, **18020534**, **5WK50257/254/252/250/248/40398036/40406557/4038279**, **FS94**, **FS09**,**VW India 2.0 Low Radio**,**VW MIB Regio**,**F5CP42**, **MQBS01**, **WPC003-5**, **WPC003-1**, **MQBS01**, **BR22**, **FPK8I5DTR2**, **TLVUM3IU-W**, **TLVUW3IU-W**, **FS19S**, **FS191S**, **TLVUW3IU-W**, **TLVUM3IU-W**, **WCH-304**, **UWBtrx22**, **UWBBLE22**, **MIB3 OI**, **MIB3 OI VR-E**, **MIB3GP**, **HFA30**, **MIB3 EI GP MQBevo**, **TKCMOD11000W**

Jordan

TRC no.:

TRC/LPD/2010/91, **TRC/LPD/2014/9**, **TRC/LPD/2014/186**, **TRC/LPD/2014/214**, **TRC/LPD/2014/241**, **TRC/LPD/2014/248**, **TRC/LPD/2014/258**, **TRC/LPD/2014/274**, **TRC/LPD/2015/387**, **TRC/LPD/2016/170**, **TRC/LPD/2016/215**, **TRC/LPD/2016/216**, **TRC/LPD/2016/252**, **TRC/LPD/2016/353**, **TRC/LPD/2016/478**, **TRC/LPD/2016/538**, **TRC/LPD/2016/584**, **TRC/LPD/2016/591**, **TRC/LPD/2017/63**, **TRC/LPD/2017/254**, **TRC/LPD/2018/1**, **TRC/LPD/2018/128**, **TRC/LPD/2018/162**, **TRC/LPD/2018/193**, **TRC/LPD/2018/228**, **TRC/LPD/2018/272**, **TRC/LPD/2018/274**, **TRC/LPD/2018/381**, **TRC/LPD/2018/399**, **TRC/LPD/2018/489**, **TRC/LPD/2018/528**, **TRC/LPD/2018/529**, **TRC/LPD/2019/67**, **TRC/LPD/2019/152**, **TRC/LPD/2019/153**, **TRC/LPD/2019/155**, **TRC/LPD/2019/227**, **TRC/LPD/2019/233**, **TRC/LPD/2019/234**, **TRC/LPD/2021/215**.

TRC/SS/2010/48, **TRC/SS/2014/127**, **TRC/SS/2015/221**, **TRC/SS/2015/222**, **TRC/SS/2016/476**, **TRC/SS/2019/212**, **TRC/31/7615/2020**, **TRC/31/5862/2022**, **TRC/32/6684/2023**, **TRC/31/11434/2023**, **TRC/31/11517/2023**, **TRC/34/6696/2023**, **TRC/31/11516/2023**, **TRC/31/9121/2021**, **TRC/34/12409/2023**, **TRC/36/7651/2022**, **TRC/31/712/2020**, **TRC/34/13027/2023**, **TRC/32/7603/2020**, **TRC/32/7604/2020**, **TRC/34/10235/2022**, **TRC/34/14044/2024**, **TRC/35/1922/2024**, **TRC/34/13799/2024**, **TRC/34/13604/2024**.

TRC No.: T/4/11/11/... , **0354**, **1200**, **2394**, , , **2950**, **3338**, **3339**, **3474**, **3502**, **3506**, **3512**, **3641**, **3680**, **3681**, , **4215**, **4350**, **4352**, **4387**, **4549**, **4554**, **4555**, **5616**, **5621**, **5649**, **5653**, **5896**, **5898**, **5974**, **5976**, **5977**, **6082**, **6435**, **7192**, **7216**, **7218**, **7716**, **7777**, **8007**, **8163**, **8164**, **8205**, **8225**, **8226**, **8227**, **8230**, **8278**, **8281**, , **8677**, **8680**, **8793**, **8910**, **9184**, **9229**, **9236**, **9351**, **9352**, **9585**, **9851**, **10124**, **10354**, **10488**, **10752**, **10753**, **11026**, **11078**,
12260,**194200**,**1199**,**2950**,**3512**,4215,**5397**,**5739**,**8102**,**9215**,**9217**,**932**,**2517**,**2612**,**2609**,**2608**, **258**, **382**, **9177**, **9343**, **976**, **1142**, **1417**, **1626**, **1748**, **2498**, **2855**, **2854**, **2912**, **3097**, **3196**, **3248**, **3391**, **3392**, **3658**, **3731**, **4537**, **3820**, **4099**, **4087**, **4100**, **4423**, **4422**, **4586**, **5159**, **5200**, **4099**, **5318**, **5365**, **5874**, **5872**, **5875**, **7103**, **7042**, **7068**, **7067**, **7045**, **7710**, **7814**, **11932**, **4257**, **1857**, **1088**

TRC/34/11842/2023, TRC/34/11841/2023, TRC/34/12409/2023.

Cameroon

AGENCE DE REGULATION DES TELECOMMUNICATIONS CAMEROUN

HOMOLOGATION D'EQUIPEMENT:

106/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH/CA, **125/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH/CA**, **137/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **139/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **152/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **167/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA3**, **170/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **172/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **271/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **273/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **287/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **293/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH**, **301/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH/CA**, **305/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **309/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **318/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **428/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **458/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **459/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **465/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH**, **469/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **475/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **581/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **616/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **628/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **631/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **720/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **722/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **726/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **734/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **778/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA1**, **788/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH/CA**, **851/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **856/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **870/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH/CA2**, **1129/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH/CA**, **1151/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **1789/ART/DG/DT/SDNA/SNH**, **1150/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **1152/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **135/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **289/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**,**295/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **492/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **655/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **656/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **663/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **2784/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **834/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **837/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **941/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **36/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **79/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **78/ART/DG/DT/SDN/SEA/SNH**, **333/ART/DG/DT/SDN/SEA/SNH/CA**, **442/ART/DG/DT/SDN/SEA/SNH/CA**, **113/ART/DG/DT/SDN/SEA/SNH/CA**, **111/ART/DG/DT/SDN/SEA/SNH/CA**, **653/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **974/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **58/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH**, **856/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH/CA**, **131/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH/CA**, **263/ART/DG/DT/SDNSEA/SNH/CA**

Malaysia

CIDF15000490, **CIDF15000578**, **CIDF17000143**, **MRR14F**, **ARS4-B**, **MIB3 OI**

RAAT/44A/0219/S(19-0487), **RAAU/05C/0415/S(14-3022)**, **RAAU/33C/1015/S(15-0535)**, **RAAU/35C/1115/S(15-0536)**, **RAAU/40C/1215/S(15-4937)**, **RAAU/48C/0716/S(16-2025)**, **RAAU/57A/0111/S(10-2112)**, **RAAY/84A/0618/S(18-2241)**, **RAAY/85A/0618/S(18-2242)**, **RAAY/86A/0618/S(18-2378)**, **RAAY/87A/0718/S(18-2596)**, **RAAY/89A/0718/S(18-3107)**, **RAAY/92A/1218/S(18-4731)**, **RAAY/98A/0620/S(20-2103)**, **RAFC/18A/0618/S(18-2470)**, **RALM/22A/0315/S(15-0480)**, , , **RALM/35A/0716/S(16-2324)**, **RALM/43B/0221/S(21-0619)**, , **RALM/45A/0517/S(17-1576)**, **RALM/66A/0618/S(18-2468)**, **RALM/67A/0618/S(18-2474)**, **RALM/68A/0618/S(18-2473)**, **RALM/69A/1018/S(18-3829)**, **RALM/77A/0219/S(19-0174)**, **RANI/26C/1215/S(15-4798**, , , **RANI/72B/0215/S(14-3024)**, **RAQP/76A/1121/S(21-5310)**, **RBEF/04A/0317/S(17-0584)**, **RBEF/30A/0919/S(19-3760)**, **RCCT/61D/0719/S(19-2714)**, , , **RDDC/72A/0518/S(18-1697)**, **RDDK/02B/0419/S(19-1401)**, **RDDK/08A/0416/S(16-1233)**, **RDDK/08B/0416/S(16-1233)**, **RDDK/17A/0816/S(16-2023)**, **RDDK/22A/1016/S(16-3306)**, , **RDDK/68A/0418/S(18-1521)**, **RDDK/69B/1220/S(20-5452)**, , **RDDK/74A/0618/S(18-2223)**, **RDDK/83A/1018/S(18-4152)**, **RDDK/84A/1018/S(18-4153)**, **RDDS/27A/0319/S(19-1029)**, **RDFX/09A/0821/S(21-4059)**, **RDFX/10A/0921/S(21-4061)**, **RDFX/11A/0921/S(21-4060)**, **RFCL/09A/0218/S(18-0609)**, **RFCL/13A/0618/S(18-2379)**, **RFCL/14A/0618/S(18-2543)**, **RFCL/15A/0718/S(18-2544)**, **RFCL/18A/0718/S(18-2529)**, **RFCL/19A/0718/S(18-2545)**, **RFCL/20A/0718/S(18-2718)**, **RFCL/21A/0718/S(18-2717)**, **RCFL/22A/0818/S(18-3109)**, **RFCL/23A/0818/S(18-3153)**, **RCFL/24A/0818/S(18-3152)**, **RFCL/26A/0918/S(18-3810)**, **RFCL/27A/0918/S(18-3812)**, **RFCL/28A/1018/S(18-3977)**, **RFCL/29A/1018/S(18-4127)**, **RFCL/30A/1018/S(18-4129)**, **RFCL/31A/1018/S(18-3976)**, **RFCL/33A/0619/S(19-2422)**, **RFCL/34A/0619/S(19-2421)**, **RFCL/35A/0719/S(19-2874)**, **RFCL/36A/0719/S(19-2875)**, **RFCL/41A/0220/S(20-0390)**, **RFCL/42A/0220/S(20-0391)**,

RFCL/44A/0320/S(20-1385), **RFCP/36A/0321/S(21-1381)**, **RFGF/05A/0519/S(19-2090)**, **RGBZ/01A/0318/S(18-0918)**, **RGBZ/03A/0320/S(20-1253)**, **RGEZ/25A/0920/S(20-3544)**, **RGEZ/31A/0421/S(21-1529)**, **RGEZ/36A/0521/S(21-2216)**, **RGIG/01A/0220/S(20-0593)**, **RGIG/02A/0220/S(20-0591)**, **RGLA/06A/1220/S(20-5384)**, **RGNU/03A/0221/S(21-0560)**,**RCCT/02G/1021/S(21-4512)**,**RAQP/73A/1121/S(21-5209)**,**RAQP/76A/1121/S(21-5310)**,**RAQP/75A/1121/S(21-5309)**,**RRCCT/19G/1121/S(21-4614)**,**RFGF/05A/0519/S(19-2090)**,**RALM/77A/0219/S(19-0174)**,**RALM/54B/1221/S(21-5945)**,**RALM/34A/0616/S(16-0899)**,**RGLN/26A/0122/S(22-0336)**,**RAQP/77A/0222/S(22-0908)**,**RGEZ/45A/0322/S(22-1385)**,**RAVG/39U/0616/S(16-1865)**,**RCCT/46B/0317/S(17-0740)**,**RCCT/47B/0317/S(17-0739)**,**RCCT/64B/0517/S(17-0741)**, **RAAU/40C/1215/S(15-4937)**,**RAAU/57A/0111/S(10-2112)**, **RAVG/39U/0616/S(16-1865)**, **RDDK/23A/0916/S(16-3288)**, **RAQP/84A/0822/S(22-3841)**, **RBEF/30A/0919/S(19-3760)**, **RAQP/84A/0922/S(22-4095)**, **RAQP/88A/1022/S(22-4485)**, **RALM/75B/1122/S(22-5510)**, **RALM/74B/1122/S(22-5508)**, **RALM/22A/0315/S(15-0480)**, **RAQP/84A/0223/S(23-0548)**, **RGLA/06A/1220/S(20-5384)**, **RGIH/67A/0522/S(22-2480)**, **RALM/90B/0323/S(23-0831)**, **RALM/89B/0323/S(23-0830)**, **RALM/90B/0323/S(23-0831)**, **RFCP/23A/0323/S(23-1490)**, **RALM/44A/0517/S(17-1383) RGLN/01A/0620/S(20-2413)**, **RALM/20B/0820/S(20-3382)**, **RALM/21B/0820/S(20-3381)**, **RGLN/46A/0523/S(23-2144)**, **RFCL/83A/0623/S(23-2566)**, **RFCL/84A/0623/S(23-2507)**, **RFCL/85A/0623/S(23-2508)**, **RFCL/86A/0623/S(23-2693)**, **RFCL/94A/0623/S(23-2789)**, **RFCL/87A/0623/S(23-2595)**, **RFCL/88A/0623/S(23-2694)**, **RFCL/89A/0623/S(23-2684)**, **RFCL/94A/0623/S(23-2789)**, **RFCL/95A/0623/S(23-2791)**, **RFCL/91A/0623/S(23-2786)**, **RFCL/92A/0623/S(23-25787)**, **RFCL/93A/0623/S(23-2788)**, **RFCL/04C/0623/S(23-2911)**, **RFCL/97A/0723/S(23-3079)**, **RFCL/96A/0723/S(23-3078)**, **RFCL/99A/0723/S(23-3077)**, **RFCL/98A/0723/S(23-3076)**, **RALM/33B/1120/S(20-4706)**, **RAQP/07B/0823/S(23-3721)**, **RAQP/06B/0823/S(23-3720)**, **RDDK/75C/0223/S(23-0474)**, **RDDK/74C/0223/S(23-0472)**, **RGGY/20A/1222/S(22-5600)**, **RGGL/38A/1023/S(23-4773)**, **RGGK/39A/1023/S(23-4774)**, **RGGK/40A/1023/S(23-4775)**, **RGSC/06A/0723/S(23-3045)**, **RGSC/07A/0723/S(23-3046)**, **RFFK/06A/0522/S(22-2423)**, **RGWQ/32A/0324/S(24-0892)**, **RDDK/68A/0418/S(18-1521)**, **RFBY/29A/0524/S(24-2032)**, **RFBY/30A/0524/S(24-2033)**, **RFBY/32A/0624/S(24-2578)** .

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément_Date d'agrément

MR 5371ANRT2010_05.12.2019, **MR 5611ANRT2010_27.05.2010**, **MR 5835ANRT2010_28.08.2020**, **MR 7906ANRT2013_06.03.2013**, **MR 9102ANRT2014_14.03.2014**, **MR 9107ANRT2014_18.03.2014**, **MR 9126ANRT2014_27.02.2024**, **MR 9186ANRT2014_04.04.2024**, **MR 9668ANRT2014_30.09.2014**, **MR 9741ANRT2014_24.10.2014**, **MR 9778ANRT2014_11.11.2014**, **MR 9904ANRT2014_19.12.2014**, **MR 9918ANRT2014_22.12.2014**, **MR 11030ANRT2015_04.11.2015**, **MR 11264ANRT2016_08.01.2016**, **MR 11554ANRT2016_15.03.2016**, **MR 12089ANRT2016_15.06.2016**, **MR 12123ANRT2016_22.06.2016**, **MR 12372ANRT2016_16.08.2016**, **MR 12623ANRT2016_11.10.2016**, **MR 12755ANRT2016_07.11.2016**, **MR 12756ANRT2016_07.11.2016**, **MR 12901ANRT2016_30.11.2016**, **MR 13217ANRT2017_27.01.2017**, **MR 13255ANRT2017_09.02.2017**, **MR 13576ANRT2017_20.03.2017**, **MR 13772ANRT2017_13.04.2017**, **MR 13774ANRT2017_13.04.2017**, **MR 13851ANRT2017_03.05.2017**, **MR 13892ANRT2017_03.05.2017**, **MR 13900ANRT2017_04.05.2017**, **MR 14830ANRT2017_28.09.2017**, **MR 15171ANRT2017_22.11.2017**, **MR 15669ANRT2018_31.01.2018**, **MR 15674ANRT2018_31.01.2018**, **MR 15675ANRT2018_31.01.2018**, **MR 15925ANRT2018_27.02.2018**, **MR 16263ANRT2018_06.04.2018**, **MR 16606ANRT2018_17.05.2018**, **MR 16657ANRT2018_23.05.2018**, **MR 16726ANRT2018_30.05.2018**, **MR 16794ANRT2018_05.06.2018**, **MR 16860ANRT2018_18.06.2018**, **MR 16861ANRT2018_18.06.2018**, **MR 16905ANRT2018_21.06.2018**, **MR 16906ANRT2018_21.06.2018**, **MR 16907ANRT2018_21.06.2018**, **MR 16908ANRT2018_21.06.2018**, **MR 17015ANRT2018_03.07.2018**, **MR 17016ANRT2018_03.07.2018**, **MR 17079ANRT2018_11.07.2018**, **MR 17080ANRT2018_11.07.2018**, **MR 17201ANRT2018_06.08.2018**, **MR 17202ANRT2018_06.08.2018**, **MR 17203ANRT2018_06.08.2018**, **MR 17204ANRT2018_06.08.2018**, **MR 17504ANRT2018_14.09.2018**, **MR 17505ANRT2018_14.09.2018**, **MR 17528ANRT2018_20.09.2018**, **MR 17576ANRT2018_26.09.2018**, **MR 17678ANRT2018_11.10.2018**, **MR 17679ANRT2018_11.10.2018**, **MR 18103ANRT2018_30.11.2018**, **MR 18334ANRT2018_21.12.2018**, **MR 18335ANRT2018_21.12.2018**, **MR 18615ANRT2019_21.01.2019**, **MR 18736ANRT2019_04.02.2019**, **MR 18928ANRT2019_25.02.2019**, **MR 19106ANRT2019_14.03.2019**, **MR 19108ANRT2019_14.03.2019**, **MR 19315ANRT2019_04.04.2019**, **MR 19338ANRT2019_09.04.2019**, **MR 19339ANRT2019_09.04.2019**, **MR 19505ANRT2019_22.04.2019**, **MR 19520ANRT2019_23.04.2019**, **MR 19767ANRT2019_15.05.2019**, **MR 19768ANRT2019_15.05.2019**, **MR 19769ANRT2019_15.05.2019**, **MR 20859ANRT2019_11.09.2019**, **MR 20901ANRT2019_13.09.2019**, **MR 20902ANRT2019_13.09.2019**, **MR 20944ANRT2019_19.09.2019**, **MR 21472ANRT2019_26.11.2019**, **MR 21473ANRT2019_28.11.2019**, **MR 21807ANRT2019_23.12.2019**, **MR 22495ANRT2020_26.02.2020**, **MR 23231ANRT2020_26.05.2020**,

MR 23405ANRT2020_16.03.2020, **MR 24001ANRT2020_13.05.2020**, **MR 24106ANRT2020_20.05.2020**,
MR 25982ANRT2020_14.10.2020, **MR 26081ANRT2020_22.10.2020**, **MR 26333ANRT2020_12.11.2020**,
MR 27808ANRT2021_13.03.2021, **MR 30377ANRT2021_14.10.2021**,
MR 31268ANRT2022_04.01.2022,**MR 29628ANRT2021_02.08.2021**,**MR 30406ANRT2021_24.10.2021**,**MR 30494ANRT2021_28.10.2021**
MR 33226ANRT2022_01.06.2022, **MR 30377ANRT2021_14.10.2021**, **MR 30377ANRT2021_26.10.2022**,
MR 8106ANRT2013_26.10.2022, **MR 9186ANRT2014_26.10.2022**, **MR 9668ANRT2014_26.10.2022**,
MR 11264ANRT2016_27.10.2022, **MR 17528ANRT2018_27.10.2022**, **MR 9126ANRT2014_27.10.2022**,
MR 35384ANRT2022_21.11.2022, **MR 35382ANRT2022_21.11.2022**, **MR 35387ANRT2022_21.11.2022**,
MR 35393ANRT2022_21.11.2022, **MR 36711ANRT2023_10.02.2023**, **MR 25982ANRT2020_14.10.2020**,
MR 31772ANRT2020_17.02.2022, **MR 35739ANRT2022_12.12.2022**, **MR 36711ANRT2020_10.02.2023**,
MR 31772ANRT2020_03.04.2023, **MR 37224ANRT2023_23.06.2023**, **MR 31774ANRT2017_10.08.2023**,
MR 12122ANRT2016_10.08.2023, **MR 12123ANRT2016_10.08.2023**, **MR 35351ANRT2022_17.11.2022**,
MR 35350ANRT2022_17.11.2022, **MR 37357ANRT2023_17.03.2023**, **MR 37442ANRT2023_22.03.2023**,
MR 39161ANRT2023_13.07.2023, **MR 490ANRT2024_05.02.2024**, **MR 1286ANRT2024_29.03.2024**, **MR 2040ANRT2024_17.05.2024**.

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ARE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément_Date d'agrément:

, **0598/ARE/2018_13.12.2018**, **0630/ARE/2019_25.02.2019**, **0647/ARE/2019_30.04.2019**, **0649/ARE/2019_30.04.2019**,
0650/ARE/2019_30.04.2019, **0664/ARE/2019_27.05.2019**, **0665/ARE/2019_27.05.2019**, **0667/ARE/2019_27.05.2019**,
0712/ARE/2018_04.11.2019, **0713/ARE/2018_04.11.2019**, **0742/ARE/2020_20.01.2020**, **0796/ARE/2020_11.05.2020**,
0839/ARE/2020_21.09.2020, **0840/ARE/2020_21.09.2020**, **0874/ARE/2020_26.11.2020**, **0971/ARE/2021_20.07.2021**,
0979/ARE/2021_09.08.2021, **1128/ARE/2021_27.06.2022**, **1127/ARE/2021_27.06.2022**, **1173/ARE/2022_17.10.2022**,
232/ARE/2023_13.02.2023, **1212/ARE/2022_22.12.2022**, **1251/ARE/2023_16.03.2023**, **1252/ARE/2023_20.03.2023**,
1263/ARE/2023_17.04.2023, **1267/ARE/2023_17.05.2023**, **1269/ARE/2023_17.05.2023**, **1270/ARE/2023_17.05.2023**,
1296/ARE/2023_13.06.2023, **1297/ARE/2023_13.06.2023**, **1303/ARE/2023_03.07.2023**, **1306/ARE/2023_03.07.2023**,
1304/ARE/2023_03.07.2023, **1303/ARE/2023_03.07.2023**, **1305/ARE/2023_03.07.2023**, **1218/ARE/2023_02.02.2023**,
1219/ARE/2023_02.02.2023, **1329/ARE/2023_22.08.2023**, **1334/ARE/2023_04.09.2023**, **1332/ARE/2023_04.09.2023**,
1356/ARE/2023_02.10.2023, **1408/ARE/2024_23.01.2024**, **1439/ARE/2024_27.03.2024**

Mexico

NYCE: , **NYC-CEDT1456-21**, , **NYC-CEDT0106-23**, **NYC-CEDT2073-23**, **NYC-2402CT0118-24**, **NYC-2402CT0204-24**, **NYC-2402CT0207-24**, **NYC-2402CT0305-24**, **NYC-CEDT0587-24**, **NYC-CEDT0621-24**, **NYC-CEDT0634-24**, **NYC-CEDT1118-24**, **NYC-CEDT1119-24**

ANCE:**ANC2101C00017489**,**ANC2201C00003403**,**ANC2201C00004471**

IFETEL:

IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/0311/2018, **IFT-008-2015**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/10559/2021**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/9797/2021**,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/9793/2021, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/9791/2021**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/9792/2021**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/9796/2021**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/9788/2021**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/0029/2021**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/7577/2020**,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/6918/2022, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/6915/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/1911/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE2294/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/2516/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/1766/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/3659/2022**,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/3672/2022, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/4769/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/1540/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/3129/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/4898/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/4897/2022**, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/4551/2022**,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/xxxx/2022, , **IFT/223/UCS/1365/2023**, **IFT/223/UCS/1940/2023**, **IFT/223/UCS/2740/2023**,
IFT/223/UCS/3554/2023, **IFT/223/UCS/3942/2023**, **IFT/223/UCS/3950/2023**, **IFT/223/UCS/1175/2023**, **IFT/223/UCS/1174/2023**,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/7603/2020, **IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/2408/2021**, **IFT/223/UCS/7549/2023**,

RCPVIVW21-4222, **RCPAPR318-2005**, **RCPBOBR21-0911**, **RCPBOFR18-1885**, **RCPBOLR09-0828**, **RCPBOLR16-0518**, **RCPBOMR12-1538**, **RCPBOMR14-0766**, **RCPBOMR14-0922**, **RCPBOMR17-0598**, **RCPBOMQ19-0594**, **RCPCOAR18-1800**, **RCPGEAD16-1700**,
RCPHAMM10-0514, **RCPHEBS14-0180**, **RCPHEBC18-2099**, **RCPHEFS19-1702**, **RCPHEFS20-1469**, **RCPHERS19-1678**, **RCPGEAD16-1700**, **RCPGECB14-0464**, **RCPLGLG16-0952**, **RCPLGMI19-1163**, **RCPVIVW20-0478**, **RCPVOHT13-1485**, **RCPVOMI15-0115**,
RCPVWFS16-0693, **RCPVWL414-0775**, **RCPVWL414-0775-A1**, **RCPVWL617-0023**, **RCPVWMI17-0707**, **RCPVWMI17-0902**,

RCPVWMI18-2151, **RCPVWMI18-2169**, **RCPVWMI14-0755**, **RCPVWMI14-1819**, **RCPVWMI14-1819**, **RCPVWMI14-1820**, **RCPVWMI15-0640**, **RCPVWMI16-0590**, **RCPVWMI16-1445**, **RCPVWMM17-1053**, **RCPVWVW17-0714**, **RCPVWVW17-0714-A1**, **RLVBHTS19-1995**, **RLVBOLR14-1873**, **RLVCO1820-0821**, **RLVCOAR15-0008**, **RLVCOBC16-1823**, **RLVCO1820-0821**, **RLVCOFS18-2029**, **RLVCOFS18-2030**, **RLVDER316-1666**, **RLVDER316-2005**, **RLVHE0119-0720**, **RLVHEBC15-0293**, **RLVHEBC16-0682**, **RLVHEFS13-1688**, **RLVHEFS13-1690**, **RLVHEFS14-1515**, **RLVHEFS18-1288**, **RLVHEFS18-1565**, **RLVHEFS19-0647**, **RLVHEFS19-1298**, **RLVHEFS20-0533**, **RLVHEFS20-1335**, **RLVHEFS20-1336**, **RLVHEFS20-1420**, **RLVHELC11-1185**, **RLVHEMQ19-1757**, **RLVHEMQ19-1758**, **RLVHEMW19-1757**, **RLVHERS17-0286**, **RLVHUHU19-1065**, **RLVHUTS20-1781**, **RLVMABN18-1512**, **RLVMABN18-1512-A1**, **RLVMAMQ18-0363**, **RLVMAMQ20-2464**, **RLVVENB20-1419**, **RLVVICO19-1023**, **RLVVIFP20-1412**, **RLVVIKO18-0155**, **RLVVIME19-1022**, **RLVVIME19-1023**, **RLVVIME20-2934**, **RLVVWFS17-2122**, **RLVVWFS17-2122-A1**, **RLVVW1718-1092**, **RLVVW1718-1169**, **RLVVW1718-1170**, **RLVVW1718-1171**, **RLVVW1718-1314**, **RLVVW1718-1315**, **RLVVW1718-1316**, **RLVVW1718-1317**, **RLVVW1718-1507**, **RLVVW1718-1508**, **RLVVW1718-1509**, **RLVVW1718-1517**, **RLVVW1718-1518**, **RLVVW1718-1519**, **RLVVW1718-1567**, **RLVVW1718-1568**, **RLVVW1718-1789**, **RLVVW1718-1790**, **RLVVW1718-1928**, **RLVVW1718-1929**, **RLVVW1719-1795**, **RLVVW1818-1248**, **RLVVW1818-1249**, **RLVVW1818-1258**, **RLVVW1819-0009**, **RLVVW1819-0023**, **RTIAUCB18-0153**, **RTIAUMI14-1863**, **RTILECO19-1805**, **RTILECO21-2443**, **RTILGTL19-0483**, **RTILGTL19-1617**, **RTILGTL20-727**, **RTIMOLT20-1047**, **RTIVWCO19-1185**,**RCPVWMI22-1384**,**RLVMAMQ22-3409**, **VOVWMI23-13062**, **VOVWMI23-13050**, **RCPVWMI22-1384**, **VOVWTK23-30067**, **VOVWCP23-19309**, **SYMOWC23-01151**, **ROVIHF24-02919**, **ULM-NOM-16943**, **VOAPMI24-05677**, **VOVWMI24-05362**, **VOVWMI24-05354**, **VOJOMI24-09641**, **VOJOMI24-10742**, **TEHUFL24-14072**, **TEHUFL24-14071**.

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

— (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y

— (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission.

NCC/TSNi/WN/TA/CERT/: **0043/2011**, **0679/2015**, **0884/2015**, **0922/2015**, **0923/2015**, **0947/2016**, **1071/2016**, **1247/2016**, **1454/2017**, **1567/2017**, **1571/2017**, **1650/2017**, **1691/2017**, **1692/2017**, **2061/2018**, **2062/2018**, **2236/2018**, **2332/2018**, **2333/2018**, **2334/2018**, **2335/2018**, **2338/2018**, **2339/2018**, **2340/2018**, **2383/2018**, **2384/2018**, **2385/2018**, **2427/2018**, **2466/2018**, **2467/2018**, **2525/2018**, **2838/2019**, **2862/2019**, **2935/2019**, **2951/2019**, **3137/2019**, **3138/2019**, **3223/2019**, **3224/2019**, **3401/2020**, **3492/2020**, **3493/2020**, **3738/2020**, **3948/2020**, **3983/2020**, **3989/2020**, **4019/2021**, **4176/2021**, **4218/2021**, **4683/2021**,**4231/2021**,**4660/2021**,**4658/2021**,**4682/2021**,**01798/2022**,**01878/2022**,**01985/2022**, **4683/2021**, **3948/2020**, **02000/2022**, **00047/2023**, **00320/2023**

NCC/TSNi/TA/VOL: **161/2021/124**

NCC/TSNi/TA/CERT: **435/2022**, **00186/2023**

NCC/CERT: **2356/2022**, **00561/2023**, **00088/2023**, **0519/2023**, **00561/2023**, **00297/2024**

Oman

TRA/TA-R/0555/12_D172338, **TRA/TA-R/0984/13_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/1049/09**, **TRA/TA-R/1298-01/10_D090258**, **TRA/TA/R/1448/10_D090258**, **TRA/TA-R/1575/13_TRAUSR001251**, **TRA/TA-R/1585/13_TRAUSR001251**, **TRA/TA-R/1630/13_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/1697/14_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/1733/14_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/1743/14_D090016**, **TRA/TA-R/1849-14_D090258**, **TRA/TA-R/1995/14_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/2160/14_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/2197/14_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/2210/14_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/2235/14_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/2289/14_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/2444/15_D090016**, **TRA/TA-R/2609/15_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/2903/15_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/3007-16_D080314**, **TRA/TA-R/3315/16_DA80134**, **TRA/TA-R/3331/16_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/3370/16**, **TRA/TA-R/3621/16_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/3701/16_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/3848/17_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/3957/17_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/4227/17_D090024**, **TRA/TA-R/4353/17_D080134**, **TRA/TA-R/5130/18_23/01/2018**, **TRA/TA-R/5241/18_D172249**, **TRA/TA-R/5442/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5443/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5617/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5725/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5772/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5774/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5819/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5820/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5884/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5885/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5886/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/5887/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6021/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6022/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6023/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6024/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6132/18_D172249**, **TRA/TA-R/6166/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-**

R/6188/18_D172249, **TRA/TA/R/6348/18_D090258**, **TRA/TA/R/6363/18_D090258**, **TRA/TA-R/6366/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6372/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6527/18_D172249**, **TRA/TA-R/6535/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6537/18_D177249**, **TRA/TA-R/6616/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6695/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/6696/18_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/7145/19_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/7240/19_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/7244/19_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/7383/19_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/7384/19_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/7481/19_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/7524/19_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/7604/19_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/7704/19_D090024**, **TRA/TA-R/7752/19_D090024**, **TRA/TA-R/7867/19_D192564**, **TRA/TA-R/7871/19_D192564**, **TRA/TA-R/8052/19_D090024**, **TRA/TA-R/8056/19_D090024**, **TRA/TA-R/8084/19_D192564**, **TRA/TA-R/8150/19_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/8158/19_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/8171/19_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/8240/19_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/8480/19_D192564**, **TRA/TA-R/8649/19_D090024**, **TRA/TA-R/8749/19_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/9347/20_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/9664/20_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/9675/20_D192564**, **TRA/TA-R/9676/20_D192564**, **TRA/TA-R/9682/20_D100428**, **TRA/TA/R/10209/20_D172249**, **TRA/TA-R/10345/20_D090024**, **TRA/TA-R/10363/20_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/11110/21_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/11179/21_D172249**,**TRA/TA-R/10614/20_D172249**,**TRA/TA-R/11980/21_D172338**,**TRA/TA-R/12440/21_D172338**,**TRA/TA-R/12742/21_D090258**,**TRA/TA-R/12743/21_D090258**,**TRA/TA-R/13040/22_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/11110/21_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/13697/22_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/14975/23_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/14722/22_D202897**, **TRA/TA/6945/2014_17/09/2014**, **TRA/TA-R/15114/23_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/13211/22_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/15008/23_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/13781/23_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/15396/23_D090024**, **TRA/TA-R/12904/21_D213125**, **TRA/TA-R/12905/21_D213125**, **TRA/TA-R/16919/23_D202897**, **TRA/TA-R/16056/23_D100428**, **TRA/TA-R/15420/23_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/16441/23_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/16526/23_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/16919/23_D202897**, **TRA/TA-R/17712/24_D172338**, **TRA/TA-R/18257/23_D100428** .

Philippines

NTC, Type Approved No.:

ESD-1105427C, **ESD-1105633C**, **ESD-1206775C**, **ESD-1308271C**, **ESD-1408668C**, **ESD-1408747C**, **ESD-1408917C**, **ESD-1409834C**, **ESD-1409181C**, **ESD-1409770C**, **ESD-1510139C**, **ESD-1510297C**, **ESD-1510396C**, **ESD-1510397C**, **ESD-1511095C**, **ESD-1612168C**, **ESD-1612188C**, **ESD-1613057C**, **ESD-1613431C**, **ESD-1613454C**, **ESD-1714358C**, **ESD-1714837C**, **ESD-1714838C**, **ESD-1714839C**, **ESD-1715123C**, **ESD-1716172C**, **ESD-1816403C**, **ESD-1816404C**, **ESD-1816419C**, **ESD-1816997C**, **ESD-1817283C**, **ESD-1817335C**, **ESD-1817369C**, **ESD-1817501C**, **ESD-1817548C**, **ESD-1817853C**, **ESD-1817897C**, **ESD-1817898C**, **ESD-1817899C**, **ESD-1817900C**, **ESD-1818098C**, **ESD-1818419C**, **ESD-1918733C**, **ESD-1918734C**, **ESD-1918735C**, **ESD-1918843C**, **ESD-1918844C**, **ESD-1919228C**, **ESD-1919230C**, **ESD-1919232C**, **ESD-1919296C**, **ESD-1919297C**, **ESD-1919418C**, **ESD-1919559C**, **ESD-1919739C**, **ESD-1919803C**, **ESD-1919804C**, **ESD-1919996C**, **ESD-1920171C**, **ESD-1920172C**, **ESD-1920173C**, **ESD-1920174C**, **ESD-1920175C**, **ESD-1920724C**, **ESD-1920725C**, **ESD-1919739C**, **ESD-1920803C**, **ESD-2021903C**, **ESD-2021997C**, **ESD-2021998C**

ESD-CPE-1817719C, **ESD-CPE-1920803**, **ESD-CPE-2003542**, **ESD-CPE-2003561**, **ESD-CPE-2103674**, **ESD-GEC-1402882**, **ESD-RCE-2022725**, **ESD-RCE-2023283**, **ESD-RCE-2024041**, **ESD-RCE-2024379**, **ESD-RCE-2125478**,**ESD-CPE-2103674**,**ESD-RCE-21257185**,**ESD-RCE-2127184**,**ESD-RCE-2127226**,**ESD-RCE-2128032**,**ESD-RCE-2228946**, **ESD-RCE-2024041**, **ESD-RCE-2229380**, **ESD-RCE-2230291**, **ESD-RCE-2332287**, **ESD-RCE-2333421**, **ESD-RCE-2334226**, **ESD-RCE-2334225**, **ESD-RCE-2231728**, **ESD-RCE-2231727**, **ESD-RCE-2334235**, **ESD-RCE-2231777**, **ESD-RCE-2231753**, **ESD-RCE-2436027**, **ESD-RCE-2437626**, **ESD-RCE-2436849**

Rwanda

RURA/1010402/2019/L123_23.10.2019, **RURA/1010402/2019/L128_21.10.2019**, **RURA/1010402/2020/L1069**, **RURA/1010402/2020/L1705_20.05.2020**, **RURA/101042/2020/L6997_24.09.2020**,

RURA/ICT/AUT/200140090_17.11.2020, **RURA/ICT/AUT/200140122_17.11.2020**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/210165696_10.06.2021**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/210172215_21.07.2021**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/210172964_30.07.2021**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/210178685_30.08.2021**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/210190642_22.10.2021**,**RURA/ICT/AUT/210148185_31.01.2021**,**RURA/ICT/AUT/210149593_18.02.2021**,**RURA/ICT/AUT** **RURA/ICT/AUT/220264765_05.10.2022**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/220270155_28.10.2022**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/220272401_14.11.2022**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/220273457_15.11.2022**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/220275518_22.11.2022**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/220280879_19.12.2022**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/230211868_10.05.2023**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/220271948_09.11.2022**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/220271951_09.11.2022**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/230311868_10.05.2023**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/230343093_27.09.2023**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/2403771708_28.02.2024**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/230353517_05.11.2023**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/2303275167_25.06.2023**, **RURA/ICT/AUT/230320586_20.06.2023**.

026HD/ICT/RURA/018_11.01.2018, **093HD/ICT/RURA/018_19.02.2018**, **181HD/ICT/RURA/019_07.03.2019**, **192HD/ICT/RURA/018_13.04.2018**, **265HD/ICT/RURA/018_22.05.2018**, **266HD/ICT/RURA/018_22.05.2018**, **277HD/ICT/RURA/019_11.04.2019**, **278HD/ICT/RURA017_25.07.2017**, **279HD/ICT/RURA/019_11.04.2019**, **313HD/ICT/RURA/018_08.06.2018**, **334HD/ICT/RURA/018_13.06.2018**, **335HD/ICT/RURA/018_14.06.2018**,

343HD/ICT/RURA/017_22.08.2017, **348HD/ICT/RURA/019_10.05.2019**, **349HD/ICT/RURA/018_22.06.2018**, **355HD/ICT/RURA/018_22.06.2018**, **356HD/ICT/RURA/018_22.06.2018**, **357HD/ICT/RURA/018_22.06.2018**, **368HD/ICT/RURA/018_29.06.2018**, **399HD/ICT/RURA/019_03.06.2019**, **401HD/ICT/RURA/018_09.07.2018**, **433HD/ICT/RURA/019_19.06.2019**, **444HD/ICT/RURA/019_19.06.2019**, **448HD/ICT/RURA/018_27.07.2018**, **449HD/ICT/RURA/018_27.07.2018**, **537HD/ICT/RURA/018_14.09.2018**, **607HD/ICT/RURA/018_11.10.2018**, **645GM/ICT/RURA/019_11.09.2019**, **646GM/ICT/RURA/019_11.09.2019**, **712HD/ICT/RURA/018_04.12.2018**, **742HD/ICT/RURA/018_14.12.2018**, **1350HD/CMR/RURA/015_08.12.2015** .

Senegal

AGREE PAR ARPT SENEGAL

Numéro d'agrément : XXXXXX/AG/ER

071845/AG/ER,**071821/AG/ER**,**071755/AG/ER**,**071710/AG/ER**,**071617/AG/ER**,**071414/AG/ER**,**071395/AG/ER**,**071394/AG/ER**,**071347/A**
072100/AG/ER, **072164/AG/ER**, **072164/AG/ER**, **072183/AG/ER**, **072231/AG/ER**, **072453/AG/ER**, **072469/AG/ER**, **072536/AG/ER**, **072588/AG/ER**, **072485/AG/ER**, **072474/AG/ER**, **072613/AG/ER**, **072588/AG/ER**, **072646/AG/ER**, **072722/AG/ER**, **072739/AG/ER**, **072814/AG/ER**, **072877/AG/ER**

Serbia

И005 17, **И005 18**, **И005 19**, **ИН005 19**, **И005 20**, **И005 21**, **И005 22**, **И005 23**, **И005 24**

И011 17, **И011 18**, **И011 19**, **И011 20**, **И011 21** , **И011 22**, **И011 23**, **И011 24**

И038 19, **И038 20**, **И038 21**, **И038 22**, **И038 23**c, **И0038 24**

И038 21/00583 01025,**И038 21/00719 01145**,**И038 21/00738 01159**,**И038 21/00790 01208**,**И038 22/00861 01272**, **И038 22/01072 01264**, **И038 22/01219 01264**, **И038 22/00319 00774i**, **И038 22/01301 01264**, **И038 22/01403 01356**, **И038 22/01475 01356**, **И038 22/01524 01363**, **И038 23/01623 01363**, **И038 24/01926 01452**

P1615004100, **P1617143100**, **P1617143200**, **P1617197200**, **P1618131400**, **P1619000500**, **P1619047400**, **P1619048600**, **P1619053300**, **P1619073700**, **P1619073800**, **P1619083400**, **P1619095800**, **P1619127100**, **P1619130700**, **P1619134100**, **P1619135700**, **P1619153400**, **P1619154200**, **P1619193000**, **P1620011000**, **P1620037400**, **P1620052200**, **P1620093500**, **P1620106000**, **P1620166400**, **P1620167300**, **P1621036300**, **P1620069300**, **P1620151500**, **P1620169600**, **P1621036300**, **P1621077600**,
P1621134700,**P1621089400**,**P1621105500**,**P1621134400**,**P1621134600**,**P1621134500**,**P1621136600**,**P1621147800**,**P1621147900**,**P16**
P1622022300, **P1622046900**, **P1622047300**, **P1622056200**, **P1622022100**, **P1620166400**.

И1622110000, **И1622123100**, **И1622122900**, **И1622131100**, **И1622131700**, **И1622135700**, **И1622135600**, **И1622139200**, **И1622141800**, **И1622147900**, **И1622178100**,**И1623148600**, **И1623148700**, **И1622178000**, **И1623010900**, **И1623016700**, **И16221888000**, **И1623039900**, **И1623028600**, **И1623041300**, **И1623097100**, **И1623097000**, **И1623096900**, **И1623096700**, **И1623103700**, **И162310500**, **И1623126400**, **И1623126300**, **И1622160000**, **И1622160100**, **И1623030500**, **И1623110300**, **И1624068200**, **И1622070200**, **И1624004700**, **И1624026100**, **И1624191208**, **И1624035800**, **И1624055300**, **И1624191208**, **И1624067600**, **И1624068000**, **И1624068100**, **И1624067900**, **И1624191208**, **И1624094400**, **И1624112100**, **И1624112000**, **И1624112200**

34540-23/19-11, **34540-24/19-9**, **34540-49/21-6**, **34540-194/21-3**, **34540-200/17-5**, **34540-242/18-4**, **34540-242/21-334540-307/19-3**, **34540-263/19-4**, **34540-436/19-3**, **34540-768/18-5**, **34540-871/18-4**, **34540-1313/16-3**,**34540-194/21-3**,**34540-198/21-13**,**34540-228/21-5**,**34540-242/21-3**,**34540-25/22-5**,**34540-40/22-13**,**34540-77/22-10**, **34540-146/22-5**, **34540-144/22-3**, **34540-148/22-6**, **34540-147/22-8**, **34540-165/22-5**, **34540-306/20-7**, **34540-107/23-3**, **34540-51/24-3**

И038 23: 0141_01375, 01340_01351, 34540-25/22-5

Singapore



Fig. 112 Identification in accordance with Radiocommunication Act.

Complies with IMDA Standards: **DA103238**, **DA103787**, **DA103858**, **DA104328**, **DA104682**, **DA104812**, **DA105282**, **DA107248**, **DA107974**, **DB03227**, **DB101762**, **DB103858**, **DB106879**, **DB107220**, **DB106879**.

Registration Number: **G1594-19**, **G1858-19**, **G5521-19**, **N0039-21**, , **N0254-17**, **N0254-17**, **N0356-20**, **N0688-15**, **N0715-15**, **N0721-15**, **N0871-19**, **N0982-20**, **N1085-21**, , **N1453-20**, **N1599-19**, **N1629-17**, **N1630-17**, **N2052-18**, **N2053-18**, **N2069-19**, **N2152-20**, **N2285-19**, **N2404-19**, **N2405-19**, **N2415-18**, **N2420-18**, **N2565-18**, **N2673-18**, **N2700-18**, **N2706-19**, **N2853-18**, **N2860-16**, **N2991-18**, **N2992-18**, **N3005-18**, **N3083-18**, **N3277-20**, **N3278-20**, **N3548-18**, **N3577-18**, **N3888-16**, **N3970-18**, , **N4123-19**, **N4334-20**, **N4347-21**, , , **N4877-19**, **N4878-19**, **N4887-19**, **N4975-17**, **N5068-19**, **N5069-19**, **N5081-20**, **N5358-20**, **N5835-20**, **N5856-20**, **S2946-20**, **S3583-19**, **S5104-21**,**N5264-21**,**N5963-21**,**N0708-17**,**N1019-22**,**N1568-22**,**N1851-22**,**N1898-22**,**N3020-22**,**N3453-22**,**N3456-22**,**N3450-22**,,**N3835-22**, **G0443-21**, **N3888-16**, **N0254-17**, **N0708-17**, **N5372-22**, **N5373-22**, **N6052-22**, **N0374-23**, **N0415-23**, **N0414-23**, **N1159-23**, **N5856-20**, **N1233-23**, **N1291-23**, **N1631-23**, **N2673-23**, **N3098-23**, **N3096-23**, **N3688-18**, **N3555-18**, **G1231-23**, **N0452-23**, **S3262-23**, **S3263-23**, **N3567-23**, **N3097-23**, **N0951-24**, **N2161-24**, **N1153-24**, **N1074-24**, **N1186-24**, **N1600-19**, **N2308-24**, **N2309-24**, **N2875-24**, **N3160-24**.

South Africa

ICASA APPROVED:

TA-2009/464, **TA-2010/218**, **TA-2010/1235**, **TA-2011/615**, **TA-2012/321**, **TA-2012/1747**, **TA-2012/1821**, **TA-2013/1679**, **TA-2013/1681**, **TA-2013/1682**, **TA-2013/1680**, **TA-2013/1683**, **TA-2013/2085**, **TA-2013/2465**, **TA-2013/2503**, **TA-2014/176**, **TA-2014/212**, **TA/2014/792**, **TA/2014/982**, **TA-2014/1719**, **TA-2014/1783**, **TA-2014/1784**, **TA-2014/1887**, **TA-2014/2108**, **TA-2014/2597**, **TA-2015/517**, **TA-2015/2011**, **TA-2015/2084**, **TA-2016/169**, **TA-2016/501**, **TA-2016/820**, **TA-2016/863**, **TA-2016/1449**, **TA-2016/2568**, **TA-2016/2601**, **TA-2016/2759**, **TA-2016/3407**, **TA-2016/3539**, **TA-2016/3541**, **TA-2017/052**, **TA-2017/127**, **TA-2017/209**, **TA-2017/2013**, **TA-2017/2824**, **TA-2017/3480**, **TA-2017/2824**, **TA-2018/175**, **TA-2018/280**, **TA-2018/732**, **TA-2018/842**, **TA-2018/843**, **TA-2018/844**, **TA-2018/845**, **TA-2018/996**, **TA-2018/997**, **TA-2018/998**, **TA-2018/999**, **TA-2018/1091**, **TA-2018/1095**, **TA-2018/1205**, **TA-2018/1408**, **TA-2018/1649**, **TA-2018/1650**, **TA-2018/1806**, **TA-2018/1814**, **TA-2018/1815**, **TA-2019/1853**, **TA-2018/2177**, **TA-2018/2251**, **TA-2018/2776**, **TA-2018/2777**, **TA-2018/2868**, **TA-2018/3141**, **TA-2018/3466**, **TA-2018/3561**, **TA-2018/3974**, **TA-2018/5159**, **TA-2019/115**, **TA-2019/348**, **TA/2019/550**, **TA-2019/582**, **TA-2019/583**, **TA-2019/1110**, **TA-2019/1111**, **TA-2019/1410**, **TA-2019/1853**, **TA-2019/2347**, **TA-2019/2348**, **TA-2019/5101**, **TA-2019/5116**, **TA-2019/5167**, **TA-2020/4885**, **TA-2020/5217**, **TA-2020/5480**, **TA-2020/6261**, **TA-2020/6392**, **TA-2020/6394**, **TA-2020/7066**, **TA-2020/7103**, **TA-2020/7390**, **TA-2021/0295**, **TA-2021/0637**,**TA-2021/7762**,**TA-2021/0949**,**TA-2021/1613**,**TA-2021/1608**,**TA-2021/2146**,**TA-2021/2307**,**TA-2021/2501**,**TA-2021/3273**, **TA-2022/3766**, **TA-2021/0637**, **TA-2022/0625**, **TA-2022/0298**, **TA-2022/0298**, **TA-2022/03215**, **TA-2020/7103**, **TA-2022/0124**, **TA-2020/5443**, **TA-2022/1222**, **TA-2022/3229**, **TA-2023/3353**, **TA-2023/0199**, **TA-2023/0338**, **TA-2023/0349**, **TA-2022/3381**, **RSS/NCA/TA/3/166**, **TA-2023/0349**, **TA-2023/0338**, **TA2023/0892**, **TA-2023/1203**, **TA-2023/2091**, **TA-2023/1813**, **TA-2005/614**, **TA-2024/0552**, **TA-2024/0552**, **TA-2019/348**, **TA-2023/0232**; **TA-2023/2829**, **TA-2023/3425**, **TA-2024/3199**, **TA-2024/0519**, .

Thailand



Fig. 113 Identification in accordance with Radiocommunication Act.

1) เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดของ กสทช.

2) เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการ ใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

NBTC ID: **A57003-17**, **A57004-14**, **A57004-17**, **A57005-14**, **A57006-15**, **A57006-19**, **A57006-18**, **A57008-14**, **A57009-14**, **A57012-16**, **B38083-20**,**B57008-21**,**B57007-21**,**A57014-21**,**B57003-22**,**S01561-22**,**S01559-22**, **S03635-22**, **S00224-23**, **S4117-22**, **A57014-21**, **SD01415-23**, **A75007-22**, **S03477-22**, **SD02328-23**, **SD01325-23**, **SD03081-23**, **SD02729-23**, **A57003-22**, **A75003-22**, **S01559-22**, **S01729-22**, **A75004-22**, **A75004-22**

Türkiye

Further information on radio systems and declarations of conformity can be found at www.volkswagen.com/generalinfo.

Countries outside the US that approve and permit radio systems in accordance with US FCC guidelines:

FCC ID: 2AAJCBR20, **FCC ID: 2AAJCBR21**, **FCC ID: 2AAJCBR22**, **FCC ID: 2AA98**, **FCC ID: 2AA98-COLOUR5C**, **FCC ID: 2AA98-MEDIUM5C**, **FCC ID: 2AA98-MEDIUM5C21**, **FCC ID: 2AA98A**, **FCC ID: 2AHPN-WLC**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101001**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101002**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101010**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101022**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101023**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101031**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101032**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101033**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101034**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101041**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101042**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101043**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101051**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101052**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101053**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101054**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101055**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101056**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101057**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101071**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ17101072**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ18020531**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ18020532**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ18020533**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ18020534**, **FCC ID: 2AOUZ18100931**, **FCC ID: 2APOM-MQBA0**, **FCC ID: 2AVXWWSBRC001**, **FCC ID: 2AXPS-WPC003-1**, **FCC ID: 772C-LB1FD**, **FCC ID: BEJLCW05-VWE5**, **FCC ID: BEJMIB2**, **FCC ID: BEJMIB2PQ**, **FCC ID: BEJ-MEBICAS3**, **FCC ID: BEJ-MIBPQMIN**, **FCC ID: BEJ-MIB3O1**, **FCC ID: BEJTLAHW3IU-E**, **FCC ID: BEJTLAHW3IU-N**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVHE4IU-E**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVHE4IU-N**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVHM3IU-E**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVHW3IU-E**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVHM3IU-N**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVM3IU-N**, **FCC ID: BEJTUVM01IU**, **FCC ID: CWTUGZZF1**, **FCC ID: CWTUGZZF2**, **FCC ID: IYZVK2**, **FCC ID: KR5-BCMEVOC**, **FCC ID: KR5FS14T**, **FCC ID: KR5FS14TK**, **FCC ID: KR55NA920791A**, **FCC ID: LTQR3TR**, **FCC ID: NBG010180T**, **FCC ID: NBG010905A**, **FCC ID: NBG011719A**, **FCC ID: NBG013854**, **FCC ID: NBG01RS4**, **FCC ID: NBG011719A**, **FCC ID: NBG10176**, **FCC ID: NBG9068**, **FCC ID: NBG92596263**, **FCC ID: NBGBCMEVO**, **FCC ID: NBGBCMEVO5**, **FCC ID: NBGBCM2R**, **FCC ID: NBGFS09P03**, **FCC ID: NBGFS12A**, **FCC ID: NBGFS12A01**, **FCC ID: NBGFS12P**, **FCC ID: NBGFS12P01**, **FCC ID: NBGFS12PM**, **FCC ID: NBGFS12P01M**,

FCC ID: NBGFS125C, **FCC ID: NBGFS125C1**, **FCC ID: NBGFS125C5**, **FCC ID: NBGFS173NP**, **FCC ID: NBGFS173NPM**, **FCC ID: NBGFS173NR**, **FCC ID: NBGFS1744M**, **FCC ID: NBGFS19**, **FCC ID: NBGFS191**, **FCC ID: NBGFS93N**, **FCC ID: NBGMQBBB**, **FCC ID: NBGMQBBH**, **FCC ID: NBGPQ12P01**, **FCC ID: NBGRSB19**, **FCC ID: NF3-FR5CPEC**, **FCC ID: NF3-LRR3SCU**, **FCC ID: NF3-LRR4**, **FCC ID: NF3-MRR1PLUS**, **FCC ID: NF3-MRR1REAR**, **FCC ID: NF3-MRREVO14F**, **FCC ID: NF3-LRR3SCU**, **FCC ID: NT8-FPK8IMMO5D**, **FCC ID: NT8-VWMIBREGIO**, **FCC ID: NZLADHL5D**, **FCC ID: NZLJCIBUSHL4**, **FCC ID: OAYARS4B**, **FCC ID: OAYARS5B**, **FCC ID: OYGTSSRE4UD**, **FCC ID: OYGTSSRE4UF**, **FCC ID: OYGTSSSG4G5**, **FCC ID: QIPALAS6A-US**, **FCC ID: QISME919BS-567BN**, **FCC ID: QISME919BS-567BNB**, **FCC ID: QZ9-KA3**, **FCC ID: RK7MBC-NAR**, **FCC ID: RK7MBC-NAR2**, **FCC ID: RK7185-00**, **FCC ID: RK7186-00**, **FCC ID: RX2BNFHL**, **FCC ID: RX2BNFLL**, **FCC ID: T8GA270**, **FCC ID: T8GA475**, **FCC ID: T8GA476**, **FCC ID: T8GP114**, **FCC ID: VPYLB1KD**, **FCC ID: WJLHT-5**, **FCC ID: NF3-FR5CUEC**, **FCC ID: NBG01RS55**, **FCC ID: NF3-F5CP42**, **FCC ID: NBG01RS53**,**FCC ID: NBGFS125C1**, **FCC ID: BEJ-MIB3OIVR-E**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVHM3IU-N**, **FCC ID: 2AXPS-WPC003-1**, **FCC ID: 2AXPS-WPC003-5**, **FCC ID: 2ACC7DDAECE02**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVUM3IU-W**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVUW3IU-W**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVUM3IU-E**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVUW3IU-N**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVUM3IU-N**, **FCC ID: NT8-FPK815DTR2**, **FCC ID: NBGFS1901S**, **FCC ID: NBGFS19S**, **FCC ID: BEJ-ICAS3GP**, **FCC ID: NBGFS191S**, **FCC ID: BEJTLVLM3IU-N, FCC ID: BEJTLVUW3IU-W, FCC ID: BEJTLVUW3IU-N, FCC ID: BEJTLVUM3IU-W, FCC ID: BEJTLVUM3IU-N, FCC ID: BEJTLVUM3IU-E, FCC ID: BEJTLVUE4IU-E, FCC ID: BEJTLVUE4IU-N, FCC ID: BEJTLVUE4IU-W** , **FCC ID: QZ9-DCB**, **FCC ID: 2BAHD-EC30693**, **FCC ID: YGONFCTGSAU336**, **FCC ID: KR5I22U**, **FCC ID: BEJ-MIB3OIVR-E01**, **FCC ID: BEJ-MIB3OI**, **FCC ID: BEJ-MIB3GP**, **FCC ID: YGONFCTGSAU336**, **FCC ID: YGOBUEGELNFC**, **FCC ID: YGOFLUSHNFC**, **FCC ID: 2A6TC-HFA30** .

Interference Statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION TO USERS: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user`s authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF Exposure Statement

FCC ID: RK7MBC-NAR

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End users must follow the specific operating instruction for satisfying RF exposure compliance. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This is a CONSUMER device.

BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have provider's consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your provider.

You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person.

You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by FCC or a licensed wireless service provider.

WARNING: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Wireless Notice

This device complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This transmitter must not be colocated or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

FCC Class A digital device notice

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

FCC Class B digital device notice

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Ukraine

Further information on radio systems and declarations of conformity can be found at www.volkswagen.com/generalinfo.

BSD 3.0	**24,05 - 24,25 GHz**	**20 dBm**
LCA 2.0	**24,05 - 24,25 GHz**	**20 dBm**
RS4	**24,05 - 24,25 GHz**	**20 dBm**

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою: www.volkswagen.com/generalinfo.

1APTV R3TR, **1BOSC0001**, **1HELARS40**, **109**, **1O094.002801-15**, **1O094.004984-17**, **1O094.004985-17**, **1O094.004986-17**, **1O094.006565-18**, **1O094.007280-19**, **0848**, **486.25-CET**, **920697B**, **TLAHW3IU-E**, **TLAHW3IU-W**, **TLVHM3IU-E**, **TLVLM3IU-E**, **TLVHM3IU-W**

1.001.010758/M1-16, **1.001.017067-18-TE**, **1.001.018566-19-TE**, **1.001.018601-19-TE**, **1.001.018646-19-TE**, **1.001.018774-19-TE**, **1.001.018968-19-TE**, **1.001.019275-19-TE**, **1.001.019287-19-TE**, **1.001.020220-19-TE**, **1.001.020355-19-TE**, **1.001.020702-19-TE**, **1.001.020853-19-TE**, **1.001.020929-19-TE**, **1.001.021241-20-TE**, **1.001.021295-20-TE**, **1.001.022108-20-TE**

UA.R.TR.052.041-21, **UA.R.TR.052.081-20**, **UA.R.TR.052.088-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.089-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.130-20**, **UA.R.TR.052.161-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.187-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.189-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.190-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.194-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.215-21**, **UA.R:TR.052.433-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.529-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.533-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.598-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.613-19**, **UA.R.TR.052.658-19**,**UA.R.TR.052.634-19**,**UA.R.TR.052.068-22**, **UA.R.TR.052.169-23**.

UA.TR.028: **680.13-CET**, **680.14-CET**, **680.15-CET**, **2423.10-CET**, **2423.17-CET**, **2423.21-CET**, **2423.31-CET**, **2423.32-CET**, **2423.33-CET**, **2423.44-CET**, **2423.49-CET**, **2423.50-CET**, **2423.51-CET**, **2539.8-CET**, **2539.9-CET**, **2539.10-CET**, **2539.12-CET**, **2539.13-CET**, **2539.15-CET**, **2539.17-CET**, **2539.19-CET**, **2539.20-CET**, **2539.21-CET**, **2539.22-CET**, **2539.23-CET**, **2539.30-CET**, **2539.31-CET**, **2539.45-CET**, **2579.1-CET**, **2579.2-CET**, **2580.4-CET**, **2580.5-CET**, **2610.2-CET**,**2423.62.2-CET**

UA.TR.030.026039-19, **UA.TR.030.028039-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0009-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0016-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0021-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0023-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0026-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0028-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0029-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0030-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0032-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0042-20**, **UA.TR.109.R.0057-21**, **UA.TR.109.R.0082-20**, **UA.TR.109.R.0133-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0155-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0162-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0168-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0174-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0179-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0187-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0201-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0212-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0214-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0249-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0259-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0281-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0282-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0302-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0304-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0305-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0307-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0313-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0333-20**, **UA.TR.109.R.0336-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0337-19**, **UA.TR.109.R.0344-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0345-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0374-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0375-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0376-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0389-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0394-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0411-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0425-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0426-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0438-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0467-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0598-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0645-18**,**UA.TR.109.R.0340-21**,**UA.TR.109.R.0028-22**, **UA.TR.109.R.0174-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0389-18**, **UA.TR.109.R.0241-22**, **UA.TR.109.R.0252-22**, **UA.TR.109.R.0250-22**, **UA.TR.109.R.0069-23**, **UA.TR.109.R.0070-23**, **UA.TR.109.R.0037-23**, **UA.TR.109.R.0068-23**, **UA.TR.109.R.0105-23**, **UA.TR.109.R.252-22**, **UA.TR.109.R.0049-23**, **UA.TR.109.R.0141-23**,

UA.TR.001.0355.30.00616-22

UA RF: 1BOSC0001, **UA RF: 1CONT0001**, **UA RF: 1CONT0002**, **UA RF: 1HELABSD3**, **UA RF: 1HELARS40**, **UA RF: 1BOSC0016**, **UA RF: 1BOSC0017**, **UA RF: 1BOSC0018**, **UA RF: 1HELARS53**, **UA RF: 1HELARS55**

UA.032.CT.0026-19, **UA.032.CT.0030-18**, **UA.032.CT.0083-19**, **UA.032.CT.0084-19**, **UA.032.CT.0107-19**, **UA.032.CT.0188-18**, **UA.032.CT.0221-20**, **UA.032.CT.0224-19**, **UA.032.CT.0225-19**, **UA.032.CT.0225-21**, **UA.032.CT.0226-19**, **UA.032.CT.0227-19**, **UA.032.CT.0313-19**, **UA.032.CT.0527-19**, **UA.032.CT.0187-22**, **UA.032.CT.280-22**

04-1214/123.

UKR.355-10/233, **UKR.355-11/233**, **UA.R.TR.052.089-19, UA.R.TR.052.091-23, UA.R.TR.052.044-23, UA.R.TR.052.090-23, UA.R.TR.052.204-22**

United Arab Emirates

TRA, REGISTERED No_DEALER No

ER01458/21, **ER0029197/10_DA0014517/08**, **ER0109760/13_DA0043253/10**, **ER0126849/14_DA0127935/14**, **ER0130894/14_DA44932/15**, **ER0130898/14_DA44932/15**, **ER0130932/14_DA44932/15**, **ER01458/21_DA0018994/09**, **ER34947/14_DA0043252/10**, **ER35080/14_DA0028019/10**, **ER35423/14_DA35176/14**, **ER36213/14_DA36758/14**, **ER37557/15_DA0028019/10**, **ER37571/15_DA0028019/10**, **ER37807/15_DA38660/15**, **ER39135/15_DA36758/14**, **ER39136/15_DA36758/14**, **ER39739/15_DA36758/14**, **ER40309/15_DA44932/15**, **ER40510/15_DA44932/15**, **ER40885/15_DA44877/15**, **ER42982/15_DA36758/14**, **ER43831/16_DA36758/14**, **ER45185/16_DA36758/14**, **ER45520/16_DA44932/15**, **ER46672/16_DA38660/15**, **ER46796/16_DA35176/14**, **ER47876/16_DA44932/15**, **ER47877/16_DA44932/15**, **ER47887/16_DA28019/10**, **ER48223/16_DA44932/15**, **ER49378/16_DA38660/15**, **ER49719/16_DA0062437/11**, **ER51643/17_DA44932/15**, **ER53878/17_DA44932/15**, **ER53915/17_DA44932/15**, **ER53925/17_DA44932/15**, **ER54754/17_DA0043253/10**, **ER54922/17**, **ER55421/17_DA36758/14**, **ER61136/18_DA40068**, **ER61137/18_DA0089862/12**, **ER62566/18_DA44932/15**, **ER62570/18_DA44932/15**, **ER63911/18_DA44932/15**, **ER64149/18**, **ER64150/18**, **ER65216/18**, **ER65415/18**, **ER65217/18**, **ER65416/18**, **ER66801/18_DA77281/18**, **ER66978/18_DA36758/14**, **ER66969/18**, **ER67571/18**, **ER67572/18**, **ER67685/18**, **ER68006/18_DA40068/15**, **ER68568/19_DA76163/18**, **ER68570/19**, **ER68572/19**, **ER69987/19_DA44932/15**, **ER70009/19_DA44932**, **ER70046/19_DA44932**, **ER70534/19**, **ER70659/19_DA44932/15**, **ER71355/19_DA38660/15**, **ER71413/19_DA0089862/12**, **ER71414/19_DA0089862/12**, **ER72288/19**, **ER72723/19**, **ER72725/19**, **ER73393/19_DA0086237/12**, **ER75266/19_DA0086237/12**, **ER76113/19**, **ER76324/19_DA56674/16**, **ER76515/19**, **ER76869/19**, **ER77956/20_DA76153/18**, **ER78093/20_DA36975/14**, **ER78187/20_DA36975/14**, **ER79367/20**, **ER80171/20**, **ER81399/20_DA0089862/12**, **ER88450/20_DA0086237/12**, **ER88708/20**, **ER89638/20_DA36975/14**, **ER90272/20_DA0028019/10**, **ER90294/20_DA0043253/10**, **ER90295/20_DA0043253/10**, **ER91750/20**, **ER95816/21_DA36758/14**, **ER97243/21**, **ER64150/18**, **ER64149/18_DA36975/14**, **ER98887/21_DA77281/18**, **ER65217/18_DA36975/14**, **ER65216/18_DA36975/14**, **ER00657/21_DA44932/15**, **ER00660/21_DA44932/15**, **ER65416/18_DA36975/14**, **ER65415/18_DA36975/14**, **ER01458/21**, **ER66978/18_DA36758/14**, **ER42982/15_DA36758/14**, **ER42982/15**, **ER43831/16__DA36758/14**, **ER67685/18_DA36975/14**, **ER66801/18_DA77281/18**, **ER68006/18_DA40068**, **ER68568/19_DA36975/14**, **ER68571/19_DA36975/14**, **ER68572/19_DA36975/14**, **ER68570/19_DA36975/14**, **ER68096/18_DA36975/14**, **ER68097/18_DA36975/14**, **ER45185/16_DA36758/14**, **ER05443/22_DA36758/14**, **ER68239/18**, **ER67572/18_DA77281/18**, **ER67571/18_DA77281/18**, **ER67572/18_DA77281/18**, **ER70532/19_DA36975/14**, **ER70534/19_DA36975/14**, **ER07751/22_DA77281/18**, **ER70554/19_DA0043252/10**, **ER71148/19_DA0043252/10**, **ER10098/22_DA0110016/13**, **ER72724/19_DA36975/14**, **ER72725/19_DA36975/14**, **ER72723/19_DA36975/14**, **ER72288/19**, **ER69987/19_DA44932/15**, **ER45520/19_DA44932/15**, **ER70046/19_DA44932/15**,**ER47877/16_DA44932/15**, **ER47876/16_DA44932/15**, **ER48223/16_DA44932/15**, **ER71414/19_DA36975/14**, **ER71413/19_DA36975/14**, **ER75266/19_DA0086237/12**, **ER76115/19_DA77281/18**, **ER76113/19_DA77281/18**, **ER766869/19_DA36975/14**, **ER50430/16_**, **ER78187/19_DA36975/14**, **ER51643/17_DA44932/15**, **ER78942/20_DA0086237/12**, **ER78955/20_DA0086237/12**, **ER17500/23_DA0086237/12**, **ER97243/21_DA0043253/10**, **ER06372/22_DA0043253/10**, **ER80134/20_DA0086237/12**, **ER53878/17_DA44932/15**, **ER36758/14_DA36758/14**, **ER80134/20_DA0086237/12**, **ER15319/22_DA44932/15**, **ER15318/22_DA44932/15**, **ER88748/20_DA77281/18**, **ER88708/20/22_DA0110016/13**, **ER22482/23_DA0086237/12**, **ER88450/20_DA0086237/12**, **ER53912/17_DA44932/15**, **ER81399/20_DA36975/14**, **ER79367/20_DA44932/15**, **ER53925/17_DA44932/15**, **ER55421/17_DA36758/14**, **ER53878/17_DA44932/15**, **ER22617/23_DA0043253/10**, **ER35423/14_DA35176/14**, **ER26433/23_DA35176/14**, **ER36213/14_DA35176/14**, **ER90293/20_DA0043252/10**, **ER90295/20_DA0043252/10**, **ER22617/23_DA0043253/10**, **ER22469/23**, **ER12347/22**, **ER12203/22**, **ER35423/14**, **ER27577/24**, **ER61136/18**, **ER28573/24**, **ER62570/18**, **ER39135/15**, **ER39136/15**, **ER39739/15**, **ER95816/21**, **2027-535**, **2027-534**, **2027-533**, **ER30777/24**, **ER30778/24**, **ER40309/15**, **ER64150/18**, **ER64149/18**, **ER00660/21** .

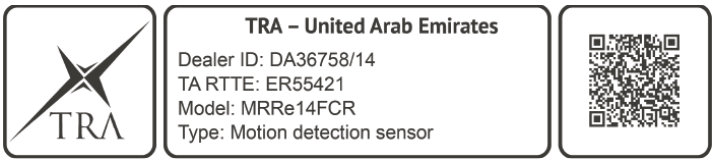


Fig. 114

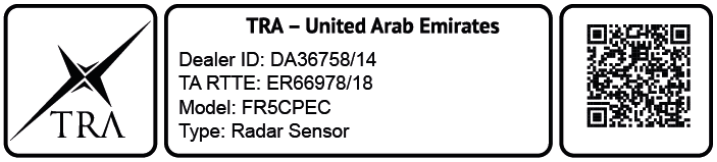


Fig. 115

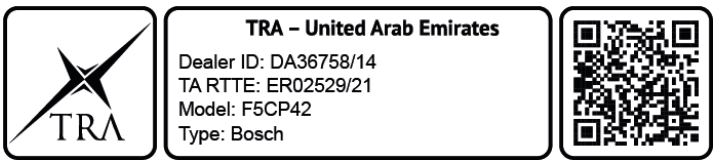


Fig. 116

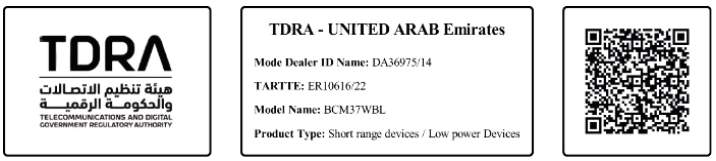


Fig. 117

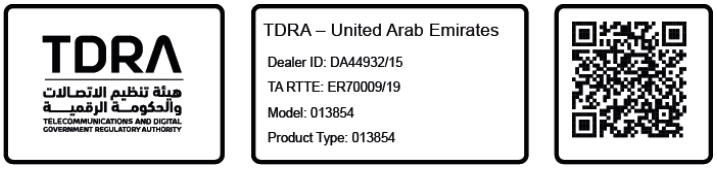


Fig. 118



Fig. 119

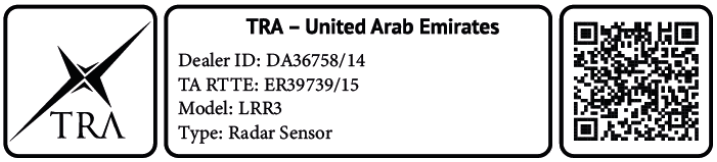


Fig. 120

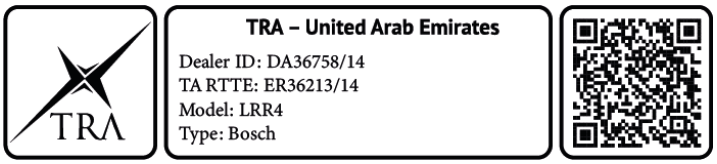


Fig. 121

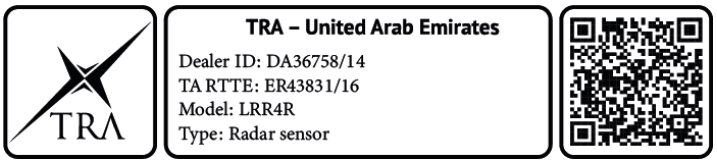


Fig. 122

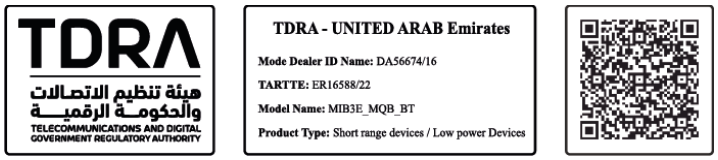


Fig. 123

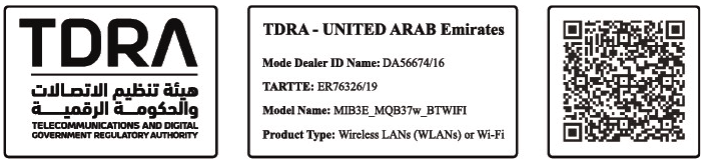


Fig. 124

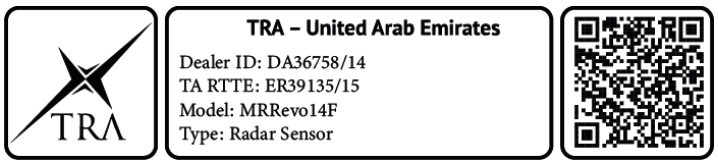


Fig. 125

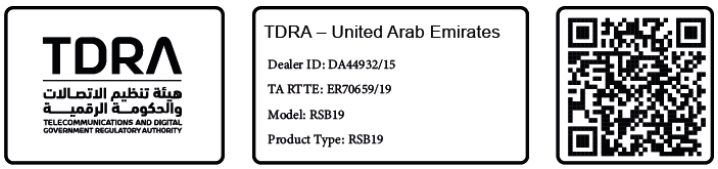


Fig. 126



Fig. 127



Fig. 128

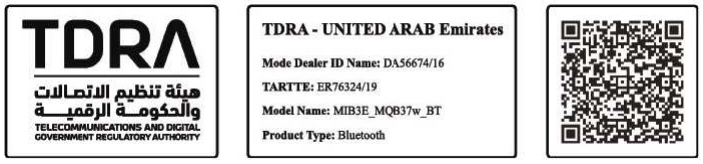


Fig. 129

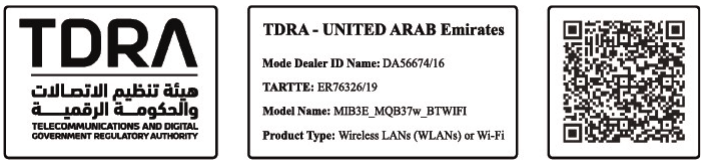


Fig. 130



Fig. 131



Fig. 132



Fig. 133



Fig. 134



Fig. 135



Fig. 136



Fig. 137



Fig. 138

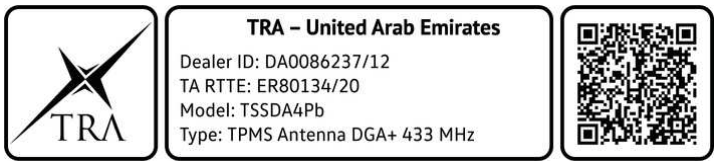


Fig. 139

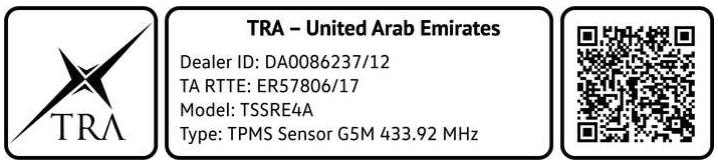


Fig. 140

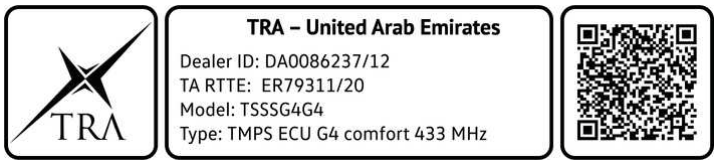


Fig. 141

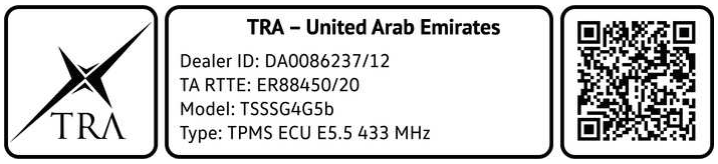


Fig. 142



Fig. 143



Fig. 144

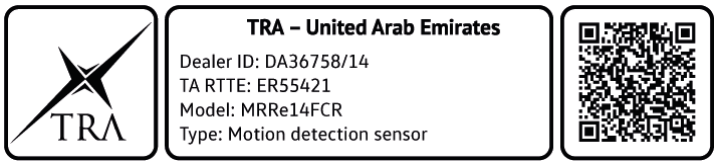


Fig. 145

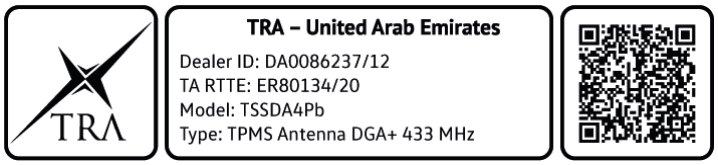


Fig. 146

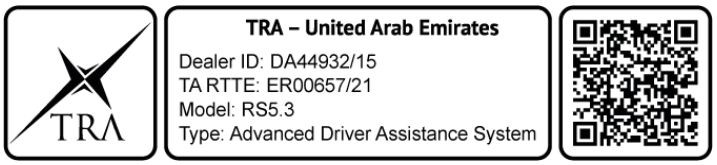


Fig. 147

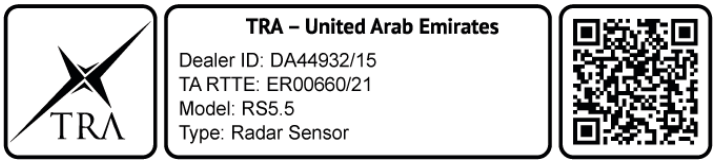


Fig. 148

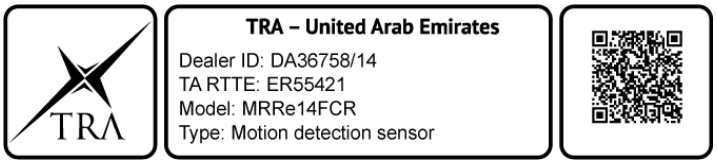


Fig. 149



Fig. 150



Fig. 151



Fig. 152



Fig. 153



Fig. 154

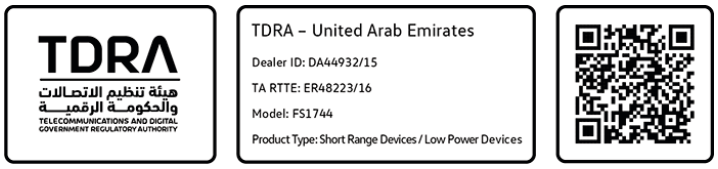


Fig. 155



Fig. 156

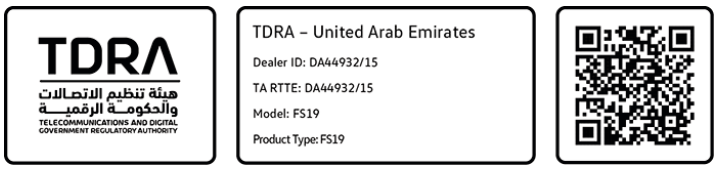


Fig. 157



Fig. 158



Fig. 159

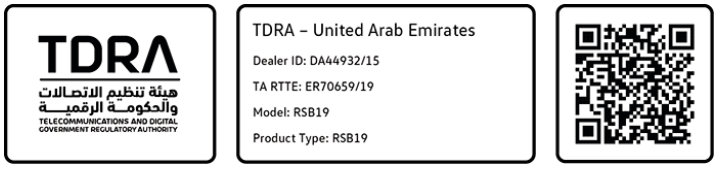


Fig. 160

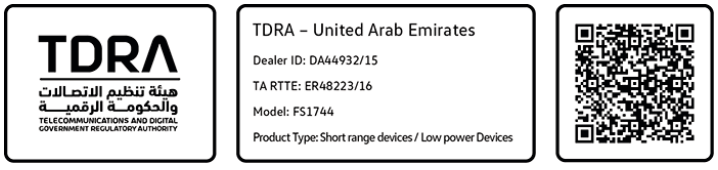


Fig. 161



Fig. 162



Fig. 163



Fig. 164

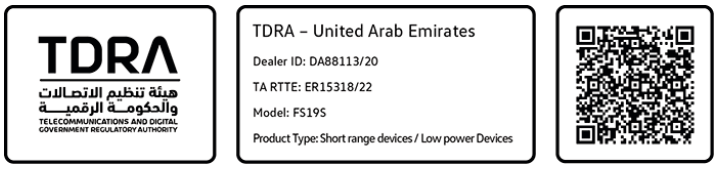


Fig. 165



Fig. 166



Fig. 167



Fig. 168



Fig. 169



Fig. 170



Fig. 171



Fig. 172



Fig. 173



Fig. 174



Fig. 175



Fig. 176



Fig. 177 Identification in accordance with Radiocommunication Act.

Vietnam

ICT

SunTech VietNam Technology Company Limited, C00082015, SUNTECH VietNam, SUNTECH VN:

71/CVT-TT3, 220/CVT-TT3

220221.01-TN, 220208.14-TN, 773/TTDLCL-CN, 210816.05-TN, 210526.20-TN, 2108106.04-TN, 3568/CVT-CNDV, 210526.21-TN, 2357/CVT-CL,220310.03-TN,220321.12-TN, 220607.09-TN

A0292190321AF04A3, A0406070421AF04A3, A0407070421AF04A3, A0858170820AF04A3,A2029161221AA04A3, A1099061022AE01A3, A1100061022AE01A3, A0590260523AF04A3B0401220321AE01A3, B0411230321AF04A3, B1189140520AF04A2, B2110171214BE11A2,B0423060422AF04A3,B0609240522AF04A3,B0620300522AE01A3,0735240622AF04A3,B0734240622AF04A3,B1093160822AE01A3, B1092160822AE01A3, B1089160822AE01A3, B1437261022AF04A3, B1647291122AF04A3, B1646291122AF04A3.

C0032060315BE01A2, C0032210220AF04A2, C0033060315BE01A2, C0055100417AF04A2, C0101230419AF04A2, C0118220519AF04A2, C0119220519AF04A2, C0124040520AF04A2, C0135110520AF04A2, C0141020718AF04A2, C0158100620AF04A2, C0159100620AF04A2, C0161110620AF04A2, C0162110620AF04A2, C0163110620AF04A2, C0174020818AF04A2, C0175020818AF04A2, C0181260620AF04A2, C0182260620AF04A2, C0183260620AF04A2, C0184260620AF04A2, C0197111217AF04A2, C0229240919AF04A2, C0238150321AF04A3, C0239150321AF04A3, C0289310321AF04A3, C0307010920AF04A3, C0308010920AF04A3, C0309010920AF04A2, C0319091219AF04A2, C0470201120AF04A3, C0438061120AF04A3,C01360900222AF04A3,C0197280222AF04A3,C0237070322AF04A3,C0577170522AF04A3, C1064310822AF04A3, C0409171023AF04A3, C003030124AF04A33, B0471130324AF04A3, CB0500180324AF04A3

Hella KGaA Hueck Co.: **A0858170820AF04A3, B134510122AF04A3, B1346101022AF04A3, B1347101022AF04A3, B1344101022AF04A3, B1346101022AF04A3, C0013190118AF04A2, C0036120121AF04A3, C0065120418AF04A2, C0068190418AF04A2, C0080180319AF04A2, C0092300320AF04A2, C0100100420AF04A2, C0163150719AF04A2, C0177011117AF04A2, C0178011117AF04A2, C0181230221AF04A3, C0205060916AF04A2, C0226170918AF04A2, C0314061219AF04A2, C0952190821AF04A3, C0953190821AF04A3, C1071270921AF04A3, C1099011021AF04A3, C1100011021AF04A3, C0136090222AF04A3, C0197280222AF04A3, C1239021122AF04A3, C124002122AF04A3, C1798281222AF04A2, B0643170523AF04A3, B0458140423AF04A3, B1566051121AE01A3, 231009.05-TN, 230911.13-TN, B0456110324AF03A3, B0454110324AF03A3, C0147180324AF04A3, C0386280624AF04A3.**

Except where indicated or specifically stated, the technical data applies to the basic model. The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted and in the case of different model versions, special vehicles and country-dependent equipment. All data in the official vehicle documents always takes precedence.

The official vehicle documents show which drive and which power output your vehicle has.

Weight

The values for the kerb weight in the following tables apply to the road-ready vehicle with a driver weight of 75 kg (approx. 165 lbs), service fluids including fuel tank carrying 100 % of its capacity and, where applicable, tools and spare tyre. Additional equipment and retrofitted accessories increase the stated kerb weight and reduce the maximum permitted load accordingly.

The load comprises the weights of the following:

— Passengers

— All luggage inside and outside of the vehicle.

— Add-on parts.

— Drawbar load when towing a trailer.

The permitted gross vehicle weight rating and gross axle weight rating must never be exceeded. The permitted values are provided on the safety certificate on the B-pillar on the driver side *(→ Safety certificate)* *(→ Type plate)*.

Performance figures

The performance figures were measured without equipment which may influence performance, e.g. add-on parts.

The power output and performance figures may differ for reasons of vehicle registration or vehicle taxation.

The maximum speed may be limited and may therefore be lower for some engine versions in vehicles equipped with heavy-duty running gear.

Maximum trailer weight and drawbar load values

The figures for maximum trailer weight and drawbar load that are given on the type plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes of the towing bracket only. The correct values for your specific model, which are often lower than these figures, are given in the vehicle documents. The values in the official vehicle documents, on the type plate of the vehicle *(→ Type plate)* or on the safety certificate *(→ Safety certificate)* always have priority.

Gross combination weight

The gross combination weight ratings listed apply only to altitudes up to around 1,000 m (approx. 3,000 ft) above sea level. The maximum gross combination weight rating must be reduced by approximately 10% for every further started 1,000 m (approx. 3,000 ft) in altitude.

Gradient angle

The gradient angle is an indication of the vehicle's gradeability and corresponds to the gradient that the vehicle can drive up under its own power. This depends on aspects such as the road surface, weather conditions and engine power. The values apply to a moving vehicle and not to driving off from standstill.

The number of metres in height gained over a distance of 100 m (approx. 300 ft) (gradient) will be given as a percentage or degree value (100% = 45 degrees).

Structure of the vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number VIN comprises 17 characters. These characters are categorised into seven groups.

The following sample vehicle identification numbers are used to demonstrate the structure.

Group	①			②			③		④	⑤	⑥	⑦					
Position:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Example	W	V	W	Z	Z	Z	C	B	Z	R	E	4	0	0	9	5	3
	W	V	W	A	F	2	9	N	4	8	Y	0	0	0	0	0	1

① Vehicle manufacturer identifier:

WVW

Volkswagen Passenger Cars

WVG

Volkswagen Passenger Cars

1VW

Volkswagen Group of America Inc., Volkswagen de México, S.A. de C.V

3VW

Volkswagen de México, S.A. de C.V

MFB

Garuda Matraman Motor (Indonesia)

(2) Filler characters: the filler characters may differ depending on manufacturer or contain information about the body or gearbox type.

(3) Vehicle class per model:

14

ID.7

3H

Arteon

5T

Touran

6R

Polo

AC

T-Roc Cabriolet

BV

Golf

CB

Passat

CA

Atlas

RC

Touareg

Depending on manufacturer, the places 7 to 9 can also contain information on the fuel type (7) and vehicle class (8 and 9).

(4) Filler characters or check digits: the filler characters or check digits may differ depending on the manufacturer.

(5) VIN index per model year:

R

2024

S

2025

T

2026

U

2027

6 Production location, manufacturing plant:

C

Volkswagen Chattanooga Plant

D

Volkswagen Bratislava Plant

E

Volkswagen Emden Plant

K

Volkswagen Osnabrück Plant

M

Volkswagen Puebla Plant

P

Volkswagen Zwickau Plant

T

Volkswagen Pune Plant

U

Volkswagen Uitenhage Plant

V

Volkswagen Palmela Plant

W

Volkswagen Wolfsburg Plant

Y

Volkswagen Pamplona Plant

The letters assigned to the production locations may differ on a vehicle-specific basis or may have a double assignment.

7 Sequential production number in a model year.



Fig. 1 In the windscreen: vehicle identification number.

The vehicle identification number can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen. The viewer is located in the lower corner of the windscreen.

In some models and depending on the Infotainment system version, the vehicle identification number can be displayed in the **Service** menu or in the vehicle settings. The vehicle identification number can also be found on the type plate.

Depending on model, country and engine, the vehicle identification number may also be stamped at one of the following locations:

— In the bonnet space in the right water drainage channel.

— In the bonnet space close to the bonnet hinge on the right side of the vehicle.

— Behind the right front seat under the floor covering.

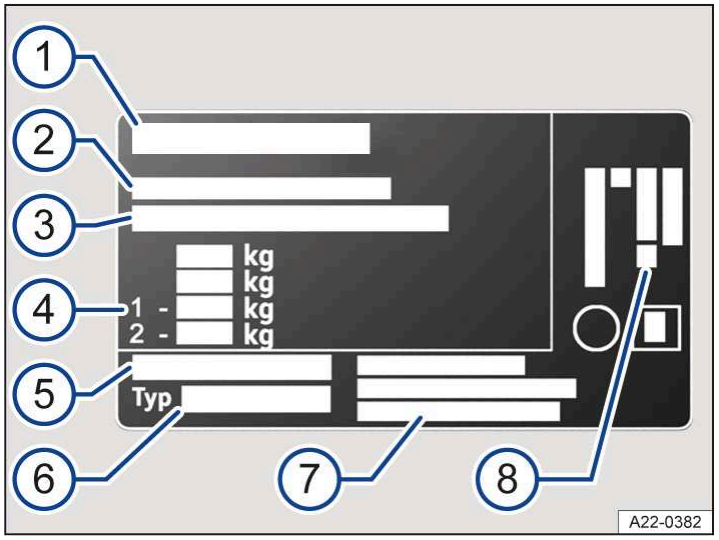


Fig. 1 Type plate: variant 1 (illustration).

Depending on country, the number of the type approval, e.g. EC type approval number, may be specified.

1. Manufacturer code.
2. Type approval.
3. Vehicle identification number.
4. Gross vehicle weight rating.

   Gross combination weight rating (vehicle plus trailer).

   Gross front axle weight rating.

   Gross rear axle weight rating.
5. Type approval number, country-specific.
6. Vehicle type.

7 Manufacturer's address.

8 Engine code.

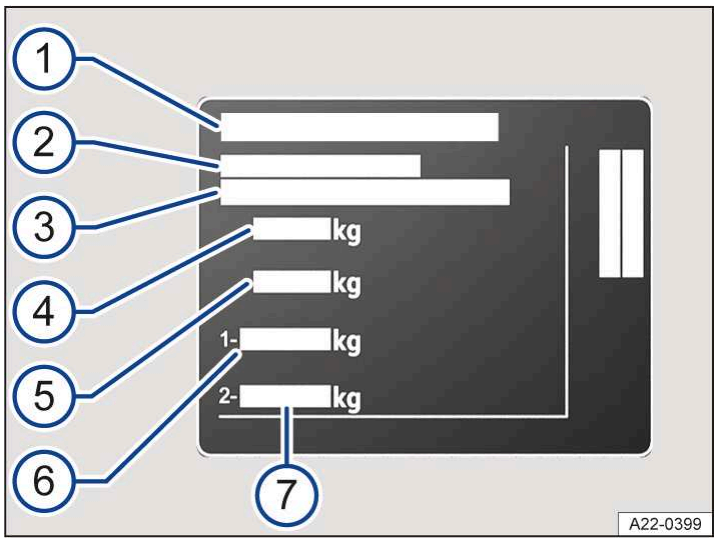


Fig. 2 Type plate: variant 2 (illustration).

Depending on country, the number of the type approval, e.g. EC type approval number, may be specified.

1 Manufacturer code.

2 Type approval.

3 Vehicle identification number.

4 Gross vehicle weight rating.

5 Gross combination weight rating (vehicle plus trailer).

6 Gross front axle weight rating.

7 Gross rear axle weight rating.

Depending on country and model, the type plate is visible in the lower area of the door pillar after opening the driver or front passenger door. Vehicles for certain countries do not have a type plate.

Safety certificate

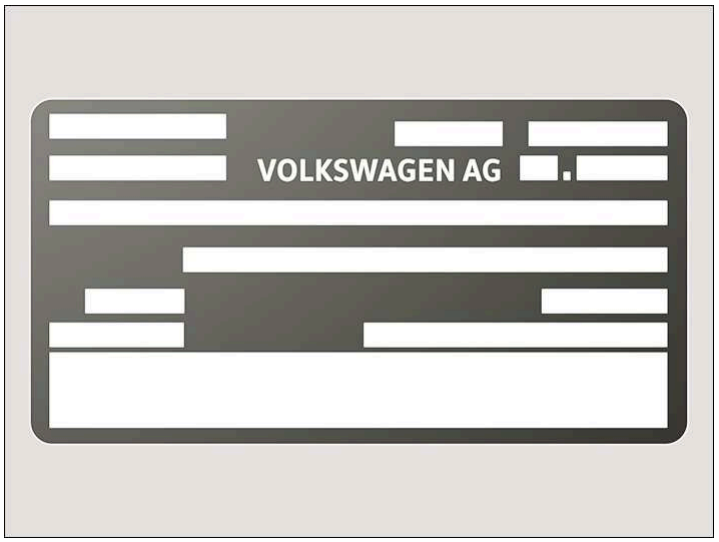


Fig. 1 Safety certificate (illustration).

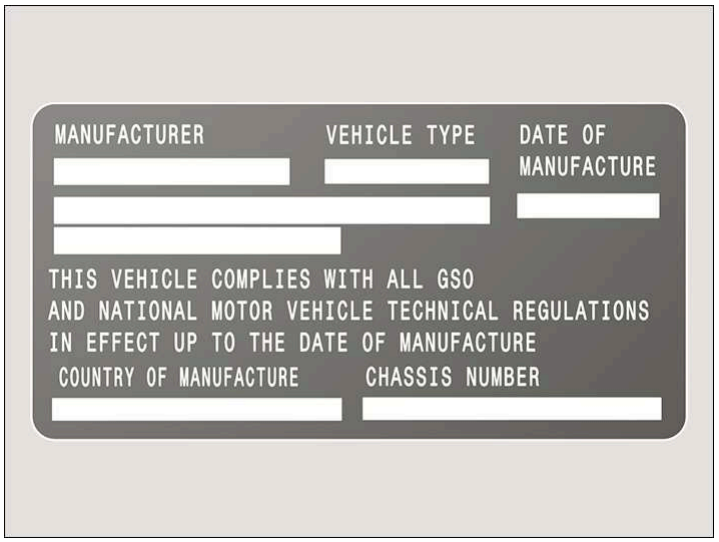


Fig. 2 Safety certificate (illustration).

A safety certificate on the door pillar in the driver door shows the following information:

— Vehicle type.

— Manufacturer.

— Date of manufacture.

— Country of manufacture.

— Vehicle identification number.

Dimensions

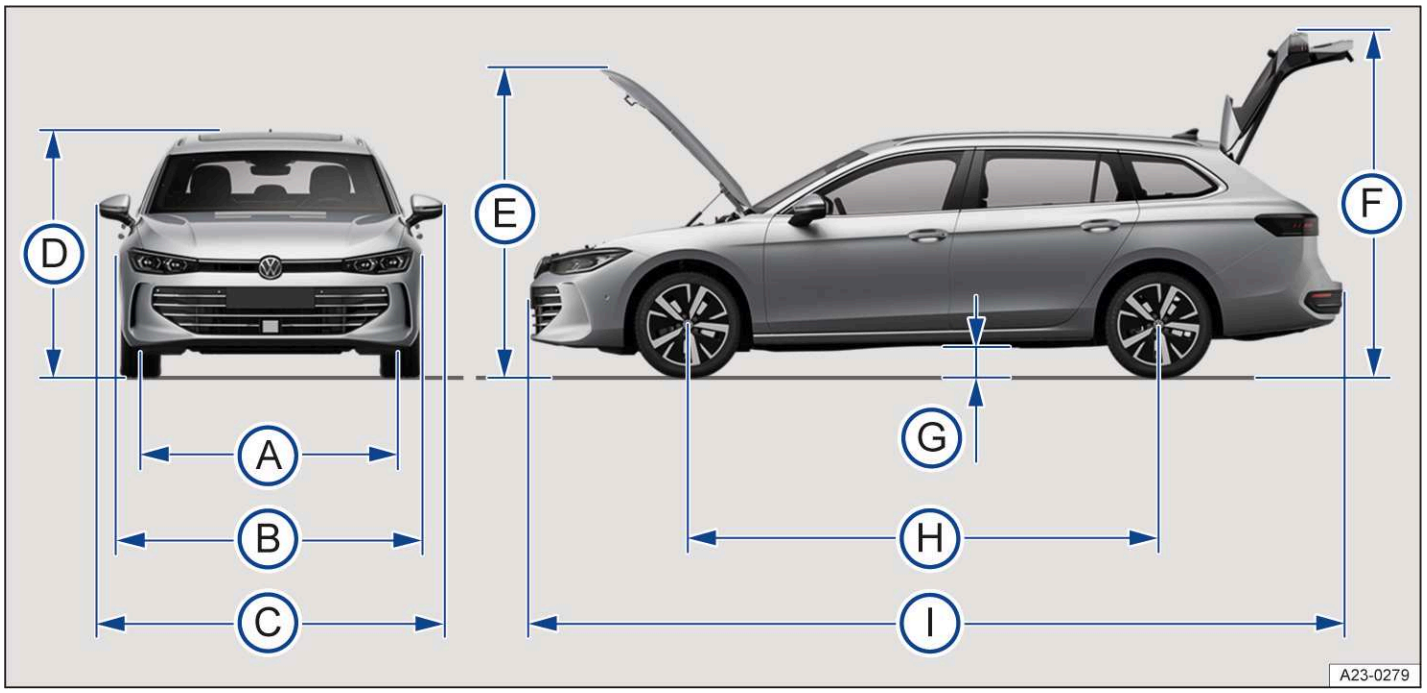


Fig. 1 Vehicle dimensions.

The data in the table applies to the base model with basic equipment.

The specified values can vary due to different tyre and wheel sizes, additional equipment, different model versions, retrofitted accessories and for special vehicles.

Information on the composition of the weights can be found in section *(→ Technical data)*.

In the case of vehicle dimensions without values, these figures were not available at the time of publication.

Passat Estate

Key to *Fig. 1*:			
A	Front track	mm	1,577 – 1,585
	Rear track	mm	1,560 – 1,574
B	Width	mm	1,849
C	Width with exterior mirrors folded out	mm	2,090
	Width with exterior mirrors folded in	mm	1,941
D	Height to the upper edge of the roof at kerb weight	mm	1,470 – 1,497
	Height with GPS aerial	mm	1,463 – 1,490
	Height to roof railing	mm	1,494 – 1,521
E	Height with open bonnet at kerb weight	mm	1,770 – 1,797
F	Height with open boot lid at kerb weight	mm	2,075 – 2,102
G	Ground clearance between the axles	mm	127 – 154
H	Wheelbase with full load	mm	2,837 – 2,838
	Minimum turning circle diameter	m	12
I	Length from bumper to bumper	mm	4,917

l	Length with a factory-fitted towing bracket	mm	5,019

Fuel tank volume

The fuel tank has the following capacity:

— approx. 66 l

The fuel tank capacity includes an unspecified reserve quantity which remains in the tank when the tank gauge indicates that the tank is empty. The reserve quantity is variable and cannot be reliably used to increase the remaining range.

1.5 l, 4-cylinder eTSI®, 110 kW, petrol engine

Engine overview

Power	kW	110 at 5,000 – 6,000 rpm
Engine code		DXDB
Injection technology		TSI®
Maximum torque	Nm	250 at 1,500 – 3,500 rpm
Gearbox		DSG®7
Maximum speed	km/h	–

Weights and axle loads

Kerb weight with driver *(→ Technical data)*	kg	1,573
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,130
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,080
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,100

Maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 12%	kg	1,600
Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 8%	kg	1,900
Maximum trailer weight unbraked	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,730
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 8%	kg	4,030
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	90

Load for rear carrier systems *(→ Bicycle carrier)*

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 150 kW, petrol engine

Engine overview

Power	kW	150 kW at 4,500–6,000 rpm
Engine code		DNNE
Injection technology		TSI®
Maximum torque	Nm	320 at 1,500 – 4,400 rpm
Gearbox		DSG®7
Maximum speed	km/h	–

Weights and axle loads

Kerb weight with driver *(→ Technical data)*	kg	1,663
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,220
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,140
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,130

Maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 12%	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 8%	kg	2,000
Maximum trailer weight unbraked	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	4,020
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 8%	kg	4,220
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	90

Load for rear carrier systems *(→ Bicycle carrier)*

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 195 kW, petrol engine

Engine overview

Power	kW	195 kW at 5,000–6,500 rpm
Engine code		DNPB
Injection technology		TSI®
Maximum torque	Nm	400 at 1,650 – 4,350 rpm
Gearbox		DSG®7 4MOTION
Maximum speed	km/h	–

Weights and axle loads

Kerb weight with driver *(→ Technical data)*	kg	1,762
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,300
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,170
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,180

Maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 12%	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 8%	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight unbraked	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	4,500
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 8%	kg	4,500
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	90

Load for rear carrier systems *(→ Bicycle carrier)*

2.0 l, 4-cylinder, TDI®, 90 kW, diesel engine

Engine overview

Power	kW	90 at 2,750 – 4,250 rpm
Engine code		DXPB
Injection technology		TDI®
Maximum torque	Nm	320 at 1,600 – 2,500 rpm
Gearbox		DSG®7
Maximum speed	km/h	–

Weights and axle loads

Kerb weight with driver *(→ Technical data)*	kg	1,673
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,250
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,170
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,130

5-seater: maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 12%	kg	1,500
Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 8%	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight unbraked	kg	750
Maximum permitted gross combination weight rating gradients up to 12%	kg	3,750
Maximum permitted gross combination weight rating gradients up to 8%	kg	4,050
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	90

Load for rear carrier systems *(→ Bicycle carrier)*

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 110 kW, diesel engine

Engine overview

Power	kW	110 at 3,000 – 4,200 rpm
Engine code		DXPA
Injection technology		TDI®
Maximum torque	Nm	360 at 1,600 – 2,750 rpm
Gearbox		DSG®7
Maximum speed	km/h	–

Weights and axle loads

Kerb weight with driver *(→ Technical data)*	kg	1,682
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,250
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,170
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,130

Maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 12%	kg	2,000
Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 8%	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight unbraked	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	4,250
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 8%	kg	4,450
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	90

Load for rear carrier systems *(→ Bicycle carrier)*

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 142 kW, diesel engine

Engine overview

Power	kW	142 at 3,500 – 4,200 rpm
Engine code		DXNB
Injection technology		TDI®
Maximum torque	Nm	400 at 1,750 – 3,250 rpm
Gearbox		DSG®7 4MOTION
Maximum speed	km/h	–

Weights and axle loads

Kerb weight with driver *(→ Technical data)*	kg	1,765
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,320
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,180
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,190

Maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 12%	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 8%	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight unbraked	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	4,520
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 8%	kg	4,520
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	90

Load for rear carrier systems *(→ Bicycle carrier)*